Introduction to Computational Chemistry

Second Edition

Frank Jensen
Contents

Preface to the First Edition xv
Preface to the Second Edition xix

1 Introduction 1

1.1 Fundamental Issues 2
1.2 Describing the System 3
1.3 Fundamental Forces 4
1.4 The Dynamical Equation 5
1.5 Solving the Dynamical Equation 8
1.6 Separation of Variables 8
1.6.1 Separating space and time variables 10
1.6.2 Separating nuclear and electronic variables 10
1.6.3 Separating variables in general 11

1.7 Classical Mechanics 12
1.7.1 The Sun–Earth system 12
1.7.2 The solar system 13

1.8 Quantum Mechanics 14
1.8.1 A hydrogen-like atom 14
1.8.2 The helium atom 17

1.9 Chemistry 19
1.9.1 Chemistry References 21

2 Force Field Methods 22

2.1 Introduction 22
2.2 The Force Field Energy 24
2.2.1 The stretch energy 25
2.2.2 The bending energy 27
2.2.3 The out-of-plane bending energy 30
2.2.4 The torsional energy 30
2.2.5 The van der Waals energy 34
2.2.6 The electrostatic energy: charges and dipoles 40
2.2.7 The electrostatic energy: multipoles and polarizabilities 43
## 2.2 Cross terms

- Cross terms 47
- Small rings and conjugated systems 48
- Comparing energies of structurally different molecules 50

## 2.3 Force Field Parameterization

- Parameter reductions in force fields 57
- Force fields for metal coordination compounds 58
- Universal force fields 62

## 2.4 Differences in Force Fields

## 2.5 Computational Considerations

## 2.6 Validation of Force Fields

## 2.7 Practical Considerations

## 2.8 Advantages and Limitations of Force Field Methods

- Modelling the TS as a minimum energy structure 70
- Modelling the TS as a minimum energy structure on the reactant/product energy seam 71
- Modelling the reactive energy surface by interacting force field functions or by geometry-dependent parameters 73

## 2.9 Transition Structure Modelling

## 2.10 Hybrid Force Field Electronic Structure Methods

## 2.11 Force Field Electronic Structure Methods

- Reference 77

## 3 Electronic Structure Methods: Independent-Particle Models

### 3.1 The Adiabatic and Born–Oppenheimer Approximations

### 3.2 Self-Consistent Field Theory

### 3.3 Koopmans' Theorem

### 3.4 The Basis Set Approximation

### 3.5 An Alternative Formulation of the Variational Problem

### 3.6 Restricted and Unrestricted Hartree–Fock

### 3.7 SCF Techniques

### 3.8 Periodic Systems

### 3.9 Semi-Empirical Methods

- Neglect of Diatomic Differential Overlap Approximation (NDDO) 116
- Intermediate Neglect of Differential Overlap Approximation (INDO) 117
- Complete Neglect of Differential Overlap Approximation (CNDO) 117

### 3.10 Parametrization

- Modified Intermediate Neglect of Differential Overlap (MINDO) 119
- Modified Neglect of Diatomic Overlap (MNDO) 121
- Austin Model 1 (AM1) 121
- Modified Neglect of Diatomic Overlap, Parametric Method Number 3 (PM3) 122
- Parametric Method number 5 (PM5) and PDDG/PM3 methods 123

## 4 Electron Correlation Methods

### 4.1 Configurations

- Excited Slater Determinants 133
- Configuration Interaction 137
- Size of the CI matrix 141
- Truncated CI methods 143
- Direct CI methods 144

### 4.2 Illustrating how CI Accounts for Electron Correlation, and the RHF Dissociation Problem

### 4.3 The UHF Dissociation, and the Spin Contamination Problem

### 4.4 Size Consistency and Size Extensivity

### 4.5 Multi-Reference Configuration Interaction

### 4.6 Many-Body Perturbation Theory

- Møller–Plesset perturbation theory 162
- Unrestricted and projected Møller–Plesset methods 168

### 4.7 Coupled Cluster

- Truncated coupled cluster methods 172

### 4.8 Multi-Reference Configuration Interaction and Perturbation Theory

- Illustrating correlation methods for the beryllium atom 177

### 4.9 Methods Involving the Interelectronic Distance

### 4.10 Direct Methods

### 4.11 Methods Involving the Interelectronic Distance

### 4.12 Localized Orbital Methods

### 4.13 Summary of Electron Correlation Methods

### 4.14 Excited States

### 4.15 Excited States

### 4.16 Quantum Monte Carlo Methods

## 5 Basis Sets

### 5.1 Slater and Gaussian Type Orbitals

### 5.2 Classification of Basis Sets

- Dunning–Huzinaga basis sets 204
- MINI, MIDI and MAXI basis sets 205

### 5.3 Atomic natural orbital basis sets

### 5.4 Core correlation consistent basis sets
# CONTENTS

## 5.4.7 Polarization consistent basis sets 207
## 5.4.8 Basis set extrapolation 208
## 5.5 Plane Wave Basis Functions 211
## 5.6 Recent Developments and Computational Issues 212
## 5.7 Composite Extrapolation Procedures 213
## 5.8 Isosynic and Idoesmic Reactions 221
## 5.9 Effective Core Potentials 222
## 5.10 Basis Set Superposition Errors 225
## 5.11 Pseudospectral Methods 227

## 6 Density Functional Methods 232
### 6.1 Orbital-Free Density Functional Theory 233
### 6.2 Kohn–Sham Theory 235
### 6.3 Reduced Density Matrix Methods 236
### 6.4 Exchange and Correlation Holes 240
### 6.5 Exchange–Correlation Functionals 243
#### 6.5.1 Local Density Approximation 246
#### 6.5.2 Gradient-corrected methods 248
#### 6.5.3 Hybrid or meta-GGA methods 250
#### 6.5.4 Generalized random phase methods 253
### 6.6 Performance and Properties of Density Functional Methods 254
### 6.7 DFT Problems 258
### 6.8 Computational Considerations 260
### 6.9 Final Considerations 263
### 6.10 References 264

## 7 Valence Bond Methods 268
### 7.1 Classical Valence Bond Theory 269
### 7.2 Spin-Coupled Valence Bond Theory 270
### 7.3 Generalized Valence Bond Theory 275
### 7.4 References 276

## 8 Relativistic Methods 277
### 8.1 The Dirac Equation 278
### 8.2 Connections Between the Dirac and Schrödinger Equations 280
#### 8.2.1 Including electric potentials 280
#### 8.2.2 Including both electric and magnetic potentials 282
### 8.3 Many-Particle Systems 284
### 8.4 Four-Component Calculations 287
### 8.5 Relativistic Effects 289
### 8.6 References 292

## 9 Wave Function Analysis 293
### 9.1 Population Analysis Based on Basis Functions 293
### 9.2 Population Analysis Based on the Electrostatic Potential 296

## 10 Molecular Properties 315
### 10.1 Examples of Molecular Properties 316
#### 10.1.1 External electric field 316
#### 10.1.2 Internal magnetic field 318
#### 10.1.3 Internal magnetic moments 318
### 10.2 Perturbation Methods 321
### 10.3 Derivative Techniques 321
### 10.4 Lagrangian Techniques 324
### 10.5 Coupled Perturbed Hartree–Fock 325
### 10.6 Electric Field Perturbation 329
#### 10.6.1 External electric field 329
#### 10.6.2 Internal electric field 329
### 10.7 Magnetic Field Perturbation 329
#### 10.7.1 External magnetic field 331
#### 10.7.2 Nuclear spin 332
#### 10.7.3 Electron spin 333
#### 10.7.4 Classical terms 333
#### 10.7.5 Relativistic terms 334
#### 10.7.6 Magnetic properties 334
#### 10.7.7 Gauge dependence of magnetic properties 338
### 10.8 Geometry Perturbations 339
### 10.9 Response and Propagator Methods 343
### 10.10 Property Basis Sets 348
### 10.11 References 349

## 11 Illustrating the Concepts 350
### 11.1 Geometry Convergence 350
### 11.2 Total Energy Convergence 354
### 11.3 Dipole Moment Convergence 356
### 11.4 Vibrational Frequency Convergence 358
### 11.5 References 360
11.5 Bond Dissociation Curves 361
11.5.1 Basis set effect at the Hartree–Fock level 361
11.5.2 Performance of different types of wave function 363
11.5.3 Density functional methods 369
11.6 Angle Bending Curves 370
11.7 Problematic Systems 370
11.7.1 The geometry of FOOF 371
11.7.2 The dipole moment of CO 372
11.7.3 The vibrational frequencies of O

11.8 Relative Energies of C4H6 Isomers 374

12 Optimization Techniques 380
12.1 Optimizing Quadratic Functions 381
12.2 Optimizing General Functions: Finding Minima 383
12.2.1 Steepest descent 383
12.2.2 Conjugate gradient methods 384
12.2.3 Newton–Raphson methods 385
12.2.4 Step control 386
12.2.5 Obtaining the Hessian 387
12.2.6 Storing and diagonalizing the Hessian 388
12.2.7 Extrapolations: the GDIIS method 389
12.3 Choice of Coordinates 390
12.4 Optimizing General Functions: Finding Saddle Points (Transition Structures) 394
12.4.1 One-structure interpolation methods: coordinate driving, linear and quadratic synchronous transit, and sphere optimization 394
12.4.2 Two-structure interpolation methods: saddle, line-then-plane, ridge and step-and-slide optimizations 397
12.4.3 Multi-structure interpolation methods: chain, locally updated planes, self-penalty walk, conjugate peak refinement and nudged elastic band 398
12.4.4 Characteristics of interpolation methods 401
12.4.5 Local methods: gradient norm minimization 402
12.4.6 Local methods: Newton–Raphson 403
12.4.7 Local methods: the dimer method 405
12.4.8 Coordinates for TS searches 406
12.4.9 Characteristics of local methods 407
12.5 Constrained Optimization Problems 408
12.6 Conformational Sampling and the Global Minimum Problem 413
12.6.1 Stochastic and Monte Carlo methods 415
12.6.2 Molecular dynamics 416
12.6.3 Simulated annealing 417
12.6.4 Genetic algorithms 418
12.6.5 Diffusion methods 419
12.7 Molecular Docking 420
12.8 Intrinsic Reaction Coordinate Methods 421

13 Statistical Mechanics and Transition State Theory 425
13.1 Transition State Theory 425
13.2 Rice–Ramsperger–Kassel–Marcus Theory 428
13.3 Dynamical Effects 430
13.4 Statistical Mechanics 433
13.4.1 Translational degrees of freedom 434
13.4.2 Rotational degrees of freedom 435
13.4.3 Vibrational degrees of freedom 436
13.4.4 Electronic degrees of freedom 437

14 Simulation Techniques 446
14.1 Generating non-natural ensembles 449
14.2 Time-Dependent Methods 452
14.2.1 Molecular dynamics methods 453
14.2.2 Generating non-natural ensembles 456
14.2.3 Langevin methods 457
14.2.4 Direct methods 458
14.2.5 Extended Lagrange techniques (Car–Parrinello methods) 459
14.2.6 Quantum methods using potential energy surfaces 460
14.2.7 Reaction path methods 462
14.2.8 Constrained sampling methods 463
14.3 Periodic Boundary Conditions 466
14.4 Free Energy Methods 473
14.4.1 Thermodynamic perturbation methods 474
14.4.2 Thermodynamic integration methods 475

15 Qualitative Theories 487
15.1 Frontier Molecular Orbital Theory 487
15.2 Concepts from Density Functional Theory 492
15.3 Qualitative Molecular Orbital Theory 494
15.4 Woodward–Hoffmann Rules 497
15.5 The Bell–Evans–Polanyi Principle/Hammond Postulate/Marcus Theory 506
15.6 More O’Ferrall–Jencks Diagrams 511

References 513
16 Mathematical Methods
16.1 Numbers, Vectors, Matrices and Tensors 514
16.2 Change of Coordinate System 520
16.2.1 Examples of changing the coordinate system 525
16.2.2 Vibrational normal coordinates 526
16.2.3 Energy of a Slater determinant 528
16.2.4 Energy of a CI wave function 529
16.2.5 Computational Consideration 529
16.3 Coordinates, Functions, Functionals, Operators and
Superoperators 530
16.3.1 Differential operators 531
16.4 Normalization, Orthogonalization and Projection 532
16.5 Differential Equations 535
16.5.1 Simple first-order differential equations 535
16.5.2 Less simple first-order differential equations 536
16.5.3 Simple second-order differential equations 536
16.5.4 Less simple second-order differential equations 537
16.5.5 Second-order differential equations depending on the
function itself 537
16.6 Approximating Functions 538
16.6.1 Taylor expansion 539
16.6.2 Basis set expansion 541
16.7 Fourier and Laplace Transformations 541
16.8 Surfaces 543
References 546

17 Statistics and QSAR 547
17.1 Introduction 547
17.2 Elementary Statistical Measures 549
17.3 Correlation Between Two Sets of Data 550
17.4 Correlation between Many Sets of Data 553
17.4.1 Multiple-descriptor data sets and quality analysis 553
17.4.2 Multiple linear regression 555
17.4.3 Principal component and partial least squares analysis 556
17.4.4 Illustrative example 558
17.5 Quantitative Structure–Activity Relationships (QSAR)
References 561

18 Concluding Remarks 562

Appendix A 565
Notation 565

Appendix B 570
B.1 The Variational Principle 570
B.2 The Hohenberg–Kohn Theorems 571
B.3 The Adiabatic Connection Formula 572
References 573
Computational chemistry is rapidly emerging as a subfield of theoretical chemistry, where the primary focus is on solving chemically related problems by calculations. For the newcomer to the field, there are three main problems:

1. Deciphering the code. The language of computational chemistry is littered with acronyms, what do these abbreviations stand for in terms of underlying assumptions and approximations?
2. Technical problems. How does one actually run the program and what to look for in the output?
3. Quality assessment. How good is the number that has been calculated?

Point (1) is part of every new field: there is not much to do about it. If you want to live in another country, you have to learn the language. If you want to use computational chemistry methods, you need to learn the acronyms. I have tried in the present book to include a good fraction of the most commonly used abbreviations and standard procedures.

Point (2) is both hardware and software specific. It is not well suited for a text book, as the information rapidly becomes out of date. The average lifetime of computer hardware is a few years, the time between new versions of software is even less. Problems of type (2) need to be solved “on location”. I have made one exception, however, and have including a short discussion of how to make Z-matrices. A Z-matrix is a convenient way of specifying a molecular geometry in terms of internal coordinates, and it is used by many electronic structure programs. Furthermore, geometry optimizations are often performed in Z-matrix variables, and since optimizations in a good set of internal coordinates are significantly faster than in Cartesian coordinates, it is important to have a reasonable understanding of Z-matrix construction.

As computer programs evolve they become easier to use. Modern programs often communicate with the user in terms of a graphical interface, and many methods have become essential “black box” procedures: if you can draw the molecule, you can also do the calculation. This effectively means that you no longer have to be a highly trained theoretician to run even quite sophisticated calculations.
The ease with which calculations can be performed means that the AMBER force field is used for modeling proteins not just for organic molecules. The goal of this book is to provide an overview of commonly used methods, although the CI problem in practice is solved by iterative techniques. The prime focus of this book is on calculating molecular structures and relative electronic energies for molecules. The AMBER force field is used for flexible partial charges in protein systems. If you are breaking new ground, where there is no previous experience, you need a way of calibrating the results. The lack of quality assessment is probably one of the reasons why computational chemistry has (had) a somewhat bleak reputation. "If five different computational methods give five widely different results, you have different beliefs in practice, and it becomes necessary to be able to evaluate whether a certain type of calculation can be evaluated for the system in question, and which one to use. The present book grew out of a series of lectures notes that I have used for teaching a course in computational chemistry at the University of Odense. I hope the present book will give some idea of the limitations of different methods, and the necessary (obviously a subjective criterion) mathematical background has been provided, the aim being that the reader should be able to understand the premises and limitations of different methods, and allow the main steps in running a calculation. This means that in many cases, I have omitted to tell the reader of some of the details of the method for other systems. If you are not breaking new ground, where there is a previous experience, you need a way of calibrating the results. The lack of quality assessment is probably one of the reasons why computational chemistry has (had) a somewhat bleak reputation. "If five different computational methods give five widely different results, you have different beliefs in practice, and it becomes necessary to be able to evaluate whether a certain type of calculation can be evaluated for the system in question, and which one to use.

Computers don't solve problems, people do. Computers just generate numbers. Although computational chemistry has evolved to the stage where it often can be competitive with experimental methods for generating a value for a given property of a molecule, the number of possible molecules (there are an estimated $10^{200}$ molecules with a molecular weight less than 850) and their associated properties is so huge that only a very small fraction can be calculated with accuracy. The real strength of computational chemistry is the ability to generate data (for example by analyzing the wave function) from which a human may gain insight, and thereby rationalize the behavior of a large class of molecules. Such insights and rationalizations are much more likely to be useful over a longer period of time than the raw numbers generated by computers. The second derivative of the energy, for example, can be calculated by a computer, but it is very effective at rationalizing the behavior of these molecules over a longer period of time than the raw numbers generated by computers.
I have assumed that the reader has no prior knowledge of concepts specific to computational chemistry, but has a working understanding of introductory quantum mechanics and elementary mathematics, especially linear algebra, vector, differential and integral calculus. The following features specific to chemistry are used in the present book without further introduction. Adequate descriptions may be found in a number of quantum chemistry textbooks (J. P. Lowe, *Quantum Chemistry*, Academic Press, 1995; I. N. Levine, *Quantum Chemistry*, Prentice Hall, 1992; P. W. Atkins, *Molecular Quantum Mechanics*, Oxford University Press, 1983).

(1) The Schrödinger equation, with the consequences of quantized solutions and quantum numbers.
(2) The interpretation of the square of the wave function as a probability distribution, the Heisenberg uncertainty principle and the possibility of tunnelling.
(3) The solutions for the hydrogen atom, atomic orbitals.
(4) The solutions for the harmonic oscillator and rigid rotor.
(5) The molecular orbitals for the $\text{H}_2$ molecule generated as a linear combination of two $s$-functions, one on each nuclear centre.
(6) Point group symmetry, notation and representations, and the group theoretical condition for when an integral is zero.

I have elected to include a discussion of the variational principle and perturbational methods, although these are often covered in courses in elementary quantum mechanics. The properties of angular momentum coupling are used at the level of knowing the difference between a singlet and triplet state. I do not believe that it is necessary to understand the details of vector coupling to understand the implications.

Although I have tried to keep each chapter as self-contained as possible, there are unavoidable dependencies. The part in Chapter 3 describing HF methods is a prerequisite for understanding Chapter 4. Both these Chapters use terms and concepts for basis sets which are treated in Chapter 5. Chapter 5, in turn, relies on concepts in Chapters 3 and 4, i.e. these three chapters form the core for understanding modern electronic structure calculations. Many of the concepts in Chapters 3 and 4 are also used in Chapters 6, 7, 9, 11 and 15 without further introduction, although these five chapters probably can be read with some benefits without a detailed understanding of Chapters 3 and 4. Chapter 8, and to a certain extent also Chapter 10, are fairly advanced for an introductory textbook, such as the present, and can be skipped. They do, however, represent areas that are probably going to be more and more important in the coming years. Function optimization, which is described separately in Chapter 14, is part of many areas, but a detailed understanding is not required for following the arguments in the other chapters. Chapters 12 and 13 are fairly self-contained, and form some of the background for the methods in the other chapters. In my own course I normally take Chapters 12, 13 and 14 fairly early in the course, as they provide background for Chapters 3, 4 and 5.

If you would like to make comments, advise me of possible errors, make clarifications, add references, etc., or view the current list of misprints and corrections, please visit the author’s website (URL: http://bogense.chem.ou.dk/~icc).

---

Preface to the Second Edition

The changes relative to the first edition are as follows:

- Numerous misprints and inaccuracies in the first edition have been corrected. Most likely some new ones have been introduced in the process, please check the book website for the most recent correction list and feel free to report possible problems. Since web addresses have a tendency to change regularly, please use your favourite search engine to locate the current URL.
- The methodologies and references in each chapter have been updated with new developments published between 1998 and 2005.
- More extensive referencing. Complete referencing is impossible, given the large breadth of subjects. I have tried to include references that preferably are recent, have a broad scope and include key references. From these the reader can get an entry into the field.
- Many figures and illustrations have been redone. The use of colour illustrations has been deferred in favour of keeping the price of the book down.
- Each chapter or section now starts with a short overview of the methods, described without mathematics. This may be useful for getting a feel for the methods, without embarking on all the mathematical details. The overview is followed by a more detailed mathematical description of the method, including some key references which may be consulted for more details. At the end of the chapter or section, some of the pitfalls and the directions of current research are outlined.
- Energy units have been converted from kcal/mol to kJ/mol, based on the general opinion that the scientific world should move towards SI units.
- Furthermore, some chapters have undergone major restructuring:
  ◦ Chapter 16 (Chapter 13 in the first edition) has been greatly expanded to include a summary of the most important mathematical techniques used in the book. The goal is to make the book more self-contained, i.e. relevant mathematical techniques used in the book are at least rudimentarily discussed in Chapter 16.
All the statistical mechanics formalism has been collected in Chapter 13.
Chapter 14 has been expanded to cover more of the methodologies used in molecular dynamics.
Chapter 12 on optimization techniques has been restructured.
Chapter 6 on density functional methods has been rewritten.
A new Chapter 1 has been introduced to illustrate the similarities and differences between classical and quantum mechanics, and to provide some fundamental background.
A rudimentary treatment of periodic systems has been incorporated in Chapters 3 and 14.
A new Chapter 17 has been introduced to describe statistics and QSAR methods.
I have tried to make the book more modular, i.e. each chapter is more self-contained. This makes it possible to use only selected chapters, e.g. for a course, but has the drawback of repeating the same things in several chapters, rather than simply cross-referencing.

Although the modularity has been improved, there are unavoidable interdependencies. Chapters 3, 4 and 5 contain the essentials of electronic structure theory, and most would include Chapter 6 describing density functional methods. Chapter 2 contains a description of empirical force field methods, and this is tightly coupled to the simulation methods in Chapter 14, which of course leans on the statistical mechanics in Chapter 13. Chapter 1 on fundamental issues is of a more philosophical nature, and can be skipped. Chapter 16 on mathematical techniques is mainly for those not already familiar with this, and Chapter 17 on statistical methods may be skipped as well.

Definitions, acronyms and common phrases are marked in italic. In a change from the first edition, where underlining was used, italic text has also been used for emphasizing important points.

A number of people have offered valuable help and criticisms during the updating process. I would especially like to thank S. P. A. Sauer, H. J. Aa. Jensen, E. J. Baerends and P. L. A. Popelier for having read various parts of the book and provided input. Remaining errors are of course my sole responsibility.

Specific comments on the preface to the first edition
Bohacek et al.1 have estimated the number of possible compounds composed of H, C, N, O and S atoms with 30 non-hydrogen atoms or fewer to be $10^{60}$. Although this number is so large that only a very tiny fraction will ever be amenable to investigation, the concept of functional groups means that one does not need to evaluate all compounds in a given class to determine their properties. The number of alkanes meeting the above criteria is $10^{10}$; clearly these will all have very similar and well-understood properties, and there is no need to investigate all $10^{10}$ compounds.

Reference

1 Introduction

Chemistry is the science dealing with construction, transformation and properties of molecules. Theoretical chemistry is the subfield where mathematical methods are combined with fundamental laws of physics to study processes of chemical relevance. Molecules are traditionally considered as “composed” of atoms or, in a more general sense, as a collection of charged particles, positive nuclei and negative electrons. The only important physical force for chemical phenomena is the Coulomb interaction between these charged particles. Molecules differ because they contain different nuclei and numbers of electrons, or because the nuclear centres are at different geometrical positions. The latter may be “chemically different” molecules such as ethanol and dimethyl ether, or different “conformations” of for example butane.

Given a set of nuclei and electrons, theoretical chemistry can attempt to calculate things such as:
• Which geometrical arrangements of the nuclei correspond to stable molecules?
• What are their relative energies?
• What are their properties (dipole moment, polarizability, NMR coupling constants, etc.)?
• What is the rate at which one stable molecule can transform into another?
• What is the time dependence of molecular structures and properties?
• How do different molecules interact?

The only systems that can be solved exactly are those composed of only one or two particles, where the latter can be separated into two pseudo-one-particle problems by introducing a “centre of mass” coordinate system. Numerical solutions to a given accuracy (which may be so high that the solutions are essentially “exact”) can be generated for many-body systems, by performing a very large number of mathematical operations. Prior to the advent of electronic computers (i.e. before 1950), the number of systems that could be treated with a high accuracy was thus very limited. During the sixties and seventies, electronic computers evolved from a few very expensive, difficult to use, machines to become generally available for researchers all over the world. The performance of a given price has been steadily increasing since and the use of computers is now widespread in many branches of science. This has spawned a new
Within the scientific world, computers are used for two main tasks: performing numerically intensive calculations and analyzing large datasets. Each of these tasks has its own challenges and benefits. Computational chemistry is one field in chemistry, computational chemistry, where the computer is used as an "experimental" tool, much like, for example, an NMR spectrometer.

Computational chemistry is focused on obtaining results relevant to chemical problems, not directly at developing new theoretical methods. There is of course a strong interplay between traditional theoretical chemistry and computational chemistry, and it is not always clear which technique is more appropriate for a given problem. The present book tries to put the variety of modern computational chemistry into perspective and to present the reader with a chance of estimating which types of problems can benefit from calculations.

1.1 Fundamental Issues

Before embarking on a detailed description of the theoretical methods in computational chemistry, it may be useful to discuss the important issues in the field. These issues are as follows:

- **Choosing the System**: Where are the particles and what are their velocities?
- **Dynamic Equation**: What is the mathematical form for evolving the system in time?
- **Potential Energy Surface**: What is the mathematical form for evolving the system in time?
- **Interaction Between Particles**: What is the mathematical form for the forces acting between the particles?
- **Simulation Strategy**: What is the mathematical form for evolving the system in time?
- **Solution of the Equations**: What is the mathematical form for evolving the system in time?

Developing a detailed understanding of these issues may reveal limitations and suggest improvements in the methodology.

A very large fraction of the computational resources in chemistry and physics is used in solving the so-called *many-body problem*. The essence of the problem is that two-particle systems can in many cases be solved exactly by mathematical methods, producing solutions in terms of exact wave functions. However, for more than two particles, exact solutions, which in principle may be obtained, are usually not practical. Instead, approximate solutions are computed, which in principle may be refined to any desired degree of accuracy.

Computers are not smart – at the core level they are just very primitive. Smart programmers, however, can make sophisticated computer programs which may make the computer appear smart, or even intelligent.

1.2 Describing the System

In order to describe a system, we need four fundamental features:

- **System Description**: What are the fundamental units or "particles", and how many are there?
- **Starting Condition**: Where are the particles and what are their velocities?
- **Interaction**: What is the mathematical form for the forces acting between the particles?
- **Dynamical Equation**: What is the mathematical form for evolving the system in time?

The choice of particles puts limitations on what we are ultimately able to compute. It is not always clear which technique is more appropriate for a given problem. The present book tries to put the variety of modern computational chemistry into perspective.

The choice of starting conditions effectively determines what we are trying to describe. The complete phase space (i.e., all possible values of positions and velocities) for all particles is large, and we will only be able to describe a small part of it. Our choice of starting conditions determines which part of the phase space we sample, for example, which (structural or conformational) science of chemical reactions we can describe at the fundamental level, the only important thing we want to know about the system is what's happening in it.

The interaction between particles is a key element in the dynamics of a system. For example, Figure 1.1 shows how the system evolves in time. At the fundamental level, the only important thing we want to know about the system is what's happening in it.

These tasks are the essence of any programming language: make the computer do what you want it to do. Each of these operations must be specified, and the computer must be instructed to perform them in a particular order. A convenient way to specify these operations is to use the syntax of a high-level programming language. Computer programs can be used to perform a wide variety of operations, from simple calculations to complex simulations of physical systems. Even a small computer can perform billions of operations per second.
In force field methods, for example, the interactions are parameterized as stretch, bend, torsional, van der Waals, etc., interactions.

The dynamical equation describes the time evolution of the system. It is given as a differential equation involving both time and space derivatives, with the exact form depending on the particle masses and velocities. By solving the dynamical equation the particles' position and velocity can be predicted at later (or earlier) times relative to the starting conditions, i.e., how the system evolves in the phase space.

1.3 Fundamental Forces

The interaction between particles can be described in terms of either a force (F) or a potential (V). These are equivalent, as the force is the derivative of the potential with respect to the position r.

\[ F(r) = -\nabla V(r) \]  \hspace{1cm} (1.1)

Current knowledge indicates that there are four fundamental interactions, at least under normal conditions, as listed in Table 1.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Particles</th>
<th>Range (m)</th>
<th>Relative strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Strong interaction</td>
<td>Quarks</td>
<td>&lt;10^{-11}</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weak interaction</td>
<td>Quarks, leptons</td>
<td>&lt;10^{-11}</td>
<td>0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electromagnetic</td>
<td>Charged particles</td>
<td>=</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravitational</td>
<td>Mass particles</td>
<td>=</td>
<td>10^{-11}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Quarks are the building blocks of protons and neutrons, and lepton is a common name for a group of particles including the electron and the neutrino. The strong interaction is the force holding the atomic nucleus together, despite the repulsion between the positively charged protons. The weak interaction is responsible for radioactive decay of nuclei by conversion of neutrons to protons (β decay). The strong and weak interactions are short-ranged and are only important within the atomic nucleus.

Both the electromagnetic and gravitational interactions depend on the inverse distance between the particles, and are therefore of infinite range. The electromagnetic interaction occurs between all charged particles, while the gravitational interaction occurs between all particles with a mass, and they have the same overall functional form.

\[ V_{\text{elec}}(r) = C_{\text{elec}} \frac{Q_1 Q_2}{r} \]  \hspace{1cm} (1.2)

\[ V_{\text{grav}}(r) = -\frac{G m_1 m_2}{r} \]  \hspace{1cm} (1.3)

In SI units \( C_{\text{elec}} = 9.0 \times 10^9 \text{N m}^2 \text{C}^{-2} \) and \( C_{\text{grav}} = 6.7 \times 10^{-11} \text{N m}^2 \text{kg}^{-2} \), while in atomic units \( C_{\text{elec}} = 1 \) and \( C_{\text{grav}} = 2.4 \times 10^{-8} \). On an atomic scale, the gravitational interaction is completely negligible compared with the electromagnetic interaction. For the interaction between a proton and an electron, for example, the ratio between \( V_{\text{elec}} \) and \( V_{\text{grav}} \) is \( 10^{39} \).

On a large macroscopic scale, such as planets, the situation is reversed. Here the gravitational interaction completely dominates, and the electromagnetic interaction is absent.

On a more fundamental level, it is believed that the four forces are really just different manifestations of a single common interaction, because of the relatively low energy regime we are living in. It has been shown that the weak and electromagnetic forces can be combined into a single unified theory, called quantum electrodynamics (QED). Similarly, the strong interaction can be coupled with QED into what is known as the standard model. Much effort is being devoted to also include the gravitational interaction into a grand unified theory, and string theory is currently believed to hold the greatest promise for such a unification.

Only the electromagnetic interaction is important at the atomic and molecular level, and in the large majority of cases, the simple Coulomb form (in atomic units) is sufficient:

\[ V_{\text{Coulomb}}(r) = \frac{\alpha}{r} \]  \hspace{1cm} (1.4)

Within QED, the Coulomb interaction is only the zeroth-order term, and the complete interaction can be written as an expansion in terms of the (inverse) velocity of light, \( c \). For systems where relativistic effects are important (i.e., containing elements from the lower part of the periodic table), or when high accuracy is required, the first-order correction (corresponding to an expansion up to \( 1/c^2 \)) for the electron-electron interaction may be included:

\[ V_{\text{Breit}}(r_{12}) = \frac{\alpha}{r_{12}} \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\alpha}{r_{12}} \right)^2 \right] \]  \hspace{1cm} (1.5)

The first-order correction is known as the Breit term, and \( \alpha_1 \) and \( \alpha_2 \) represent velocity operators. Physically, the first term in the Breit correction corresponds to magnetic interaction between the two electrons, while the second term describes a "retardation" effect, since the interaction between distant particles is "delayed" relative to interactions between close particles, owing to the finite value of \( c \) (in atomic units, \( c = 1.37 \)).

1.4 The Dynamical Equation

The mathematical form for the dynamical equation depends on the mass and velocity of the particles, and can be divided into four regimes.

Newtonian mechanics, exemplified by Newton's second law (F = ma), applies for "heavy", "slow-moving" particles. Relativistic effects become important when the velocity is comparable to the speed of light, causing an increase in the particle mass \( m \) relative to the rest mass \( m_0 \). A pragmatic borderline between Newtonian and relativistic (Einstein) mechanics is \( \sim \sqrt{c} \), corresponding to a relativistic correction of a few percent.

Light particles display both wave and particle characteristics, and must be described by quantum mechanics, with both the wave and particle being approximately the mass of a proton.
Electrons are much lighter and can only be described by quantum mechanics, while atoms and molecules, with a few exceptions, behave essentially as classical particles. Hydrogen (protons), being the lightest nucleus, represents a borderline case, which means that quantum corrections in some cases are essential. A prime example is the tunnelling of hydrogen through barriers, allowing reactions involving hydrogen to occur faster than expected from transition state theory.

A major difference between quantum and classical mechanics is that classical mechanics is deterministic while quantum mechanics is probabilistic. Deterministic means that Newton's equation can be integrated over time (forward or backward) and can predict where the particles are at a certain time. That, for example, allows prediction of where and when solar eclipses will occur many thousands of years in advance, with an accuracy of meters and seconds. Quantum mechanics, on the other hand, only allows calculation of the probability of a particle being at a certain place at a certain time. The probability function is given as the square of a wave function, \( P(r, t) = \Psi^2(r, t) \), where the wave function \( \Psi \) is obtained by solving either the Schrödinger (non-relativistic) or Dirac (relativistic) equation. Although they appear to be the same in Figure 1.2, they differ considerably in the form of the operator \( H \).

For classical mechanics at low velocities compared with the speed of light, Newton's second law applies.

\[
F = \frac{dp}{dt} \tag{1.5}
\]

If the particle mass is constant, the derivative of the momentum \( p \) is the mass times the acceleration.

\[
p = mv \\
F = \frac{dp}{dt} = m \frac{dv}{dt} = ma \tag{1.6}
\]

Since the force is the derivative of the potential (eq. (1.1)), and the acceleration is the second derivative of the position \( r \) with respect to time, it may also be written in a differential form.

\[
\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = \frac{F}{m} \tag{1.7}
\]

Solving this equation gives the position of each particle as a function of time, i.e. \( r(t) \).

At velocities comparable with the speed of light, Newton's equation is formally unchanged, but the particle mass becomes a function of the velocity, and the force is therefore not simply a constant (mass) times the acceleration.

\[
m = \frac{m_0}{\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}} \tag{1.8}
\]

For particles with small masses, primarily electrons, quantum mechanics must be employed. At low velocities, the relevant equation is the time-dependent Schrödinger equation.

\[
H \Psi = i \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t} \tag{1.9}
\]

The Hamiltonian operator is given as a sum of kinetic and potential energy operators.

\[
H_{\text{Schrödinger}} = T + V \tag{1.10}
\]

Solving the Schrödinger equation gives the wave function as a function of time, and the probability of observing a particle at a position \( r \) and time \( t \) is given as the square of the wave function.

\[
P(r, t) = |\Psi(r, t)|^2 \tag{1.11}
\]

For light particles moving at a significant fraction of the speed of light, the Schrödinger equation is replaced by the Dirac equation.

\[
H \Psi = i \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t} \tag{1.12}
\]

Although it is formally identical to the Schrödinger equation, the Hamiltonian operator is significantly more complicated.

\[
H_{\text{Dirac}} = (\alpha \cdot p + \beta m c^2) + V \tag{1.13}
\]

The \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) are 4 × 4 matrices, and the relativistic wave function consequently has four components. Traditionally, these are labelled the large and small components, each having an \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) spin function (note the difference between the \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) matrices and \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) spin functions). The large component describes the electronic part of the wave function, while the small component describes the positronic (electron antiparticle) part of the wave function, and the \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) matrices couple these components. In the limit of \( c \to \infty \), the Dirac equation reduces to the Schrödinger equation, and the two
of the combined system with respect to a fixed coordinate system to be separated from the internal motion. For a two-particle system, the internal motion is described in terms of a reduced mass moving relative to the centre of mass, and this can be further transformed into solving a one-dimensional differential equation involving the derivative of either the position vector or wave function with respect to time. For two-particle systems with simple interaction potentials \( r(t) \) or \( \Psi(r, t) \) in terms of mathematical functions, for systems with more than two particles, the differential equation must be solved by numerical techniques involving a sequence of small finite time steps. Consider a set of particles described by a position vector \( r(t) \). A small time step \( \Delta t \) later, the positions can be calculated from the velocities, acceleration, etc., corresponding to a Taylor expansion with time as the variable.

Addition of these two equations gives a recipe for predicting the positions \( a \) small time step \( \Delta t \) earlier were (replacing \( \Delta t \) with \( t - \Delta t \))

\[ a \approx \frac{v(t) - v(t - \Delta t)}{\Delta t} \]

The time step \( \Delta t \) is determined by the slowest process occurring in the system, typically being an order of magnitude smaller than the fastest process. For simulating nuclear motions, the fastest process is the motion of hydrogens, being the lightest particles. Hydrogen vibrations occur with a typical frequency of \( 3000 \text{ cm}^{-1} \), corresponding to \( 10^{14} \text{ s}^{-1} \), and therefore necessitating time steps of the order of one femtosecond (\( 10^{-15} \text{ s} \)).

1.5 Solving the Dynamical Equation

The positions \( a \) small time step \( \Delta t \) later were (replacing \( \Delta t \) with \( a(t) \) and \( a(t + \Delta t) \))

\[ a = \frac{1}{m} \int F \text{d}t + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} \partial \alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial \beta} \int \text{d}t \]

The time step \( \Delta t \) is an important control parameter for a simulation. The largest value \( m \) is determined by the forces occurring in the system, typically being an order of magnitude smaller than the fastest process. Molecular vibrations occur with a typical frequency of \( 5000 \text{ cm}^{-1} \), corresponding to \( 10^{13} \text{ s}^{-1} \), and therefore necessitating time steps of the order of one millisecond (\( 10^{-6} \text{ s} \)).

1.6 Separation of Variables

As discussed in the previous section, the problem is solving a differential equation with respect to either the position (classical) or wave function (quantum) for the particles in the system. The standard method of solving differential equations is to find a set of coordinate systems, the dynamical equation can be transformed into solving one-dimensional differential equations. For more than two particles, it is still possible to make the transformation to the centre of mass system. However, it is no longer possible to find a set of coordinates that allows a separation of the degrees of freedom for the internal motion, thus preventing an analytical solution. For many-body (\( N > 2 \)) systems, the dynamical equation must therefore be solved by computational (numerical) methods. Nevertheless, it is often possible to achieve an approximate separation of variables, such as with nuclei moving relative to the centre of mass. In the limit of the nucleus being infinitely heavier than the electron, the centre of mass approximation corresponds to assuming that the nuclei are infinitely heavier than the electrons. However, the Born–Oppenheimer approximation corresponds to assuming that the nuclei are infinitely heavier than the electrons, which is often possible for example particles differing considerably in mass (such as nuclei and electrons).
1.6.1 Separating space and time variables

The time-dependent Schrödinger equation involves differentiation with respect to both time and position, the latter contained in the kinetic energy of the Hamiltonian operator.

\[ H(r, t)\Psi(r, t) = i\frac{\partial \Psi(r, t)}{\partial t} \]

\[ H(r, t) = T(r) + V(r) \]

For (bound) systems where the potential energy operator is time-independent \( V(r) = V(r) \), the Hamiltonian operator becomes time-independent and yields the total energy when acting on the wave function. The energy is a constant, independent of time, but depends on the space variables.

\[ \Psi(r, t) = \Psi(r)e^{-iEt} \]

Inserting this in the time-dependent Schrödinger equation shows that the time and space variables of the wave function can be separated.

\[ H(r)\Psi(r) = E(r)\Psi(r) \]

Assume that a set of variables can be found where the Hamiltonian operator for two particles/variables can be separated into two independent terms, with each only depending on one particle/variable:

\[ H = T + V \]

For a general \( N \)-particle system, the Hamiltonian operator contains kinetic (\( T \)) and potential (\( V \)) energy for all particles.

\[ T = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \frac{1}{2m_i} \sum_{j=1}^{N} \left( \frac{\partial^2 \Psi_i}{\partial x_j^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \Psi_i}{\partial y_j^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \Psi_i}{\partial z_j^2} \right) \]

\[ V = \sum_{i,j} V_{ij} \]

1.6.2 Separating nuclear and electronic variables

Electrons are very light particles and cannot be described by classical mechanics, while nuclei are sufficiently heavy that they display only small quantum effects. The large mass difference indicates that the nuclear velocities are much smaller than the electron velocities, and the electrons therefore adjust very fast to a change in the nuclear geometry.

For a four-electron system, the Hamiltonian operator for four particles/variables can be separated into two independent terms, with each only depending on one particle/variable:

\[ H = h_1 + h_2 \]

Assume furthermore that the Schrödinger equation for one particle/variable can be solved (exactly or approximately):

\[ \Psi = \phi \phi \]

The above approximation corresponds to neglecting the coupling between the nuclear and electronic velocities, i.e. the nuclei are stationary from the electronic point of view. The electronic wave function thus depends parametrically on the nuclear coordinates, since it only depends on the position of the nuclei, not on their momentum. To a good approximation, the electronic wave function thus provides a potential energy surface upon which the nuclei move, and this separation is known as the Born-Oppenheimer approximation.

The Born-Oppenheimer approximation is usually very good. For the hydrogen molecule (\( H_2 \)) the error is of the order of \( 10^{-4} \) au, and for systems with heavier nuclei the approximation becomes better. As we shall see later, it is possible only in a few cases to solve the electronic part of the Schrödinger equation to an accuracy of \( 10^{-6} \) au, i.e. neglect of the nuclear-electron coupling is usually only a minor approximation compared with other errors.

1.6.3 Separating variables in general

Assume that a set of variables can be found where the Hamiltonian operator for two particles/variables can be separated into two independent terms, with each only depending on one particle/variable:

\[ H = h_1 + h_2 \]

Assume furthermore that the Schrödinger equation for one particle/variable can be solved (exactly or approximately):

\[ \Psi = \phi \phi \]

The solution to the two-particle problem can then be composed of solutions of one-variable Schrödinger equations.

\[ \Psi = \prod_{i=1}^{N} \phi_i \]

This can be generalized to the case of \( N \) particles/variables:

\[ H = \sum_{i=1}^{N} h_i \]

\[ \Psi = \prod_{i=1}^{N} \phi_i \]

\[ E = \sum_{i=1}^{N} E_i \]
The properties in eq. (1.27) may be verified by inserting the entities in the Schrödinger equation (1.21).

1.7 Classical Mechanics

1.7.1 The Sun–Earth system

The motion of the Earth around the Sun is an example of a two-body system that can be treated by classical mechanics. The interaction between the two “particles” is the gravitational force.

The dynamical equation is Newton’s second law, which in differential form can be written as in eq. (1.29).

\[ \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \mathbf{V}_r = -\frac{\mathbf{r}}{m} \]  

(1.29)

The first step is to introduce a centre of mass system, and the internal motion becomes motion as a “particle” with a reduced mass given by eq. (1.30).

\[ \mu = \frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2} \]

(1.30)

Since the mass of the Sun is \( 3 \times 10^5 \) times larger than that of the Earth, the reduced mass is essentially identical to the Earth’s mass \( \mu = (0.999997 m_{\text{Earth}}) \). To a very good approximation, the system can therefore be described as the Earth moving around the Sun in an elliptical orbit.

The interaction depends only on the distance \( r \), and the differential equation (eq. (1.29)) can be solved analytically. The bound solutions are elliptical orbits (ellipsoids with the kinetic energy being less than the potential energy). Bound solutions are also called stationary orbits. By perturbation, the true solutions return to the same value with well-defined time intervals.

1.7.2 The solar system

Once we introduce additional planets in the Sun–Earth system, an analytical solution is much more difficult. The Sun’s gravitational field is a central field model, i.e. the interaction between the planets is negligible. For the Earth, for example, the Sun makes up a second most that is about 180 times smaller than the Moon’s. From the Earth’s perspective, the Sun remains stationary, and the Moon orbits it as if it were the only planet in the solar system. The Earth’s orbit around the Sun is determined by the Sun–Earth interaction with all other planets, and the Sun’s constant gravitational pull. A formal refinement can be done by taking the “average” interaction between the planets into account, i.e. a Hartree–Fock type approximation. In this model, the orbit of one planet (e.g. the Earth) is determined by taking the average interaction with all the other planets into account. The average effect corresponds to spreading the mass of the other planets along their orbits. The orbit of each planet is determined as if it were the only planet in the solar system, and the result is that an elliptical orbit with the Sun at one of the foci is the result of the solar system’s central field model, with the planets’ masses divided by the mass of the Sun. The Sun thus consists of only 0.0001%, while the individual planets’ masses are 30 000 times larger than the gravitational force from the Sun. In this model, the Sun’s gravitational field is an effective force with that of Mercury and Venus, i.e. a change of only 0.00001%. For the solar system there is thus very little difference between totally neglecting the planetary interactions and using the average effect. The real system, of course, includes all interactions, where each pair interaction depends on the actual distance between the planets. The resulting planetary motions depend on the energy and all kinds of orbits are allowed. If the zero point for no constraints on the energy and all kinds of orbits are allowed.
cannot be solved analytically, but can be simulated numerically. From a given starting condition, the system is allowed to evolve for many small time steps, and all interactions are considered constant within each time step. By sufficiently small time steps, this yields a very accurate model of the real many-particle dynamics, and will display small wiggles of the planetary motion around the elliptical orbits calculated by either of the two independent-particle models.

Since the perturbations due to the other planets are significantly smaller than the interaction with the Sun, the "wiggles" are small compared with the overall orbital motion, and a description of the solar system as planets orbiting the Sun in elliptical orbits is a very good approximation to the true dynamics of the system.

1.8 Quantum Mechanics

1.8.1 A hydrogen-like atom

A quantum analogue of the Sun–Earth system is a nucleus and one electron, i.e. a hydrogen-like atom. The force holding the nucleus and electron together is the Coulomb interaction.

\[ V(r) = \frac{q_1q_2}{r} \]

The interaction again only depends on the distance, but owing to the small mass of the electron, Newton’s equation must be replaced with the Schrödinger equation. For bound states, the time-dependence can be separated out, as shown in Section 1.6.1, giving the time-independent Schrödinger equation.

\[ H\Psi = E\Psi \] (1.32)

The Hamiltonian operator for a hydrogen-like atom (nuclear charge of Z) can in Cartesian coordinates and atomic units be written as eq. (1.33), with \( M \) being the nuclear and \( m \) the electron mass (\( m = 1 \) in atomic units).

\[ H = \frac{1}{2M} V_x^2 + \frac{1}{2m} V_y^2 + \frac{1}{2m} V_z^2 - \frac{Z}{\sqrt{(x_1-x_2)^2 + (y_1-y_2)^2 + (z_1-z_2)^2}} \] (1.33)

The Laplace operator is given by eq. (1.34).

\[ \nabla^2 = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} \] (1.34)

The two kinetic energy operators are already separated, since each only depends on three coordinates. The potential energy operator, however, involves all six coordinates. The centre of mass system is introduced by the following six coordinates.

\[
\begin{align*}
X &= (Mx_1 + mx_x) / (M + m) \quad x = x_1 - x_2 \\
Y &= (My_1 + my_y) / (M + m) \quad y = y_1 - y_2 \\
Z &= (Mz_1 + mz_z) / (M + m) \quad z = z_1 - z_2
\end{align*}
\] (1.35)

Here the \( X, Y, Z \) coordinates define the centre of mass system, and the \( x, y, z \) coordinates specify the relative position of the two particles. In these coordinates the Hamiltonian operator can be rewritten as eq. (1.36).

\[ H = -\frac{1}{2\mu} \nabla^2_{\text{XYZ}} - \frac{1}{2\mu} \nabla^2_{\text{xy}} - \frac{Z}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}} \] (1.36)

The first term only involves the \( X, Y \) and \( Z \) coordinates, and the \( \nabla^2_{\text{XYZ}} \) operator is obviously separable in terms of \( X, Y \) and \( Z \). Solution of the \( \text{XYZ} \) part gives translation of the whole system in three dimensions relative to the laboratory-fixed coordinate system. The \( \text{xyz} \) coordinates describe the relative motion of the two particles in terms of a pseudo-particle with a reduced mass \( \mu \) relative to the centre of mass.

\[ \mu = \frac{M_{\text{tot}}m_{\text{tot}}}{M_{\text{tot}} + m_{\text{tot}}} = \frac{m_{\text{tot}}}{\left(1 + m_{\text{tot}}/M_{\text{tot}}\right)} \equiv m_{\text{tot}} \] (1.37)
For the hydrogen atom, the nucleus is approximately 1800 times heavier than the electron, giving a reduced mass of \( m_{\text{red}} = 0.9995m_e \). Similar to the Sun–Earth system, the hydrogen atom can therefore to a good approximation be considered as an electron moving around a stationary nucleus, and for heavier elements the approximation becomes better (with a uranium nucleus, for example, the electron–nucleus mass ratio is \( \sim 430000 \)). Setting the reduced mass equal to the electron mass corresponds to making the assumption that the nucleus is infinitely heavy and therefore stationary.

The potential energy again only depends on the distance between the two particles, but in contrast to the Sun–Earth system, the motion occurs in three dimensions, and it is therefore advantageous to transform the Schrödinger equation into a spherical polar set of coordinates.

The orbitals for different quantum numbers are orthogonal and can be chosen to be normalized.

The kinetic energy operator, however, is almost separable in spherical polar coordinates, and the actual method of solving the differential equation can be found in a number of textbooks. The bound solutions (negative total energy) are called orbitals and can be classified in terms of three quantum numbers, \( n, l \), and \( m \), corresponding to the three spatial variables \( r, \theta \), and \( \phi \). The quantum numbers arise from the boundary conditions on the wave function, i.e. it must be periodic in the \( \theta \) and \( \phi \) variables, and must decay to zero as \( r \to \infty \). Since the Schrödinger equation is not completely separable in spherical polar coordinates, there exist the restrictions \( n \geq l \geq |m| \). The \( n \) quantum number describes the size of the orbital, the \( l \) quantum number describes the shape of the orbital, while the \( m \) quantum number describes the orientation of the orbital relative to a fixed coordinate system. The \( l \) quantum number translates into names for the orbitals:

- \( l = 0 \) : s-orbital
- \( l = 1 \) : p-orbital
- \( l = 2 \) : d-orbital, etc.

The orbitals can be written as a product of a radial function, describing the behaviour in terms of the distance \( r \) between the nucleus and electron, and spherical harmonic functions \( Y_{lm} \), representing the angular part in terms of the angles \( \theta \) and \( \phi \). The orbitals can be visualized by plotting three-dimensional objects corresponding to the wave function having a specific value, e.g. \( \Psi^2 = 0.10 \).

### Table 1.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( n )</th>
<th>( l )</th>
<th>( m )</th>
<th>( \Psi_i(r,\theta,\phi) )</th>
<th>Shape and size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \Psi_0(\theta,\phi)e^{-Zr} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \Psi_0(\theta,\phi)(2 - Zr)e^{-Zr} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>\pm 1, 0</td>
<td></td>
<td>( \Psi_1(\theta,\phi)Ze^{-Zr} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \Psi_0(\theta,\phi)(27 - 8Zr + 2Z^2r)e^{-Zr} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>\pm 1, 0</td>
<td></td>
<td>( \Psi_1(\theta,\phi)Z(6 - Zr)e^{-Zr} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The orbitals for different quantum numbers are orthogonal and can be chosen to be normalized.

\[
\langle \Psi_{lm} | \Psi'_{l'm'} \rangle = \delta_{ll'} \delta_{mm'}
\]

The orthogonality of the orbitals in the angular part (\( l \) and \( m \) quantum numbers) follows from the shape of the spherical harmonic functions, as these have \( l \) nodal planes (points where the wave function is zero). The orthogonality in the radial part (\( n \) quantum number) is due to the presence of \((n-l-1)\) radial nodes in the wave function.

In contrast to classical mechanics, where all energies are allowed, wave functions and associated energies are quantized, i.e. only certain values are allowed. The energy only depends on \( n \) for a given nuclear charge \( Z \), and is given by eq. (1.40).

\[
E = -\frac{Z^2}{2n^2}
\]

Unbound solutions have a positive total energy and correspond to scattering of an electron by the nucleus.

### 1.8.2 The helium atom

Like the solar system, it is not possible to find a set of coordinates where the Schrödinger equation can be solved analytically for more than two particles (i.e. for many-electron atoms). Owing to the dominance of the Sun's gravitational field, a central field approximation provides a good description of the actual solar system, but this is not the case for an atomic system. The main differences between the solar system and an atom such as helium are:

1. The interaction between the electrons is only a factor of two smaller than between the nucleus and electrons, compared with a ratio of at least 1000 for the solar system.
2. The electron-electron interaction is repulsive, compared with the attraction between planets.
1.9 Chemistry

The motion of the electrons must be described by quantum mechanics owing to the tiny energy of ~2.886 au, which is a significant improvement relative to the model with small electron mass. Although the effective nuclear charge of 2.00 represents the lowest possible energy for the helium atom, and any further refinement must include the instantaneous correlation between the electrons. By using the electron correlation methods described in Chapter 4, it is possible to reproduce the experimental energy of ~2.904 au.

The simplest atomic model would be to neglect the electron–electron interaction, and only take the nucleus–electron attraction into account. In this model, orbitals are obtained by solving a hydrogen-like system with a nucleus and one electron, yielding hydrogen-like orbitals, 1s, 2s, 2p, 3s, 3p, 3d, etc., with \( Z \)

The total energy of the electrons and the strong interaction between them makes the Hartree–Fock model less accurate than desirable, but it is still a big improvement over an independent orbital model. The Hartree–Fock model typically accounts for 99% of the total energy, but the remaining correlation energy is usually very important for chemical purposes. The correlation between the electrons describes the "wiggles" relative to the Hartree–Fock orbitals due to the instantaneous interaction between the electrons, rather than just the average repulsion. The goal of correlated methods for solving the Schrödinger equation is to calculate the remaining correlation energy.

As an example, consider the helium atom. The equal mass of all the electrons and the strong interaction between them makes the Hartree–Fock orbitals a very good approximation. The correlation energy, which is in error by 38% compared with the experimental value of ~2.904 au, is obtained from the resulting orbitals by solving the Schrödinger equation for the helium atom. This gives the following (unnormalized) wave function, with the orbitals given in Table 1.2. The total energy calculated by this wave function is simply twice the orbital energy. Alternatively, we can use the wave function given by eq. (1.41), but include the electron–electron repulsion between the electrons. By using the electron correlation methods described in Chapter 4, it is possible to reproduce the experimental energy of ~2.904 au.
It should be stressed that nuclei are heavy enough that quantum effects are almost negligible, i.e. they behave to a good approximation as classical particles. Indeed, if nuclei showed significant quantum aspects, the concept of molecular structure (i.e. different configurations and conformations) would not have any meaning, since the nuclei would simply tunnel through barriers and end up in the global minimum. Dimethyl ether, for example, would spontaneously transform into ethanol. Furthermore, it would not be possible to speak of a molecular geometry, since the Heisenberg uncertainty principle would not permit a measure of nuclear positions with an accuracy smaller than the molecular dimension.

Methods aimed at solving the electronic Schrödinger equation are broadly referred to as “electronic structure calculations”. An accurate determination of the electronic wave function is very demanding. Constructing a complete PES for molecules containing more than three or four atoms is virtually impossible. Consider, for example, mapping the PES by calculating the electronic energy for every 0.1 Å over say a 1 Å range (a very coarse mapping). With three atoms, there are three internal coordinates, giving $10^3$ points to be calculated. Four atoms already produce six internal coordinates, giving $10^6$ points, which is possible to calculate, but only with a very determined effort. Larger systems are out of reach. Constructing global PESs for all but the smallest molecules is thus impossible. By restricting the calculations to the “chemically interesting” part of the PES, however, it is possible to obtain useful information. The interesting parts of a PES are usually nuclear arrangements that have low energies. For example, nuclear movements near a minimum on the PES, which corresponds to a stable molecule, are molecular vibrations. Chemical reactions correspond to larger movements, and may in the simplest approximation be described by locating the lowest energy path leading from one minimum on the PES to another.

These considerations lead to the following definition:

Chemistry is knowing the energy as a function of the nuclear coordinates.

The large majority of what are commonly referred to as molecular properties may similarly be defined as:

Properties are knowing how the energy changes upon adding a perturbation.

In the following we will look at some aspects of solving the electronic Schrödinger equation or otherwise construct a PES, how to deal with the movement of nuclei on the PES, and various technical points of commonly used methods. A word of caution here: although it is the nuclei that move, and the electrons follow “instantly” (according to the Born–Oppenheimer approximation), it is common also to speak of “atoms” moving. An isolated atom consists of a nucleus and some electrons, but in a molecule the concept of an atom is not well defined. Analogously to the isolated atom, an atom in a molecule should consist of a nucleus and some electrons. But how does one partition the total electron distribution in a molecule such that a given portion belongs to a given nucleus? Nevertheless, the words nucleus and atom are often used interchangeably.

Much of the following will concentrate on describing individual molecules. Experiments are rarely done on a single molecule; rather they are performed on macroscopic samples with perhaps $10^{20}$ molecules. The link between the properties of a single molecule, or a small collection of molecules, and the macroscopic observable is statistical mechanics. Briefly, macroscopic properties, such as temperature, heat capacity, entropy, etc., are the net effect of a very large number of molecules having a certain distribution of energies. If all the possible energy states can be determined for an individual molecule or a small collection of molecules, statistical mechanics can be used for calculating macroscopic properties.

References

2 Force Field Methods

2.1 Introduction

As mentioned in Chapter 1, one of the major problems is calculating the electronic energy for a given nuclear configuration to give a potential energy surface. In force field (FF) methods, this step is bypassed by writing the electronic energy as a parametric function of the nuclear coordinates, and fitting the parameters to experimental or higher level computational data. The “building blocks” in force field methods are atoms, i.e. electrons are not considered as individual particles. This means that bonding information must be provided explicitly, rather than being the result of solving the electronic Schrödinger equation.

In addition to bypassing the solution of the electronic Schrödinger equation, the quantum aspects of the nuclear motion are also neglected. This means that the dynamics of the atoms is treated by classical mechanics, i.e. Newton’s second law. For time-independent phenomena, the problem reduces to calculating the energy at a given geometry. Often the interest is in finding geometries of stable molecules and/or different conformations, and possibly also interconversion between conformations. The problem is then reduced to finding energy minima (and possibly also some first-order saddle points) on the potential energy surface.

Molecules are described by a “ball and spring” model in force field methods, with atoms having different sizes and “softness” and bonds having different lengths and “stiffness.” Force field methods are also referred to as molecular mechanics (MM) methods. Many different force fields exist, and in this Chapter we will use Allinger’s MM2 and MM3 (Molecular Mechanics versions 2 and 3) to illustrate specific details.

The foundation of force field methods is the observation that molecules tend to be composed of units that are structurally similar in different molecules. All C—H bond lengths, for example, are roughly constant in all molecules, being between 1.06 and 1.10 Å. The C—H stretch vibrations are also similar, between 2900 and 3300 cm

−1, implying that the C—H force constants are also comparable. If the C—H bonds are further divided into groups, for example those attached to single-, double- or triple-bonded carbon, the variation within each of these groups becomes even smaller. The same grouping holds for other feature as well, e.g. all C—O bonds are approximately 1.22 Å long and have vibrational frequencies of approximately 1700 cm

−1, all double-bonded carbons are essentially planar, etc. A plot of the heat of formation for linear alkanes, i.e. CH

3(CH2)nCH3, against the chain length n produces a straight line, showing that each CH2 group contributes essentially the same amount of energy. (For a general discussion of estimating heat of formation from group additivities, see Benson.)

Table 2.1 MM2(91) atom types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>sp3-carbon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>sp2-carbon, alkene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>sp2-carbon, carbonyl, imine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>sp-carbon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>cyclopropane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>radical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>carbocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>sp2-carbon, cyclopropane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>sp2-carbon, aromatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>sp2-carbon, cyclobutane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>sp2-carbon, cyclobutene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>carboxyl, cyclobutene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>carboxyl, cyclopropane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>carboxyl, ketene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>ketonum carbon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>sp2-nitrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>sp2-nitrogen, amide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>sp-nitrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>am or pyridine (–N=–)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>sp2-nitrogen, ammonium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>sp2-nitrogen, pyrrole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>azoxy (–N=O)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>azx, central atom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>nitro (–NO2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>imine, oxime (–N=–)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>sp2-oxygen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>sp2-oxygen, carbonyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>sp2-oxygen, furan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>carboxylate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>epoxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>amine oxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>ketonum oxygen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>hydrogen (except on N or O)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>alcohol (OH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>amine (NH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>carboxyl (COOH)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that special atom types are defined for carbon atoms involved in small rings, such as cyclopropane and cyclobutane. The reason for this will be discussed in Section 2.2.2.

The picture of molecules being composed of structural units (“functional groups”) that behave similarly in different molecules forms the very basis of organic chemistry. Molecular structure drawings, where alphabetic letters represent atoms and lines represent bonds, are used universally. Organic chemists often build ball and stick, or CPK space-filling models of their molecules to examine their shapes. Force field methods are in a sense a generalization of these models, with the added feature that the atoms and bonds are not fixed at one size and length. Furthermore, force field calculations enable predictions of relative energies and barriers for interconversion of different conformations.

The idea of molecules being composed of atoms, which are structurally similar in different molecules, is implemented in force field models as atom types. The atom type depends on the atomic number and the type of chemical bonding it is involved in. The type may be denoted with either a number or a letter code. In MM2, for example, there are 71 different atom types (type 44 is missing). Type 1 is an sp-hybridized carbon, and an sp<sup>2</sup>-hybridized carbon may be type 2, 3 or 50, depending on the neighbour atom(s). Type 2 is used if the bonding is to another sp<sup>2</sup>-carbon (simple double bond), type 3 is used if the carbon is bonded to an oxygen (carbonyl group) and type 50 is used if the carbon is part of an aromatic ring with delocalized bonds. Table 2.1 gives a complete list of the MM2(91) atom types, where (91) indicates the year when the parameter set was released. The atom type numbers roughly reflect the order in which the corresponding functional groups were parameterized.

### 2.2 The Force Field Energy

The force field energy is written as a sum of terms, each describing the energy required for distorting a molecule in a specific fashion.

\[
E_{\text{FF}} = E_{\text{stretch}} + E_{\text{bend}} + E_{\text{tors}} + E_{\text{vdw}} + E_{\text{el}} + E_{\text{cross}}.
\]  

(2.1)

\(E_{\text{stretch}}\) is the energy function for stretching a bond between two atoms, \(E_{\text{bend}}\) represents the energy required for bending an angle, \(E_{\text{tors}}\) is the torsional energy for rotation around a bond, \(E_{\text{vdw}}\) and \(E_{\text{el}}\) describe the non-bonded atom-atom interactions, and finally \(E_{\text{cross}}\) describes coupling between the first three terms.

![Illustration of the fundamental force field energy terms](image)

Given such an energy function of the nuclear coordinates, geometries and relative energies can be calculated by optimization. Stable molecules correspond to minima on the potential energy surface, and they can be located by minimizing \(E_{\text{FF}}\) as a function of the nuclear coordinates. Conformational transitions can be described by locating transition structure on the \(E_{\text{FF}}\) surface. Exactly how such a multi-dimensional function optimization may be carried out is described in Chapter 12.

#### 2.2.1 The stretch energy

\(E_{\text{stretch}}\) is the energy function for stretching a bond between two atom types A and B. In its simplest form, it is written as a Taylor expansion around a “natural”, or “equilibrium”, bond length, \(R_0\). Terminating the expansion at second order gives eq. (2.2).

\[
E_{\text{stretch}}(R_{AB} - R_{0AB}) = E(0) + \frac{dE}{dR}(R_{AB} - R_{0AB})^2 + \frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2E}{dR^2}(R_{AB} - R_{0AB})^3 + \cdots
\]

(2.2)

The derivatives are evaluated at \(R = R_0\) and the \(E(0)\) term is normally set to zero, since this is just the zero point for the energy scale. The second term is zero as the expansion is around the equilibrium value. In its simplest form the stretch energy can thus be written as eq. (2.3).

\[
E_{\text{stretch}}(R_{AB} - R_{0AB}) = k_{\text{AB}}(R_{AB} - R_{0AB})^2
\]

(2.3)

Here \(k_{\text{AB}}\) is the “force constant” for the A–B bond. This is the form of a harmonic oscillator, with the potential being quadratic in the displacement from the minimum.

The harmonic form is the simplest possible, and sufficient for determining most equilibrium geometries. There are certain strained and crowded systems where the results from a harmonic approximation are significantly different from experimental values, and if the force field should be able to reproduce features such as vibrational frequencies, the functional form for \(E_{\text{stretch}}\) must be improved. The straightforward approach is to include more terms in the Taylor expansion.

\[
E_{\text{stretch}}(R_{AB} - R_{0AB}) = k_{\text{AB}}(R_{AB} - R_{0AB})^2 + k_{\text{AB}}(R_{AB} - R_{0AB})^3 + k_{\text{AB}}(R_{AB} - R_{0AB})^4 + \cdots
\]

(2.4)

This of course has a price: more parameters have to be assigned.

Polynomial expansions of the stretch energy do not have the correct limiting behaviour. The cubic anharmonicity constant \(k_3\) is normally negative, and if the Taylor expansion is terminated at third order, the energy will go toward \(-\infty\) for long bond lengths. Minimization of the energy with such an expression can cause the molecule to fly apart if a poor starting geometry is chosen. The quartic constant \(k_4\) is normally positive and the energy will go toward \(+\infty\) for long bond lengths if the Taylor series is terminated at fourth order. The correct limiting behaviour for a bond stretched to infinity is that the energy should converge towards the dissociation energy. A simple function that satisfies this criterion is the Morse potential.

\[
E_{\text{Morse}}(\Delta R) = D(1 - e^{-\alpha \Delta R})^2
\]

(2.5)

Here \(D\) is the dissociation energy and \(\alpha\) is related to the force constant. The Morse function reproduces the actual behaviour quite accurately over a wide range of distances, as seen in Figure 2.2. There are, however, some difficulties with the Morse potential in actual applications. For long bond lengths the restoring force is quite small. Distorted structures, which may either be a poor starting geometry or one that develops during a simulation, will therefore display a slow convergence towards the...
equilibrium bond length. For minimization purposes and simulations at ambient temperatures (e.g. 300K) it is sufficient that the potential is reasonably accurate up to ~40kJ/mol above the minimum (the average kinetic energy is 3.7kJ/mol at 300K). In this energy range there is little difference between a Morse potential and a Taylor expansion, and most force fields therefore employ a simple polynomial for the stretch energy. The number of parameters is often reduced by taking the cubic, quartic, etc., constants as a predetermined fraction of the harmonic force constant. A popular method is to require that the n-th order derivative at $R_0$ matches the corresponding derivative of the Morse potential. For a fourth-order expansion this leads to the following expression.

$$E_{\text{str}}(\Delta R) = k_0 \Delta R^2 \left[ 1 - a(\Delta R^2) + \frac{a^2}{2}(\Delta R^4) \right]$$

(2.6)

The $a$ constant is the same as that appearing in the Morse function, but may be taken as a fitting parameter. An alternative method for introducing anharmonicity is to use the harmonic form in eq. (2.3) but allow the force constant to depend on the bond distance.$^X$

Figure 2.2 compares the performance of various functional forms for the stretch energy in CH$_4$. The “exact” form is taken from electronic structure calculations ([88]-CASSCF/aug-cc-pVTZ). The simple harmonic approximation (P2) is seen to be accurate to about ±0.1 Å from the equilibrium geometry and the quartic approximation (P4) up to ±0.3 Å. The Morse potential reproduces the real curve quite accurately up to an elongation of 0.8 Å, and becomes exact again in the dissociation limit.

For the large majority of systems, including simulations, the only important chemical region is within ~40 kJ/mol of the bottom of the curve. In this region, a fourth-order polynomial is essentially indistinguishable from either a Morse or the exact curve, as shown in Figure 2.3, and even a simple harmonic approximation does a quite good job.

For each bond type, i.e. a bond between two atom types A and B, there are at least two parameters to be determined, $k_{AB}$ and $R_{0AB}$. The higher order expansions, and the Morse potential, have one additional parameter ($a$ or $D$) that needs to be determined.

2.2.2 The bending energy

$E_{\text{bend}}$ is the energy required for bending an angle formed by three atoms A—B—C, where there is a bond between A and B, and between B and C. Similarly to $E_{\text{str}}$, $E_{\text{bend}}$ is usually expanded as a Taylor series around a “natural” bond angle and terminated at second order, giving the harmonic approximation.
While the simple harmonic expansion is adequate for most applications, there may be cases where higher accuracy is required. The next improvement is to include a third-order term, analogous to \( E_{\text{str}} \). This can give a very good description over a large range of angles, as illustrated in Figure 2.4 for \( \text{CH}_4 \). The “exact” form is again taken from electronic structure calculations (MP2/aug-cc-pVTZ). The simple harmonic approximation \((P2)\) is seen to be accurate to about \( \pm 30^\circ \) from the equilibrium geometry and the cubic approximation \((P3)\) up to \( \pm 70^\circ \). Higher order terms are often included in order also to reproduce vibrational frequencies. Analogous to \( E_{\text{str}} \), the higher order force constants are often taken as a fixed fraction of the harmonic constant. The constants beyond third order can rarely be assigned values with high confidence owing to insufficient experimental information. Fixing the higher order constant in terms of the harmonic constant of course reduces the quality of the fit. While a third-order polynomial is capable of reproducing the actual curve very accurately if the cubic constant is fitted independently, the assumption that it is a fixed fraction (independent of the atom type) of the harmonic constant deteriorates the fit, but it still represent an improvement relative to a simple harmonic approximation.

\[
E_{\text{total}}(\theta^{\text{ABC}} - \theta_0^{\text{ABC}}) = k^{\text{ABC}}(\theta^{\text{ABC}} - \theta_0^{\text{ABC}})^2 \tag{2.7}
\]

Figure 2.4 The bending energy for \( \text{CH}_4 \)

In the chemically important region below \(-40 \text{kJ/mol}\) above the bottom of the energy curve, a second-order expansion is normally sufficient. Angles where the central atom is di- or trivalent (ethers, alcohols, sulfides, amines and enamines) present a special problem. In these cases, an angle of \( 180^\circ \) corresponds to an energy maximum, i.e. the derivative of the energy with respect to the angle should be zero and the second derivative should be negative. This may be enforced by suitable boundary conditions on Taylor expansions of at least order three. A third-order polynomial fixes the barrier for linearity in terms of the harmonic force constant and the equilibrium angle \((\Delta E = k(\theta - \theta_0)/6)\). A fourth-order polynomial enables an independent fit of the barrier to linearity, but such constrained polynomial fittings are rarely done. Instead, the bending function is taken to be identical for all atom types, for example a fourth-order polynomial with cubic and quartic constants as a fixed fraction of the harmonic constant.

These features are illustrated for \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \) in Figure 2.5, where the “exact” form is taken from a parametric fit to a large amount of spectroscopic data. The simple harmonic approximation \((P2)\) is seen to be accurate to about \( \pm 20^\circ \) from the equilibrium geometry and the cubic approximation \((P3)\) up to \( \pm 40^\circ \). Enforcing the cubic polynomial to have a zero derivative at \( 180^\circ \) \((P3')\) gives a qualitatively correct behaviour, but reduces the overall fit, although it is still better than a simple harmonic approximation.

Figure 2.5 The bending energy for \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \)

Although such refinements over a simple harmonic potential clearly improve the overall performance, they have little advantage in the chemically important region up to \(-40 \text{kJ/mol}\) above the minimum. As for the stretch energy term, the energy cost for bending is so large that most molecules only deviate a few degrees from their natural bond angles. This again indicates that including only the harmonic term is adequate for most applications.

As noted above, special atom types are often defined for small rings, owing to the very different equilibrium angles for such rings. In cyclopropane, for example, the carbons are formally sp\(^3\)-hybridized, but have equilibrium CCC angles of \( 60^\circ \), in contrast to \( 110^\circ \) in an acyclic system. With a low-order polynomial for the bend energy, the energy cost for such a deformation is large. For cyclobutane, for example, \( E_{\text{total}} \) will dominate the total energy and cause the calculated structure to be planar, in contrast to the puckered geometry found experimentally.
For each combination of three atom types, A, B and C, there are at least two bending parameters to be determined, \( k_{ABC} \) and \( \theta_{0}^{ABC} \).

### 2.2.3 The out-of-plane bending energy

If the central B atom in the angle ABC is sp\(^2\)-hybridized, there is a significant energy penalty associated with making the centre pyramidal, since the four atoms prefer to be located in a plane. If the four atoms are exactly in a plane, the sum of the three angles with B as the central atom should be exactly 360°, however, a quite large pyramidalization may be achieved without seriously distorting any of these three angles. Taking the bond distances to 1.5 Å, and moving the central atom 0.2 Å out of the plane, only reduces the angle sum to 354.8° (i.e. only a 1.7° decrease per angle). The corresponding out-of-plane angle, \( \chi \), is 7.7° for this case. Very large force constants must be used if the ABC, ABD and CBD angle distortions are to reflect the energy cost associated with the pyramidalization. This would have the consequence that the in-plane angle deformations for a planar structure would become unrealistically stiff. Thus a special out-of-plane energy bend term \( E_{oop} \) is usually added, while the in-plane angles (ABC, ABD and CBD) are treated as in the general case above. \( E_{oop} \) may be written as a harmonic term in the angle \( \chi \) (the equilibrium angle for a planar structure is zero) or as a quadratic function in the distance \( d \), as given in eq. (2.8) and shown in Figure 2.6.

\[
E_{oop}(\chi) = k_{B} \chi^{2} \quad \text{or} \quad E_{oop}(d) = k_{B} d^{2} \tag{2.8}
\]

Such energy terms may also be used for increasing the inversion barrier in sp\(^3\)-hybridized atoms (i.e. an extra energy penalty for being planar), and \( E_{oop} \) is also sometimes called \( E_{inv} \). Inversion barriers are in most cases (e.g. in amines, NRR\(_3\)) adequately modelled without an explicit \( E_{inv} \) term, the barrier arising naturally from the increase in bond angles upon inversion. The energy cost for non-planarity of sp\(^2\)-hybridized atoms may also be accounted for by an “improper” torsional energy, as described in Section 2.2.4.

For each sp\(^2\)-hybridized atom there is one additional out-of-plane force constant to be determined, \( k_{B} \).

### 2.2.4 The torsional energy

\( E_{tor} \) describes part of the energy change associated with rotation around a B—C bond in a four-atom sequence A—B—C—D, where A—B, B—C and C—D are bonded. Looking down the B—C bond, the torsional angle is defined as the angle formed by the A—B and C—D bonds as shown in Figure 2.7. The angle \( \omega \) may be taken to be in the range [0°, 360°] or [−180°, 180°].

The torsional energy is fundamentally different from \( E_{str} \) and \( E_{bend} \) in three aspects:

1. A rotational barrier has contributions from both the non-bonded (van der Waals and electrostatic) terms, as well as the torsional energy, and the torsional parameters are therefore intimately coupled to the non-bonded parameters.
2. The torsional energy function must be periodic in the angle \( \omega \) if the bond is rotated 360° the energy should return to the same value.
3. The cost in energy for distorting a molecule by rotation around a bond is often low, i.e. large deviations from the minimum energy structure may occur, and a Taylor expansion in \( \omega \) is therefore not a good idea.

To encompass the periodicity, \( E_{tor} \) is written as a Fourier series.

\[
E_{tor}(\omega) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} V_{n} \cos(n\omega) \tag{2.9}
\]

The \( n = 1 \) term describes a rotation that is periodic by 360°, the \( n = 2 \) term is periodic by 180°, the \( n = 3 \) term is periodic by 120°, and so on. The \( V_{n} \) constants determine the size of the barrier for rotation around the B—C bond. Depending on the situation, some of these \( V_{n} \) constants may be zero. In ethane, for example, the most stable conformation is one where the hydrogens are staggered relative to each other, while the eclipsed conformation represents an energy maximum. As the three hydrogens at each end are identical, it is clear that there are three energetically equivalent staggered, and three equivalent eclipsed, conformations. The rotational energy profile must therefore have three minima and three maxima. In the Fourier series only those terms that have \( n = 3, 6, 9, \ldots \) can therefore have \( V_{n} \) constants different from zero.

For rotation around single bonds in substituted systems, other terms may be necessary. In the butane molecule, for example, there are still three minima, but the two \textit{gauche} (torsional angle ~±60°) and \textit{anti} (torsional angle ~180°) conformations now have different energies. The barriers separating the two \textit{gauche} and the \textit{gauche} and \textit{anti} conformations are also of different height. This may be introduced by adding a term corresponding to \( n = 1 \).

For the ethylene molecule, the rotation around the C—C bond must be periodic by 180°, and thus only \( n = 2, 4, \ldots \) terms can enter. The energy cost for rotation around a double bond is of course much higher than that for rotation around a single bond.
ethane, which would be reflected in a larger value of the $V_1$ constant. For rotation around the $C=\text{C}$ bond in a molecule such as 2-butene, there would again be a large $V_1$ constant, analogous to ethylene, but in addition there are now two different orientations of the two methyl groups relative to each other, cis and trans. The full rotation is periodic with a period of $360^\circ$, with deep energy minima at $0^\circ$ and $180^\circ$, but slightly different energies of these two minima. This energy difference would show up as a $V_1$ constant, i.e. the $V_1$ constant essentially determines the barrier and location of the minima for rotation around the $C=\text{C}$ bond, and the $V_2$ constant determines the energy difference between the cis and trans isomers.

Molecules that are composed of atoms having a maximum valence of four (essentially all organic molecules) are with a few exceptions found to have rotational profiles showing at most three minima. The first three terms in the Fourier series in eq. (2.9) are sufficient for qualitatively reproducing such profiles. Force fields that are aimed at large systems often limit the Fourier series to only one term, depending on the bond type (e.g. single bonds only have $\cos(3\omega)$ and double bonds only $\cos(2\omega)$).

Systems with bulky substituents on sp$^3$-hybridized atoms are often found to have four minima, the anti conformation being split into two minima with torsional angles of approximately $\pm 170^\circ$. Other systems, notably polyfluoroalkanes, also split the gauche minima into two, often called gauche (angle of approximately $\pm 50^\circ$) and ortho (angle of approximately $\pm 90^\circ$) conformations, creating a rotational profile with six minima.7 Rotations around a bond connecting sp$^2$- and sp$^3$-hybridized atoms (such as CH$_3$NO$_2$) also display profiles with six minima.8 These exceptions from the regular three minima rotational profile around single bonds are caused by repulsive and attractive van der Waals interactions, and can still be modelled by having only terms up to $\cos(3\omega)$ in the torsional energy expression. Higher order terms may be included to modify the detailed shape of the profile, and a few force fields employ terms with $n = 4$ and 6. Cases where higher order terms probably are necessary are rotation around bonds to octahedral coordinated metals, such as Ru(pyrindine)$_6$, or a dinuclear complex such as Cl$_4$Mo–MoCl$_4$. Here the rotation is periodic by $90^\circ$ and thus requires a $\cos(4\omega)$ term.

It is customary to shift the zero point of the potential by adding a factor of one to each term. Most rotational profiles resemble either the ethane or ethylene examples above, and a popular expression for the torsional energy is given in eq. (2.10).

$$E_{\text{rot}}(\omega) = \frac{1}{2} V_1 \cos(\omega) + \frac{1}{2} V_2 \cos(2\omega) + \frac{1}{2} V_3 \cos(3\omega) + \frac{1}{2} V_4 \cos(4\omega)$$

The $+ \text{ and} - \text{ signs are chosen such that the one-fold rotational term has a minimum for an angle of $180^\circ$, the two-fold rotational term has minima for angles of $0^\circ$ and $180^\circ$, and the three-fold rotational term has minima for angles of $60^\circ$, $120^\circ$, and $180^\circ$. The factor $\frac{1}{2}$ is included such that the $V_1$ parameters directly give the height of the barrier if only one term is present. A more general form for eq. (2.10) includes a phase factor, i.e. $\cos(n\omega - \tau)$, but for the most common cases of $\tau = 0^\circ$ or $180^\circ$, it is completely equivalent to eq. (2.10). Figure 2.8 illustrates the functional behaviour of the three individual terms in eq. (2.10).

The $V_i$ parameters may also be negative, which corresponds to changing the minima on the rotational energy profile to maxima, and vice versa. Most commonly...
FORCE FIELD METHODS

2.2 THE FORCE FIELD ENERGY

1.00 distribution at a given time. This dipole moment will induce a charge polarization in the neighbour molecule (or another... (or London force). The van... magnitude of the distance is large. A general functional form that fits these conditions is given in eq. (2.11).

$E_{vdw}(\text{LJ}) = 4 \varepsilon \left[ \left( \frac{r}{a} \right)^{12} - 2 \left( \frac{r}{a} \right)^{6} \right]$ (2.11)

Figure 2.9 shows an example with one out of four bond terms (A, B, C, and D) having a significant V parameter, corresponding to the combination of C and D.

The induced dipole–dipole interaction is only the leading term of such induced multipole interactions: there are also contributions from induced dipole–quadrupole, quadrupole–quadrupole, etc., interactions. These vary as $R^{-8}$, $R^{-10}$, etc., and the $R^{-12}$ dependence is only the asymptotic behaviour at long distances. The force associated with the repulsive term is the only interaction between rare gas atoms (and thus the reason why say argon can become a liquid and a solid) and it is the main interaction between non-polar molecules such as alkanes.

$E_{vdw}$ is very positive at small distances, has a minimum that is slightly negative at a distance corresponding to the two atoms just "touching" each other, and approaches zero as the distance becomes large. A general functional form that fits these conditions is given in eq. (2.11).

It is not possible to derive theoretically the functional form of the repulsive interaction, it is only required that it goes to zero as $R$ goes to infinity, and it should approach zero faster than the $R^{-12}$ dependence.

A popular function that obeys these general requirements is the Lennard-Jones (LJ) form:

$E_{LJ}(R) = C_6 \left( \frac{r}{a} \right)^{12} - C_6 \left( \frac{r}{a} \right)^6$ (2.12)

The Lennard-Jones potential can also be written as in eq. (2.13):

$E_{LJ}(R) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i<j} \left( \frac{C_6}{r_{ij}^6} - \frac{C_6}{r_{ij}^{12}} \right)$ (2.13)

Here $C_6$ is the minimum energy, $C_6$ is the depth of the minimum. There are no theoretical arguments for choosing the exponents to be 12, this is purely a computational convenience, and there is evidence that an exponent of 9 or 10 gives better results.

For the van der Waals force $E_{vdw}$ may be interpreted as the non-polar part of the interaction not related to electrostatic energy due to (atomic) charges. This may be for example be the interaction between two methane molecules, or two methyl groups of an improper torsional angle. For each combination of four atom types, A, B, C, and D, there are generally three torsional parameters to be determined, $V_1$, $V_2$, and $V_3$.

In practice there is little difference between describing $E_{vdw}$ as in eq. (2.8) or as an improper torsional angle. In quantum mechanical terms, the latter is due to the overlap of the electron clouds of the two atoms, as the positivelycharged nuclei repel each other. At intermolecular distances, however, there is a slightattraction between two such electron clouds, which can be described using the Lennard-Jones potential (discussed in Chapter 4). Even if the molecule (or part of a molecule) has no permanent dipole moment, the motion of the electrons will create a slightly uneven electronic distribution at a given time. This dipole moment will induce a charge polarization in the neighbour molecule (or another part of the same molecule) creating an attraction, which helps to stabilize the molecule. The induced dipole–dipole interaction is only the leading term of such induced multipole interactions: there are also contributions from induced dipole–quadrupole, quadrupole–quadrupole, etc., interactions. These vary as $R^{-8}$, $R^{-10}$, etc., and the $R^{-12}$ dependence is only the asymptotic behaviour at long distances. The force associated with the repulsive term is the only interaction between rare gas atoms (and thus the reason why say argon can become a liquid and a solid) and it is the main interaction between non-polar molecules such as alkanes.
From electronic structure theory it is known that the repulsion is due to overlap of the electronic wave functions, and furthermore that the electron density falls off approximately exponentially with the distance from the nucleus (the exact wave function for the hydrogen atom is an exponential function). There is therefore some justification for choosing the repulsive part as an exponential function. The general form of the "Exponential – \( R^{-6} \)" \( E_{\text{vdw}} \) function, also known as a "Buckingham" or "Hill" type potential,\(^1\) is given in eq. (2.15).

\[
E_{\text{vdw}}(R) = A e^{-\alpha R} - \frac{C}{R} \tag{2.15}
\]

\( A, B \) and \( C \) are here suitable constants. It is sometimes written in a slightly more convoluted form as shown in eq. (2.16).

\[
E_{\text{vdw}}(R) = \left[ \frac{6}{\alpha - \beta} \ e^{\alpha (R - R_0)} - \frac{\alpha}{\alpha - \beta} \ \frac{R_0}{R}^\beta \right] \tag{2.16}
\]

Here \( R_0 \) and \( \alpha \) have been defined in eq. (2.13), and \( \alpha \) is a free parameter. Choosing an \( \alpha \) value of 12 gives a long-range behaviour identical to the Lennard-Jones potential,\(^1\) while a value of 13.772 reproduces the Lennard-Jones force constant at the equilibrium distance. The \( \alpha \) parameter may also be taken as a fitting constant. The Buckingham potential has a problem for short interatomic distances where it "turns over". As \( R \) goes toward zero, the exponential becomes a constant while the \( R^{-6} \) term goes toward \(-\infty\). Minimizing the energy of a structure that accidentally has a very short distance between two atoms will thus result in nuclear fusion! Special precautions therefore have to be taken for avoiding this when using Buckingham-type potentials.

A third functional form, which has an exponential dependence and the correct general shape, is the Morse potential, eq. (2.5). It does not have the \( R^{-6} \) dependence at long range, but as mentioned above, in reality there are also \( R^{-8}, R^{-10} \), etc., terms. The \( D \) and \( \alpha \) parameters of a Morse function describing \( E_{\text{vdw}} \) will of course be much smaller than for \( E_{\text{str}} \), and \( R_0 \) will be longer.

For small systems, where accurate interaction energy profiles are available, it has been shown that the Morse function actually gives a slightly better description than a Buckingham potential, which again performs significantly better than a Lennard-Jones 12-6 potential.\(^1\) This is illustrated for the \( \text{H}_2 - \text{He} \) interaction in Figure 2.10, where the Buckingham and Morse parameters have been derived from the minimum energy and distance (\( \epsilon \) and \( R_0 \)) and by matching the force constant at the minimum.

The main difference between the three functions is in the repulsive part at short distances, the Lennard-Jones potential is much too hard, and the Buckingham also tends to overestimate the repulsion. Furthermore, it has the problem of "inverting" at short distances. For chemical purposes, however, these "problems" are irrelevant, since energies in excess of 400 kJ/mol are sufficient to break most bonds and will never be encountered in actual calculations. The behaviour in the attractive part of the potential, which is essential for intermolecular interactions, is very similar for the three functions, as shown in Figure 2.11.

Part of the better description for the Morse and Buckingham potentials is due to the fact that they have three parameters, while the Lennard-Jones only employs two. Since the equilibrium distance and the well depth fix two constants, there is no
2.2 THE FORCE FIELD ENERGY

The electron density around the hydrogen will also depend significantly on the nature of the X atom. For example, electronegative atoms such as oxygen or nitrogen will lead to smaller effective van der Waals radii for such hydrogen atoms and thus make the interaction energy smaller than for non-electronegative atoms. In the case of the hydrogen bond, the distance reduction factor is used not only for the bond between X and H, but also for the bond between H and another hydrogen, as shown in Figure 2.12.

The other case where the spherical approximation may be less than optimal is for atoms having lone pairs, such as oxygen and nitrogen. The lone pair electrons are more spread out and therefore the distance between two atoms will be greater than the sum of their van der Waals radii.

The van der Waals distance, \( R_{vdw} \), and softness parameters, \( e_0 \), depend on both atom types A and B. These parameters are in all force fields written in terms of parameters for the individual atom types being combined. A summary of the atomic constants used in the Lennard-Jones potential is given in Table 2.1. As usual, the softness parameter \( e_0 \) is used to describe the degree of localization of the lone pair electrons on the atom type.

The van der Waals minimum distance is used as the sum of two van der Waals radii, and the interaction parameter as the geometrical mean of the atomic "softness" constants.

In some force fields, especially those using the geometric mean of atomic radii implicitly via the \( K_1 \) and \( K_2 \) parameters, the van der Waals distance \( R_{vdw} \) and softness parameters \( e_0 \) depend on both atom types A and B. These parameters are in all force fields written in terms of parameters for the individual atom types being combined. A summary of the atomic constants used in the Lennard-Jones potential is given in Table 2.1. As usual, the softness parameter \( e_0 \) is used to describe the degree of localization of the lone pair electrons on the atom type.
heteroatom (see Section 2.2.6). Additional stabilization may be modelled by assigning special deep and short van der Waals interactions (via large $\varepsilon$ and small $\sigma_0$ parameters). This does not mean that the van der Waals radius for a hydrogen bonded to an oxygen is especially short, since this would affect all van der Waals interactions involving this atom type. Only those pairs of interactions that are capable of forming hydrogen bonds are identified (by their atom types) and the normal $E_{vdw}$ parameters are replaced by special “hydrogen bonding” parameters. The functional form of $E_{vdw}$ may also be different. One commonly used function is a modified Lennard-Jones potential of the form shown in eq. (2.19).

$$E_{stread}(R) = \left( \frac{R_0}{R} \right)^{12} - 6 \left( \frac{R_0}{R} \right)^{10}$$

In some cases $E_{stread}$ also includes a directional term such as $(1 - \cos \theta_{AB})^2$ or $(\cos \theta_{AB})^2$ multiplied with the distance-dependent part in eq. (2.19). The current trend seems to be that force fields are moving away from such specialized parameters and/or functional forms, and instead are accounting for hydrogen bonding purely by electrostatic interactions.

### 2.2.6 The electrostatic energy: charges and dipoles

The other part of the non-bonded interaction is due to internal (re)distribution of the electrons, creating positive and negative parts of the molecule. A carbonyl group, for example, has a negatively charged oxygen and a positively charged carbon. At the lowest approximation, this can be modelled by assigning (partial) charges to each atom. Alternatively, the bond may be assigned a bond dipole moment. These two descriptions give similar (but not identical) results. Only in the long distance limit of interaction between such molecules do the two descriptions give identical results.

The interaction between point charges is given by the Coulomb potential, with $\varepsilon$ being a dielectric constant.

$$E_{el}(R_{AB}) = \frac{Q_A Q_B}{\varepsilon R_{AB}}$$

The atomic charges can be assigned by empirical rules, but are more commonly assigned by fitting to the electrostatic potential calculated by electronic structure methods, as discussed in the next section. Since hydrogen bonding is to a large extent due to attraction between the electron-deficient hydrogen and an electron-rich atom such as oxygen or nitrogen, a proper choice of partial charges may adequately model this interaction.

The MM2 and MM3 force fields use a bond dipole description for $E_{el}$. The interaction between two dipoles is given by eq. (2.21).

$$E_{el}(R_{AB}) = \frac{\mu_a \mu_b}{\varepsilon(R_{AB})} (\cos \chi - 3 \cos \alpha_a \cos \alpha_b)$$

The angles $\chi$, $\alpha_a$, and $\alpha_b$ are defined as shown in Figure 2.13.

When properly parameterized, there is little difference in the performance of the two ways of representing $E_{el}$. There are exceptions where two strong bond dipoles are immediate neighbours (for example $\alpha$-halogen ketones). The dipole model will here lead to a stabilizing electrostatic interaction for a transoid configuration (torsional angle of 180°), while the atomic charge model will be purely repulsive for all torsional angles (since all 1,3-interactions are neglected). In either case, however, a proper rotational profile may be obtained by suitable choices of the constants in $E_{el}$. The atomic charge model is easier to parameterize by fitting to an electronic wave function, and is preferred by almost all force fields.

The “effective” dielectric constant $\varepsilon$ can be included to model the effect of surrounding molecules (solvent) and the fact that interactions between distant sites may be “through” part of the same molecule, i.e. a polarization effect. A value of 1 for $\varepsilon$ corresponds to a vacuum, while a large $\varepsilon$ reduces the importance of long-range charge–charge interactions. Typically, a value between 1 and 4 is used, although there is little theoretical justification for any specific value. In some applications the dielectric constant is made distance dependent (e.g. $\varepsilon = \varepsilon(R_{AB})$, changing the Coulomb interaction to $Q_A Q_B / \varepsilon(R_{AB})$) to model the “screening” by solvent molecules. There is little theoretical justification for this, but it increases the efficiency of the calculation as a square root operation is avoided (discussed in Section 2.2.5), and it seems to provide reasonable results.

How far apart (in terms of number of bonds between them) should two atoms be before a non-bonded energy term contributes to $E_{el}$? It is clear that two atoms directly bonded should not have an $E_{vdw}$ or $E_{el}$ term – their interaction is described by $E_{el}$. It is also clear that the interaction between two hydrogens at each end of say CH$_3$(CH$_2$)$_a$CH$_3$ is identical to the interaction between two hydrogens belonging to two different molecules, and they therefore should have an $E_{vdw}$ and an $E_{el}$ term. But where should the dividing line be? Most force fields include $E_{vdw}$ and $E_{el}$ for atom pairs that are separated by three bonds or more, although 1,4-interactions are in many cases scaled down by a factor between 1 and 2. This means that the rotational profile for an A–B–C–D sequence is determined both by $E_{el}$ and $E_{vdw}$ and $E_{el}$ terms for the A–D pair. In a sense, $E_{el}$ may be considered as a correction necessary for obtaining the correct rotational profile once the non-bonded contribution has been accounted for.

---

**Figure 2.13** Definition of variables for a dipole–dipole interaction
The electrostatic energy: multipoles and polarizabilities

The fitting of atomic charges to electrostatic potentials focuses on reproducing the molecular electrostatic potential \( \psi_{\text{esp}} \) calculated by an electronic structure method. The electrostatic potential is given by the nuclear charges and the electronic wave function as shown in eq. (2.22).

\[
\psi_{\text{esp}}(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{a} Z_a \Psi(\mathbf{r})
\]

(2.22)

The fitting is done by minimizing an error function of the form shown in eq. (2.23), under the constraint that the sum of the partial charges equals the total charge of the molecule, \( Q_{\text{tot}} \).

\[
\text{Err}(Q) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i} \left[ \psi_{\text{esp}}(\mathbf{r}_i) - \sum_{a} Q_{ai} \right]^2
\]

(2.23)

The set of linear equations arising from minimizing the error function are often poorly conditioned, i.e., the calculated partial charges are sensitive to small details in the fitting data. The physical reason for this is that the electrostatic potential is primarily determined by the molecular electronic charge distribution, and the potential is little influenced by the molecular nuclear charges.

The non-bonded terms, together with the torsional energy, determine the internal (conformational) degrees of freedom, and the torsional parameters are usually obtained as a residual correction to reproduce rotational barriers and energetic preference after the assignment of the non-bonded parameters. The electrostatic energy in unimportant for medium to large molecules, and is therefore often neglected.

A rigorous fitting scheme has been used in for example the AMBER force field. Other constraints are also often imposed, such as constraining the charges on the three hydrogens in a methyl group or an amino acid to be equal. The problem can be made even more challenging by adding a hypernetted chain (HNC) closure to account for short-range interactions.

The non-bonded terms are modeled by pair-interactions, but if the parameters are obtained by fitting to experimental data, they will include the average part of many-body effects. For the electrostatic energy, the three-body effects must be considered as well. The dipole moments of the charges may differ from zero. The restricted electrostatic potential (RESP) fitting scheme has been used for example the AMBER force field. Other constraints are also often imposed, such as constraining the charges on the three hydrogens in a methyl group or an amino acid to be equal. The problem can be made even more challenging by adding a hypernetted chain (HNC) closure to account for short-range interactions.

The non-bonded terms are modeled by pair-interactions, but if the parameters are obtained by fitting to experimental data, they will include the average part of many-body effects. For the electrostatic energy, the three-body effects must be considered as well. The dipole moments of the charges may differ from zero. The restricted electrostatic potential (RESP) fitting scheme has been used for example the AMBER force field. Other constraints are also often imposed, such as constraining the charges on the three hydrogens in a methyl group or an amino acid to be equal. The problem can be made even more challenging by adding a hypernetted chain (HNC) closure to account for short-range interactions.

The non-bonded terms are modeled by pair-interactions, but if the parameters are obtained by fitting to experimental data, they will include the average part of many-body effects. For the electrostatic energy, the three-body effects must be considered as well. The dipole moments of the charges may differ from zero. The restricted electrostatic potential (RESP) fitting scheme has been used for example the AMBER force field. Other constraints are also often imposed, such as constraining the charges on the three hydrogens in a methyl group or an amino acid to be equal. The problem can be made even more challenging by adding a hypernetted chain (HNC) closure to account for short-range interactions.
fields, but only a few experimental force fields are at present capable of including higher order electric moment and/or atomic polarizabilities.

The representation of the electrostatic potential for a fixed geometry can be systematically improved by including non-atom-centred charges or by including higher order moments. The Distributed Multipole Analysis (DMA) developed by A. Stone provides an exact method for expanding the electrostatic potential in terms of multipole moments distributed at a number of positions within the molecule, and these moments can be derived directly from the wave function without a fitting procedure (see Section 9.2).23 By restricting the positions to only atoms and bond midpoints, an accurate representation of the electrostatic potential can be obtained by including up to quadrupole moments at each site. The DMA-derived multipoles are sensitive to the reference data (i.e. wave function quality and basis set), and a better stability can be obtained by fitting a set of multipoles to the electrostatic potential on a molecular surface;24 by fitting multipoles to the DMA multipoles,25 or by fitting atomic charges to match the atomic multipole moments.23 Such fitted multipole methods typically reduce the required moments by one or two, i.e. fitted charges and dipoles can reproduce DMA results including up to quadrupoles or octopoles. Unfortunately, the addition of non-nuclear-centred charges or multipoles significantly increases the computational time for force field calculations as they add to the non-bonded terms, the number of which grows as $N^2$. The coupling of the electrostatic energy with the geometry can be modelled by the fluctuating charge model, where the charges are allowed to adjust to changes in the geometry based on electronegativity equalization.25 Consider the following expansion of the energy as a function of the number of electrons $N$.

$$ E = E_0 + \frac{\partial E}{\partial N} \Delta N + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial N^2} (\Delta N)^2 + \cdots \quad (2.24) $$

The first derivative is the electronegativity $\chi$, while the second derivative is the hardness $\eta$. Although these have well-defined finite-value approximations in terms of ionization potentials and electron affinities (Section 15.2), they are usually treated as empirical parameters within a fixed force field environment. For an atom in a molecule, the change in the number of electrons is equal to minus the change in the atomic charge ($\Delta N = \Delta Q$). Taking the expansion point as the one with no atomic charges gives eq. (2.25).

$$ E = \chi Q + \frac{1}{2} \eta Q^2 + \cdots \quad (2.25) $$

Terminating the expansion at second order, adding a term corresponding to the interaction of the charges with an external potential $\phi$, and summing over all sites gives an expression for the electrostatic energy.

$$ E_d = \sum_i \phi_i Q_i + \sum_i \chi_i Q_i + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{ij} \eta_{ij} Q_i Q_j \quad (2.26) $$

Switching to a vector-matrix notation and requiring that the energy is stationary with and without an external potential gives eq. (2.27).

$$ \frac{\partial E_d}{\partial Q} = \phi + \chi + \eta Q = 0 $$

$$ \frac{\partial E_d}{\partial Q} = \phi + \chi + \eta Q^2 = 0 \quad (2.27) $$

Subtraction of these two equations leads to a recipe for the charge transfer due to the external potential.

$$ \Delta Q = -\frac{1}{\eta} \phi \quad (2.28) $$

Since the potential depends on the charges at all sites, this must be solved iteratively.

$$ \phi(r) = \sum_i \frac{Q_i}{|r - R_i|} \quad (2.29) $$

Once the iterations have converged, the electrostatic energy is given by the simple Coulomb form in eq. (2.20). The fluctuating charge model is a simple way of introducing a coupling between the electrostatic energy and geometry, but it should only be considered as a first approximation, as it is unable to account for example for the charge polarization of a planar molecule where the external field is perpendicular to the molecule plane. An explicit incorporation of polarization can be done by including an atomic polarization tensor, and this also implicitly accounts for some of the geometry dependence of the atomic charges. The polarization contribution to the electrostatic interaction is at the lowest order given by a dipolar term ($\mu_{oi}$) arising from the electric field ($F = \delta \phi / \delta r$) created by the electric moments at other sites multiplied by the polarizability tensor ($\alpha$).26

$$ \mu_{oi} = \alpha F_{oi} = \mu_{oi} F + \frac{1}{2} \partial^2 F \quad (2.30) $$

Note that since the (atomic) hardness is inversely related to the average polarizability, the charge transfer in eq. (2.28) is essentially the average polarizability times the potential. As each of the atoms contributes to the electric field at a given position (eq. (2.29) with additional contributions from dipole moments), the set of atomic dipoles must be solved self-consistently by iterative methods. For molecular dynamics simulations, the change in the induced dipoles or charges with geometry can be treated by an extended Lagrange method (Section 14.2.5), where fictive masses are assigned to the dipoles or charges, and progressed along with the other variables in a simulation.25 When adding multipole and/or polarizability terms, a decision has to be made on which interactions to include and which to neglect, and either the multipole order or the distance dependence of the interaction can be used as a guiding criterion. The distance dependence on the interactions between multipoles is given in Table 2.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$Q$</th>
<th>$\mu$</th>
<th>$\Theta$</th>
<th>$\Xi$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$Q_0$</td>
<td>$R_1^2$</td>
<td>$R_1^2$</td>
<td>$R_1^2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mu$</td>
<td>$R_2^3$</td>
<td>$R_3^2$</td>
<td>$R_2^4$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Theta$</td>
<td>$R_2^3$</td>
<td>$R_3^4$</td>
<td>$R_2^4$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Xi$</td>
<td>$R_1^3$</td>
<td>$R_3^4$</td>
<td>$R_2^4$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.2.8 Cross terms

The polarizability in eq. (2.30) corresponds to an electric field inducing a dipole moment, but higher order polarizabilities giving induced quadrupole and octopole moments are also possible. Other examples of such cross terms are given in eq. (2.32).

\[ E_{\text{cross}} = \sum_{ij} E_{ij} + \sum_{ijkl} E_{ijkl} + \sum_{ijklm} E_{ijklm} + \cdots \]

The components in eq. (2.32) are usually written as products of first-order Taylor expansions in the individual coordinates. The most important of these is the stretch/bend term, which is written as in eq. (2.33).

\[ E_{\text{str/bend}} = k_{\text{str/bend}} \sum_{ij} (R_i - R_0)^2 \]

It should be noted that the transfer of polarization data from gas-phase calculations to a condensed phase may lead to errors. The close spatial arrangement of the molecules in a condensed phase will reduce the long-range dipole-dipole interactions, but the coupling between molecules, however, can lead to an enhancement of the polarization relative to the gas-phase result.

The constants involved in these cross terms are usually not taken to depend on all the atom types involved. However, they may be taken into account by including a term that depends on both bond length and angle. The dipole–quadrupole and quadrupole–quadrupole interactions should not be included. Alternatively, if the distance dependence is taken as the deciding factor, then quadrupoles are required for including all interactions of order \( R^{-3} \) or lower, but the dipole–quadrupole and quadrupole–quadrupole interactions should not be included.

Incorporation of electric multipole moments, fluctuating charges and atomic polarizabilities significantly increases the number of fitting parameters for each atom type or functional unit, and only be "deconvoluted" in order to extract suitable multipole and polarization parameters for use in force fields.
There are two main approaches for dealing with conjugated systems. One is to identify certain bonding combinations and use special parameters for these cases, analogous to the treatment of hydrogen bonds in $R_{hb}$. The other approach, which is somewhat more general, is to perform a simple electronic structure calculation to determine the degree of delocalization within the system. This approach is used in the MM2 and MM3 force fields, often denoted MMP2 and MMP3. The approach used in the MM2 and MM3 force fields, often denoted MMP2 and MMP3, is only slightly more advanced than a simple Hückel calculation and is carried out after the first geometry optimization, e.g., on the $\sigma$ bonds. These calculations are parameterized based on the number of electrons in the MOC and $\beta$ being a resonance parameter.

The connections used in MMP2 are given in eq. (2.35), with $n_i$ being the number of electrons in the $i$th MO and $b_{BC}$ being a resonance parameter.

$$\Delta \rho_{ab} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} n_i - 4 \rho_{ab} \left( \rho_{ab} - \rho_{bc} \right)$$

The natural bond length varies between 1.503 Å and 1.337 Å for bond orders between 0 and 1 – these are the values for pure single and double bonds between two $sp^2$ carbons. Similarly, the force constant varies between the values used for isolated single and double bonds. This approach allows a general treatment of all conjugated systems, but requires the addition of a second level of iterations in a geometry optimization. At the initial geometry, a PPP calculation is performed, the $\sigma$-bond orders are calculated and suitable bond parameters ($R_{0}AB$, $k_{AB}$ and $V_{2ABCD}$) are assigned. These parameters are then used for optimizing the geometry. The optimized geometry will usually differ from the initial geometry, thus the parameters used for optimizing the geometry are modified to obtain a more realistic behaviour. The optimization process is then repeated, and a new set of parameters derived. The structure is re-optimized, and a new PPP calculation is carried out.
normal force field energy function based on average bond dissociation energies for each bond type, the energy scale becomes absolute, and can be directly compared with other methods. The bond dissociation energy for the C—H bond in CH₄ is 410 kJ/mol, while the value for the C—H bond in CH₃CHO is 356 kJ/mol, which is slightly larger than the value for CH₄. The bond dissociation energy for the C—H bond in CH₂CO is 367 kJ/mol, which is slightly larger than the value for CH₃CHO.

2.2.10 Comparing energies of structurally different molecules

The force field energy function has a zero point defined implicitly by the zero point for the actual molecule. This is at the energy curve for the actual molecule. The zero point for the actual molecule is often called the zero point of the energy scale. The force field energy function is defined as follows:

\[ E_{FF} = E_{0} + E_{steric} + E_{strain} + \text{heat of formation parameters} \]

2.3 Force Field Parameterization

Having settled on the functional description and a suitable number of cross terms, the problem of assigning numerical values to the parameters arises. Not all of these can be simulated with atomic reference states, for some atoms there are not sufficient data available.

\[ \Delta H_f = \text{heat of formation} \]

Deriving such heat of formation parameters requires a large body of experimental data. Only a few force fields, notably M3G and MM3, attempt to parameterize heats of formation. A strain energy may be calculated as illustrated in Figure 2.16.

\[ \Delta H_f = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \Delta H_{i} \]

2.3.1 Force Field Parameterization

These heat of formation parameters may be considered as shifting the zero point of the energy scale, and can be directly compared with other methods. The heat of formation parameters are derived based on fitting to a large variety of compounds. Specific sets of parameters are obtained for each type of molecule, and these sets are used to calculate heats of formation for new molecules.

\[ M = E_{0} + E_{steric} + E_{strain} + \text{heat of formation parameters} \]

For commonly encountered conjugated systems such as butadiene and benzene, the ad hoc assignment of new parameters is usually preferred as it is simpler than the computationally more demanding PPP method.
stable bonds with each other, hydrogens and halogens can only have one bond, etc. For the sake of argument, however, assume that the effective number of atom types capable of forming bonds between each other is 30.

- Each of the 71 atom types has two van der Waals parameters, $R_0$ and $\varepsilon$, giving 142 parameters.
- There are approximately $\frac{1}{2} \times 30 \times 30 = 450$ possible different $E_{\text{str}}$ terms, each requiring at least two parameters, $k_{AB}$ and $R_{0AB}$, for a total of at least 900 parameters.
- There are approximately $\frac{1}{2} \times 30 \times 30 \times 30 = 13500$ possible different $E_{\text{bend}}$ terms, each requiring at least two parameters, $k_{ABC}$ and $q_{0ABC}$, for a total of at least 27000 parameters.
- There are approximately $\frac{1}{2} \times 30 \times 30 \times 30 \times 30 = 415000$ possible different $E_{\text{tors}}$ terms, each requiring at least three parameters, $V_1_{ABCD}$, $V_2_{ABCD}$ and $V_3_{ABCD}$, for a total of at least 1215000 parameters.
- Cross terms may add another million possible parameters.

To achieve just a rudimentary assignment of the value of one parameter, at least 3–4 independent data should be available. To parameterize MM2 for all molecules described by the 71 atom types would thus require of the order of $10^7$ independent experimental data, not counting cross terms, which clearly is impossible. Furthermore, the parameters that are the most numerous, the torsional constants, are also the ones that are the hardest to obtain experimental data for. Experimental techniques normally give only the energy of the molecule relative to the ground state, and this must often be obtained by appropriate extrapolation. While the non-bonded terms are relatively unimportant for the "local" structure, they are the only contributors to intermolecular interactions, and the major factor in determining the "global" structure, especially the bonded parameters (stretch, bend, and torsional).

The above considerations illustrate the inherent contradiction in designing highly accurate force fields. To get a high accuracy for a wide variety of molecules, and a range of properties, many functional forms are required for the potential energy expression. For each additional parameter introduced into the potential energy form, the potential energy will be modified by adding an extra parameter, which is a potential energy surface. From a force field point of view, the resulting function is essentially an extrapolation of one set of properties to another. It is an extrapolation in the sense that the parameters describing several different properties may be based on the results of experiments on different molecules. The fundamental assumption of force fields is that structural units are transferable between different molecules. Thus, a balance must be made between the work required for measuring the properties of interest for a given molecule and the amount of work required for deriving the parameters. This is often a compromise, as the parameters may be larger than the work required for measuring the properties of interest for a given molecule.

The fundamental assumption of force fields is that structural units are transferable between different molecules. Thus, a balance must be made between the work required for measuring the properties of interest for a given molecule and the amount of work required for deriving the parameters. This is often a compromise, as the parameters may be larger than the work required for measuring the properties of interest for a given molecule.
theoretical estimated possible (based on the 30 effective atom types above) is shown in Table 2.3. As seen from Table 2.3, there are a large number of possible compounds for which there are no parameters, and on which it is then impossible to perform force field calculations (a good listing of available force field parameters is Osawa and Lipkowitz 40).

Actually, the situation is not as bad as it would appear from Table 2.3. Although only about 0.2% of the possible combinations have no torsional parameters at all, the situation may be further complicated by the fact that different experiments may give different answers for the bond distance, even in the case of the same molecule. The question of assigning weights for each reference data has not been resolved.

There are two possible routes. The first is to estimate the missing parameters by comparison with force field parameters for similar systems. If, for example, there are missing torsional parameters for a specific bond, the property of the bond in question should be evaluated by electronic structure calculations. This allows one to determine how sensitive the bond is to the exact value of the guessed parameters. If the guessed parameters can be varied by ±50% without seriously affecting the final results, the bond is insensitive to the guessed parameters, and can be trusted to the usual degree of the force field. If, on the other hand, the final results very sensitively depend on the guessed parameters, one should consider either the second route described below, or abandoning the force field calculations altogether.

The second route to missing parameters is to use external information, experimental data or electronic structure calculations. The interpretation of force field parameters is very similar to that used for electronic structure calculations, and the results can be compared with the reference data. The maximum in the electronic distribution may not give exactly identical to the nuclear position, and these two techniques will therefore give slightly different bond lengths. The fitting process can begin. It may be formulated in terms of a cost function: 

\[ \text{ErrF} = \sum_i \text{weight}_i \cdot (\text{reference value} - \text{calculated value})^2 \]

The problem is to find the minimum of ErrF with the parameters as variables. From an initial set of guess parameters, force field calculations are performed on the whole set of reference molecules, and the results are compared with the reference data. The derivative of force field parameters is calculated for each reference molecule with respect to the parameters. Such information may be used in connection with optimization procedure as described in Chapter 12.

The parameterization process may be done sequentially or in a combined fashion. In the sequential method, a certain class of compounds, such as hydrocarbons, is parameterized first. These parameters are then used as a guide for the parameterization of other classes of compounds, such as heterocycles and proteins. In the combined method, all the classes of compounds are parameterized simultaneously, and one can be reasonably certain that a "good" minimum has been found (although it may not be the global minimum).
The disadvantage is that the final set of parameters necessarily provides a poorer fit (as defined from the value of the ErrF) than if all the parameters are fitted simultaneously. The combined approach is to fit the energy parameters to some extent in the functional form used for the energy terms, and not only in the context of the non-redundant set of coordinates.

It is also clear that errors in the force field due to inadequacies in the functional form used for the energy terms can come about by the parameters being very different at different energy levels. The reason is that parameters are not independent of each other between different energy levels, and cannot be transferred to another force field. The combined approach tries to fit all the constants in a single parameterization step. Considering that the number of force field parameters may be many thousands, it is clear that the ErrF function will have many local minima, and it is difficult to employ a sequential technique, although the number of compound types parameterized in each step varies.

There is one additional point to be mentioned in the parameterization process. This is the question of redundant variables, as can be exemplified by considering acetaldehyde. In the energy term expression there will be four angle terms describing the geometry around the carbonyl carbon, an HCC, an HCO, a CCO, and an out-of-plane bend. Assuming the latter to be zero for the moment, it is clear that the other three angles are not independent. If the \( q_{HCO} \) and \( q_{CCO} \) angle are given, the \( q_{HCC} \) angle must be \( 360° - q_{HCO} - q_{CCO} \). Nevertheless, there will be three natural angle parameters, and three force constants associated with these angles. For the whole molecule there are six stretch terms, nine bending terms and six out-of-plane terms. This means that the force field energy expression has 22 degrees of freedom, in contrast to the 15 (3Natom - 6) independent coordinates necessary to completely specify the system. The force field parameters are therefore not independent. The major determining factor to be the non-redundant set of energy and a third point, reveal that it is due to the electronic interactions.

The implicit assumption in force field parameterization is that, given sufficient amounts of data, this redundancy will cancel out. In the above case, additional data for other aldehydes and ketones may be used (at least partly) for removing this ambiguity in assigning angle bend parameters, but in general there are more force field parameters than required for describing the system. This clearly illustrates that force field parameters are just that, parameters. They do not necessarily illustrate that force field parameters are just that, parameters. They do not necessarily illustrate that force field parameters are just that, parameters.
One way of reducing the number of parameters is to reduce the dependence on atom types. Torsional parameters, for example, can be taken to depend only on the types of the two central atoms. All C—C torsional parameters can thus be replaced with two C—C constants, i.e., $V_{ABC} \rightarrow V_{BC}$. Similarly, the triatomic bending parameters may be reduced to atomic constants by assuming that the bending parameters only depend on the central atom type ($k_{ABC} \rightarrow k_B$, $q_{0ABC} \rightarrow q_{0B}$). Generic constants are often taken from such reduced parameter sets. In the case of missing torsional parameters, they may also simply be omitted, i.e., setting the constants to zero.

The ability to perform a calculation is no guarantee that the results can be trusted! The quality of force field parameters is essential for judging how much faith can be put in the results. If the molecule at hand only uses parameters that are based on many good quality experimental results, the results may be quite reliable. However, if the low quality parameters directly influence the property of interest, the results may be misleading.

### 2.3.2 Force fields for metal coordination compounds

Coordination chemistry is an area that is especially plagued with the problems of assigning suitable functional forms for the individual energy terms and deriving good parameters. The bonding around metals is much more varied than for organic molecules, where there are just two, three or four bonds. Furthermore, for a given number of ligands, more than one geometrical structure may be present. For example, the coordination may be described entirely by non-bonded interactions (van der Waals and electrostatic).

One possible, although not very elegant, solution is to assign a different C—C bonding term for each metal in a specific oxo salt with different functional forms for the individual energy terms. The solution is to assign two different C—C bonding terms for each metal in a specific oxo salt. In this way, the problem of assigning functional forms for the individual energy terms and deriving good parameters for each metal is simplified.

Another problem encountered in metal systems is the lack of well-defined bonds. Consider for example an olefin coordinated to a metal. Such a bond may be considered as a single bond between the metal and a given ligand atom. However, the bond may also be considered as a partial bond between the metal and the ligand atom. The coordination may also be described entirely by non-bonded interactions (van der Waals and electrostatic).
tions away from the natural distance, and also being able to account for dissociation. However, phenomena such as the trans effect are inherently electronic in nature (similar to the delocalization in conjugated systems) and are not easily accounted for in a force field description.

The multiple minima nature of the bending energy, combined with the low barriers for interconversion, resembles the torsional energy for organic molecules. An expansion of $E_{\text{bend}}$ in terms of cosine or sine functions to the angle is therefore more natural than a simple Taylor expansion in the angle. Furthermore, bending around a metal atom often has an energy maximum for an angle of 180°, with a low barrier. The following examples have a zero derivative for a linear angle, and are reasonable for describing bond bending such as that encountered in the H$_2$O example (Figure 2.5).

$$E_{\text{bend}}(\theta) = k \left( \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} - \sin \theta \right)^2$$

(2.39)

The latter functional form contains a constant $n$ that determines the periodicity of the potential (i.e., a phase factor), and allows bending energies with multiple minima, analogous to the torsional energy. It does, however, have problems of unwanted oscillations if an energy minimum with a natural angle close to 180° is desired (this requires $n$ to be large, creating many additional minima). It is also unable to describe situations where the minima are not regularly spaced, such as the Fe(CO)$_5$ system (minima for angles of 90°, 120° and 180°). The performance of eqs (2.39) and (2.40) for the H$_2$O case is given in Figure 2.20, which can be compared with Figure 2.5.

The barrier towards linearity is given implicitly by the force constant in both the potentials in eqs (2.39) and (2.40). A more general expression, which allows even quite complicated energy functionals to be fitted, is a Fourier expansion.

$$E_{\text{bend}}(\theta) = \sum_n k_n \cos(n\theta)$$

(2.41)

An alternative approach consists of neglecting the L—M—L bending terms, and instead includes non-bonded 1,3-interactions. The geometry around the metal is then defined exclusively by the van der Waals and electrostatic contributions (i.e. placing the ligands as far apart as possible), and this model is known as Points-On-a-Sphere (POS). It is basically equivalent to the Valence Shell Electron-Pair Repulsion (VSEPR) model, with VSEPR focusing on the electron pairs that make up a bond, and POS focusing on the atoms and their size. For alkali, alkaline earth and rare earth metals, where the bonding is mainly electrostatic, POS gives quite reasonable results, but it is unable to model systems where the d-orbitals have a preferred bonding arrangement. Tetracoordinated metal atoms, for example, will in such models always end up being tetrahedral, although d-metal are normally square planar. An explicit coupling between the geometry and the occupancy of the d-orbitals can be achieved by adding a ligand field energy term to the force field energy function, but this is not (yet) part of the mainstream force field programs.
The final problem encountered in designing force fields for metal complexes is the lack of sufficient numbers of experimental data. Geometrical data for metal compounds are much scarcer than for organic structures, and the soft deformation potentials mean that vibrational frequencies are often difficult to assign to specific modes. Deriving parameters from electron structure calculations is troublesome because the presence of multiple ligands means that the number of atoms is quite large, and the metal atom itself contains many electrons. Furthermore, there are often many different low-lying electronic states owing to partly occupied d-orbitals, indicating that single reference methods (i.e., Hartree–Fock type calculations) are insufficient for even a qualitative correct wave function. Finally, relativistic effects become important for some of the metals in the lower part of the periodic system. These effects have the consequence that electronic structure calculations of a sufficient quality are computationally expensive to carry out.

2.3.3 Universal force fields

The combination of many atom types and the lack of a sufficient number of reference data have prompted the development of force fields with reduced parameter sets, such as the Universal Force Field (UFF). The idea is to derive di-, tri- and tetra-atomic parameters \( E_{\text{str}}, E_{\text{bend}}, E_{\text{tors}} \) from atomic constants (such as atom radii, ionization potentials, electronegativities, polarizabilities, etc.). Such force fields are in principle capable of describing molecules composed of elements from the whole periodic table, and these have been labelled as “all elements” in Table 2.4 below. They give less accurate results compared with conventional force fields, but geometries are often calculated qualitatively correctly. Relative energies, however, are much more difficult to obtain accurately, and conformational energies for organic molecules are generally quite poor. Another approach is to use simple valence bonding arguments (e.g., hybridization) to derive the functional form for the force field, as employed in the VALBOND approach.

2.4 Differences in Force Fields

There are many different force fields in use. They differ in three main aspects:

1. What is the functional form of each energy term?
2. How many cross terms are included?
3. What types of information are used for fitting the parameters?

There are two general trends. If the force field is designed primarily to treat large systems, such as proteins or DNA, the functional forms are kept as simple as possible. This means that only harmonic functions are used for \( E_{\text{str}} \) and \( E_{\text{bend}} \) (or these terms are omitted, forcing all bond lengths and angles to be constant), no cross terms are included, and the Lennard-Jones potential is used for \( E_{\text{vdw}} \). Such force fields are often called “harmonic”, “diagonal” or “Class I”. The other branch concentrates on reproducing small- to medium-size molecules to a high degree of accuracy. These force fields will include a number of cross terms, use at least cubic or quartic expansions of \( E_{\text{str}} \) and \( E_{\text{bend}} \), and possibly an exponential-type potential for \( E_{\text{vdw}} \). The current efforts in developing small-molecule force fields go in the direction of not only striving to

| Table 2.4 | Comparison of functional forms used in common force fields; \( \psi \) the torsional energy, \( E_{\text{tor}} \), is in all cases given as a Fourier series in the torsional angle |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Force field Types</th>
<th>( E_{\text{str}} )</th>
<th>( E_{\text{vvdw}} )</th>
<th>( E_{\text{el}} )</th>
<th>( E_{\text{cross}} )</th>
<th>( E_{\text{tor}} )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AMBER</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids, carbohydrates, general</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFF91</td>
<td>P4</td>
<td>P4</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>sb, st</td>
<td>general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHARMM</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COSMIC</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVFF</td>
<td>P2 or P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DREIDING</td>
<td>P2 or P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAS</td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>alkanes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECEPP</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P3</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>general</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFF</td>
<td>P3</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>Exp-6</td>
<td>alkanes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENCAD</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>alkanes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESFF</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROMOS</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM2</td>
<td>P3</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM3</td>
<td>P4</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM4</td>
<td>P6</td>
<td>P6</td>
<td>Exp-6</td>
<td>general (all elements)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMFF</td>
<td>P9</td>
<td>P3</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>general (all elements)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMFF</td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>general (all elements)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEMO</td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>special proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPUS</td>
<td>P4</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>general (all elements)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFF</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROSA</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMFF</td>
<td>P4</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMFF</td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>proteins, nucleic acids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDFF</td>
<td>P4</td>
<td>P4</td>
<td>Exp-6</td>
<td>hydrocarbons</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TePPE</td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>Exp-6</td>
<td>C, N, O compounds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRPOS</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>all elements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UFF</td>
<td>P2 or P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>general</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YET1</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>general</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notation: P\(n\): Polynomial of order \(n\); P\(n\)(cos): polynomial of order \(n\) in cosine to the angle, \(\psi\); \(\psi\): Fourier term(s) in cosine to the angle, \(\psi\); 12–6: exponential of \(R^{-6}\) (R: distance), \(R^{-n}\): Lennard-Jones type potential, a, b: exponential moment up to quadrupole, s: stretch-stretch, b: stretch-bend, sb: stretch-bend, st: stretch-torsional, bt: bond-torsional, tb: bond-torsional, x: bend-torsional.
2.5 Computational Considerations

Evaluation of the non-bonded energy is by far the most time-consuming step, and this
contribution is the dominant one, for the linear alkanes CH\(_n\)−2CH\(_3\) shown in Table 2.6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>n</th>
<th>N atoms</th>
<th>E(_{\text{str}})</th>
<th>E(_{\text{bend}})</th>
<th>E(_{\text{tors}})</th>
<th>E(_{\text{vdw}})</th>
<th>Etotal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>61 (5%)</td>
<td>30 (15%)</td>
<td>30 (15%)</td>
<td>49 (14%)</td>
<td>180 (30%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>11 (3%)</td>
<td>60 (3%)</td>
<td>171 (8%)</td>
<td>1710 (83%)</td>
<td>1892 (30%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>30 (2%)</td>
<td>30 (2%)</td>
<td>441 (4%)</td>
<td>4410 (93%)</td>
<td>4551 (90%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>302</td>
<td>1 (0.1%)</td>
<td>6 (0.4%)</td>
<td>300 (2%)</td>
<td>300 (2%)</td>
<td>303 (1%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The number of bonded contributions, E\(_{\text{bend}}\), E\(_{\text{tors}}\), is often called "Class II" force fields. Further refinements by allowing parameters to depend on neighbouring atom types, e.g. for modeling hyperconjugation, and including electronic polarization effects have been denoted "Class III" force fields.

Force fields designed for treating macromolecules can be simplified by not considering hydrogens explicitly – the so-called "united atom" approach (an option present in for example the AMBER, CHARMM, GROMOS and DREIDING force fields). Instead of modeling a CH\(_2\) group as a carbon and two hydrogens, a single "CH2 atom" may be assigned, and such a united atom will have a larger van der Waals radius to account also for the hydrogens. The presence of hydrogen atoms in a united atom model will cause the van der Waals energy contributions to be reduced, but the decrease will be larger for hydrogen than for carbon.

Table 2.5 gives a description of the functional forms used in some of the common force fields. The torsional energy is in all cases written as a Fourier series, typically of order 3. Many of the force fields listed in Table 2.5 are designed for treating molecules composed of elements from the whole periodic table, and these have been labelled as "all elements".

Even for force fields employing the same mathematical form for an energy term the number of bonded contributions, E\(_{\text{bend}}\), E\(_{\text{tors}}\), grows linearly with the system size, while the non-bonded contributions, E\(_{\text{vdw}}\), grow more rapidly. For a 1000 atom system the contributions E\(_{\text{bend}}\) and E\(_{\text{tors}}\) already account for ~95% of the computational effort. For a 10 000 atom system, the contributions E\(_{\text{vdw}}\) and E\(_{\text{el}}\), grow as the square of the number of atoms.

The computational time for calculating the force field energy grows approximately as the square of the number of atoms. The majority of these non-bonded energy contributions are numerically very small, as the distance between the atom pairs is large. A considerable saving in computational time is possible by removing the contributions for atom pairs that are separated by more than a certain distance. This distance is usually around 10 Å, but it has been shown that the total van der Waals energy only converges if the cutoff distance is of the order of 20 Å. However, using a cutoff of 10 Å may significantly increase the computational time (by a factor of perhaps 10) relative to a cutoff of 20 Å. The non-bonded contributions, E\(_{\text{vdw}}\), E\(_{\text{el}}\), grow as the square of the number of atoms, which is proportional to the number of bonded contributions.

From a given starting geometry, a list is prepared over the atom pairs that are within the cutoff distance plus a smaller distance, which is then used for all minimization or simulation. Only the contributions from the atom pairs on this list are evaluated, which avoids the problem of duplicates, but it may be significant differences in the parameters Table 2.5 below shows the variations.

Table 2.5 Comparison of stretch energy parameters for different force fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Force field</th>
<th>C−C (mdyn/Å)</th>
<th>C−O (mdyn/Å)</th>
<th>C−F (mdyn/Å)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MM2</td>
<td>4.40</td>
<td>3.92</td>
<td>1.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMFF</td>
<td>4.49</td>
<td>3.92</td>
<td>1.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMBER</td>
<td>4.45</td>
<td>3.92</td>
<td>1.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPLS</td>
<td>4.45</td>
<td>3.92</td>
<td>1.28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is perhaps surprising that force constants may differ by almost a factor of two, but this is of course related to the stiffness of the stretch and bending energies. Very few molecules have bond lengths deviating more than a few hundredths of an angstrom from a given starting geometry, which is prepared over the atom pairs that are within the cutoff distance. Only the contributions from the atom pairs on the list are evaluated, which avoids the problem of duplicates, but it may be significant differences in the parameters Table 2.5 below shows the variations.
2.6 Validation of Force Fields

The quality of a force field calculation depends on two quantities: the appropriateness of the mathematical form of the energy expressions, and the accuracy of the parameters. While the latter are often well defined for small molecules, much less experimental information is available for polyfunctional molecules, and the parameters are less well defined. Force field methods are primarily geared to predicting two properties: geometries and relative energies. Structural features are in general much easier to predict than relative energies of different conformations, but at a fraction of the cost. Thus, the case for simple systems such as hydrocarbons is clear. Even a force field with a cutoff distance significantly larger than the van der Waals range is adequate for such cases, whereas for molecules with hydrogen bonds, at least a semi-empirical treatment is required to get accurate results.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distance (Å)</th>
<th>( E_{\text{vdw}} )</th>
<th>( E_{\text{el}} )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.586</td>
<td>0.236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>-0.069</td>
<td>0.306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>-0.0004</td>
<td>0.0064</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>-5.8 x 10^{-6}</td>
<td>0.0070</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>-3.9 x 10^{-6}</td>
<td>0.0057</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>-3.6 x 10^{-6}</td>
<td>0.0028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>-6.1 x 10^{-6}</td>
<td>0.0008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>-5.4 x 10^{-6}</td>
<td>0.0005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>-4.8 x 10^{-6}</td>
<td>0.0004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>-4.2 x 10^{-6}</td>
<td>0.0003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.7: Comparing the distance behavior of non-bonded energy contributions (kJ/mol)
therefore important to have good representations of the whole torsional energy profile. Even though a given force field may be parameterized to reproduce rotational energy profiles for ethane and ethanol, and contains a good description of hydrogen bonding between two ethanol molecules, there is no guarantee that it will be successful in reproducing the relative energies of different conformations of say 1,2-dihydro-2- ylthane. For large systems, it is inevitable that small inaccuracies in the functional forms for the energy terms and parameters will influence the shape of the whole energy surface to the point where minima may disappear or become saddle points. Essentially all force fields, no matter how elaborate the functional forms and parameterization, will have artificial minima, and fail to predict real minima, even for quite small systems. For cyclooctane (which is one of the largest molecules to have been subjected to an exhaustive search), the MM2 force field predicts 122 different conformations, but the MM3 surface contains only 98 minima. Given that cyclooctane belongs to a class of well-parameterized molecules, the saturated hydrocarbons, and that MM2 and MM3 are among the most accurate force fields, this clearly illustrates the point.

Validation of a force field is typically done by showing how accurately it reproduces reference data, which may or may not have been used in the actual parameterization. Since different force fields employ different sets of reference data, it is difficult to compare their accuracies directly. Indeed there is no single “best” force field, each has its advantages and disadvantages. They perform best for the type of compounds that have been used in the parameterization, but may give questionable results for other systems. Table 2.8 gives typical accuracies for $\Delta H_f$ that can be obtained with the MM2 force field.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound type</th>
<th>Average error in $\Delta H_f$ (kJ/mol)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hydrocarbons</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethers and alcohols</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbonyl compounds</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aromatic amines</td>
<td>12.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silanes</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The average error is the difference between the calculated and experimental $\Delta H_f$. In this connection it should be noted that the average error in the experimental data for the hydrocarbons is 1.7 kJ/mol, i.e. MM2 essentially reproduces the experiments to within the experimental uncertainty.

There is one final thing that needs to be mentioned in connection with the validation of a force field, namely the reproducibility. The results of a calculation are determined completely by the mathematical expressions for the energy terms and the parameter set (assuming that the computer program is working correctly). A new force field is usually parameterized for a fairly small set of functional groups initially, and may then evolve by addition of parameters for a larger diversity later. This sometimes has the consequence that some of the initial parameters must be modified to give an acceptable fit. Furthermore, new experimental data may warrant changes in existing parameters. In some cases, different sets of parameters are derived by different research groups for the same types of functional group. The result is that the parameter set for a given force field is not constant in time, and sometimes not in geographical location either. There may also be differences in the implementation details of the energy terms. The $E_{\text{coh}}$, for example, is defined as a harmonic term in the bending angle (Figure 2.6), but may be substituted by an improper torsional angle in some computer programs. The consequence is that there often are several different “flavours” of a given force field, depending on the exact implementation, the original parameter set (which may not be the most recent), and any local additions to the parameters. A vivid example is the MM2 force field, which exists in several different implementations that do not give the exact same results but are nevertheless denoted as “MM2” results.

### 2.7 Practical Considerations

It should be clear that force field methods are models of the real quantum mechanical systems. The neglect of electrons as individual particles forces the user to define explicitly the bonding in the molecule prior to any calculations. The user must decide how to describe a given molecule in terms of the selected force field. The input to a calculation consists of three sets of information:

1. Which atom types are present?
2. How are they connected, i.e. which atoms are bonded to each other?
3. A start guess of the geometry.

The first two sets of information determine the functional form of $E_{\text{FF}}$, i.e. enable the calculation of the potential energy surface for the molecule. Normally the molecule will then be optimized by minimizing $E_{\text{FF}}$, which requires a starting guess of the geometry. The information necessary for the program to perform the calculation is read via a file on the computer, and in older programs, the input file had to be prepared manually by the user. All the above three sets of information, however, can be uniquely defined from a (three-dimensional) drawing of a molecule. Modern programs therefore have a graphical interface that allows the molecule simply to be drawn on the screen or constructed from pre-optimized fragments. The interface then automatically assigns suitable atom types based on the selected atomic symbols and the connectivity, and converts the drawing to Cartesian coordinates.

### 2.8 Advantages and Limitations of Force Field Methods

The main advantage of force field methods is the speed with which calculations can be performed, enabling large systems to be treated. Even with a desktop personal computer, molecules with several thousand atoms can be optimized. This puts the applications in the region of modelling biomolecular macromolecules, such as proteins and DNA, and molecular modelling is now used by most pharmaceutical companies. The ability to treat a large number of particles also makes force field models the only realistic method for performing simulations where solvent effects or crystal packing can be studied (Chapter 14).

For systems where good parameters are available, it is possible to make very good predictions of geometries and relative energies of a large number of molecules in a
short time. It is also possible to determine barriers for interconversion between different conformations, although this is much less automated. One of the main problems is of course the lack of good parameters. If the molecule is slightly out of the ordinary, it is very likely that only poor quality parameters exist, or none at all. Obtaining suitable values for these missing parameters can be a frustrating experience. Force field methods are good for predicting properties for classes of molecules where a lot of information already exists. For unusual molecules, their use is very limited.

Finally, force field methods are "zero-dimensional". It is not possible to assess the probable error of a given result within the method. The quality of the result can only be judged by comparing to other calculations on similar types of molecules for which relevant experimental data exist.

2.9 Transition Structure Modelling

Structural changes can be divided into two general types: those of a conformational nature and those involving bond breaking/forming. There are intermediate cases, such as bonds involving metal coordination, but since metal coordination is difficult to model anyway, we will neglect such systems at present. The bottleneck for structural changes is the highest energy point along the reaction path, called the Transition State or Transition Structure (TS) (Chapter 13). Conformational TS's have the same atom types and bonding for both the reactant and product, and can be located on the force field energy surface by standard optimization algorithms. Since conformational changes are often localized to rotation around a single bond, simply locating the maximum energy structure for rotation (so-called "torsional angle driving", see Section 12.4.1) around this bond often represents a good approximation of the real TS.

Modelling TS's for reactions involving bond breaking/forming within a force field methodology is much more difficult. In this case, the reactant and product are not described by the same set of atom types and/or bonding. There may even be a different number of atoms at each end of the reaction (for example lone pairs disappearing). This means that there are two different force field energy functions for the reactant and product, i.e. the energy as a function of the reactant coordinate is not continuous. Nevertheless, methods have been developed for modeling differences in activation energies between similar reactions by means of force field techniques, and three approaches are described below.

2.9.1 Modelling the TS as a minimum energy structure

One of the early applications of TS modelling was the work on steric effects in S$_2$ reactions by DeTar and coworkers, and it has more recently been advocated by Houk and coworkers. The approach consists of first locating the TS for a typical example of the reaction with electronic structure methods, often at the Hartree–Fock or density functional theory level. The force field function is then modified such that an energy minimum is created with a geometry that matches the TS geometry found by the electronic structure method. The modification defines new parameters for all the energy terms involving the partly formed/broken bonds. The stretch energy terms have natural bond lengths taken from the electronic structure calculation, and force constants that are typically half the strength of normal bonds. Bond angle terms are similarly modified with respect to equilibrium values and force constants, the former taken from the electronic structure data and the latter usually estimated. These modifications often necessitate the definition of new "transition state" atom types. Once the force field parameters have been defined, the structure is minimized as usual. Sometimes a few cycles of parameter adjustments and re-optimizations are necessary for obtaining a set of parameters capable of reproducing the desired TS geometry. P-O. Norby has described a partly automated method for simultaneously optimizing all the parameters to reproduce the reference structure. When the modified force field is capable of reproducing the reference TS geometry, it can be used for predicting TS geometries and relative energies of reactions related to the model system. As long as the differences between the systems are purely "steric", it can be hoped that relative energy differences (between the reactant and the TS model) will correlate with relative activation energies. Purely electronic effects, such as Hammet-type effects due to para-substitution in aromatic systems, can of course not be modelled by force field techniques.

2.9.2 Modelling the TS as a minimum energy structure on the reactant/product energy seam

There are two principal problems with the above modelling technique. First, the TS is modelled as a minimum on the energy surface, while it should be a first-order saddle point. This has the consequence that changes in the TS position along the reaction coordinate due to differences in the reaction energy will be in the wrong direction (Section 15.6). In many cases, this is probably not so important. For reactions having a reasonable barrier, the TS geometry appears to be relatively constant, which may be rationalized in terms of the Marcus equation (Section 15.5). Comparing reactions that differ in terms of the steric hindrance at the TS, however, may be problematic, as the TS changes along the reaction coordinate will be in the wrong direction. The second problem is the more or less ad hoc assignment of parameters. Even for quite simple reactions, many new parameters must be added. Inventing perhaps 40 new parameters for reproducing maybe five relative activation energies raises the nagging question as to whether TS modelling is just a fancy way of describing five data points by 40 variables.

Both of these problems are eliminated in the intersecting potential energy surface modelling technique called SEAM. The force field TS is here modelled as the lowest point on the seam of the reactant and product energy functions, as shown in Figure 2.21. Locating the minimum energy structure on the seam is an example of a constrained optimization; the energy should be minimized subject to the constraint that the reactant and product energies are identical. Although this is computationally somewhat more complicated than the simple minimization required in the Houk approach, it can be handled in a quite efficient manner.

In the SEAM approach only the force field parameters for describing the reactant and products are necessary, alleviating the problem of assigning parameters specific for the TS. Furthermore, differences in reactivity due to differences in reaction energy or steric hindrance at the TS are automatically included. The question is how accurately the lowest energy point on the seam resembles the actual TS. This is difficult to evaluate rigorously as it is intimately connected with the accuracy of the force field used for describing the reactant and product structures. It is clear that the TS will have
bond distances and angles significantly different from equilibrium structures. This method of TS modelling therefore requires a force field that is accurate over a much wider range of geometries than normal. Especially important is the stretch energy, which must be able to describe bond breaking. A polynomial expansion is therefore not suitable, and for example a Morse function is necessary. Similarly, the repulsive part of the van der Waals energy must be fairly accurate, which means that Lennard-Jones potentials are not suitable and should be replaced by, for example, Buckingham-type potentials. Furthermore, many of the commonly employed cross terms (Section 2.2.8) become unstable at long bonds lengths and must be modified. When such modifications are incorporated, however, the intersecting energy surface model appears to give surprisingly good results.

There are of course also disadvantages in this approach: these are essentially the same as the advantages! The SEAM method automatically includes the effect of different reaction energies, since a more exothermic reaction will move the TS toward the reactant and lower the activation energy (Section 15.5). This, however, requires that the force field be able to calculate relative energies of the reactant and product, i.e. the ability to convert steric energies to heat of formation. As mentioned in Section 2.2.10, there are only a few force fields that have been parameterized for this. In practice, this is not a major problem since the reaction energy for a prototypical example of the reaction of interest can be obtained from experimental data or estimated. Using the normal force field assumption of transferability of heat of formation parameters, the difference in reaction energy is thus equal to the difference in steric energy. Only the reaction energy for a single reaction of the given type therefore needs to be estimated and relative activation energies are not sensitive to the exact value used.

If the minimum energy seam structure does not accurately represent the actual TS (compared for example with that obtained from an electronic structure calculation) the lack of specific TS parameters becomes a disadvantage. In the Houk approach, it is fairly easy to adjust the relevant TS parameters to reproduce the desired TS geometry. In the intersecting energy surface method, the TS geometry is a complicated result of the force field parameters for the reactant and product, and the force field energy functions. Modifying the force field parameters, or the functional form of some of the energy terms, in order to achieve the desired TS geometry without destroying the description of the reactant/product, is far from trivial. A final disadvantage, which is inherent to the SEAM method, is the implicit assumption that all the geometrical changes between the reactant and product occurs in a "synchronous" fashion, albeit weighted by the energy costs for each type of distortion. "Asynchronous" or "two-stage" reactions (as opposed to two-step reactions that involve an intermediate), where some geometrical changes occur mainly before the TS, and others mainly after the TS, are difficult to model by this method.

Since the TS is given in terms of the diabatic energy surfaces for the reactant and product, it is also clear that activation energies will be too high. For evaluating relative activation energies of similar reactions this is not a major problem since the important aspect is the relative energies. The overestimation of the activation energy can be improved by adding a "resonance" term to the force field, as discussed in the next section.

2.9.3 Modelling the reactive energy surface by interacting force field functions or by geometry-dependent parameters

Within a valence bond approach (Chapter 7), the reaction energy surface can be considered as arising from the interaction of two diabatic surfaces. The adiabatic surface can be generated by solving a $2 \times 2$ secular equation involving the reactant and product energy surfaces, $E_r$ and $E_p$.

$$
\begin{align*}
& E_r + E_p - 2E_{\text{int}} = 0 \\
& E = \frac{2}{3} \left[E_r + E_p - \sqrt{E_r^2 + E_p^2 + 4E_{\text{int}}^2} \right]
\end{align*}
$$

A. Warshel has pioneered the Extended Valence Bond (EVB) method, where the reactant and product surfaces are described by force field energy functions, and Truhlar has more recently generalized the approach by the Multi-Configurations Molecular Mechanics (MCMM) method. In either case, the introduction of the interaction term $V$ generates a continuous energy surface for transforming the reactant into the product configuration, and the TS can be located analogously to energy surfaces generated by electronic structure methods. The main drawback of this method is the somewhat arbitrary interaction element, and the fact that the TS must be located as a first-order saddle point, which is significantly more difficult than locating minima or minima on seams. It can be noted that the SEAM method corresponds to the limiting case where $V \to 0$ in the EVB method.

Another way of creating a continuous surface connecting the reactant and product energy functions is to make the force field parameters dependent on the geometry, which is an approach used in the ReaxFF method. The force constant for stretching a bond, for example, should decrease and approach zero as the bond length increases towards infinity. The energy function in this case depends directly on the atomic coordinates via the energy term in eq. (2.3), but also indirectly via the geometry
2.10 Hybrid Force Field Electronic Structure Methods

Force field methods are inherently unable to describe the details of bondbreaking/forming or electron transfer reactions. Such cases require the use of electronic structure methods. However, for practical reasons, it is often desirable to use a mixture of the two approaches, using electronic structure methods for the active site in an enzyme and describing the backbone by a force field method. This is done in so-called QM/MM schemes, where the QM/MM partition can be done by dividing the Hamiltonian and resulting energy into three parts:

$$\sum_{\text{QM atoms}} \left( \sum_{\text{MM atoms}} E_{\text{MM}} + E_{\text{QM/MM}} \right)$$

The QM regions are described completely, essentially as a single, large system by electronic structure methods. The MM regions are described using force field methods, which are less accurate but computationally more efficient. The interaction terms describe the coupling between the QM and MM regions.

The QM/MM partitioning is usually done by dividing the system into two or more non-overlapping QM regions, each of which is described by electronic structure methods, and the MM region, which is described by force field methods. The interaction terms are then calculated by summing over all possible interactions between the QM and MM regions.

The QM/MM partitioning is a compromise between accuracy and computational efficiency. It is particularly useful for large systems, where the use of electronic structure methods for the whole system would be computationally prohibitive.

In many cases, the QM and MM regions belong to the same molecule, and the division between the two parts must be done by cutting one or more covalent bonds. The QM/MM partitioning is an important issue, and there is no consensus on whether one or the other approach is better. The QM/MM partitioning can be done by cutting bonds, by using a localized molecular or generalized hybrid orbital, or by using a combination of the two.

The QM/MM partitioning is an important issue, and there is no consensus on whether one or the other approach is better. The QM/MM partitioning can be done by cutting bonds, by using a localized molecular or generalized hybrid orbital, or by using a combination of the two.

The QM/MM partitioning is an important issue, and there is no consensus on whether one or the other approach is better. The QM/MM partitioning can be done by cutting bonds, by using a localized molecular or generalized hybrid orbital, or by using a combination of the two.

The QM/MM partitioning is an important issue, and there is no consensus on whether one or the other approach is better. The QM/MM partitioning can be done by cutting bonds, by using a localized molecular or generalized hybrid orbital, or by using a combination of the two.

The QM/MM partitioning is an important issue, and there is no consensus on whether one or the other approach is better. The QM/MM partitioning can be done by cutting bonds, by using a localized molecular or generalized hybrid orbital, or by using a combination of the two.

The QM/MM partitioning is an important issue, and there is no consensus on whether one or the other approach is better. The QM/MM partitioning can be done by cutting bonds, by using a localized molecular or generalized hybrid orbital, or by using a combination of the two.

The QM/MM partitioning is an important issue, and there is no consensus on whether one or the other approach is better. The QM/MM partitioning can be done by cutting bonds, by using a localized molecular or generalized hybrid orbital, or by using a combination of the two.

The QM/MM partitioning is an important issue, and there is no consensus on whether one or the other approach is better. The QM/MM partitioning can be done by cutting bonds, by using a localized molecular or generalized hybrid orbital, or by using a combination of the two.
The concept of mixing methods of different accuracy has been generalized in the ONIOM (one-nucleus/one-molecule) method. Several (usually two or three) layers are employed, each using high-level electronic and force field methods, and the results are interpolated to get the overall system description. This method is particularly well suited for studying reaction pathways, where the accuracy of the method can be controlled by adjusting the number of layers. For instance, the low-level system only includes the core and the high-level system includes the entire system.

A similar extrapolation can be done for multi-level ONIOM models, although it is more complicated. The ONIOM method has been successfully applied to a wide range of problems, including chemical reactions, molecular dynamics, and protein-ligand binding. For example, the ONIOM method has been used to study the photodissociation of a diatomic molecule, where the low-level system only includes the core and the high-level system includes the entire system.

The main problem with ONIOM methods is that there is no unique way of deciding which part should be treated by force field and which by quantum mechanics, and ONIOM methods are therefore not “black box” methods. The “stitching” together of the two methods is certainly not unique, and the many possible combinations of force field and QM methods make QM/MM methods still somewhat experimental. Furthermore, the inability to perform calibration studies of large systems by pure QM methods makes it difficult to evaluate the severity of the approximations included in QM/MM methods.

The concept of mixing methods of different accuracy has been generalized in the ONIOM (one-nucleus/one-molecule) method. Several (usually two or three) layers are employed, each using high-level electronic and force field methods, and the results are interpolated to get the overall system description. This method is particularly well suited for studying reaction pathways, where the accuracy of the method can be controlled by adjusting the number of layers. For instance, the low-level system only includes the core and the high-level system includes the entire system.

A similar extrapolation can be done for multi-level ONIOM models, although it is more complicated. The ONIOM method has been successfully applied to a wide range of problems, including chemical reactions, molecular dynamics, and protein-ligand binding. For example, the ONIOM method has been used to study the photodissociation of a diatomic molecule, where the low-level system only includes the core and the high-level system includes the entire system.

The main problem with ONIOM methods is that there is no unique way of deciding which part should be treated by force field and which by quantum mechanics, and ONIOM methods are therefore not “black box” methods. The “stitching” together of the two methods is certainly not unique, and the many possible combinations of force field and QM methods make QM/MM methods still somewhat experimental. Furthermore, the inability to perform calibration studies of large systems by pure QM methods makes it difficult to evaluate the severity of the approximations included in QM/MM methods.

The concept of mixing methods of different accuracy has been generalized in the ONIOM (one-nucleus/one-molecule) method. Several (usually two or three) layers are employed, each using high-level electronic and force field methods, and the results are interpolated to get the overall system description. This method is particularly well suited for studying reaction pathways, where the accuracy of the method can be controlled by adjusting the number of layers. For instance, the low-level system only includes the core and the high-level system includes the entire system.

A similar extrapolation can be done for multi-level ONIOM models, although it is more complicated. The ONIOM method has been successfully applied to a wide range of problems, including chemical reactions, molecular dynamics, and protein-ligand binding. For example, the ONIOM method has been used to study the photodissociation of a diatomic molecule, where the low-level system only includes the core and the high-level system includes the entire system.

The main problem with ONIOM methods is that there is no unique way of deciding which part should be treated by force field and which by quantum mechanics, and ONIOM methods are therefore not “black box” methods. The “stitching” together of the two methods is certainly not unique, and the many possible combinations of force field and QM methods make QM/MM methods still somewhat experimental. Furthermore, the inability to perform calibration studies of large systems by pure QM methods makes it difficult to evaluate the severity of the approximations included in QM/MM methods.

The concept of mixing methods of different accuracy has been generalized in the ONIOM (one-nucleus/one-molecule) method. Several (usually two or three) layers are employed, each using high-level electronic and force field methods, and the results are interpolated to get the overall system description. This method is particularly well suited for studying reaction pathways, where the accuracy of the method can be controlled by adjusting the number of layers. For instance, the low-level system only includes the core and the high-level system includes the entire system.

A similar extrapolation can be done for multi-level ONIOM models, although it is more complicated. The ONIOM method has been successfully applied to a wide range of problems, including chemical reactions, molecular dynamics, and protein-ligand binding. For example, the ONIOM method has been used to study the photodissociation of a diatomic molecule, where the low-level system only includes the core and the high-level system includes the entire system.

The main problem with ONIOM methods is that there is no unique way of deciding which part should be treated by force field and which by quantum mechanics, and ONIOM methods are therefore not “black box” methods. The “stitching” together of the two methods is certainly not unique, and the many possible combinations of force field and QM methods make QM/MM methods still somewhat experimental. Furthermore, the inability to perform calibration studies of large systems by pure QM methods makes it difficult to evaluate the severity of the approximations included in QM/MM methods.
REFERENCES


If we are interested in describing the electron distribution in detail, there is no substitute for quantum mechanics. Electrons are very light particles and they cannot be described correctly even qualitatively by classical mechanics. We will in this chapter and in Chapter 4 concentrate on solving the time-independent Schrödinger equation, which in shorthand operator form is given in eq. (3.1).

\[ H \Psi = E \Psi \]  

(3.1)

If solutions are generated without reference to experimental data, the methods are usually called \textit{ab initio} (Latin: “from the beginning”), in contrast to semi-empirical models, which are described in Section 3.10.

An essential part of solving the Schrödinger equation is the Born–Oppenheimer approximation, where the coupling between the nuclei and electronic motion is neglected. This allows the electronic part to be solved with the nuclear positions as parameters, and the resulting potential energy surface (PES) forms the basis for solving the nuclear motion. The major computational effort is in solving the electronic Schrödinger equation for a given set of nuclear coordinates.

The dynamics of a many-electron system is very complex, and consequently requires elaborate computational methods. A significant simplification, both conceptually and computationally, can be obtained by introducing \textit{independent-particle} models, where the motion of one electron is considered to be independent of the dynamics of all other electrons. An independent-particle model means that the interactions between the particles is approximated, either by neglecting all but the most important one, or by taking all interactions into account in an average fashion. Within electronic structure theory, only the latter has an acceptable accuracy, and is called \textit{Hartree–Fock} (HF) theory. In the HF model, each electron is described by an orbital, and the total wave function is given as a product of orbitals. Since electrons are indistinguishable fermions (particles with a spin of \( \frac{1}{2} \)), however, the overall wave function must be antisymmetric (change sign upon interchanging any two electrons), which is conveniently achieved by arranging the orbitals in a Slater determinant. The best set of orbitals is determined by the variational principle, i.e. the HF orbitals give the lowest energy within the restriction of the wave function being a single Slater determinant. The shape of a given molecular orbital describes the probability of finding an electron, where the attraction to all the nuclei and the average repulsion to all the other electrons are included. Since the other electrons are described by their respective orbitals, the HF equations depend on their own solutions, and must therefore be solved iteratively. When the molecular orbitals are expanded in a basis set, the resulting equations can be written as a matrix eigenvalue problem. The elements in the Fock matrix correspond to integrals of one- and two-electron operators over basis functions, multiplied by density matrix elements. The HF equations in a basis set can thus be obtained by repeated diagonalizations of a Fock matrix.

The HF model is a kind of branching point, where either additional approximations can be invoked, leading to semi-empirical methods, or it can be improved by adding additional determinants, thereby generating models that can be made to converge towards the exact solution of the electronic Schrödinger equation. \footnote{The HF model as a starting point for more approximate or more accurate treatments.}

\[ H \Psi = E \Psi \]

Semi-empirical methods are derived from the HF model by neglecting all integrals involving more than two nuclei in the construction of the Fock matrix. Since the HF model by itself is only capable of limited accuracy, such approximations will by themselves lead to a poor model. The success of semi-empirical methods relies on turning the remaining integrals into parameters, and fitting these to experimental data, especially molecular energies and geometries. Such methods are computationally much more efficient than the \textit{ab initio} HF method, but are limited to systems for which parameters exist.

HF theory only accounts for the average electron–electron interactions, and consequently neglects the correlation between electrons. Methods that include electron correlation require a multi-determinant wave function, since HF is the best single-determinant wave function. Multi-determinant methods are computationally much more involved than the HF model, but can generate results that systematically approach the exact solution of the Schrödinger equation. These methods are described in Chapter 4.

\textit{Density Functional Theory} (DFT) in the Kohn–Sham version can be considered as an improvement on HF theory, where the many-body effect of electron correlation is modelled by a function of the electron density. DFT is, analogously to HF, an
independent-particle model, and is comparable to HF computationally, but provides significantly better results. The main disadvantage of DFT is that there is no systematic approach to improving the results towards the exact solution. These methods are described in Chapter 6.

We will also neglect relativistic effects in this chapter, which is justifiable for the first three rows in the periodic table (i.e., Z < 36) unless high accuracy is required, but the effects become important for the fourth and fifth row elements, and for transition metals. A more detailed discussion can be found in Chapter 8. Spin-dependent effects are relativistic in origin (e.g., spin–orbit interaction), but can be introduced in an ad hoc fashion in non-relativistic theory, and calculated as corrections (for example by means of perturbation theory) after the electronic Schrödinger equation has been solved. This will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 10.

A word of caution before we start. A rigorous approach to many of the derivations requires keeping track of several different indices and validating why certain transformations are possible. The derivations will be performed less rigorously here, with the emphasis on illustrating the flow of the argument, rather than focusing on the mathematical details.

It is conventional to use bra–ket notation for wave functions and multi-dimensional integrals in electronic structure theory in order to simplify the notation. The equivalences are defined in eq. (3.2).

\[
\begin{align*}
\langle \Psi | = \Psi & \quad \langle \Psi | \Psi \rangle = \Psi^* \\
\langle \Psi | \Psi \rangle = \langle \Psi | \Psi \rangle & \quad \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle = \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle
\end{align*}
\]

The bra (n) denotes a complex conjugate wave function with quantum number n standing to the left of the operator, while the ket (mn) denotes a wave function with quantum number m standing to the right of the operator, and the combined bracket denotes that the whole expression should be integrated over all coordinates. Such a bracket is often referred to as a matrix element, or as an overlap element when there is no operator involved.

3.1 The Adiabatic and Born–Oppenheimer Approximations

We will start by reviewing the Born–Oppenheimer approximation in more detail. The total (non-relativistic) Hamiltonian operator can be written as kinetic and potential energies of the nuclei and electrons.

\[
H_{tot} = T_e + T_n + V_e + V_n + V_{mp}
\]

The Hamiltonian operator is first transformed to the center of mass system, where it may be written as (using atomic units, see Appendix D):

\[
\begin{align*}
H_{cm} & = T_e + H_e + H_{mp} \\
H_e & = T_e + V_e + V_e + V_{mp}
\end{align*}
\]

Here \( H_e \) is the electronic Hamiltonian operator and \( H_{mp} \) is called the mass-polarization (\( M_{tot} \) is the total mass of all the nuclei). The mass-polarization term arises because it is not possible to rigorously separate the center of mass motion from the internal motion for a system with more than two particles. We note that \( H_e \) only depends on the nuclear positions (via \( V_e \) and \( V_{mp} \), see eq. (3.23)), but not on their momenta.

Assume for the moment that the full set of solutions to the electronic Schrödinger equation is available, where \( R_e \) denotes nuclear positions and \( r \) electronic coordinates.

\[
H_e (R_e, r) = E_i (R_e) \langle \Psi_i (r) | r \rangle; \quad i = 1, 2, \ldots, \infty
\]

The Hamiltonian operator is Hermitian, eq. (3.6).

\[
\int \Psi^* H \Psi / d r = \int \Psi^* H^* \Psi / d r \leftrightarrow \langle \Psi_i | H | \Psi_j \rangle = \langle \Psi_j | H | \Psi_i \rangle^*
\]

The Hermitian property means that the solutions can be chosen to be orthogonal and orthonormal (orthonormal).

\[
\begin{align*}
\langle \Psi_i | \Psi_j \rangle = \delta_{ij} & \quad \delta_{ij} = 1, \quad i = j \\
\langle \Psi_i | \Psi_j \rangle = 0 & \quad i \neq j
\end{align*}
\]

Without introducing any approximations, the total (exact) wave function can be written as an expansion in the complete set of electronic functions, with the expansion coefficients being functions of the nuclear coordinates.

\[
\Psi_{nm}(R_e, r) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \Psi_{nm}(R_e) \langle \Psi_i (r) | r \rangle
\]

Inserting eq. (3.8) into the Schrödinger equation (3.1) gives eq. (3.9).

\[
\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \left( T_e + H_e + H_{mp} \right) \Psi_{nm}(R_e) \langle \Psi_i (r) | r \rangle = E_i \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \Psi_{nm}(R_e) \langle \Psi_i (r) | r \rangle
\]

The nuclear kinetic energy is a sum of differential operators.

\[
\begin{align*}
T_e & = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2 M_e} \left( \sum_j \nabla_j \right)^2 \\
V_e & = \left( \begin{array}{c}
\frac{\partial}{\partial X_1} \\
\frac{\partial}{\partial X_2} \\
\frac{\partial}{\partial X_3}
\end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{c}
\frac{\partial}{\partial Y_1} \\
\frac{\partial}{\partial Y_2} \\
\frac{\partial}{\partial Y_3}
\end{array} \right) + \left( \begin{array}{c}
\frac{\partial}{\partial Z_1} \\
\frac{\partial}{\partial Z_2} \\
\frac{\partial}{\partial Z_3}
\end{array} \right)
\end{align*}
\]

We have here introduced the \( V_e \) symbol, which implicitly includes the mass dependence, sign and summation. Expanding out (3.8) gives eq. (3.11).
3.1 THE ADIABATIC AND BORN–OPPENHEIMER APPROXIMATIONS

The Born–Oppenheimer (and adiabatic) approximation is usually a good approximation but breaks down when two (or more) solutions to the electronic Schrödinger equation come close together energetically.

\[
\begin{align*}
\sum_j \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_j^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y_j^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z_j^2} \right) \Psi_j &= -E_j \Psi_j, \\
\sum_j \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_j^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y_j^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z_j^2} \right) \Psi_j &= -E_j \Psi_j.
\end{align*}
\]

In the Born–Oppenheimer picture, the nuclei move on a potential energy surface (PES) given by

\[
U(R) = \sum_j U_j(R_j),
\]

where \(U_j(R_j)\) is the electronic energy, and \(R_j\) is the position of the \(j\)th nucleus. The PES is independent of the electronic wave function, which is a solution to the Schrödinger equation for a fixed nuclear configuration.
For the majority of systems the Born–Oppenheimer approximation introduces only very small errors. The diagonal Born–Oppenheimer correction (DBOC) can be evaluated relatively easy, as it is just the second derivative of the electronic wave function with respect to the nuclear coordinates, and is therefore closely related to the nuclear gradient and second derivative of the energy (Section 10.8).

\[ \Delta E_{\text{DBOC}} = \sum_{\alpha} \frac{1}{2M} \left( \frac{\partial^2 \Psi}{\partial z_{\alpha}} \right)^2 \]  

(3.17)

The largest effect is expected for hydrogen-containing molecules, since hydrogen has the lightest nucleus. The absolute magnitude of the DBOC for H$_2$O is ~7 kJ/mol, but the effect for the barrier towards linearity is only ~0.17 kJ/mol. For the BH molecule, the equilibrium bond length elongates by ~0.0007 Å when the DBOC is included, and the harmonic vibrational frequency changes by ~2 cm$^{-1}$. For systems with heavier nuclei, the effects are expected to be substantially smaller.

When the Born–Oppenheimer approximation is expected to be poor, the non-adiabatic corrections will be large, and a better strategy in such cases may is to take the quantum nature of the nuclei into account directly. Starting from eq. (3.8), both the nuclear and electronic parts may be described by determinant-based wave functions expanded in Gaussian basis sets. Each of the two wave functions (electronic and nuclear) can be described at different levels of approximations, with mean-field methods (i.e., Hartree–Fock) being the first step. The energy spectrum arising from such methods directly gives both nuclear (e.g., vibrations) and electronic states, but there are still some outstanding questions as to how to formulate a consistent theory for actually carrying out such calculations.

It should be noted that once methods beyond the Born–Oppenheimer approximation are employed, concepts such as molecular geometries become blurred and energy surfaces no longer exist. Nuclei are delocalized in a quantum description, and a “bond length” is no longer a unique quantity, but must be defined according to the experiment that it is compared with. An X-ray structure, for example, measures the scattering of electromagnetic radiation by the electron density, neutron diffraction measures the scattering by the nuclei, while a microwave experiment measures the moments of inertia. With nuclei as delocalized wave packets, these quantities must be obtained as averages over the electronic and nuclear wave function components.

### 3.2 Self-Consistent Field Theory

Having stated the limitations (non-relativistic Hamiltonian operator and the Born–Oppenheimer approximation), we are ready to consider the electronic Schrödinger equation. It can only be solved exactly for the H$_2$ molecule and similar one-electron systems. In the general case, we have to rely on approximate (numerical) methods. By neglecting relativistic effects, we also have to introduce electron spin as an ad hoc quantum effect. Each electron has a spin quantum number of $\frac{1}{2}$, and in the presence of a magnetic field there are two possible states, corresponding to alignment along or opposite to the field. The corresponding spin functions are denoted $\alpha$ and $\beta$, and obey the orthonormality conditions in eq. (3.18).

\[ \langle \alpha | \alpha \rangle = \langle \beta | \beta \rangle = 1 \quad \langle \alpha | \beta \rangle = 0 \]  

(3.18)

To generate approximate solutions we will employ the variational principle, which states that any approximate wave function has an energy above or equal to the exact energy (see Appendix B for a proof). The quality holds only if the wave function is the exact function. By constructing a trial wave function containing a number of parameters, we can generate the “best” trial function of the given form by minimizing the energy as a function of these parameters.

The energy of an approximate wave function can be calculated as the expectation value of the Hamiltonian operator, divided by the norm of the wave function.

\[ E_{\text{HF}} = \langle \Psi_{\text{HF}} | H | \Psi_{\text{HF}} \rangle / \langle \Psi_{\text{HF}} | \Psi_{\text{HF}} \rangle \]  

For a normalized wave function the denominator is 1, and therefore $E_{\text{HF}} = \langle \Psi_{\text{HF}} | H | \Psi_{\text{HF}} \rangle$.

The total electronic wave function must be antisymmetric (change sign) with respect to interchange of any two electron coordinates (since electrons are fermions, having a spin of $\frac{1}{2}$). The Pauli principle, which states that two electrons cannot have all quantum numbers equal, is a direct consequence of this antisymmetry requirement. The antisymmetry of the wave function can be achieved by building it from Slater determinants (SDs). The columns in a Slater determinant are single-electron wave functions, orbitals, while the electron coordinates are along the rows. Let us in the following assume that we are interested in solving the electronic Schrödinger equation for a molecule. The one-electron functions are thus molecular orbitals (MO), which may be taken as orthonormal. For the general case of $N$ electrons and $M$ spin-orbitals, the Slater determinant is given by the symbol $\Phi_{\text{SD}}$.

\[ \Phi_{\text{SD}} = \prod_{i=1}^{N} \phi_{i}^{(1)} \phi_{i}^{(2)} \cdots \phi_{i}^{(M)} \]  

(3.20)

We now make one further approximation, by taking the trial wave function to consist of a single Slater determinant. As will be seen later, this implies that electron correlation is neglected, or equivalently, the electron–electron repulsion is only included as an average effect. Having selected a single-determinant trial wave function the variational principle can be used to derive the Hartree–Fock (HF) equations, by minimizing the energy.

### 3.3 The Energy of a Slater Determinant

In order to derive the HF equations, we need an expression for the energy of a single Slater determinant. For this purpose, it is convenient to write it as an antisymmetrizing operator $\mathbf{A}$ working on the “diagonal” of the determinant, where $\mathbf{A}$ can be expanded as a sum of permutations. We will denote the diagonal product by $\Pi$, and use the symbol $\Phi$ to represent the determinant wave function.
3.3 The Energy of a Slater Determinant

The one-electron operator

\[ \Phi = A (\phi(1)\phi(2) \ldots \phi(N)) = \Phi \]

\[ A = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \sum (-1)^j \Phi \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \left[ 1 - \sum p_{ij} + \sum p_{ij} - \ldots \right] \]  

(3.21)

The \( I \) operator is the identity, while the sum over \( p_{ij} \) generates all possible permutations of two electron coordinates, the sum over \( p_{ii} \) all possible permutations of three electron coordinates, etc. It may be shown that \( A \) commutes with \( H \), and that \( A \) acting twice gives the same as \( A \) acting once, multiplied with the square root of \( N \) factorial.

\[ AH = HA \]
\[ AA = \sqrt{N!} A \]  

(3.22)

Consider now the Hamiltonian operator. The nuclear–nuclear repulsion does not depend on electron coordinates and is a constant for a given nuclear geometry. The nuclear–electron attraction is a sum of terms, each depending only on one electron coordinate. The same holds for the electron kinetic energy. The electron–electron repulsion, however, depends on two electron coordinates.

\[ H = T_e + V_n + V_{en} + V_{ee} \]
\[ T_e = \sum_{i=1}^{N_e} \frac{\mathbf{h}_i^2}{2m} \]
\[ V_n = -\sum_{i=1}^{N} \sum_{j=i+1}^{N} \frac{e^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0 R_{ij}} \]
\[ V_{en} = \sum_{i=1}^{N_e} \sum_{j=1}^{N} Z_i Z_j \frac{e^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0 |\mathbf{R}_i - \mathbf{R}_j|} \]
\[ V_{ee} = \sum_{i=1}^{N_e} \sum_{j=1}^{N_e} \frac{e^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0 |\mathbf{R}_i - \mathbf{R}_j|} \]

(3.23)

We note that the zero point of the energy corresponds to the particles being at rest \( (T_e = 0) \) and infinitely removed from each other \( (V_{en} = V_{ee} = V_n = 0) \).

The operators may be collected according to the number of electron indices.

\[ h = -\frac{\mathbf{v}_i^2}{2m} - \sum_{j=1}^{N_e} \frac{Z_j}{4\pi\varepsilon_0 |\mathbf{R}_i - \mathbf{R}_j|} \]
\[ g = \frac{1}{|\mathbf{R}_i - \mathbf{R}_j|} \]
\[ H_e = \sum_{i=1}^{N_e} h_i + \sum_{i=1}^{N_e} g_i + V_{en} \]  

(3.24)

The one-electron operator \( h \) describes the motion of electron \( i \) in the field of all the nuclei, and \( g \) is a two-electron operator giving the electron-electron repulsion.

The energy may be written in terms of the permutation operator as (using eqs (3.21) and (3.22))

\[ E = (\Phi | H | \Phi) = (A | H | A \Phi) = \sqrt{N!} (| H | A \Phi) \]
\[ = \sum (-1)^j (| H | A \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (A | H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = J_{12} \]  

(3.25)

The nuclear repulsion operator is independent of electron coordinates and can immediately be integrated to yield a constant.

\[ (\Phi | V_{nn} | \Phi) = V_{nn} (\Phi | \Phi) = V_{nn} \]  

(3.26)

For the one-electron operator only the identity operator can give a non-zero contribution. For coordinate 1 this yields a matrix element over orbital 1.

\[ (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = h_1 \]  

(3.27)

This follows since all the MOs \( \phi \) are normalized. All matrix elements involving a permutation operator gives zero. Consider for example the permutation of electrons 1 and 2.

\[ (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = (\Phi \Phi) \]

(3.28)

For the two-electron operator, only the identity and \( \mathbf{P} \) operators can give non-zero contributions. A three-electron permutation will again give a least one overlap integral between two different MOs, which will be zero. The term arising from the identity operator is given by eq. (3.29).

\[ (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = (\Phi \Phi) \]

(3.29)

This is zero as the integral over electron 2 is an overlap of two different MOs, which are orthogonal (eq. (3.20)).

\[ (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = (\Phi \Phi) \]

(3.30)

The \( J_{12} \) matrix element is called a Coulomb integral. It represents the classical repulsion between two charge distributions described by \( \phi(1) \) and \( \phi(2) \). The term arising from the \( \mathbf{P} \) operator is given in eq. (3.30).

\[ (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = \sum (-1)^j (| H | \Phi) = (\Phi \Phi) \]

(3.31)

The \( J_{12} \) matrix element is called an exchange integral, and has no classical analogy. Note that the order of the MOs in the \( J_{12} \) and \( K_{12} \) matrix elements is according to the electron indices. The energy can thus be written as in eq. (3.31).
The third and fifth terms are identical (since the summation is over all \(i\) and \(j\)), as are the fourth and sixth terms. They may be collected to cancel the factor of \(1/2\), and the variation can be written in terms of a Fock operator, \(\mathbf{F}\),

\[
\delta E = \sum_{ij} \left( \langle \delta \phi | h | \phi \rangle + \langle \delta \phi | \mathbf{J} \phi \rangle + \langle \delta \phi | \mathbf{K} \phi \rangle \right) = 0
\]

The Fock operator is an effective one-electron energy operator, describing the kinetic energy of an electron and the attraction to all the nuclei (\(h\)), as well as the repulsion to all the other electrons (via the \(\mathbf{J}\) and \(\mathbf{K}\) operators). Note that the Fock operator is associated with the variation of the total energy, not the energy itself. The Hamiltonian operator (3.23) is not a sum of Fock operators.

The variation of the Lagrange function (eq. (3.34)) now becomes eq. (3.37).

\[
\delta L = \sum_{ij} \left( \langle \delta \phi | \mathbf{F} | \phi \rangle + \langle \delta \phi | \mathbf{J} \phi \rangle + \langle \delta \phi | \mathbf{K} \phi \rangle \right) = 0
\]

The variational principle states that the desired orbitals are those that make \(\delta L = 0\). Making use of the complex conjugate properties in eq. (3.38) gives eq. (3.39).

\[
\langle \delta \phi | \delta \phi \rangle = \langle \delta \phi | \delta \phi \rangle^* = \langle \delta \phi | \delta \phi \rangle
\]

The variation of either \(\delta \phi\) or \(\delta \phi^*\) should make \(\delta L = 0\), i.e. the first two terms in eq. (3.39) must cancel, and the last two terms must cancel. Taking the complex conjugate of the last two terms and subtracting them from the first two gives eq. (3.40).

\[
\sum_{ij} \left( \lambda_i - \lambda_j \right) \langle \delta \phi_i | \phi_j \rangle = 0
\]

This means that the Lagrange multipliers are elements of a Hermitian matrix \((\lambda_i = \lambda_j^*)\). The final set of Hartree–Fock equations may be written as in eq. (3.41).

\[
\mathbf{F} \phi = \sum_{ij} \langle \delta \phi_i | \delta \phi_j \rangle = 0
\]

The equations may be simplified by choosing a unitary transformation (Section 16.2) that makes the matrix of Lagrange multipliers diagonal, i.e. \(\lambda_i = 0\) and \(\lambda_i = e\). This special set of molecular orbitals (\(\phi^*\)) is called canonical MOs, and transforms eq. (3.41) into a set of pseudo-eigenvalue equations.

\[
\mathbf{F} \phi^* \equiv e \phi^*
\]
The Lagrange multipliers are seen to have the physical interpretation of MO energies, i.e. they are the expectation value of the Fock operator in the MO basis (multiply eq. (3.42) by $\phi_i^*$ from the left and integrate).

$$\langle \phi | F | \phi \rangle = \epsilon_i, \quad \langle \phi | \phi \rangle = 1$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.43)

The Hartree–Fock equations form a set of pseudo-eigenvalue equations as the Fock operator depends on all the occupied MOs (via the Coulomb and exchange operators, eqs (3.36) and (3.33)). A specific Fock orbital can only be determined if all the other occupied orbitals are known, and iterative methods must therefore be employed for solving the problem. A set of functions that is a solution to eq. (3.42) is called self-consistent field (SCF) orbitals.

The canonical MOs may be considered as a convenient set of orbitals for carrying out the variational calculation. The total energy, however, depends only on the total wave function, which is a Slater determinant written in terms of the occupied MOs, eq. (3.20). The total wave function is unchanged by a unitary transformation of the occupied MOs among themselves (rows and columns in a determinant can be added and subtracted without affecting the determinant itself). After having determined the canonical MOs, other sets of MOs may be generated by forming linear combinations, such as localized MOs, or MOs displaying hybridization, which is discussed in more detail in Section 9.4.

The orbital energies can be considered as matrix elements of the Fock operator with the MOs (dropping the prime notation and letting $\phi$ be the canonical orbitals). The total energy can be written either as eq. (3.32) or in terms of MO energies (using the definition of $F$ in eqs (3.36) and (3.43)).

$$E = \sum_i \epsilon_i - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{ij} (J_{ij} - K_{ij}) + V_m$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.44)

The total energy is not simply a sum of MO orbital energies. The Fock operator contains terms describing the repulsion to all other electrons ($J$ and $K$ operators), and the sum over MO energies therefore counts the electron–electron repulsion twice, which must be corrected for. It is also clear that the total energy cannot be exact, as it describes the repulsion between an electron and all the other electrons, assuming that their spatial distribution is described by a set of orbitals. The electron–electron repulsion is only accounted for in an average fashion, and the HF method is therefore also referred to as a mean-field approximation. As mentioned previously, this is due to the approximation of a single Slater determinant as the trial wave function.

### 3.4 Koopmans’ Theorem

The canonical MOs are convenient for the physical interpretation of the Lagrange multipliers. Consider the energy of an $N$-electron system and the corresponding system with one electron removed from orbital number $k$, and assume that the MOs are identical for the two systems (eq. (3.32)).

$$E_N = \sum_{i \neq k} \epsilon_i + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq k} \sum_{j \neq k} (J_{ij} - K_{ij}) + V_m$$

Subtracting the two total energies gives eq. (3.46).

$$E_N - E_{N-1} = h_k + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq k} (J_{ik} - K_{ik}) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \neq k} (J_{kj} - K_{kj})$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.46)

As seen from eq. (3.44), this is exactly the orbital energy $\epsilon_k$. The ionization energy within the “frozen MO” approximation is given simply as the orbital energy, a result known as Koopmans’ theorem. Similarly, the electron affinity of a neutral molecule is given as the orbital energy of the corresponding anion, or, since the MOs are assumed constant, as the energy of the $k$th unoccupied orbital energy in the neutral species.

$$E_N - E_{N-1} = h_k + \sum_{i \neq k} (J_{ik} - K_{ik}) = \epsilon_k$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.47)

As a computational difference between the eigenvalue of an occupied orbital for the anion and the eigenvalue corresponding to an unoccupied orbital in the neutral species when the orbitals are expanded in a set of basis functions (Section 3.5). Eigenvalues corresponding to occupied orbitals are well defined and they converge to a specific value as the size of the basis set is increased. In contrast, unoccupied orbitals in a sense are only the “left-over” functions in a given basis set, and their number increases as the basis set is made larger. The lowest unoccupied eigenvalue usually converges to zero, corresponding to a solution for a free electron, described by a linear combination of the most diffuse basis functions. Equating ionization potentials to occupied orbital energies is therefore justified based on the frozen MO approximation, but taking unoccupied orbital energies as electron affinities is questionable, since continuum solutions are mixed in.

### 3.5 The Basis Set Approximation

For small highly symmetric systems, such as atoms and diatomic molecules, the Hartree–Fock equations may be solved by mapping the orbitals on a set of grid points, and these are referred to as numerical Hartree–Fock methods. However, essentially all calculations use a basis set expansion to express the unknown MOs in terms of a set of known functions. Any type of basis functions may in principle be used:

$$E_N = \sum_{i \neq k} \epsilon_i + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq k} \sum_{j \neq k} (J_{ij} - K_{ij}) + V_m$$

$$E_N = \sum_{i \neq k} \epsilon_i + \sum_{i \neq k} (J_{ik} - K_{ik}) + V_m$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.45)
exponential, Gaussian, polynomial, cube functions, wavelets, plane waves, etc. There are two guidelines for choosing the basis functions. One is that they should have a behavior that agrees with the physics of the problem, since this ensures that the convergence as more basis functions are added is reasonably rapid. For bound atomic and molecular systems, this means that the functions should go toward zero as the distance between the nucleus and the electron becomes large. The second guideline is a practical one: the chosen functions should make it easy to calculate all the required integrals.

The first criterion suggests the use of exponential functions located on the nuclei, since such functions are known to be exact solutions for the hydrogen atom. Unfortunately, exponential functions turn out to be computationally difficult. Gaussian functions are computationally much easier to handle, and although they are poorer at describing the electronic structure on a one-to-one basis, the computational advantages more than make up for this. For periodic systems, infinite nature of the problem suggests the use of plane waves as basis functions, since these are the exact solutions for a free electron. We will return to the precise description of basis sets in Chapter 5, but for now simply assume that a set of \( N_{\text{basis}} \) basis functions located on the nuclei has been chosen.

Each MO \( \phi \) is expanded in terms of the basis functions \( \chi \), conventionally called atomic orbitals (MO = LCAO, Linear Combination of Atomic Orbitals), although they are generally not solutions to the atomic HF problem.

\[
\phi_i = \sum_{\alpha} c_{\alpha i} \chi_\alpha
\]

The Hartree–Fock equations (3.42) may be written as in eq. (3.50).

\[
F_{\alpha \beta} = \sum_{\alpha} c_{\alpha \beta} \chi_\alpha
\]

(3.50)

Multiplying from the left by a specific basis function and integrating yields the Roothaan–Hall equations (for a closed shell system). These are the Hartree–Fock equations in the atomic orbital basis, and all the \( M_{\text{basis}} \) equations may be collected in a matrix notation.

\[
\frac{\mathbf{F}}{\mathbf{C}} = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{C} \mathbf{e}
\]

\[
F_{\alpha \beta} = \langle \chi_\beta | \mathbf{C} | \chi_\alpha \rangle
\]

The \( S \) matrix contains the overlap elements between basis functions, and the \( F \) matrix contains the Fock matrix elements. Each \( F_{\alpha \beta} \) element contains two parts from the Fock operator (eq. (3.36)), integrals involving the one-electron operators, and a sum over occupied MOs of coefficients multiplied with two-electron integrals involving the electron–electron repulsion. The latter is often written as a product of a density matrix and two-electron integrals.

\[
\langle \chi_{\beta} | \mathbf{C} | \chi_\alpha \rangle = \sum_{\gamma} \sum_{\delta} c_{\gamma \alpha} c_{\gamma \beta} F_{\gamma \delta} \sum_{\gamma_{\text{occ}}} c_{\gamma_{\text{occ}} \delta} \langle \chi_{\gamma_{\text{occ}}} | \mathbf{C} | \chi_{\gamma_{\text{occ}}} \rangle
\]

For use in Section 3.8, it can also be written in a more compact notation.

\[
F_{\alpha \beta} = h_{\alpha \beta} + \sum_{\gamma} G_{\alpha \gamma} D_{\beta \delta} \langle \chi_{\gamma_{\text{occ}}} | \mathbf{C} | \chi_{\gamma_{\text{occ}}} \rangle
\]

(3.53)

Here \( \mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{D} \) denotes the contraction of the \( \mathbf{D} \) matrix with the four-dimensional \( \mathbf{G} \) tensor.

The total energy (eq. (3.32)) in terms of integrals over basis functions is given in eq. (3.54).

\[
E = \sum_{\alpha} \sum_{\beta} \sum_{\gamma} c_{\gamma \alpha} c_{\gamma \beta} F_{\gamma \delta} \sum_{\gamma_{\text{occ}}} c_{\gamma_{\text{occ}} \delta} \langle \chi_{\gamma_{\text{occ}}} | \mathbf{C} | \chi_{\gamma_{\text{occ}}} \rangle + V_{\text{elec}}
\]

(3.54)

The latter expression may also be written as in eq. (3.55).

\[
E = \sum_{\alpha} \sum_{\beta} h_{\alpha \beta} + \sum_{\gamma} \sum_{\alpha \beta} G_{\alpha \gamma} D_{\beta \delta} \langle \chi_{\gamma_{\text{occ}}} | \mathbf{C} | \chi_{\gamma_{\text{occ}}} \rangle + V_{\text{elec}}
\]

(3.55)

The one- and two-electron integrals in the atomic basis are given as eq. (3.24).

\[
\langle \chi_{\beta} | \mathbf{C} | \chi_\alpha \rangle = \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_{\beta} - \mathbf{r}_{\alpha}|} \int \chi_{\beta}(\mathbf{r}) \chi_\alpha(\mathbf{r}) d\mathbf{r}
\]

(3.56)

The two-electron integrals are often written in a notation without electron coordinates or the \( g \) operator present.

\[
\int \chi_{\beta}(\mathbf{r}) \left( \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_{\beta} - \mathbf{r}_{\alpha}|} \right) \chi_\alpha(\mathbf{r}) d\mathbf{r} = \langle \chi_{\beta} | \mathbf{C} | \chi_\alpha \rangle
\]

(3.57)
This is known as the **physicist's** notation, where the ordering of the functions is given by the electron indices. They may also be written in an alternative order with both functions depending on electron 1 on the left, and the functions depending on electron 2 on the right, this is known as the **Mulliken** or **chemist's** notation.

\[
\langle Z_1Z_2|X_1X_2\rangle = \langle Z_1Z_2|X_2X_1\rangle - \langle Z_1Z_2|X_1X_2\rangle
\]

The bra-ket notation has the electron indices (12), while the parenthesis notation has the order (1122). In many cases the integrals are written with only the indices given, i.e. \(\langle Z_1Z_2X_1X_2\rangle = \langle \phi_1\phi_2\rangle\). Since Coulomb and exchange integrals often are used as their difference, the following double-bar notations are also used frequently.

\[
\langle Z_1Z_2|X_1X_2\rangle = \langle Z_1Z_2|X_2X_1\rangle - \langle Z_1Z_2|X_1X_2\rangle
\]

The Roothaan–Hall equation (3.51) is a determination of the eigenvalues of the Fock matrix (see Section 16.2.3 for details). To determine the unknown MO coefficients \(c_i\), the Fock matrix must be diagonalized. However, the Fock matrix is only known if all the MO coefficients are known (eq. (3.52)). The procedure therefore starts off by some guess of the coefficients, forms the F matrix, and diagonalizes it. The new set of coefficients is then used for calculating a new Fock matrix, etc. This is continued until the set of coefficients used for constructing the Fock matrix is equal to those resulting from the diagonalization (to within a certain threshold). This set of coefficients determines a self-consistent field solution.

**Figure 3.3** Illustration of the SCF procedure

The potential (or field) generated by the SCF electron density is identical to that produced by solving for the electron distribution. The Fock matrix, and therefore the total energy, only depends on the occupied MOs. Solving the Roothaan–Hall equations produces a total of \(M_{\text{elec}}\) MOs, i.e. there are \(N_{\text{oc}}\) occupied and \(M_{\text{elec}} - N_{\text{oc}}\) unoccupied, or **virtual**, MOs. The virtual orbitals are orthogonal to all the occupied orbitals, but have no direct physical interpretation, except as electron affinities (via Koopmans' theorem).

In order to construct the Fock matrix in eq. (3.51), integrals between all pairs of basis functions and the one-electron operators \(h\) are needed. For \(M_{\text{elec}}\) functions there are of the order of \(M_{\text{elec}}^4\) one-electron integrals. These one-electron integrals are also known as **core** integrals, as they describe the interaction of an electron with the whole frame of bare nuclei. The second part of the Fock matrix involves integrals over four basis functions and the \(g\)-two-electron operator. There are of the order of \(M_{\text{elec}}^4\) of these two-electron integrals. In conventional HF methods, the two-electron integrals are calculated and saved before the SCF procedure is begun, and is then used in each SCF iteration. Formally, in the large basis set limit the SCF procedure involves a computational effort that increases as the number of basis functions to the fourth power. It will be shown below that the scaling may be substantially smaller in actual calculations.

For the two-electron integrals, the four basis functions may be located on one, two, three or four different atomic centres. It has already been mentioned that exponential-type basis functions \((\chi \propto \exp(-\alpha r))\) are fundamentally better suited for electronic structure calculations. However, it turns out that the calculation of especially three- and four-centre two-electron integrals is very time-consuming for exponential functions. Gaussian functions \((\chi \propto \exp(-\alpha r^2))\) are much easier for calculating two-electron integrals. This is due to the fact that the product of two Gaussians located at two different positions \((\chi_A \chi_B)\) with different exponents \((\alpha_A, \alpha_B)\) can be written as a product of two single Gaussians located at an intermediate position \(\chi_C\) between the two original.

Illustration of the SCF procedure
size of the basis set is increased, the variational principle ensures that the results become better (at least in an energetic sense). The quality of a result can therefore be assessed by running calculations with an increasingly larger basis set.

### 3.6 An Alternative Formulation of the Variational Problem

The objective is to minimize the total energy as a function of the molecular orbitals, subject to the orthogonality constraint. In the above formulation, this was handled by means of Lagrange multipliers. The final Fock matrix in the MO basis is diagonal, with the diagonal elements being the orbital energies. During the iterative sequence, i.e. before the orbitals have converged to an SCF solution, the Fock matrix is not diagonal. Starting from an initial set of molecular orbitals, the problem may also be formulated as a rotation of the orbitals (unitary transformation) in order to make the operator diagonal. Since the operator depends on the orbitals, the procedure again becomes iterative.

The orbital rotation is given by a unitary matrix $U$, which can be written as an exponential transformation.

$$
\phi' = U\phi = e^{X}\phi
$$

The $X$ matrix contains the parameters describing the unitary transformation of the $M_{\text{occ}} \times M_{\text{occ}}$. The orthogonality is incorporated by requiring that the $X$ matrix is antisymmetric, $x_{ij} = -x_{ji}$.

$$
X = \begin{pmatrix}
0 & \alpha \\
-\alpha & 0
\end{pmatrix}
$$

$$
U = e^{X} = \begin{pmatrix}
\cos \alpha & \sin \alpha \\
-\sin \alpha & \cos \alpha
\end{pmatrix}
$$

In the general case, the $X$ matrix contains rotational angles for rotating all pairs of orbitals.

It should be noted that the unoccupied orbitals do not enter the energy expression (eq. (3.32)), and a rotation between the virtual orbitals can therefore not change the energy. A rotation between the occupied orbitals corresponds to making linear combinations of these, but this does not change the total wave function or the total energy. The occupied-occupied and virtual-virtual blocks of the $X$ matrix can therefore be chosen as zero. The variational parameters are the elements in the $X$ matrix that describe the mixing of the occupied and virtual orbitals, i.e. there are a total of $N_{\text{occ}} \times (M_{\text{occ}} - N_{\text{occ}})$ parameters. The goal of the iterations is to make the off-diagonal elements in the occupied-virtual block of the Fock matrix zero. Alternatively stated, the off-diagonal elements are the gradients of the energy with respect to the orbitals, and the stationary condition is that the gradient vanishes.

Using the concepts from Chapter 16, the variational problem can be considered as a rotation of the coordinate system. In the original function space, the basis functions, the Fock operator depends on all the $M_{\text{occ}}$, functions, and the corresponding Fock matrix is non-diagonal. By performing a rotation of the coordinate system to the molecular orbitals, however, the matrix can be made diagonal, i.e. in this coordinate system the Fock operator only depends on $N_{\text{occ}}$ functions.

### 3.7 Restricted and Unrestricted Hartree–Fock

So far there has not been any restriction on the MOs used to build the determinantal trial wave function. The Slater determinant has been written in terms of spin-orbitals, eq. (3.20), being products of a spatial orbital and a spin function $(\alpha \text{ or } \beta)$. If there are no restrictions on the form of the spatial orbitals, the trial function is an unrestricted Hartree–Fock (UHF) wave function. Restricted Hartree–Fock (RHF). For open-shell species, a UHF treatment leads to well-defined orbital energies, which may be interpreted as ionization potentials (Section 3.4). For an ROHF wave function, it is not possible to choose a unitary transformation that makes the matrix of Lagrange multipliers in eq. (3.41) diagonal, and orbital energies from an ROHF wave function are consequently not uniquely defined and cannot be equated to ionization potentials by a Koopmans-type argument.
The UHF wave function allows different spatial orbitals for the two electrons in an orbital. As restricted type wave functions put constraints on the variation parameters, the energy of a UHF wave function is always lower than or equal to a corresponding RIOHF type wave function. For singlet states near the equilibrium geometry, it is usually not possible to lower the energy by allowing the α and β MOs to be different. For an open-shell system such as a doublet, however, it is clear that forcing the α and β MOs to be identical is a restriction. If the unpaired electron has α spin, it will interact differently with the other α electrons than with the β electrons, and consequently the optimum α and β orbitals will be different. The UHF description, however, has the disadvantage that the wave function is not an eigenfunction of the $S^2$ operator (unless it is equal to the RHF solution), where the $S^2$ operator evaluates the value of the total electron spin squared. This means that a “singlet” UHF wave function may also contain contributions from higher lying quartet, sextet, etc., states. Similarly, a “doublet” UHF wave function will contain spurious (non-physical) contributions from higher lying quartet, sextet, etc., states. This will be discussed in more detail in Section 4.4.

Semi-empirical methods (Section 3.10) sometimes employ the so-called half-electron method for describing open-shell systems, such as doublets and triplets. In this model a doublet state is described by putting two “half” electrons in the same orbitals with opposite spins, i.e., constructing an RHF type wave functions where all electron spins are paired. A triplet state may similarly be modelled as having two orbitals, each occupied by two half electrons with opposite spin. The main motivation behind this artificial construct is that open- and closed shell systems (such as a triplet and singlet state) will have different amounts of electron correlation. Since semi-empirical methods perform the parameterization based on single-determinant wave functions, the half-electron method cancels the difference in electron correlations, and allows open- and closed shell systems to be treated on an equal footing in terms of energy. It has the disadvantage that the open-shell nature is no longer present in the wave function; it is for example not possible to calculate spin densities (i.e., where the unpaired electron(s) is(are) most likely to be).

3.8 SCF Techniques

As discussed in Section 3.6, the Roothaan–Hall (or Pople–Nesbet for the UHF case) equations must be solved iteratively since the Fock matrix depends on its own solutions. The procedure illustrated in Figure 3.3 involves the following steps:

1. Calculate all one- and two-electron integrals.
2. Generate a suitable start guess for the MO coefficients.
3. Form the initial density matrix.
4. Form the Fock matrix as the core (one-electron) integrals + the density matrix times the two-electron integrals.
5. Diagonalize the Fock matrix. The eigenvectors contain the new MO coefficients.
6. Form the new density matrix. If it is sufficiently close to the previous density matrix, we are done; otherwise go to step 4.

There are several points hidden in this scheme. Will the procedure actually converge at all? Will the SCF solution correspond to the desired energy minimum (and not a maximum or saddle point)? Can the number of iterations necessary for convergence be reduced? Does the most efficient method depend on the type of computer and/or the size of the problem?

Let us look at some of the SCF techniques used in practice.

3.8.1 SCF convergence

There is no guarantee that the above iterative scheme will converge. For geometries near equilibrium and using small basis sets, the straightforward SCF procedure often converges unproblematically. Distorted geometries (such as transition structures) and large basis sets containing diffuse functions, however, rarely converge, and metal complexes, where several states with similar energies are possible, are even more troublesome. There are various tricks that can be tried to help convergence:

1. **Extrapolation.** This is a method for trying to make the convergence faster by extrapolating previous Fock matrices to generate a (hopefully) better Fock matrix than the one calculated directly from the current density matrix. Typically, the last three matrices are used in the extrapolation.

2. **Damping.** The reason for divergence, or very slow convergence, is often due to oscillations. A given density matrix $D_n$ gives a Fock matrix $F_n$, which, upon diagonalization, gives a density matrix $D_n+1$. The Fock matrix $F_n+1$ from $D_n+1$ gives a density matrix $D_n+2$ that is close to $D_n$, but $D_n$ and $D_n+1$ are very different, as illustrated in Figure 3.5. The damping procedure tries to solve this by replacing the current density matrix with a weighted average, $D_n+1 = wD_n + (1-w)D_n+1$. The weighting factor $w$ may be chosen as a constant or changed dynamically during the SCF procedure.

![Figure 3.5 An oscillating SCF procedure](image-url)
ELECTRONIC STRUCTURE METHODS: INDEPENDENT-PARTICLE MODELS

3.8 SCF TECHNIQUES

Pulay suggested that the variational principle implies that we want
to minimize the energy as a function of the MO coefficients, and this has been found to work well in practice. A closely related method uses the energy as the error indicator, i.e., how far the current Fock matrix is from the converged solution. The converged solution is an error of zero, and the DFF method forms a linear combination of the previous iterations to zero as possible. In the functional Carlo approach, the previous iterations are actually used.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

As mentioned in Section 3.6, the variational procedure can be formulated in terms of an exponential transformation of an X matrix. Note that the X variables are not independent, but the MOs must be orthonormal. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The gradient of the energy is an off-diagonal element of the molecular Fock matrix, which is analytically calculated from the matrix product of the error matrix with itself as a scalar indicator of the error.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The first and second derivatives of the energy with respect to the X variables (or the MO coefficients) can be written in terms of the MO coefficients or the corresponding density matrix elements, as given by eq. (3.54). The DFF method forms a linear combination of the previous iterations to zero as possible. In the functional Carlo approach, the previous iterations are actually used.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The gradient of the energy is an off-diagonal element of the molecular Fock matrix, which is analytically calculated from the matrix product of the error matrix with itself as a scalar indicator of the error.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The first and second derivatives of the energy with respect to the X variables (or the MO coefficients) can be written in terms of the MO coefficients or the corresponding density matrix elements, as given by eq. (3.54). The DFF method forms a linear combination of the previous iterations to zero as possible. In the functional Carlo approach, the previous iterations are actually used.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The gradient of the energy is an off-diagonal element of the molecular Fock matrix, which is analytically calculated from the matrix product of the error matrix with itself as a scalar indicator of the error.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The first and second derivatives of the energy with respect to the X variables (or the MO coefficients) can be written in terms of the MO coefficients or the corresponding density matrix elements, as given by eq. (3.54). The DFF method forms a linear combination of the previous iterations to zero as possible. In the functional Carlo approach, the previous iterations are actually used.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The gradient of the energy is an off-diagonal element of the molecular Fock matrix, which is analytically calculated from the matrix product of the error matrix with itself as a scalar indicator of the error.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The first and second derivatives of the energy with respect to the X variables (or the MO coefficients) can be written in terms of the MO coefficients or the corresponding density matrix elements, as given by eq. (3.54). The DFF method forms a linear combination of the previous iterations to zero as possible. In the functional Carlo approach, the previous iterations are actually used.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The gradient of the energy is an off-diagonal element of the molecular Fock matrix, which is analytically calculated from the matrix product of the error matrix with itself as a scalar indicator of the error.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The first and second derivatives of the energy with respect to the X variables (or the MO coefficients) can be written in terms of the MO coefficients or the corresponding density matrix elements, as given by eq. (3.54). The DFF method forms a linear combination of the previous iterations to zero as possible. In the functional Carlo approach, the previous iterations are actually used.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The gradient of the energy is an off-diagonal element of the molecular Fock matrix, which is analytically calculated from the matrix product of the error matrix with itself as a scalar indicator of the error.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The first and second derivatives of the energy with respect to the X variables (or the MO coefficients) can be written in terms of the MO coefficients or the corresponding density matrix elements, as given by eq. (3.54). The DFF method forms a linear combination of the previous iterations to zero as possible. In the functional Carlo approach, the previous iterations are actually used.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The gradient of the energy is an off-diagonal element of the molecular Fock matrix, which is analytically calculated from the matrix product of the error matrix with itself as a scalar indicator of the error.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The first and second derivatives of the energy with respect to the X variables (or the MO coefficients) can be written in terms of the MO coefficients or the corresponding density matrix elements, as given by eq. (3.54). The DFF method forms a linear combination of the previous iterations to zero as possible. In the functional Carlo approach, the previous iterations are actually used.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The gradient of the energy is an off-diagonal element of the molecular Fock matrix, which is analytically calculated from the matrix product of the error matrix with itself as a scalar indicator of the error.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The first and second derivatives of the energy with respect to the X variables (or the MO coefficients) can be written in terms of the MO coefficients or the corresponding density matrix elements, as given by eq. (3.54). The DFF method forms a linear combination of the previous iterations to zero as possible. In the functional Carlo approach, the previous iterations are actually used.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The gradient of the energy is an off-diagonal element of the molecular Fock matrix, which is analytically calculated from the matrix product of the error matrix with itself as a scalar indicator of the error.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The first and second derivatives of the energy with respect to the X variables (or the MO coefficients) can be written in terms of the MO coefficients or the corresponding density matrix elements, as given by eq. (3.54). The DFF method forms a linear combination of the previous iterations to zero as possible. In the functional Carlo approach, the previous iterations are actually used.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The gradient of the energy is an off-diagonal element of the molecular Fock matrix, which is analytically calculated from the matrix product of the error matrix with itself as a scalar indicator of the error.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The first and second derivatives of the energy with respect to the X variables (or the MO coefficients) can be written in terms of the MO coefficients or the corresponding density matrix elements, as given by eq. (3.54). The DFF method forms a linear combination of the previous iterations to zero as possible. In the functional Carlo approach, the previous iterations are actually used.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The gradient of the energy is an off-diagonal element of the molecular Fock matrix, which is analytically calculated from the matrix product of the error matrix with itself as a scalar indicator of the error.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The first and second derivatives of the energy with respect to the X variables (or the MO coefficients) can be written in terms of the MO coefficients or the corresponding density matrix elements, as given by eq. (3.54). The DFF method forms a linear combination of the previous iterations to zero as possible. In the functional Carlo approach, the previous iterations are actually used.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.

The gradient of the energy is an off-diagonal element of the molecular Fock matrix, which is analytically calculated from the matrix product of the error matrix with itself as a scalar indicator of the error.

The density matrix elements cannot be varied freely, however, as the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals. The exponential may be written as a series expansion, and the energy expanded in terms of the X variables describing the occupied–virtual mixing of the orbitals.
3.8.2 Ensuring that the HF energy is a minimum and the correct minimum

The standard iterative procedure produces a solution where the variation of the HF energy with respect to the MO coefficients are zero, in order to ensure that the solution corresponds to an energy minimum, the second derivatives should also be calculated. This is a matrix of the number of occupied MOs multiplied by the number of virtual MOs (denoted by $\mathbf{D}_{2\text{nd}}$). In order to find the second-order matrix, the function energy state by extracting an electron from an occupied orbital, i.e. the function $\mathbf{D}_{2\text{nd}}$ describing the solution is computed. In practice, the function $\mathbf{D}_{2\text{nd}}$ is usually obtained by evaluating the derivative of the energy with respect to the MO coefficients. The problem of convergence to saddle points in the wave function parameter space is rare. The positive definiteness of the $\mathbf{D}_{2\text{nd}}$ matrix at the minimum ensures that the solution is a local minimum; there may be other minima with lower energies.

The Newton–Raphson method has the advantage of being quadratically convergent, i.e. sufficiently near the minimum it converges very fast. The main problem with Newton–Raphson methods for wave function optimization is that the matrices become very large. Thus, in practice, many of the terms in the second-order matrix may be calculated by using the augmented Hessian techniques discussed in Section 12.2. These methods are significantly more powerful than the Newton–Raphson approach and are used in the optimization of large systems.

3.8.3 Use of symmetry

From group theory, it may be shown that an integral can only be non-zero if the integrand function transforms under the symmetry operations of the group in the same way as the coordinates. For example, the coordinates $\mathbf{r}_1$ and $\mathbf{r}_2$ transforms under the symmetry operations of the point group (number of symmetry axes proportional to the size of the group). Although the large majority of molecules do not have any symmetry axes, the proportion of small symmetric molecules is not zero. Almost all ab initio programs employ symmetry as a tool for reducing the computational effort.

Electronic structure methods employ wave function optimization to find wave functions that are solutions of the Schrödinger equation. The error in the optimization step is the non-trivial density matrix derived from the optimization process. The idempotency condition ensures that each orbital is occupied by exactly one electron. E. Cancès has shown that relaxing this condition to allow fractional occupation during the optimization improves the convergence, a procedure named relaxed constraint algorithm (RCA) and which was subsequently improved using ideas from the DIIS algorithm, leading to the EDIIS method. The optimization in terms of density matrix elements has the potential advantage that the matrix becomes sparse for large systems, and can therefore be solved by techniques that scale linearly with the system's size.

The Newton–Raphson method has the advantage of being quadratically convergent, i.e. sufficiently near the minimum it converges very fast. The main problem with Newton–Raphson methods for wave function optimization is that the matrices become very large. Thus, in practice, many of the terms in the second-order matrix may be calculated by using the augmented Hessian techniques discussed in Section 12.2. These methods are significantly more powerful than the Newton–Raphson approach and are used in the optimization of large systems.

The problem of convergence to saddle points in the wave function parameter space is rare. The positive definiteness of the $\mathbf{D}_{2\text{nd}}$ matrix at the minimum ensures that the solution is a local minimum; there may be other minima with lower energies.

The Newton–Raphson method has the advantage of being quadratically convergent, i.e. sufficiently near the minimum it converges very fast. The main problem with Newton–Raphson methods for wave function optimization is that the matrices become very large. Thus, in practice, many of the terms in the second-order matrix may be calculated by using the augmented Hessian techniques discussed in Section 12.2. These methods are significantly more powerful than the Newton–Raphson approach and are used in the optimization of large systems.

The symmetry of the molecule can be used to reduce the computational effort. For example, the coordinates $\mathbf{r}_1$ and $\mathbf{r}_2$ transforms under the symmetry operations of the point group (number of symmetry axes proportional to the size of the group). Although the large majority of molecules do not have any symmetry axes, the proportion of small symmetric molecules is not zero. Almost all ab initio programs employ symmetry as a tool for reducing the computational effort.
Each of the Fe atoms is formally in the \(+\text{III}\) oxidation state, and therefore has a \(d^5\) configuration. A high-spin state corresponding to all the ten \(d\)-electrons being aligned can readily be described by a single-determinant wave function, but the situation becomes more complicated for a low-spin singlet state. A singlet HF wave function must have an equal number of orbitals with \(a\) and \(b\) electron spin, but this can be obtained in several different ways. If each metal atom is in a high-spin state, an overall singlet state must have all the \(d\)-orbitals on one Fe atom occupied by electrons with \(a\) spin, while all the \(d\)-orbitals on the other Fe atom must be occupied by electrons with \(b\) spin. An alternative singlet state, however, can be generated by coupling the single unpaired electron from the two Fe centres ... becomes more complicated if intermediate (triplet, quintet, etc.) spin states are desired, and for mixed valence states (Fe\(^{2+}/\text{Fe}^{3+}\)).

The quality of the initial guess orbitals influences the number of iterations necessary for achieving convergence. As each iteration involves a computational effort proportional to \(M^4\), it is of course desirable to generate as good a guess as possible. Different 

More sophisticated procedures involve taking the Hartree-Fock (HF) or density matrix equations for the Hartree-Fock equations, generating a set of orbitals that are to be diagonalized. This corresponds to diagonalizing the one-electron density matrix, a zero matrix, totally neglected the electron-electron repulsion terms. The density matrix, in turn, is obtained from the Kohn-Sham equations, which provide a self-consistent field (SCF) approximation to the Kohn-Sham density functional theory. The SCF method is based on the assumption that the wave function can be written as a single determinant, a single Slater determinant, or a single configuration state function (CSF).

The question as to whether the energy is a minimum is closely related to the concept of wave function stability. If a lower energy HF solution can be found, the wave function is said to possess a singlet instability. It is also possible that an HF type wave function is a minimum in the coefficient space, but is a saddle point if the constraint of double occupancy of each MO is relaxed. This indicates that a lower energy wave function of the UHF type can be constructed, and this is called a triplet instability. It should be noted that in order to generate such UHF wave functions for a singlet state, an initial guess of the SCF coefficients must be specified that has the spatial parts of at least one set of \(a\) and \(b\) MOs different. There are other types of such instabilities, such as relaxing the constraint that the MOs should be real (allowing complex orbitals) or the constraint that a MO should only have one spin function. Relaxing the latter produces the "general" HF method, where each MO is written as a spatial part having \(a\) spin plus another spatial part having \(b\) spin. Such wave functions are no longer eigenfunctions of the \(S_z\) operator, and are rarely used.

Another aspect of wave function instability concerns symmetry breaking, i.e., the breaking of the symmetry of the wave function by the presence of a single atom with \(C_c\) symmetry, but the \(C_c\) symmetry wave function corresponding to a (first-order) saddle point. The lowest energy HF solution has only \(C_c\) symmetry, and this is the only symmetry breaking phenomenon that can be used to generate a singlet state. However, the presence of such symmetry breaking phenomena in a system with \(C_c\) symmetry can lead to a singlet instability, which can be avoided by using a more flexible wave function (e.g., a UHF wave function).
3.8.5 Direct SCF

The number of two-electron integrals formally grows as the fourth power of the size of the basis set. Owing to permutation symmetry (the following integrals are identical: $(2|\Psi_i\Psi_j\rangle = (2|\Psi_j\Psi_i\rangle)$), the total number is approximately $\frac{1}{3} M^4$ integrals. Each integral is a floating point number associated with four indices indicating which basis functions are involved in the integral. Storing a floating point number in double precision (which is necessary for calculating the energy with an accuracy of ~14 digits) requires 64 bits = 8 bytes. A basis set with 100 functions thus generates $\sim 12 \times 10^4$ integrals, requiring ~100 Mbytes of disk space or memory. The disk space required for storing the integrals rises rapidly, thus a basis set with 1000 functions requires ~1000 Gbytes of disk space (or memory). This is out of reach for most computers. In practice, the storage requirement is somewhat less, since many of the integrals are small, and can be ignored. Typically, a cutoff around $\sim 10^{-14}$ is employed: if the integral is less than this value it is not stored, and consequently makes a zero contribution to the construction of the Fock matrix in the iterative procedure. However, the disk space requirement effectively limits conventional HF methods to basis sets smaller than ~500 functions. Older computers had only very limited amounts of memory, and disk storage of the integrals was the only option. Modern machines often have quite significant amounts of memory – a few hundred Gbytes is not uncommon. For small- and medium-sized systems, it may be possible to store all the integrals in memory instead of on disk. Such “in-core” methods are very efficient for performing an HF calculation. The integrals are only calculated once, and each SCF iteration is just a multiplication of the integral tensor with a density matrix to form the Fock matrix (eq. (3.53)). Essentially all machines have optimized routines for doing matrix multiplication efficiently. The only limitation is the quartic ($M^4$) growth of the memory requirement with basis set size, which in practice restricts such in-core methods to basis sets with less than ~200 functions.

The disk space (or memory) requirement can be reduced dramatically by performing the SCF in a direct fashion. In the direct SCF method, the integrals are calculated from scratch in each iteration. At first this would appear to involve a computational effort that is larger than a conventional HF calculation by a factor close to the number of iterations. There are, however, a number of considerations that often make direct SCF methods computationally quite competitive or even advantageous.

In disk-based methods, all the integrals are first calculated and written to disk. To reduce the disk space requirement, the four indices associated with each integral are “packed” into a single number, and written to disk. The whole set of integrals must be read in each iteration, and the indices “unpacked” before the integrals are multiplied with the proper density matrix elements and added to the Fock matrix. Typically, half the time in an SCF procedure is spent calculating the integrals and writing them to disk, the other half is spent reading, unpacking and forming the Fock matrix. This takes 20 times. In a direct approach, there is no overhead due to packing/unpacking of indices, or writing/reading of integrals.

In disk-based methods, only integrals larger than a certain cutoff are saved. In direct methods, it is possible to ignore additional integrals. The contribution to a Fock matrix element is a product of density matrix elements and two-electron integrals. In disk-based methods, the density matrix is not known when the integrals are calculated, and all integrals above the cutoff must be saved and processed in each iteration. In direct methods, however, the density matrix is known at the time when the integrals are calculated. Thus if the product of the density matrix elements and the integral is less than the cutoff, the integral can be ignored. Of course, this is only a saving if an estimate of the size of the integral is available before it is actually calculated. One such estimate is the Schwarz inequality (eq. (3.72)), but more advanced screening methods have also been developed.

$$ \|a|b\rangle \leq \|aa\|bb\rangle^{1/2} \|ff\|dd\rangle^{1/2} $$

The number of two-centre integrals on the right-hand side is quite small (of the order of $M^2$) and can easily be calculated beforehand. Thus if the product of the density matrix elements and the integral is less than the cutoff, the integral does not need to be calculated. In practice, integrals are calculated in batches, where a batch is a collection of integrals having the same exponent. For a $|nppp\rangle$ type batch there are thus 81 individual integrals, a $(dddd)$ type batch has 625 individual integrals, etc. The integral screening is normally done at the batch level, i.e. if the largest term is smaller than a given cutoff, the whole batch can be neglected.

The above integral screening is even more advantageous if the Fock matrix is formed incrementally. Consider two sequential density and Fock matrices in the iterative procedure (eq. (3.53)).

$$ \begin{align*}
F_{ij} &= h + G_{ij} \\
F_{ij} &= \frac{h + G_{ij}}{h + G_{ij}} \\
F_{ij} &= G_{ij} \\
\Delta F_{ij} &= G_{ij} - G_{ij} \\
\end{align*} $$

The change in the Fock matrix depends only on the change in the density matrix. Combined with the above screening procedure, it is thus only necessary to calculate those integrals to be multiplied with density matrix elements that have changed significantly since the last iteration. As the SCF converges, there are fewer and fewer integrals that need to be calculated.

The formal scaling of HF methods is $M^4$, since the total number of two-electron integrals increases as $M^4$. As just seen, however, we do not need to calculate all the two-electron integrals – many can be neglected without affecting the final results. The observed scaling is therefore less than the quartic dependence, but the exact power depends on how the size of the problem is increased. If the number of atoms is increased for a fixed basis set per atom, the scaling depends on the dimensionality of the atomic arrangement and the size of the atomic basis. The most favourable case is a small compact basis set (such as a minimum basis) and an essential one-dimensional system, such as polyacetylene, $H-C=O-H$, or linear alkanes. In this case, the scaling is close to $M^2$ once the number of functions exceeds ~100. A two-dimensional arrangement of atoms (such as a slab of graphite) has a slightly larger exponent dependence, while a three-dimensional system (such as a diamond structure) has a power dependence close to $M^4$. It should be noted that most molecular systems have a dimensionality between two and three – the presence of “holes” in the structure reduces the effective dimensionality to below three. With a larger basis set,
especially if diffuse functions are present, the screening of integrals becomes much less efficient, or equivalently, the molecular system must be significantly larger to achieve the limiting scaling. By using the screening techniques described in the previous section, the screening will be further reduced from each other. The direct calculation requires a large basis set per atom for a fixed sized molecule. For such cases, the observed scaling is often worse than the theoretical $M^{-2}$ scaling is quite modest even if a fixed basis is used. For large systems, the computational cost is long-ranged. In the large system limit, the Coulomb integrals thus dominate the computational cost. By using the screening techniques described in the previous section, the scaling of the total interaction into a near- and far-field. The near-field is evaluated directly while the far-field is calculated by solving the physical space in a more efficient manner. The idea is to split the total interaction into a near- and far-field. The near-field is evaluated directly, while the far-field is calculated by solving the physical space for calculating interactions between point charges. A direct calculation involves a summation over all pairs, i.e. a computational effort that increases with the number of basis functions. The use of methods with a reduced scaling does not necessarily lead to a reduced computational cost for systems that can be studied by the available resources. The crossover point for when the linear scaling is competitive with traditional methods may be so high that it is of little practical use. At present, there is little agreement on the best approach for achieving linear scaling.
available data, but test calculations indicate that the cross-over point involves several thousand basis functions, at least for large systems with modest basis sets.

An alternative approach is to accept a relatively large formal scaling, and focus on reducing the prefactor in the computationally expensive step. Methods relying on the so-called resolution of the identity for splitting the calculation of four-index integrals into three- and two-index quantities belong to this class. At the HF level, the formal scaling is (only) reduced from $M_{\text{basis}}^4$ to $M_{\text{basis}}^3$, but actual timings show that the total computational cost is reduced by roughly an order of magnitude, without compromising the accuracy. Furthermore, the efficiency gain increases with the basis set size, i.e. these methods become very favourable even for small systems when large basis sets are used for achieving high accuracy.

Since the HF method may be formulated and implemented in several different ways, a practical question is which of these methods will be the fastest computationally for a given problem. The scaling only determines which method will be the fastest for large systems, i.e. for $N \to \infty$. An equally important parameter is the prefactor, i.e. the proportionality constant between computational time and system size. A method with a favourable scaling will often have a larger prefactor than a method with a more demanding scaling behaviour. Figure 3.7 illustrates a quartic, quadratic and linear scaling algorithm with different prefactors.

![Figure 3.7](image)

**Figure 3.7** Method scaling with system size

For systems smaller than $N_1$, the most efficient method is the quartic one, the quadratic algorithm is the most efficient for systems sizes between $N_1$ and $N_2$, while the linear scaling method becomes the most efficient beyond $N_2$. Note that $N_2$ may be so large that the total computational resources may be exhausted before the cross-over point is reached.

With the advent of methods that enable the construction of the Fock matrix to be done with a computational effort that scales linearly with systems size, the diagonalization step for solving the HF equations eventually becomes the computational bottleneck, since matrix diagonalization depends on the third power of the problem size, and this cross-over occurs for a few thousand basis functions. As discussed in Section 3.8.1, however, it is possible to reformulate the SCF problem in terms of a minimization of an energy functional that depends directly on the density matrix elements or orbital rotation parameters. This functional can then be minimized for example by conjugate gradient methods (Section 12.2.2), taking advantage of the fact that the density matrix becomes sparse for large systems. The HF method therefore appears to have reached the "holy grail" of quantum chemistry, i.e. linear scaling with system size.

### 3.9 Periodic Systems

Periodic systems can be described as a fundamental unit cell being repeated to form an infinite system. The periodicity can be in one dimension (e.g. a polymer), two dimensions (e.g. a surface) or three (e.g. a crystal), with the latter being the most common. The unit cell in three dimensions can be characterized by three vectors $\mathbf{a}_1$, $\mathbf{a}_2$, and $\mathbf{a}_3$ spanning the physical space, with the length and the angles between them defining the shape. There are seven possible shapes, the simplest of which is cubic, where all vector lengths are equal and all angles are 90°.

![Figure 3.8](image)

**Figure 3.8** A cubic unit cell defined by three vectors

For systems smaller than $N_1$, the most efficient method is the quartic one, the quadratic algorithm is the most efficient for systems sizes between $N_1$ and $N_2$, while the linear scaling method becomes the most efficient beyond $N_2$. Note that $N_2$ may be so large that the total computational resources may be exhausted before the cross-over point is reached.

With the advent of methods that enable the construction of the Fock matrix to be done with a computational effort that scales linearly with systems size, the diagonalization step for solving the HF equations eventually becomes the computational bottleneck, since matrix diagonalization depends on the third power of the problem size, and this cross-over occurs for a few thousand basis functions. As discussed in Section 3.8.1, however, it is possible to reformulate the SCF problem in terms of a minimization of an energy functional that depends directly on the density matrix elements or orbital rotation parameters. This functional can then be minimized for example by conjugate gradient methods (Section 12.2.2), taking advantage of the fact that the density matrix becomes sparse for large systems. The HF method therefore appears to have reached the "holy grail" of quantum chemistry, i.e. linear scaling with system size.

### 3.9 Periodic Systems

Periodic systems can be described as a fundamental unit cell being repeated to form an infinite system. The periodicity can be in one dimension (e.g. a polymer), two dimensions (e.g. a surface) or three dimensions (e.g. a crystal), with the latter being the most common. The unit cell in three dimensions can be characterized by three vectors $\mathbf{a}_1$, $\mathbf{a}_2$, and $\mathbf{a}_3$ spanning the physical space, with the length and the angles between them defining the shape. There are seven possible shapes, the simplest of which is cubic, where all vector lengths are equal and all angles are 90°.

![Figure 3.8](image)

**Figure 3.8** A cubic unit cell defined by three vectors

A unit cell can have atoms (or molecules) occupying various positions within the cell (corners, sides, centre), and the combination of a unit cell and its occupancy is called a *Bravais lattice*, of which there are fourteen possible forms. The periodic (infinite) system can then be generated by translation of the unit cell (Bravais lattice) by lattice vectors $\mathbf{t}$. The *reciprocal cell* is defined by three vectors $\mathbf{b}_1$, $\mathbf{b}_2$, and $\mathbf{b}_3$ derived from the $\mathbf{a}_1$, $\mathbf{a}_2$, and $\mathbf{a}_3$ vectors of the direct cell, and obeying the orthonormality condition $\mathbf{a}_i \cdot \mathbf{b}_j = 2\pi \delta_{ij}$.

$$
\mathbf{b}_1 = 2\pi \frac{\mathbf{a}_2 \times \mathbf{a}_3}{L}, \\
\mathbf{b}_2 = 2\pi \frac{\mathbf{a}_3 \times \mathbf{a}_1}{L}, \\
\mathbf{b}_3 = 2\pi \frac{\mathbf{a}_1 \times \mathbf{a}_2}{L}.
$$

(3.74)

The reciprocal cell of a cubic cell with side length $L$ is also a cube, with the side length $2\pi/L$. The equivalent of a unit cell in reciprocal space is called the (first) *Brillouin zone*. Just as a point in real space may be described by a vector $\mathbf{r}$, a "point" in reciprocal space may be described by a vector $\mathbf{k}$. Since $\mathbf{k}$ has units of inverse length, it is often called a wave vector. It is also closely related to the momentum and energy, e.g. the momentum and kinetic energy of a (free) particle described by a plane wave of the form $e^{i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$ is $\hbar \mathbf{k}$ and $\frac{1}{2} \hbar \mathbf{k}^2$, respectively.
The periodicity of the nuclei in the system means that the square of the wave function must display the same periodicity. This is inherent in the Bloch theorem (eq. (3.75)), which states that the wave function value at equivalent positions in different cells are related by a complex phase factor involving the lattice vector $\mathbf{t}$ and a vector in the reciprocal space.

$$\phi(\mathbf{r} + \mathbf{t}) = e^{i\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{t}} \phi(\mathbf{r})$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.75)

Alternatively stated, the Bloch theorem indicates that a crystallike orbital ($\phi$) for the $n$th band in the unit cell can be written as a wave-like part and a cell-periodic part ($\varphi$), called a Bloch orbital.

$$\phi_n(r) = e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \varphi_n(r)$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.76)

The Bloch orbital can be expanded into a basis set of plane wave functions ($\mathbf{X}$).

$$\varphi_n(r) = \sum_{\alpha} c_{\alpha n} \mathbf{X}_{\alpha n}(r)$$

$$\varphi_{\alpha n}(r) = e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} c_{\alpha n} \mathbf{X}_{\alpha n}(r)$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.77)

Alternatively, the basis set can be chosen as a set of nuclear-centred (Gaussian) basis functions, from which a set of Bloch orbitals can be constructed.

$$\varphi_{\alpha n}(r) = \sum_{\alpha} c_{\alpha n} \mathbf{X}_{\alpha n}(r + \mathbf{t})$$

$$\varphi_{\alpha n}(r) = \sum_{\alpha} c_{\alpha n} \varphi_{\alpha n}(r) \sum_{\alpha} c_{\alpha n} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \mathbf{X}_{\alpha n}(r + \mathbf{t})$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.78)

The problem has now been transformed from treating an infinite number of orbitals (electrons) to only treating those within the unit cell. The price is that the solutions become a function of the reciprocal space vector $\mathbf{k}$ within the first Brillouin zone. For a system with $M_{\text{basis}}$ functions, the variation problem can be formulated as a matrix equation analogous to eq. (3.51).

$$F^k C^k = S^k C^k e^k$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.79)

The $\mathbf{k}$ appears as a parameter in the equation similarly to the nuclear positions in molecular Hartree–Fock theory. The solutions are continuous as a function of $\mathbf{k}$, and provide a range of energies called a band, with the total energy per unit cell being calculated by integrating over $\mathbf{k}$ space. Fortunately, the variation with $\mathbf{k}$ is rather slow for non-metallic systems, and the integration can be done numerically by including relatively few points. Note that the presence of the phase factors in eq. (3.76) means that the matrices in eq. (3.79) are complex quantities.

For a given value of $\mathbf{k}$, the solution of eq. (3.79) provides $M_{\text{basis}}$ orbitals. In molecular systems, the molecular orbitals are filled with electrons according to the aufbau principle, i.e. according to energy. The same principle is used for periodic systems, and the equivalent of the molecular HOMO (highest occupied molecular orbital) is the Fermi energy level. Depending on the system, two situations can occur.

- The number of electrons is such that a certain number of (non-overlapping) bands are completely filled, while the rest are empty.
- The number of electrons is such that one (or more) band(s) are only partly filled.

The first situation is analogous to that for molecular systems having a closed-shell singlet state. The energy difference between the “top” of the highest filled band and the “bottom” of the lowest empty band is called the band gap, and is equivalent to the HOMO–LUMO gap in molecular systems. The second situation is analogous to an open-shell electronic structure for a molecular system, and corresponds to a band gap of zero. Systems with a band gap of zero are metallic, while those with a finite band gap are either insulators or semiconductors, depending on whether the band gap is large or small compared with the thermal energy $kT$.

As mentioned above, the basis functions within a unit cell can be either localized (Gaussian) or delocalized (plane wave) functions. For a Gaussian basis set, the computational problem of constructing the $F^k$ matrix is closely related to the molecular case, involving multi-dimensional integrals over kinetic and potential energy operators. The periodic boundary condition means that the terms involving the potential energy operators in eq. (3.79) become infinite sums over $\mathbf{t}$ vectors. Since the operators involve both positive and negative quantities and only decay as $r^{-1}$, they require special care to ensure convergence to a definite quantity, as for example Ewald sum or fast multipole methods. For a plane wave basis, the construction of the energy matrix can be done efficiently by using fast Fourier transform (FFT) methods for switching between the real and reciprocal space. All local potential operators are easily evaluated in real space, while the kinetic energy is just the square operator in reciprocal space. FFT methods have the big advantage that the computational cost only increases as $N^{\ln N}$, with $N$ being the number of grid points in the Fourier transform.

The solution of eq. (3.79) can be done by repeated diagonalization of the $F^k$ matrix, analogously to the situation for non-periodic systems. A plane wave basis, however, often involves several thousand functions, which means that alternative methods are used for solving the equation.

### 3.10 Semi-Empirical Methods

The cost of performing an HF calculation scales formally as the fourth power of the number of basis functions. This arises from the number of two-electron integrals necessary for constructing the Fock matrix. Semi-empirical methods reduce the computational cost by reducing the number of these integrals. Although linear scaling methods can reduce the scaling of $ab\text{initio}$ HF methods to $-M_{\text{basis}}$, this is only the limiting behaviour in the large basis set limit, and $ab\text{initio}$ methods will still require a significantly larger computational effort than semi-empirical methods.

The first step in reducing the computational problem is to consider only the valence electrons explicitly; the core electrons are accounted for by reducing the nuclear charge or introducing functions to model the combined repulsion due to the nuclei and core electrons. Furthermore, only a minimum basis set (the minimum number of functions necessary for accommodating the electrons in the neutral atom) is used for the valence electrons. Hydrogen thus has one basis function, and all atoms in the second and third
rows of the periodic table have four basis functions (one s- and one set of p-orbitals, \(p_x\), \(p_y\), and \(p_z\)). The large majority of semi-empirical methods to date use only s- and p-functions, and the basis functions are taken to be Slater type orbitals (see Chapter 5), i.e. exponential functions.

The central assumption of semi-empirical methods is the Zero Differential Overlap (ZDO) approximation, which neglects all products of basis functions that depend on the same electron coordinates when located on different atoms. Denoting an atomic orbital on centre \(A\) as \(\psi_A\) (it is customary to denote basis functions with \(\alpha\), \(\beta\), \(\gamma\), and \(\delta\) for \(ab\) \(initio\) methods), the ZDO approximation corresponds to \(\mu_A\psi_B = 0\). Note that it is the product of functions on different atoms that is set equal to zero, not the integral over such a product. This has the following consequences (eqs (3.51) and (3.56)):

1. The overlap matrix \(S\) is reduced to a unit matrix.
2. One-electron integrals involving three centres (two from the basis functions and one from the operator) are set to zero.
3. All three- and four-centre two-electron integrals, which are by far the most numerous of the two-electron integrals, are neglected.

To compensate for these approximations, the remaining integrals are made into parameters, and their values are assigned based on calculations or experimental data. Exactly how many integrals are neglected, and how the parameterization is done, defines the various semi-empirical methods.

Rewriting eq. (3.52) with semi-empirical labels gives the following expression for a Fock matrix element, where a two-electron integral is abbreviated as \(\langle \mu\nu|\sigma\delta\rangle\) (eq. (3.57)).

\[
F_{\mu\sigma} = h_{\mu\sigma} + \sum_{\alpha} D_{\mu\alpha} \langle \mu\nu|\alpha\sigma\rangle - \langle \mu\nu|\alpha\sigma\rangle
\]

(3.80)

Approximations are made for the one- and two-electron parts as follows.

### 3.10.1 Neglect of Diatomic Differential Overlap Approximation (NDDO)

In the Neglect of Diatomic Differential Overlap (NDDO) approximation there are no further approximations than those mentioned above. Using \(\mu\) and \(\nu\) to denote either an s- or p-type (\(p_x\), \(p_y\), or \(p_z\)) orbital, the NDDO approximation is defined by eqs (3.81)–(3.83).

Overlaps (eq. (3.51)):

\[
S_{\mu\nu} = \langle \mu|\nu\rangle = \delta_{\mu\nu}\delta_{\alpha\beta}
\]

(3.81)

One-electron operator (eq. (3.24)):

\[
\mathbf{h} = -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{\nabla}^2 - \sum_{a}^N \frac{Z_a^*}{|\mathbf{R}_a - \mathbf{R}|} = -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{\nabla}^2 - \sum_{a}^N V_a
\]

(3.82)

Here \(Z_a^*\) denotes that the nuclear charge has been reduced by the charge of core electrons.

One-electron integrals (eq. (3.56)):

\[
\langle \mu|\mathbf{h}|\nu\rangle = \langle \mu|\mathbf{\nabla}^2 - V_a|\nu\rangle - \sum_{\alpha}^N \langle \mu|V_a|\nu\rangle
\]

\[
\langle \mu|\mathbf{h}|\nu\rangle = \langle \mu|\mathbf{\nabla}^2 - V_a|\nu\rangle = \sum_{\alpha}^N \langle \mu|V_a|\nu\rangle
\]

(3.83)

Due to the orthogonality of the atomic orbitals, the first one-centre matrix element in eq. (3.83) is zero unless the two functions are identical.

\[
\langle \mu|\mathbf{h}|\nu\rangle = \delta_{\mu\nu}\langle \mu|\mathbf{\nabla}^2 - V_a|\nu\rangle
\]

(3.84)

Two-electron integrals (eq. (3.57)):

\[
\langle \mu|\mathbf{\mathcal{V}}_{\alpha\beta}|\sigma\rangle = \delta_{\alpha\beta}\delta_{\delta\epsilon}\langle \mu|\mathbf{\mathcal{V}}_{\alpha\beta}|\sigma\rangle
\]

(3.85)

### 3.10.2 Intermediate Neglect of Differential Overlap Approximation (INDO)

The Intermediate Neglect of Differential Overlap (INDO) approximation neglects all two-centre two-electron integrals that are not of the Coulomb type, in addition to those neglected by the NDDO approximations. Furthermore, in order to preserve rotational invariance, i.e. the total energy should be independent of a rotation of the coordinate system, integrals such as \(\langle \mu|V_{\alpha\beta}|\nu\rangle\) and \(\langle \mu|\mathbf{\mathcal{V}}_{\alpha\beta}|\nu\rangle\) must be made independent of the orbital type (i.e. an integral involving a p-orbital must be the same as with an s-orbital).

This has as a consequence that one-electron integrals involving two different functions on the same atom and a \(\mathbf{\mathcal{V}}\) operator from another atom disappear. The INDO method involves the following additional approximations, beside those for NDDO.

One-electron integrals (eq. (3.83)):

\[
\langle \mu|\mathbf{h}|\nu\rangle = \langle \mu|\mathbf{\nabla}^2 - V_a|\nu\rangle - \sum_{\alpha}^N \langle \mu|V_a|\nu\rangle
\]

(3.86)

Two-electron integrals are approximated as in eq. (3.87), except that one-centre integrals \(\langle \mu|\mathbf{\mathcal{V}}_{\alpha\beta}|\nu\rangle\) are preserved.

\[
\langle \mu|\mathbf{\mathcal{V}}_{\alpha\beta}|\nu\rangle = \delta_{\alpha\beta}\delta_{\delta\epsilon}\langle \mu|\mathbf{\mathcal{V}}_{\alpha\beta}|\nu\rangle
\]

(3.87)

The surviving integrals are commonly denoted by \(\gamma\).

\[
\langle \mu|\mathbf{\mathcal{V}}_{\alpha\beta}|\nu\rangle = \gamma_{\alpha\beta}\langle \mu|\mathbf{\mathcal{V}}_{\alpha\beta}|\nu\rangle
\]

(3.88)

The INDO method is intermediate between the NDDO and CNDO methods in terms of approximations.

### 3.10.3 Complete Neglect of Differential Overlap Approximation (CNDO)

In the Complete Neglect of Differential Overlap (CNDO) approximation all the Coulomb two-electron integrals are subjected to the condition in eq. (3.87), including
3.11 Parameterization

3.11.1 Modified Intermediate Neglect of Differential Overlap (MINDO)

MINDO/3 has been parameterized for H, B, C, N, O, F, Si, P, S and Cl, although certain combinations of these elements have been omitted. MINDO/3 is derived from the NDDO approximation where the one-centre integrals have a value corresponding to the energy of a single electron experiencing the nuclear charge (\(U_p\)) plus terms from the potential of the other nuclei (\(V_a\)).

\[
\phi(A) = \sum_{\text{elements}} \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma}} e^{-\frac{(Z_A - \rho)^2}{2\sigma^2}} \right)
\]

where \(Z_A\) is the nuclear charge, \(\rho\) is the distance from the nucleus, and \(\sigma\) is a parameter for the function.

Method (2) derives specific atomic properties, such as ionization potentials and excitation energies, in terms of the parameters, and assigns their values accordingly.

Method (3) takes the parameters as fitting constants and assigns their values based on a fit to many (usually molecular) experiments.

The remaining integrals can be made into parameters, which are assigned values based on fitting to many (usually molecular) experimental data. These parameters are introduced in place of some or all of the integrals of the approximation. There are three methods that can be used for transforming the NDDO/CNDO approximations into working computational models.

*(continued)*
3.11.3 Modified Neglect of Diatomic Overlap (MND0)

The core-core repulsion of the Modified Neglect of Diatomic Overlap (MND0) model is given by the second equation in eq. (3.83).

\[ V_{\text{core-core}}(A, B) = \frac{Z_A Z_B}{R_{AB}} \]

where \( Z_A \) and \( Z_B \) are the nuclear charges, and \( R_{AB} \) is the distance between the nuclei. The core-core repulsion is given by the corresponding overlap integral multiplied by the average of two atomic "resonance" parameters, \( b_{\text{MNDO}} \).

3.11.4 Austin Model 1 (AM1)

After some experience with MND0, it became clear that there were certain systematic errors in the MNDO parameters. For example, the overlap integral for diatomic molecules, such as H2, is too small. These errors were traced to the two-centre one-electron integrals arising from the overlap term.

In the AM1 model, the overlap integral is written in terms of the orbital exponents and the one-centre two-electron parameters given in eq. (3.92). The integral becomes a one-electron overlap integral, which is expanded in the basis functions. The resulting parameters are then fitted to experimental data. The AM1 model is more accurate than MNDO, especially for larger molecules and more accurate for hydrogen bonds and aromatic structures.

There are some limitations of the AM1 model:

1. Branched and sterically crowded hydrocarbons (such as neopentane) are predicted to be too unstable, relative to their straight-chain analogues.
2. Four-membered rings are too stable.
3. Weak interactions are unreliable, for example, hydrogen bonds are not predicted correctly.
4. Properly formulated benzene is predicted to be too stable.
5. Hypervalent molecules, such as sulfoxides and sulfones, are too unstable.
6. Activation energies for bond breaking/forming reactions are too high.
7. Non-classical structures are predicted to be unstable relative to classical structures (for example ethyl radical).
8. Peroxide bonds are too short by about 0.1 Å.
9. The C–N bond is too short by about 0.1 Å.
10. The MNDOC4 (for correlation) has the same functional form as MNDO, however, electron correlation is calculated by second-order perturbation theory. The electron correlation of the AM1 model is calculated by fitting the correlated MNDOC4 results to experimental data. The correlation correction of the AM1 model is not as good as the correlated MNDOC4 model, but it is still used for some types of calculations where MNDO is known to give better results.

Each of the AM1, AM2, and PM3 methods involves at least 12 parameters per atom, which means that the two-electron integrals must be treated carefully. The overlap integral is written in terms of the orbital exponents and the one-centre two-electron parameters given in eq. (3.92). The integral becomes a one-electron overlap integral, which is expanded in the basis functions. The resulting parameters are then fitted to experimental data. The AM1 model is more accurate than MNDO, especially for larger molecules and more accurate for hydrogen bonds and aromatic structures.
remedy this, the core–core function was modified by adding Gaussian functions, and the whole model was re-parameterized. The result was called Austin Model 1 (AM1), in honour of Dewar’s move to the University of Austin at the time. The core–core repulsion of AM1 has the form given in eq. (3.95).

\[ V_{\infty}^{AM1}(A, B) = V_{\infty}^{MNDO}(A, B) + \frac{Z_A Z_B}{R_{AB}} \sum_s (a_{sA} e^{-\beta_s r_{As}} + a_{sB} e^{-\beta_s r_{Bs}})^2 \]  

(3.95)

Here \( k \) is between 2 and 4, depending on the atom. It should be noted that the Gaussian functions were added more or less as patches onto the underlying parameters, which explains why a different number of Gaussians is used for each atom. As for MNDO, the \( G_s, G_{sp}, G_{p}, G_{pp} \) and \( H_{sp} \) parameters are taken from atomic spectra, while the rest, including the \( a_k, b_k \) and \( c_k \) constants, are fitted to molecular data.

Some known improvements and limitations of the AM1 model are:

1. AM1 does predict hydrogen bonds with an approximately correct strength, but the geometry is often far from correct.
2. Activation energies are much improved over MNDO.
3. Hypervalent molecules are improved over MNDO, but still have significantly larger errors than other types of compounds.
4. Alkyl groups are systematically too stable by ~8 kJ/mol per CH₂ group.
5. Nitro compounds are systematically too unstable.
6. Peroxide bonds are too short by ~0.17 Å.
7. Phosphorus compounds have problems when atoms are ~3 Å apart, producing wrong geometries. \( P=O \) for example is predicted to have a \( P=P \) bond differing by ~0.4 Å, although experimentally they are identical.
8. The gauche conformation in ethanol is predicted to be more stable than the trans.

3.11.5 Modified Neglect of Diatomic Overlap, Parametric Method number 3 (PM3)

The parameterization of MNDO and AM1 had been done essentially by hand, taking the \( G_{sp}, G_{p}, G_{pp}, G_{s}, G_{sp}, G_{p} \) and \( H_{sp} \) parameters from atomic data and varying the rest until a satisfactory fit had been obtained. Since the optimization was done by hand, only relatively few reference compounds could be included. J. J. P. Stewart made the optimization process automatic by deriving and implementing formulas for the derivative of a suitable error function with respect to the parameters. All parameters could then be optimized simultaneously, including the two-electron terms, and a significantly larger training set with several hundred data could be employed. In this re-parameterization, the AM1 expression for the core–core repulsion (eq. (3.65)) was kept, except that only two Gaussians were assigned to each atom. These Gaussian parameters were included as an integral part of the model, and allowed to vary freely.

The resulting method was denoted Modified Neglect of Diatomic Overlap, Parametric Method Number 3 (MNDO-PM3 or PM3 for short), and is essentially AM1 with all the parameters fully optimized. In a sense, it is the best set of parameters (or at least a good local minimum) for the given set of experimental data. The optimization process, however, still requires some human intervention in selecting the experimental data and assigning appropriate weight factors to each set of data.

Some known limitations of the PM3 model are:

1. Almost all sp³-nitrogens are predicted to be pyramidal, which is contrary to experimental data.
2. Hydrogen bonds are too short by ~0.1 Å.
3. The gauche conformation in ethanol is predicted to be more stable than the trans.
4. Bonds between Si and Cl, Br and I are underestimated, the Si—I bond in \( H_2SiI \), for example, is too short by ~0.4 Å.
5. \( HNNNH_2 \) is predicted to have a \( C_\infty \) structure, while the experimental result is \( C_2 \).
6. The charge on nitrogen atoms is often of “incorrect” sign and “unrealistic” magnitude.

Some common limitations of MNDO, AM1 and PM3 are:

1. Rotational barriers for bonds that have partly double bond character are significantly too low. The barrier for rotation around the central bond in butadiene is calculated to be only 2–8 kJ/mol, in contrast to the experimental value of 25 kJ/mol. Similarly, the rotational barrier around the \( C—N \) bond in amides is calculated to be 30–50 kJ/mol, which is roughly a factor of two smaller than the experimental value. A purely ad hoc fix has been made by adding a force field rotational term to the \( C—N \) bond that raises the value to ~100 kJ/mol and brings it into better agreement with experimental data.
2. Weak interactions, such as van der Waals complexes or hydrogen bonds, are poorly predicted. Either the interaction is too weak, or the minimum energy geometry is wrong.
3. Conformational energies for peptides are poorly reproduced.
4. The bond length to nitroxylic groups is underestimated. The \( N—N \) bond in \( N_2O_3 \), for example, is ~0.7 Å too short.
5. Although MNDO, AM1 and PM3 have parameters for some metals, these are often based on only a few experimental data. Calculations involving metals should thus be treated with care.

The MNDO, AM1 and PM3 methods have been parameterized for most of the main group elements, and parameters for many of the transition metals are also being developed under the name PM3(tm), which includes d-orbitals. The PM3(tm) set of parameters are determined exclusively from geometrical data (X-ray) since there are very few reliable energetic data available for transition metal compounds.

3.11.6 Parametric Method number 5 (PM5) and PDDG/PM3 methods

Two approaches have appeared that try to further improve on the performance of the PM3 method. The PM5 (PM4 being an unpublished experimental version) method reintroduces diatomic parameters for the core–core repulsion, and the published results suggest that PM5 represent a slight improvement on the PM3 results. No details of the methodology and parameterization have been published so far.

A similar approach using Pairwise Distance Directed Gaussian (PDDG) in connection with the MNDO and PM3 methods has also been reported. The idea is related to the concept used in AM1 and PM3 by introducing parameterized Gaussian func-
tions for describing the core–core repulsion, except that the modification is based on interatomic distances, although the parameters are still purely atomic. The latter prevents the exponential increase in parameters with the number of atoms. The available results suggest a slight improvement over the regular MNDO or PM3 methods, but it is difficult to assess whether the improvement is simply due to more fitting parameters or to fundamentally better modelling of the underlying physical problem.

3.11.7 The MNDO/d and AM1/d methods

With only s- and p-functions included, the MNDO/AM1/PM3 methods are unable to treat a large part of the periodic table. Furthermore, from ab initio calculations it is known that d-orbitals significantly improve the results for compounds involving second row elements, especially hypervalent species. The main problem in extending the NDDO formalism to include d-orbitals is the significant increase in distinct two-electron integrals that ultimately must be assigned suitable values. For an sp-basis there are only five one-centre two-electron integrals, while there are 17 in an spd-basis. Similarly, the number of two-centre two-electron integrals rises from 22 to 491 when d-functions are included.

Thiel and Voityuk have constructed a workable NDDO model that also includes d-orbitals for use in connection with MNDO, called MNDO/d.56 With reference to the above description for MNDO/AM1/PM3, it is clear that there are immediately three new parameters: \(z_d\), \(U_d\) and \(b_d\) (eqs (3.90) and (3.91)). Of the 12 new one-centre two-electron integrals, only one \(G_{dd}\) is taken as a freely varied parameter. The other 11 are calculated analytically based on pseudo-orbital exponents, which are assigned such that the analytical formulas regenerate \(G_{ss}\), \(G_{pp}\) and \(G_{dd}\).

With only s- and p-functions present, the two-centre two-electron integrals can be modelled by multipoles up to order 4 (quadrupoles), however, with d-functions present multipoles up to order 4 are neglected. The resulting MNDO/d typically employs 15 parameters per atom and it currently contains parameters for the following elements (beyond those already present in MNDO): Na, Mg, Al, Si, P, S, Cl, Br, I, Zn, Cd and Hg. Recently this technology has been used in connection with the AM1 model as well, which at least for phosphorus yields a further improvement.57

3.11.8 Semi Ab Initio Method 1

The philosophy behind the Semi Ab Initio Method 1 (SAM1 and SAMID) model is slightly different from the other “modified” methods.5 It is again based on the NDDO approximation, but instead of replacing all integrals with parameters, the one- and two-centre two-electron integrals are calculated directly from the atomic orbitals. These integrals are then scaled by a function containing adjustable parameters to fit experimental data \(R_{\text{core}}\), being the interatomic distance.

\[
\langle \mu_1 \sigma_3 | \mu_2 \sigma_4 \rangle \rightarrow f(R_{\text{core}}) | \mu_1 \sigma_3 | \mu_2 \sigma_4 \rangle
\]  

(3.96)

The advantage is that basis sets involving d-orbitals are readily included (defining the SAM1D method), making it possible to perform calculations on a larger fraction of the periodic table. The SAM1 method explicitly uses the minimum STO-3G basis set, but it is in principle also possible to use extended basis sets with this model. The actual calculation of the integrals makes the SAM1 method somewhat slower than MNDO/AM1/PM3, but only by a factor of ~2. The SAM1/SAMID methods have been parameterized for these elements H, Li, C, N, O, F, Si, P, S, Cl, Fe, Cu, Br and I. Although the SAM1 method was proposed in 1993, no details of the functional form or parameterization have been published, and there do not appear to have been any recent developments.

3.12 Performance of Semi-Empirical Methods

The electronic energy (including the core–core repulsion) calculated by MNDO, MNDO, MNDO/d, AM1 and PM3 is, in analogy with ab initio methods, the total energy relative to a situation where the nuclei (with their core electrons) and the valence electrons are infinitely separated. The electronic energy is normally converted to a heat of formation by subtracting the electronic energy of the isolated atoms that make up the system, and adding the experimental atomic heat of formation. It should be noted that thermodynamic corrections (e.g. zero point energies, see Section 13.5.5) should not be added to the \(\Delta H_f\) values, as these are included implicitly by the parameterization.

\[
\Delta H_f(\text{molecule}) = E_{\text{tot}}(\text{molecule}) - \sum_{\text{atoms}} E_{\text{elec}}(\text{atoms}) - \sum_{\text{atoms}} \Delta H_f(\text{atom})
\]  

(3.97)

Some typical errors in heat of formation for the MNDO, AM1 and PM3 methods are given in Table 3.1.59 The exact numbers of course depend on which, and how many, compounds have been selected for comparison, thus the numbers should only be taken as a guideline for the accuracy expected.

Table 3.1 Average heat of formation error (kJ/mol)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Number of compounds</th>
<th>MNDO</th>
<th>AM1</th>
<th>PM3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H, C, N, O</td>
<td>276</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>352</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All normal valent</td>
<td>607</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypervalent</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>437</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>713</td>
<td>193</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some typical errors in bond distances are given in Table 3.2.

Table 3.2 Average errors in bond distances (Å)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond to</th>
<th>MNDO</th>
<th>AM1</th>
<th>PM3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>0.015</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>0.015</td>
<td>0.014</td>
<td>0.012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>0.017</td>
<td>0.011</td>
<td>0.006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>0.023</td>
<td>0.017</td>
<td>0.011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si</td>
<td>0.030</td>
<td>0.029</td>
<td>0.045</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The negative charge on nitrogen produced by PM3 is significantly smaller than by the other methods, but it should be noted that atomic charges are not well-defined quantities, as discussed in Chapter 9. It is expected that the error decreases in the order MNDO > AM1 > PM3. This is indeed what is observed in the above tables. It should be noted, however, that the data in the tables refer to averages, thus for specific compounds or classes of compounds the ordering may be different. Bonds between silicon and iodine with PM3 are examples where a specific compound may be poorly described, although the average description for all compounds is better. It is clear that the PM3 method will perform better than AM1 in an average sense since the two-electron integrals are optimized to give a better fit to the given molecular data set. This does not mean, however, that PM3 necessarily will perform better than AM1 (or MNDO) for properties not included in the training set. Indeed it has been argued that the AM1 method tends to give more "realistic" values for atomic charges than PM3, especially for compounds involving nitrogen. An often quoted example is formamide, and the Mulliken population analysis by different methods is given in Table 3.3.

### Table 3.3 Mulliken charges in formamide with different methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MNDO</th>
<th>AM1</th>
<th>PM3</th>
<th>HF-6-31G(dp)</th>
<th>MP2-6-31G(dp)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>-0.49</td>
<td>-0.62</td>
<td>-0.13</td>
<td>-0.73</td>
<td>-0.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>-0.39</td>
<td>-0.40</td>
<td>-0.38</td>
<td>-0.56</td>
<td>-0.43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The apparent accuracy of 20–40 kJ/mol for calculating heats of formation with semi-empirical methods is slightly misleading. Normally the interest is in relative energies of different species, and since the heat of formation errors are essentially random, relative energies may not be predicted as well (two random errors of 40 kJ/mol may add up to an error of 80 kJ/mol). This is in contrast to ab initio methods, which are usually better at predicting relative rather than absolute energies, since errors in this case tend to be systematic and at least partly cancel out when comparing similar systems.

### 3.13 Hückel Theory

#### 3.13.1 Extended Hückel theory

The Hückel methods perform the parameterization on the Fock matrix elements (eq. (3.50)), and not at the integral level, as do NDDO/INDO/CNDQ. This means that Hückel methods are non-iterative and they only require a single diagonalization of the Fock (Hückel) matrix. The Extended Hückel Theory (EHT) or Method (EHM), developed primarily by R. Hoffmann, again only consider the valence electrons. It makes use of Koopmans' theorem (eq. (3.47)) and assigns the diagonal elements in the F matrix to be atomic ionization potentials. The off-diagonal elements are parameterized as averages of the diagonal elements, weighted by an overlap integral. The overlap integrals are actually calculated, i.e. the ZDO approximation is not invoked. The basis functions are taken as Slater type orbitals, with the exponents assigned according to the rules of Slater.

$$
\begin{align*}
F_{\alpha\beta} &= -I_{\alpha}

F_{\alpha\beta} &= -\frac{1}{2}K(I_{\alpha} + I_{\beta})S_{\alpha\beta}
\end{align*}
$$

The constant is usually taken as 1.75, as this value reproduces the rotational barrier in ethane. An essentially identical approach has been used for periodic systems within the physics community, where it is here known as the tight binding model. Recent work in this area has used an approach to parameterize against density functional results, thereby providing a computationally very efficient model capable of yielding fairly accurate results.
ELECTRONIC STRUCTURE METHODS: INDEPENDENT-PARTICLE MODELS

3.14 LIMITATIONS AND ADVANTAGES OF SEMI-EMPIRICAL METHODS

Since the diagonal elements only depend on the nature of the atom (i.e. the nuclear charge), this means for example that all carbon atoms have the same ability to attract electrons. After having performed a Hückel calculation, the actual number of electrons associated with atom A, \( r_A \), which depends on the atom type, can be calculated according to eq. (3.99) (see Section 9.1, eqs (9.5) and (9.4)).

\[
F_A = \frac{\alpha_A}{\beta_A} \quad (A \text{ and } B \text{ are not neighbours})
\]

(3.102)

The effective (net) atomic charge \( Q_A \) is given as the (reduced) nuclear charge minus the electronic contribution. \( Q_A = Z_A - r_A \).

\[
\rho = \sum_{i} c_{i}^{2} \alpha_{i} \quad \text{for all } A
\]

(3.103)

The neglect of all three- and four-centre two-electron integrals reduces the construction of the Fock matrix from a formal order of \( 10^4 \) to \( 10^2 \). However, the time required for diagonalization of the Fock matrix grows as the cube of the matrix size, thus \( \rho = \sum_{i} c_{i}^{2} \alpha_{i} \).

The main advantage of extended Hückel theory is that any atomic initialization potential can be used as an initial guess for the density matrix. As discussed in Chapter 15, Hartree-Fock calculations, or calculations using the so-called charge iteration or self-consistent (Hückel) methods, make it possible to optimize geometries with the density calculation using the full matrix of \( 10^4 \times 10^4 \). Several iterations are required for solving the SCF equations, and usually the geometry is also optimized, requiring several calculations at different geometries. This places the current limit of semi-empirical methods at molecules having only a few hundred atoms, with a computational effort that is near the limit of what can be done by hand.

In the simple Hückel model, the approximations are taken to the limit. Only planar conjugated systems of delocalized \( \pi \)-electrons can be handled, i.e. those with the same environment. Additional approximations are taken when going to extended Hückel theory. The effective (net) atomic charge \( Q_A \) is given as the (reduced) nuclear charge minus the electronic contribution:

\[
Q_A = Z_A - \rho_A
\]

(3.104)

(3.105)
empirical methods. Recent developments have therefore concentrated on formulating alternative methods for obtaining the SCF orbitals without the need for diagonalization. This can be achieved, for example, by the use of semi-empirical methods that display linear scaling with the number of atoms, allowing calculations on large systems to be performed efficiently. One such method is the MNDO/AM1/PM3 approach, where the parameters are adjusted to fit a large amount of experimental data. Whether such calculations can produce reasonable results, as compared with experimental data, is questionable, and careful calibration is certainly required. Again it should be emphasized: the ability to predict a variety of properties is not hindered by the presence of a large polarized basis set including diffuse functions, and electron correlation is only included implicitly by the parameters, and no polarizability corrections are used.

References


4 Electron Correlation Methods

The Hartree–Fock method generates solutions to the Schrödinger equation where the real electron–electron interaction is replaced by an average interaction (Chapter 3). In a sufficiently large basis set, the HF wave function is able to account for ~99% of the total energy, but the remaining ~1% is often very important for describing chemical phenomena. The difference in energy between the HF and the lowest possible energy in the given basis set is called the electron correlation (EC) energy.

Physically, \(|f_i>g_f>|0\rangle\) for \(i \neq f\), but \(|f_i>g_f>|0\rangle\) are not necessarily zero. Naively it may be expected that the correlation between pairs of electrons belonging to the same spatial MO would be the major part of the electron correlation. However, as the size of the molecule increases, the number of electron pairs belonging to different spatial MOs grows faster than those belonging to the same MO. Considering for example the valence orbitals for CH₄, there are four intraorbital electron pairs of opposite spin, but there are twelve interorbital pairs of same spin. A typical value for the intraorbital pair correlation of a single bond is ~80k/mol, while that of an interorbital pair (where the two

\[\langle f_i|\Delta E|f_f\rangle = \langle f_i | H | f_f\rangle - \langle f_i | | f_f\rangle\]
Electron correlation methods differ in how they calculate the coefficients in front of the other determinants, with $\alpha_0$ being determined by the normalization condition.

A general multi-determinant wave function can be written as in eq. (4.1), where $\alpha_0$ is usually close to one.

$$\Psi = \alpha_0 \Phi + \sum_{\phi} \alpha \phi$$

Electron correlation methods differ in how they calculate the coefficients in front of the other determinants, with $\alpha_0$ being determined by the normalization condition.

As an example of Chapter 5, one can think of the expansion of an unknown MO in terms of basis functions. The multi-determinant wave function (eq. (4.1)) can similarly be expanded in terms of basis functions.
determinants can be constructed. If all possible determinants in a given basis set are included, all the electron correlation (in the given basis) is (or can be) recovered. For an infinite basis, the nuclei are assumed to have infinite masses (Born–Oppenheimer approximation) and relativistic effects are neglected. Methods that include electron correlation are two-dimensional, the larger the one-electron expansion (basis set size) and the larger the many-electron expansion (number of determinants), the better the results. This is illustrated in Figure 4.3.

Finally a comment on notation. The quality of a calculation is given by the level of theory (i.e., how much electron correlation is included) and the size of the basis set. In this context, the notation of $\psi$, the spin-orbitals, etc., from those given here are used to indicate the size of the basis set. In the present chapter, the MOs are always spin-MOs, and conversion of a restricted summation to unrestricted is always noted explicitly.

If nothing further is specified, this implies that the geometry is optimized at this level of theory. Alternatively, both indices can be allowed to run over all values, and the overcounting corrections that arise are therefore never needed. This is denoted as $\psi$ in the notation after the geometry. $\psi$ indicates the level at which the calculation was performed.

There are three main methods for calculating electron correlation: Configuration Interaction (CI), Many-Body Perturbation Theory (MBPT) and Coupled Cluster (CC). A word of caution before we describe these methods in detail. The Slater determinant notation is often assumed for all basis sets and calculations in this book. However, it is generally not appropriate to use these notations for the more general CI method. Finally, many of the expressions below involve double sums over the spin indices $\alpha$, $\beta$. For a given determinant, $\mu$, the spin indices $\alpha$, $\beta$ are not independent, and the condition $\alpha \neq \beta$ must be satisfied.

4.2 Configuration Interaction

This is the oldest and perhaps the easiest method to understand, and is based on the variational principle (Appendix B), analogous to the HF method. The trial wave function is written as a linear combination of determinants. An exact CI wave function is a procedure known as Configuration Interaction (CI). The MOs used for building the excited Slater determinants are taken from a Hartree-Fock calculation, and the many-electron expansion is denoted as $\psi_{\alpha \beta}$ for the CI wave function.

In order to calculate total energies with a "chemical accuracy" of ~4 kJ/mol (~1 kcal/mol), it is necessary to use sophisticated methods for including electron correlation. In the valence orbitals, with the core being almost independent of the correlation energy associated with the valence electrons. Limiting the number of determinants that can be excited from the valence orbitals to a few is important in the accurate calculation of total energies. The core-core interactions are also removed from the correlation treatment (see Section 3.7). The frozen-core approximation is not justified in terms of total energy. The correlation of the core electrons gives rise to a large number of determinants, and the number of determinants is usually much smaller than the number of determinants that can be excited from the valence orbitals. Furthermore, if we really want to calculate the correlation energies, the standard basis sets are insufficient. In order to express the correlation energies, we need to include the core electrons in the basis set. The core electrons in a standard basis set do not include the core electrons.
occurs if an electron is excited from an \( \text{spin-MO} \) to a \( \text{spin-MO} \), such as the second \( \Psi \Phi \Phi \Phi \) determinant in Figure 4.2. When the HF wave function is a singlet, this excited determinant is (part of) a triplet. ... be written in terms of integrals over MOs, and the spin dependence can be separated out. If there is a different number of \( \text{spin-MOs} \), there will always be at least one integral that is zero. That matrix elements between different spin states are zero may be fairly obvious. If we are interested in a singlet wave function, only singlet determinants can enter the expansion with non-zero coefficients. However, if the Hamiltonian operator includes for example the spin-orbit operator, matrix elements between singlet and triplet determinants are not necessarily zero, and the resulting CI wave function will be a mixture of singlet and triplet determinants.

Consider now the case where an electron with \( \text{spin} \) is moved from orbital \( a \) to \( i \). The diagonal elements in the sum involving the Hamiltonian operator are energies of \( a \)-orbital. The first S-type determinant in Figure 4.2 is of this type. Alternatively, the expansion coefficients equal to zero. The difference and sum of these two determinants describe a singlet state and the stationary conditions in eq. (4.5) can be written as in eq. (4.6)

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
H_{00} - E & H_{01} & \cdots & H_{0n} \\
H_{10} & H_{11} - E & \cdots & H_{1n} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
H_{n0} & H_{n1} & \cdots & H_{nn} - E
\end{pmatrix}
\begin{pmatrix}
a_0 \\ a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_n
\end{pmatrix} = 0
\]

This can also be written as a matrix equation.

\[
(H - E)a = 0
\]

Solving the secular equations is equivalent to diagonalizing the CI matrix (see Section 16.2.4). The CI energy is obtained as the lowest eigenvalue of the CI matrix, and the corresponding eigenvector contains the \( a \) coefficients in front of the determinants in eq. (4.2). The second lowest eigenvalue corresponds to the first excited state, etc.

### 4.2.1 CI Matrix elements

The CI matrix elements \( H_{ij} \) can be evaluated by the strategy employed for calculating the energy of a single determinant used for deriving the Hartree–Fock equations (Section 3.3). This involves expanding the determinants in a sum of products of MOs, thereby making it possible to express the CI matrix elements in terms of MO integrals. There are, however, some general features that make many of the CI matrix elements equal to zero.

- The Hamiltonian operator (eq. (3.23)) does not contain spin, thus if two determinants have different total spin the corresponding matrix element is zero. This situation occurs if an electron is excited from an \( \alpha \) spin-MO to a \( \beta \) spin-MO, such as the second S-type determinant in Figure 4.2. When the HF wave function is a singlet, this excited determinant is (part of) a triplet. The corresponding CI matrix element can be written in terms of integrals over MOs, and the spin dependence can be separated out. If there is a different number of \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) spin-MOs, there will always be at least one integral that is zero. That matrix elements between different spin states are zero may be fairly obvious. If we are interested in a singlet wave function, only singlet determinants can enter the expansion with non-zero coefficients. However, if the Hamiltonian operator includes for example the spin-orbit operator, matrix elements between singlet and triplet determinants are not necessarily zero, and the resulting CI wave function will be a mixture of singlet and triplet determinants.

Such linear combinations of determinants, which are proper spin eigenfunctions, are called Spin-Adapted Configurations (SAC) or Configurational State Functions (CSF). The construction of proper CSFs may involve several determinants for higher excited states. The first D-type determinant in Figure 4.2 is already a proper CSF, but the second D-type excitation must be combined with five other determinants corresponding to rearrangement of the electron spins to make a singlet CSF (actually there are two linearly independent CSFs that can be made). By making suitable linear combinations of determinants the number of non-zero CI matrix elements can therefore be reduced.

If the system contains symmetry, there are additional CI matrix elements that become zero. The symmetry of a determinant is given as the direct product of the symmetries of the MOs. The Hamiltonian operator always belongs to the totally symmetric representation, thus if two determinants belong to different irreducible representations, the CI matrix element is zero. This is again fairly obvious: if the interest is in a state of a specific symmetry, only those determinants that have the correct symmetry can contribute.

The Hamiltonian operator consists of a sum of one-electron and two-electron operators, eq. (3.24). If two determinants differ by more than two (spatial) MOs there will always be an overlap integral between two different MOs that is zero (same argument as in eq. (3.28)). CI matrix elements can therefore only be non-zero if the two
determinants differ by 0, 1 or 2 MOs, and they may be expressed in terms of integrals of one- and two-electron operators over MOs. These connection are known as the Slater–Condon rules. If the two determinants are identical, the matrix element is simply the energy of a single-determinant wave function, as given by eq. (3.32). For matrix elements between determinants differing by 1 (exciting an electron from orbital \( i \) to \( a \)) or 2 (exciting two electrons from orbitals \( i \) and \( j \) to orbitals \( a \) and \( b \)) MOs, the results are given in eq. (4.8) (compare with eq. (3.33), where the \( g \) operator is implicit in the notation for the two-electron integrals (eq. (3.57)).

\[
\langle \Phi | H | \Phi' \rangle = \langle \Phi | \phi_i \rangle \langle \phi_i | H | \phi_j \rangle \langle \phi_j | \phi_a \rangle + \sum_p \langle \phi_i | H | \phi_p \rangle \langle \phi_p | \phi_j \rangle \langle \phi_j | \phi_a \rangle \langle \phi_a | \phi_b \rangle \langle \phi_b | \phi_i \rangle + \text{terms with } 2 \text{ electrons excited simultaneously}.
\]

(4.8)

The matrix element between the HF and a singly excited determinant is a matrix element of the Fock operator (eq. (3.36)) between two different MOs.

\[
\langle \phi_i | H | \phi_a \rangle = \sum_p \langle \phi_i | H | \phi_p \rangle \langle \phi_p | \phi_a \rangle.
\]

(4.9)

This is an occupied–virtual off-diagonal element of the Fock matrix in the MO basis, and is identical to the gradient of the energy with respect to an occupied–virtual mixing parameter (except for a factor of 4), see eq. (3.68). If the determinants are constructed from optimized canonical HF MOs, the gradient is zero, and the matrix element is zero. This may also be realized by noting that the MOs are eigenfunctions of the Fock operator, eq. (3.42).

\[
F_{\phi_i} = \epsilon_i \phi_i,
\]

(4.10)

\[
\langle \phi_i | H | \phi_a \rangle = \epsilon_i \langle \phi_i | \phi_a \rangle = \epsilon_i \delta_{ia}.
\]

The disappearance of matrix elements between the HF reference and singly excited states is known as Brillouin's theorem. The HF reference state therefore only has non-zero matrix elements with doubly excited determinants, and the full CI matrix acquires a block diagonal structure.

In order to evaluate the CI matrix elements we need one- and two-electron integrals over MOs. These can be expressed in terms of the corresponding AO integrals and the MO coefficients.

\[
\langle \Phi | H | \Phi' \rangle = \sum_{\sigma} \sum_{\rho} \int \phi_\sigma \phi_\rho \langle \phi_\sigma | H | \phi_\rho \rangle \int \phi_\rho \phi_\mu \langle \phi_\rho | \phi_\mu \rangle.
\]

(4.11)

Such MO integrals are required for all electron correlation methods. The two-electron AO integrals are the most numerous and the above equation appears to involve a computational effect proportional to \( N^6 \) (\( N \) AO integrals each multiplied by four sets of \( N \) basis MO coefficients). However, by performing the transformation one index at a time, the computational effort can be reduced to \( N^5 \) (4.12)

Each step now only involves multiplication of basis MO coefficients, i.e. the MO dependence is reduced to four \( N \) basis integrals with \( N \) orbitals, since this is the scaling for the AO to MO integral transformation. The transformation is an example of a “rotation” of the “coordinate” system consisting of the AOs, to one where the Fock operator is diagonal, the MOs (see Section 16.2). The diagonal system allows a much more compact representation of the matrix elements needed for the electron correlation treatment. The coordinate change is also known as a four index transformation, since it involves four indices associated with the basis functions.

4.2.2 Size of the CI matrix

The excited Slater determinants are generated by removing electrons from occupied orbitals, and placing them in virtual orbitals. The number of excited SDs is thus a combinatorial problem, and therefore increases factorially with the number of electrons and basis functions. Consider for example a system such as H\(_2\)O with a 6-31G(d) basis. For the purpose of illustration, let us for a moment return to the spin-orbital description. We have 10 electrons and 38 spin-MOs, of which 10 are occupied and 28 are empty. There are \( \binom{10}{2} \) possible ways of selecting \( 2 \) electrons out of the 10 occupied orbitals, and \( \binom{28}{38} \) ways of distributing them in the 28 empty orbitals. The number of excited states for a given excitation level is thus \( \binom{10}{2} \binom{28}{38} \), and the total number of excited determinants will be the sum over 10 such terms. This is also equivalent to \( K_{10,10} \), the total number of ways 10 electrons can be distributed in 38 orbitals.

\[
\text{Number of SDs} = \sum_{n=0}^{10} K_{10,n} K_{10,38-n} = \binom{10}{38} = \frac{38!}{10!(38-10)!}.
\]

(4.13)

Many of these excited determinants will of course have different spin multiplicity (triplet, pentet, etc., states for a singlet HF determinant), and can therefore be left out in the calculation. Generating only the singlet CSFs, the number of configurations at each excitation level is shown in Table 4.1.

The number of determinants (or CSFs) that can be generated grows wildly with the excitation level! Even if the C\(_2\) symmetry of H\(_2\)O is employed, there is still a total of...
7 536 400 singlet CSFs with $A_1$ symmetry. If all possible determinants are included, we have a full CI wave function and there is no truncation in the many-electron expansion besides that generated by the finite one-electron expansion (size of the basis set). This is the best possible wave function, and it is obtained with the given basis. For the water case with a medium basis set, this corresponds to diagonalizing a matrix of size $30\,046\,752 \times 30\,046\,752$, which is impossible. However, normally the interest is only in the lowest (or a few of the lowest) eigenvalue(s) and eigenvector(s), and there are special iterative methods (Section 4.2.4) for determining one (or a few) eigenvector(s) of a large matrix.

In the general case of $N$ electrons and $M$ basis functions the total number of singlet CSFs that can be generated is given by eq. (4.14).

$$\text{Number of CSFs} = \frac{M! (M+1)!}{\left(\frac{N}{2}\right)\left(\frac{N}{2}+1\right)\left(M-N\right)\left(M-N+1\right)}$$

(4.14)

For $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ with the above 6-31G(d) basis there are $\approx 30 \times 10^6$ CSFs ($N = 10, M = 19$), and with the larger 6-31G(2d,2p) basis there are $\approx 106 \times 10^8$ CSFs ($N = 10, M = 41$). For $\text{H}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ with the 6-31G(d) basis there are $\approx 334 \times 10^9$ CSFs ($N = 16, M = 38$).

One of the recent large-scale full CI calculations considered $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ in a DZP type basis with 24 functions. Allowing all possible excitations of the 10 electrons generates 4 516 812 46 determinants. The variational wave function thus contains roughly half a billion parameters, i.e. the formal size of the CI matrix is of the order of half a billion squared. Although a determination of the lowest eigenvalue of such a problem can be done in a matter of hours on a modern computer, the result is a single number, the ground state energy of the $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ molecule. Due to basis set limitations, however, it is still only a few tenths of a millisecond larger than the experimental value. The computational effort for extracting a single eigenvalue and eigenvector scales essentially linearly with the number of CSFs, and it is possible to handle systems with up to a few billion determinants. The factorial growth of the number of determinants with the size of the basis set, however, makes the full CI method unfeasible for all but the very smallest systems. Full CI calculations are thus not a routine computational procedure for including electron correlation, but they are a very useful reference for developing more approximate methods, as the full CI gives the best results that can be obtained in the given basis.

### 4.2.3 Truncated CI methods

In order to develop a computationally tractable model, the number of excited determinants in the CI expansion (eq. (4.2)) must be reduced. Truncating the excitation level at one (CI with Singles (CIS)) does not give any improvement over the HF result as all matrix elements between the HF wave function and singly excited determinants are zero. CIS is equal to HF for the ground state energy, although higher roots from the secular equations may be used as approximations to excited states. It has already been mentioned that only doubly excited determinants have matrix elements with the HF wave function different from zero, thus the lowest CI level that gives an improvement over the HF result is to include only doubly excited states, yielding the CI with Doubles (CISD) model. Compared with the number of doubly excited determinants, there are relatively few singly excited determinants (see for example Table 4.1), and including these gives the CTD method. Computationally, this is only a marginal increase in effort over CISD. Although the singly excited determinants have zero matrix elements with the HF reference, they enter the wave function indirectly as they have non-zero matrix elements with the doubly excited determinants. In the large basis set limit the CISD method scales as $M_{\text{low}}^6$.

The next level in improvement is inclusion of the triply excited determinants, giving the CISDQ method, which is an $M_{\text{low}}^8$ method. Taking into account also quadruply excited determinants yields the CISDQ method which is an $M_{\text{low}}^{10}$ method. As shown below, the CISDQ method in general gives results close to the full CI limit, but even truncating the excitation level at four produces so many configurations that it can only be applied to small molecules and small basis sets. The only CI method that is generally applicable for a large variety of systems is CISD. For computationally feasible systems (i.e. medium-size molecules and basis sets), it typically recovers 80-90% of the available correlation energy. The percentage is highest for small molecules; the molecule gets larger the CISD method recovers less and less of the correlation energy, which is discussed in more detail in Section 4.5.

Since only doubly excited determinants have non-zero matrix elements with the HF state, these are the most important. This may be illustrated by considering a full CI calculation for the Ne atom in a [5s4p3d] basis, where the 1s-electrons are omitted from the correlation treatment. The CI method determines the coefficients from the variational principle, thus Table 4.2 shows that the doubly excited determinants are by far the most important in terms of energy. The singly excited determinants are the second most important, followed by the quadruples and triples. Excitations higher than four make only very small

### Table 4.1 Number of singlet CSFs as a function of excitation level for $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ with a 6-31G(d) basis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Excitation level</th>
<th>Number of $n$th excited CSF</th>
<th>Total number of CSFs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 485</td>
<td>2 556</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>40 040</td>
<td>42 596</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>548 550</td>
<td>591 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 723 540</td>
<td>2 314 666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5 033 210</td>
<td>7 147 876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>8 688 680</td>
<td>15 836 556</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>8 635 645</td>
<td>24 490 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>4 554 550</td>
<td>29 044 751</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1 002 001</td>
<td>30 046 752</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The weight is the sum of $a_i^2$ coefficients at the given excitation level, eq. (4.2). The CI method determines the coefficients from the variational principle, thus Table 4.2 shows that the doubly excited determinants are by far the most important in terms of energy. The singly excited determinants are the second most important, followed by the quadruples and triples. Excitations higher than four make only very small.
contributions, although there are actually many more of these highly excited determinants than the triples and quadruples, as illustrated in Table 4.1. The relative importance of the different excitations may qualitatively be understood by noting that the doubles provide electron correlation for electron pairs. Quadruply excited determinants are important to the singles, and can then be viewed as providing correlation for the "multi-reference" part of the CI wave function.

While singly excited states make relatively small contributions to the correlation energy of a CI wave function, they are very important when calculating properties (Chapter 10). Molecular properties measure how the wave function changes when a perturbation, such as an external electric field, is added. The change in the wave function introduced by the perturbation makes the MOs no longer optimal in the variational sense. The first-order change in the MOs is described by the off-diagonal elements in the Fock matrix, as these are essentially the gradient of the HF energy with respect to the MOs. In the absence of a perturbation, these are zero, as the HF energy is stationary with respect to an orbital variation (eq. (3.39)). As shown in eqs (4.8) and (4.9), the Fock matrix off-diagonal elements are CI matrix elements between the HF and singly excited states. For molecular properties the singly excited states thus allow the CI wave function to "relax" the MOs, i.e. letting the wave function respond to the perturbation.

### 4.2.4 Direct CI methods

As illustrated above, even quite small systems at the CISD level result in millions of CSFs. The variational problem is to extract one or possibly a few of the lowest eigenvalues and eigenvectors of a matrix the size of millions squared. This cannot be done by standard diagonalization methods where all the eigenvalues are found. There are, however, iterative methods for extracting one, or a few, eigenvalues and eigenvectors of a large matrix. The CI problem eq. (4.7) may be written as in eq. (4.15).

$$\begin{align*}
(H - E) \mathbf{a} &= 0
\end{align*}$$

The $H$ matrix contains the matrix element between the CSFs in the CI expansion, and the $\mathbf{a}$ vector the expansion coefficients. The idea in iterative methods is to generate a suitable guess for the coefficient vector and calculate $(H - E) \mathbf{a}$. This will in general not be zero, and the deviation may be used for adding a correction to $\mathbf{a}$, forming an iterative algorithm. If the interested is in the lowest eigenvalue, a suitable start eigenvector may be one that only contains the HF configuration, i.e. $[1,0,0,\ldots]$. Since the $H$ matrix elements are essentially two-electron integrals in the MO basis (eq. (4.8)), the iterative procedure may be formulated as integral driven, i.e. a batch of integrals are read in (or generated otherwise) and used directly in the multiplication with the corresponding $\mathbf{a}$-coefficients. The CI matrix is therefore not needed explicitly, only the effect of its multiplication with a vector containing the variational parameters, and storage of the entire matrix is avoided. This is the basis for being able to handle CI problems of almost any size, and is known as direct CI. Note that it is not "direct" in the sense used to describe the direct SCF method, where all the AO integrals are calculated as needed. The direct CI approach just assumes that the CI matrix elements (e.g. two-electron integrals in the MO basis) are available as required, traditionally stored in a file on a disk. There are several variations on how the $\mathbf{a}$-vector is adjusted in each iteration, and the most commonly used versions are based on the Davidson algorithm.\(^5\)

### 4.3 Illustrating how CI Accounts for Electron Correlation, and the RHF Dissociation Problem

Consider the $H_2$ molecule in a minimum basis consisting of one $s$-function on each center, $\chi_1$ and $\chi_2$. An RHF calculation will produce two MOs, $\phi_1$ and $\phi_2$, being the sum and difference of the two AOs. The sum of the two AOs is a bonding MO, with increased probability of finding the electrons between the two nuclei, while the difference is an antibonding MO, with decreased probability of finding the electrons between the two nuclei.
The HF wave function will have two electrons in the lowest energy (bonding) MO.

\[ \Phi = (Z_1 + Z_2) \]

\[ \Phi = (Z_1 - Z_2) \]  

(4.16)

We have here neglected the normalization constants for both the MOs and the determinant wave function. The bar above the MO indicates that the electron has a spin function, no bar indicates an spin function. In this basis, there are one doubly excited Slater determinant (\( \Phi_{12} \)) and four singly excited Slater determinants (\( \Phi_{01} \)).

\[
\Phi_1 = \phi(1) \bar{\phi}(1) \\
\Phi_2 = \phi(1) \bar{\phi}(2) \\
\Phi_3 = \phi(2) \bar{\phi}(1) \\
\Phi_4 = \phi(2) \bar{\phi}(2) \\
\]  

(4.17)

Configurations \( \Phi_1 \) and \( \Phi_2 \) are clearly the \( 1 \) and \( -1 \) components of a triplet state. The plus combination of \( \Phi_1 \) and \( \Phi_2 \) is the \( 0 \) component of the triplet, and the minus combination is a singlet configuration, Figure 4.4. The \( 1 \) molecule belongs to the \( D_{\infty h} \) point group, and the two MOs transform as the \( \Sigma_g \) and \( \Sigma_u \) representations. The singly excited CSF (\( \Phi_3 - \Phi_4 \)) has overall \( \Sigma_u \) symmetry, while the HF (\( \Phi_0 \)) and doubly excited determinant (\( \Phi_{12} \)) have \( \Sigma_g \). The full 6 \times 6 CI problem therefore blocks into a 2 \times 2 block of singlet \( \Sigma_u \) states, a 1 \times 1 block of singlet \( \Sigma_u \) and a 3 \times 3 block of triplet \( \Sigma_u \) states. Owing to the orthogonality of the spin functions, the triplet block is already diagonal.

The full CI for the \( \Sigma_u \) states consists only of two configurations, the reference HF and the doubly excited determinant.

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
\Phi_{1s}, \Phi_{2s}, \Phi_{1s} - \Phi_{2s}, \Phi_{1s} + \Phi_{2s}, \Phi_{1s} - \Phi_{2s}, \Phi_{1s} + \Phi_{2s}
\end{pmatrix}
\]

(4.18)

In eq. (4.18) the electron coordinates are given implicitly by the order in which the orbitals are written, i.e. \( \phi(1)\beta(2) = \phi(1)\Phi(2)\beta - \beta(1)\alpha(2) \). Ignoring the spin functions (which may be integrated out since \( H \) is spin independent), the determinants can be expanded in AOs.

\[
\Phi_0 = (Z_1(1) + Z_2(1))(Z_1(2) + Z_2(2)) = \chi_1 \chi_2 + \chi_2 \chi_1 + \chi_1 \chi_1 + \chi_1 \chi_1
\]

(4.19)

The first two terms on the right-hand side have both electrons on the same nuclear center, and they describe ionic contributions to the wave function, HFF. The later two terms describe covalent contributions to the wave function, HFF. The HF wave function thus contains equal amounts of ionic and covalent contributions. The full CI wave function may be written in terms of AOs as in eq. (4.20), with the optimum values of the \( a_i \) and \( \alpha_i \) coefficients determined by the variational procedure.

\[
\Psi_C = a_0 \Phi_0 + a_1 \Phi_1 + a_2 \Phi_2 + a_3 \Phi_3 + a_4 \Phi_4
\]

(4.20)

The HF wave function constrains both electrons to move in the same bonding orbital. By allowing the doubly excited state to enter the wave function, the electrons can better avoid each other, as the antibonding MO is now also available. The antibonding MO has a nodal plane (where \( z = 0 \) ) perpendicular to the molecular axis (Figure 4.4), and the electrons are able to correlate their movements by being on opposite sides of this plane. This left-right correlation is a molecular equivalent of the atomic radial correlation discussed in Section 5.2.

Consider now the behaviour of the HF wave function in eq. (4.19) as the distance between the two nuclei is increased toward infinity. Since the HF wave function is an equal mixture of ionic and covalent terms, the dissociation limit is 50% HFH and 50% HH. In the gas phase, all bonds dissociate homolytically, and the ionic contribution should be 0%. The HF dissociation energy is therefore much too high. This is a general problem with RHF type wave functions: the constraint of doubly occupied MOs is inconsistent with breaking bonds to produce radicals. In order for an RHF wave function to dissociate correctly, an even-electron molecule must break into two even-electron fragments, each being in the lowest electronic state. Furthermore, the orbital symmetries must match. There are only a few covalently bonded systems that obey these requirements (the simplest example is HHHe). The wrong dissociation limit for RHF wave functions has several consequences:

(1) The energy for stretched bonds is too high. Most transition structures have partly formed/broken bonds, thus activation energies are too high at the RHF level.

(2) The too steep increase in energy as a function of the bond length causes the minimum on a potential energy curve to occur too “early” for covalently bonded systems, and equilibrium bond lengths are too short at the RHF level.
(3) The too steep increase in energy as a function of the bond length causes the curvature of the potential energy surface near the equilibrium to be too large, and vibrational frequencies, especially those describing bond stretching, are in general too high.

(4) The wave function contains too much "ionic" character, and RHF dipole moments are in general too large.

It should be noted that dative bonds, such as in metal complexes and charge transfer species, in general have RHF wave functions that dissociate correctly, and the equilibrium bond lengths in these cases are normally too long.

The dissociation problem is solved in the case of a full CI wave function in this minimum basis. As seen from eq. (4.20), the ionic term can be made to disappear by setting \( a_1 = -a_0 \). The full CI wave function generates the lowest possible energy (within the limitations of the chosen basis set) at all distances, with the optimum weights of the HF and doubly excited determinants determined by the variational principle. In the general case of a polyatomic molecule and large basis set, correct dissociation of all bonds can be achieved if the CI wave function contains all determinants generated by a full CI in the valence orbital space. The latter corresponds to a full CI if a minimum basis is employed, but is much smaller than a full CI if an extended basis is used.

4.4 The UHF Dissociation, and the Spin Contamination Problem

The dissociation problem can also be "solved" by using a wave function of the UHF type. Here the \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) bonding MOs are allowed to "localize", thereby reducing the MO symmetries to \( C_\infty \).

\[
\Phi_{\text{UHF}} = \Phi_{(1)} \Phi_{(2)}
\]

The optimum value of \( c \) is determined by the variational principle. If \( c = 1 \), the UHF wave function is identical to RHF. This will normally be the case near the equilibrium distance. As the bond is stretched, the UHF wave function allows each of the electrons to localize on a nucleus, causing \( c \) to go towards 0. The point where the RHF and UHF descriptions start to differ is often referred to as the RHF/UHF instability point. This is an example of symmetry breaking, as discussed in Section 3.8.3. The UHF wave function correctly dissociates into two hydrogen atoms, but the symmetry breaking of the MOs has two other, closely connected, consequences: introduction of electron correlation and spin contamination. To illustrate these concepts, we need to look at the \( \Phi_0 \) UHF determinant, and the six RHF determinants in eqs (4.16) and (4.17) in more detail. We will again ignore all normalization constants. The six RHF determinants can be expanded in terms of the AOs as in eq. (4.22).

\[
\Phi_0 = [Z_x Z_s + Z_s Z_x + Z_s Z_s + Z_s Z_s] (\alpha \beta - \beta \alpha)
\]

(4.22)

Since \( 0 \leq c \leq 1 \), the first term shows that UHF orbitals reduce the ionic contribution relative to the covalent structures, compared with the RHF case, eq. (4.19). This is the same effect as for the CI procedure (eq. (4.20)), i.e. the first term shows that the UHF wave function partly includes electron correlation.

The first term in eq. (4.25) can be written as a linear combination of the MO and RHF determinants, and describes a pure singlet state. The last part of the UHF determinant, however, has terms identical to two of those in the triplet \( \Phi \) combination, eq. (4.23). If we had chosen the alternative set of UHF orbital with the \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) spin being primarily on one of the bonds, the triplet \( \Phi \) determinant would still be a pure singlet. For \( c = 0 \), the UHF wave function only contains the covalent terms, which is the correct dissociation behaviour, but also contains equal amounts of singlet and triplet character. When the bond distance is very large, the singlet and triplet states have identical energies, and the spin contamination has no consequence for the energy.

In the intermediate region where the bond is not completely broken, however, spin contamination is important.

Comparing with full CI, the UHF energy is too high as the higher lying triplet state is mixed into the wave function. The variational principle guarantees that the UHF wave function correctly predicts the correct dissociation behaviour.
energy is lower than or equal to the RHF energy since there are more variational parameters. The full CI energy is the lowest possible (for the given basis set) as it recovers 100% of the correlation energy. The UHF wave function thus lowers the energy by introducing some electron correlation, but at the same time raises the energy by including higher energy spin states. At the single-determinant level, the variational principle guarantees that the first effect dominates. If the second effect dominated, the UHF would collapse to the RHF solution. The correlation energy in general increases as a bond is stretched, and the instability point can thus be viewed as the geometry where the correlation effect becomes larger than the spin contamination. Pictorially, the dissociation curves appear as shown in Figure 4.8.

![Figure 4.8](image_url)

Figure 4.8 Bond dissociation curves for H₂

Another way of viewing spin contamination is to write the UHF wave function as a linear combination of pure R(O)HF determinants, e.g. for a singlet state.

$$\Phi_{\text{UHF}} = \alpha \Phi_{\text{RHF}} + a_1 \Phi_{\text{ROHF}} + a_2 \Phi_{\text{ROHF}} + \ldots$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.26)

Since the UHF wave function is multi-determinantal in terms of R(O)HF determinants, it follows that it to some extent includes electron correlation (relative to the RHF reference).

The amount of spin contamination is given by the expectation value of the \(S^2\) operator, \(\left\langle S^2 \right\rangle\). The theoretical value for a pure spin state is \(S_z(S_z + 1)\), i.e. 0 for a singlet \((S_z = 0)\), 0.75 for a doublet \((S_z = 1/2)\), 2.00 for a triplet \((S_z = 1)\), etc. A UHF "singlet" wave function will contain some amounts of triplet, quintet, etc., states, increasing the \(\left\langle S^2 \right\rangle\) value from its theoretical value of zero for a pure spin state. Similarly, a UHF "doublet" wave function will contain some amounts of quartet, sextet, etc., states. Usually the contribution from the next higher spin state than the desired is the most important. The \(\left\langle S^2 \right\rangle\) value for a UHF wave function is operationally calculated from the spatial overlap between all pairs of \(\alpha\) and \(\beta\) spin-orbitals.

$$\left\langle S^2 \right\rangle = S_z(S_z + 1) + N_S - \sum_i \left\langle \phi_i \right| \phi_i \rangle^2 \hspace{1cm} (4.27)$$

If the \(\alpha\) and \(\beta\) orbitals are identical, there is no spin contamination, and the UHF wave function is identical to RHF.

By including electron correlation in the wave function, the UHF method introduces more biradical character into the wave function than RHF. The spin contamination part is also purely biradical in nature, i.e. a UHF treatment in general will overestimate the biradical character of the wave function. Most single spin states are well described by a closed shell wave function near the equilibrium geometry and, in those cases, it is not possible to generate a UHF solution that has a lower energy than the RHF. There are systems, however, for which this does not hold. An example is the ozone molecule, where two types of resonance structures can be drawn.

![Figure 4.9](image_url)

Figure 4.9 Resonance structures for ozone

The biradical resonance structure for ozone requires two singly occupied MOs, and it is clear that an RHF type wave function, which requires all orbitals to be doubly occupied, cannot describe this. A UHF type wave function, however, allows the \(\alpha\) and \(\beta\) orbitals to be spatially different, and can to a certain extent incorporate both resonance structures. Systems with biradical character will in general have a "singlet" UHF wave function different from an RHF.

As mentioned above, spin contamination in general increases as a bond is stretched. This has important consequences for transition structures, which contain elongated bonds. While most singlet systems have identical RHF and UHF descriptions near the equilibrium geometry, it will normally be possible to find a lower energy UHF solution in the TS region. However, since the spin contamination is not constant along the reaction coordinate, and since the UHF overestimates the biradical character, it is possible that the TS actually becomes a minimum on the UHF energy surface. In other words, the spin contamination may severely distort the shape of the potential energy surface. This may qualitatively be understood by considering the "singlet" UHF wave function as a linear combination of a singlet and a triplet states, as shown in Figure 4.10.

The degree of mixing is determined by the energy difference between the pure singlet and triplet states (as shown for example by second-order perturbation theory, see Section 4.8), which in general decreases along the reaction coordinate. Even if the mixing is not large enough to actually transform a TS to a minimum, it is clear that the UHF energy surface will be much too flat in the TS region. Activation energies calculated at the UHF level will always be lower than the RHF value, but may be either higher or lower than the "correct" value, depending on the amount of spin contamination, since RHF normally overestimates activation energies.
From the above it should be clear that UHF wave functions that are spin contaminated (more than a few percent deviation of $\langle S^2 \rangle$ from the theoretical value of $S_z(S_z + 1)$) have disadvantages. For closed shell systems, an RHF procedure is therefore normally preferred. For open-shell systems, however, the UHF method has been widely used. It is possible to use an RHF procedure for open-shell systems, but this leads to computational procedures that are somewhat more complicated than for the UHF case when electron correlation is introduced.

The main problem with the UHF method is the spin contamination, and there have been several proposals on how to remove these unwanted states. There are three strategies that can be considered for removing the contamination:

- During the SCF procedure.
- After the SCF has converged.
- After electron correlation has been added to the UHF solution.

A popular method of removing unwanted states is to project them out with a suitable projection operator (in the picture of the wave function being described in the coordinate system consisting of determinants, the components of the wave function along the higher spin states is removed). As mentioned above, the next higher spin state is usually the most important, and in many cases it is a quite good approximation to only remove this state. After projection, the wave function is then renormalized. If only the first contaminant is removed, this may in extreme cases actually increase the $\langle S^2 \rangle$ value.

Performing the projection during the SCF procedure produces a wave function for which it is difficult to formulate a satisfactory theory for including electron correlation by means of perturbation or coupled cluster methods (Sections 4.8 and 4.9). Projections of the converged UHF wave function will lower the energy (although the projected UHF (PUHF) energy is no longer variational), since the contributions of the higher lying states are removed, and only the correlation effect remains. However, the problem of artificial distortion of the energy surface is even more pronounced at the PUHF level than with the UHF method itself. For example, it is often found that a false minimum is generated just after the RHF/UHF instability point on a bond dissociation curve. Furthermore, the derivatives of the PUHF energy are not continuous at the RHF/UHF instability point. Projection of the wave function after electron correlation has been added, however, turns out to be a viable pathway. This has mainly been used in connection with perturbation methods, to be described in Section 4.8.2.

### 4.5 Size Consistency and Size Extensivity

As mentioned above, full CI is impossible except for very small systems. The only generally applicable method is CISD. Consider now a series of CISD calculations in order to construct the interaction potential between two H$_2$ molecules as a function of the distance between them. Relative to the HF wave function, there will be determinants that correspond to single excitations on only one of the H$_2$ fragments (S-type determinants), single excitations on both (D-type determinants), and double excitations only on one of the H$_2$ fragments (also D-type determinants). This will be the case at all intermolecular distances, even when the separation is very large. In that case, however, the system is just two H$_2$ molecules, and we could consider calculating the energy instead as twice the energy of one H$_2$ molecule. A CISD calculation on one H$_2$ molecule would generate singly and doubly excited determinants, and multiplying this by two would generate determinants that are triply and quadruply excited for the combined H$_2$ system. A CISD calculation of two H$_2$ molecules separated by say 100 Å will therefore not give the same energy as twice the results from a CISD calculation on one H$_2$ molecule (the latter will be lower). This problem is referred to a Size Inconsistency. A very similar, but not identical concept, is Size Extensivity. Size consistency is only defined if the two fragments are non-interacting (separated by say 100 Å), while size extensivity implies that the method scales properly with the number of particles, i.e. the fragments can be interacting (separated by say 5 Å). Full CI is size consistent (and extensive), but all forms of truncated CI are not. The lack of size extensivity is the reason why CISD recovers less and less electron correlation as the systems grow larger.

### 4.6 Multi-Configuration Self-Consistent Field

The Multi-Configuration Self-Consistent Field (MCSCF) method can be considered as a CI where not only are the coefficients in front of the determinants (eq. (4.2)) optimized by the variational principle, but the MOs used for constructing the determinants are also optimized. The MCSCF optimization is iterative like the SCF procedure (if the “multi configuration” is only one, it is simply HF). Since the number of MCSCF iterations required for achieving convergence tends to increase with the number of configurations included the size of MCSCF wave functions that can be treated is somewhat smaller than for CI methods.
guarantee that the solution found by the SCF procedure is a minimum of the energy as a function of the MO coefficients. In order to ensure that a minimum has been found, the matrix of second derivatives of the energy with respect to the MO coefficients can be calculated and diagonalized, with a minimum having only positive eigenvalues. This is rarely checked for SCF wave functions in the large majority of cases the SCF procedure converges to a minimum without problems. MCSCF wave functions, on the other hand, are much harder to converge, and much more prone to converge on solutions that are not minima. MCSCF wave function optimizations are therefore normally carried out by expanding the energy to second order in the variational parameters (orbital and configurational coefficients), analogously to the second-order SCF procedure described in Section 3.8.1, and using the Newton-Raphson-based methods described in Section 12.2.3 to force convergence to a minimum.

MCSCF methods are rarely used for calculating large fractions of the correlation energy. The orbital relaxation usually does not recover much electron correlation, and it is more efficient to include additional determinants and keep the MOs fixed (CI) if the interest is just in obtaining a large fraction of the correlation energy. Single-determinant HF wave functions normally give a qualitatively correct description of the electron structure, but there are many examples where this is not the case. MCSCF methods can be considered as an extension of single-determinant methods to give a qualitatively correct description.

Consider again the ozone molecule with the two resonance structures shown in Figure 4.9. Each type of resonance structure essentially translates into a different determinant. If more than one type of resonance structure is important, this means that the wave function cannot be described even qualitatively correctly at the RHF single-determinant level (benzene, for example, has two equivalent cyclohexatriene resonance structures, and is adequately described by an RHF wave function). A UHF wave function allows some biradical character, with the disadvantages discussed in Section 4.4. Alternatively, a second restricted type CSF (consisting of two determinants) with two singly occupied MOs may be included in the wave function. The simplest MCSCF for ozone contains two configurations (often denoted TCSCF), with the optimum MOs and configurational weights determined by the variational principle. The CSFs entering an MCSCF expansion are pure spin states, and MCSCF wave functions therefore do not suffer from the problem of spin contamination.

Our definition of electron correlation uses the RHF energy as the reference. For ozone, both the UHF and the TCSCF wave functions have lower energies, and include some electron correlation. This type of “electron correlation” is somewhat different from those previously presented at the start of this chapter. In a sense it is a consequence of our chosen zero point for the correlation energy, the RHF energy. The energy lowering introduced by adding enough flexibility in the wave function to be able to qualitatively describe the system is sometimes called the static electron correlation. This is essentially the effect of allowing orbitals to become (partly) singly occupied instead of forcing double occupation, i.e. describing near-degeneracy effects (two or more configurations having almost the same energy). The remaining energy lowering by correlating the motion of the electrons is called dynamical correlation. The problem is that there is no rigorous way of separating these effects. In the ozone example the energy lowering by going from RHF to UHF, or to a TCSCF, is almost pure static correlation. Increasing the number of configurations in an MCSCF will recover more and more of the dynamical correlation, until, at the full CI limit, the correlation treatment is exact. As mentioned above, MCSCF methods are mainly used for generating a qualitatively correct wave function, i.e. recovering the “static” part of the correlation.

The major problem with MCSCF methods is selecting which configurations are necessary to include for the property of interest. One of the most popular approaches is the Complete Active Space Self-Consistent Field (CASSCF) method (also called Full Optimized Reaction Space (FORS)). Here the selection of configurations is done by partitioning the MOs into active and inactive spaces. The active MOs will typically be some of the highest occupied and some of the lowest unoccupied MOs from an RHF calculation. The inactive MOs have either 2 or 0 electrons, i.e. always either doubly occupied or empty. Within the active MOs a full CI is performed and all the proper symmetry-adapted configurations are included in the MCSCF optimization. Which MOs to include in the active space must be decided manually, by considering the problem at hand and the computational expense. If several points on the potential energy surface are desired, the MCSCF active space should include all those orbitals that change significantly, or for which the electron correlation is expected to change. A common notation is [n,m]-CASSCF, which indicates that n electrons are distributed in all possible ways in m orbitals.

As for any full CI expansion, the CASSCF becomes unmanageably large even for quite small active spaces. A variation of the CASSCF procedure is the Restricted Active Space Self-Consistent Field (RASSCF) method. Here the active MOs are divided into three sections, RAS1, RAS2 and RAS3, each having restrictions on the occupation numbers (excitations) allowed. A typical model consists of the configurations in the RAS2 space being generated by a full CI (analogously to CASSCF), or perhaps limited to SDQ excitations. The RAS1 space consists of MOs that are doubly occupied in the HF reference determinant, and the RAS3 space consists of MOs that are empty in the HF. Configurations additional to those from the RAS2 space are generated by allowing for example a maximum of two electrons to be excited from the RAS1 and
a maximum of two electrons to be excited to the RAS3 space. In essence, a typical RASSCF procedure thus generates configurations by a combination of a full CI in a small number of MOs (RAS2) and a CISD in a somewhat larger MO space (RAS1 and RAS3).

The full CI expansion within the active space severely restricts the number of orbitals and electrons that can be treated by CASSCF methods. Table 4.3 shows how many singlet CSFs are generated for an \([n,n]\)-CASSCF wave function (eq. (4.13)), without reductions arising from symmetry.

Table 4.3 Number of configurations generated in an \([n,n]\)-CASSCF wave function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(n)</th>
<th>Number of CSFs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1764</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>19404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>226512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>2,760,615</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The factorial increase in the number of CSFs effectively limits the active space for CASSCF wave functions to fewer than 10–12 electrons/orbitals. Selecting the “important” orbitals to correlate therefore becomes very important. The goal of MCSCF methods is usually not to recover a large fraction of the total correlation energy, but rather to recover all the changes that occur in the correlation energy for the given process. Selecting the active space for an MCSCF calculation requires some insight into the problem. There are a few rules of thumb that may be of help in selecting a proper set of orbitals for the active space:

(1) For each occupied orbital, there will typically be one corresponding virtual orbital. This leads naturally to \([n,m]\)-CASSCF wave functions where \(n\) and \(m\) are identical or nearly so.

(2) Including all the valence orbitals, i.e. the space spanned by a minimum basis set, leads to a wave function that can correctly describe all dissociation pathways. Unfortunately, a full valence CASSCF wave function rapidly becomes unmanageably large for realistic-sized systems.

(3) The orbital energies from an RHF calculation may be used for selecting the important orbitals. The highest occupied and lowest unoccupied are usually the most important orbitals to include in the active space. Using RHF orbital energies for selecting the active space may be problematic in two situations. The first is when extended basis sets are used, where there will be many virtual orbitals with low energies, and the exact order is more or less accidental. Furthermore, RHF virtual orbitals basically describe electron attachment (via Koopmans’ theorem, Section 3.4), and are therefore not particularly well suited for describing electron correlation. An inspection of the form of the orbitals may reveal which to choose: they should be the ones that resemble the occupied orbitals in terms of basis function contribution. The second problem is more fundamental. If the real wave function has significant multi-configurational character, then the RHF may be qualitatively wrong, and selecting the active orbitals based on a qualitatively wrong wave function may lead to erroneous results. The problem is that we wish to include the important orbitals for describing the multi-determinant nature, but these are not known until the final wave function is known.

(4) An attempt to overcome this self-referencing problem is to use the concept of natural orbitals. The natural orbitals are those that diagonalize the density matrix, and the eigenvalues are the occupation numbers. Orbitals with occupation numbers significantly different from 0 or 2 (for a closed shell system) are usually those that are the most important to include in the active space. An RHF wave function will have occupation numbers of exactly 0 or 2, and some electron correlation must be included to obtain orbitals with non-integer occupation numbers. This may for example be done by running a preliminary MP2 or CISD calculation prior to the MCSCF. Alternatively, a UHF (when different from RHF) type wave function may also be used. The total UHF density, which is the sum of the \(\alpha\) and \(\beta\) density matrices, will also provide fractional occupation numbers since UHF includes some electron correlation. The procedure may still fail. If the underlying RHF wave function is poor, the MP2 correction may also give poor results, and selecting the active MCSCF orbitals based on MP2 occupation number may again lead to erroneous results. In practice, however, selecting active orbitals based on for example MP2 occupation numbers appears to be quite efficient, and better than using RHF orbital energies.

In a CASSCF type wave function the CI coefficients do not have the same significance as for a single-reference CI based on HF orbitals. In a full CI (as in the active space of the CASSCF), the orbitals may be rotated among themselves without affecting the total wave function. A rotation of the orbitals, however, influences the magnitude of the coefficients in front of each CSF. While the HF coefficient in a single-reference CISD gives some indication of the “multi-reference” nature of the wave function, this is not the case for a CASSCF wave function, where the corresponding CI coefficient is arbitrary.

It should be noted that CASSCF methods inherently tend to give an unbalanced description, since all the electron correlation recovered is in the active space, with none in the inactive space, or between the active and inactive electrons. This is not a problem if all the valence electrons are included in the active space, but this is only possible for small systems. If only part of the valence electrons are included in the active space, the CASSCF method tends to overestimate the importance of “biradical” structures. Consider for example acetylene where the hydrogen have been bent 60° away from linearity. Using RHF or CASSCF, the wave function will acquire significant biradical character. The true structure may be described as a linear combination of the following three configurations. The structure on the left is biradical, while the two others are ionic, corresponding to both electrons being at the same carbon. The simplest CASSCF wave function that can qualitatively describe this system has two electrons in two orbitals, giving the three
configurations shown above. The dynamical correlation between the two active electrons will tend to keep them as far apart as possible, i.e. favouring the biradical structure. Consider now a full valence CASSCF wave function with ten electrons in ten orbitals. This will analogously tend to separate the two electrons in each bond with one being at each end. The correlation of the electrons in the $\text{C} \equiv \text{H}$ bonds, for example, will place more electron density on the carbon atoms. This in turn favours the ionic structures in Figure 4.12 and disfavours the biradical, i.e. the dynamical correlation of the other orbitals may take advantage of the empty orbital in the ionic structures but not in the biradical structure. These general considerations may be quantified by considering the natural orbital occupancies for increasingly large CASSCF wave functions, as shown in Table 4.4 with the 6-31G(d,p) basis.

### Table 4.4
Natural orbital occupation numbers for the distorted acetylene model in Figure 4.12: only the occupation numbers for the six “central” orbitals are shown

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>$n_5$</th>
<th>$n_6$</th>
<th>$n_7$</th>
<th>$n_8$</th>
<th>$n_9$</th>
<th>$n_{10}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RHF</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UHF</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>1.72</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[2,2]-CASSCF</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>1.62</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[4,4]-CASSCF</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>1.85</td>
<td>1.67</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[10,10]-CASSCF</td>
<td>1.97</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>1.71</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The [4,4]-CASSCF also includes the two out-of-plane $\pi$-orbitals in the active space, while the [10,10]-CASSCF generates a full-valence CI wave function. The unbalanced description for the [2,2]-CASSCF is reminiscent of the spin contamination problem for UHF wave functions, although the effect is much less pronounced. Nevertheless, the overestimation may be severe enough to alter the qualitative shape of energy surfaces, for example turning transition structures into minima, as illustrated in Figure 4.10. MCSCF methods are therefore not “black box” methods such as for example HF and MP (Section 4.8.1); selecting a proper number of configurations, and the correct orbitals, to give a balanced description of the problem at hand requires some experimentation and insight.

### 4.7 Multi-Reference Configuration Interaction

The CI methods described so far consider only CSFs generated by exciting electrons from a single determinant. This corresponds to having an HF type wave function as the reference. However, an MCSCF wave function may also be chosen as the reference. In that case, a CSD involves excitations of one or two electrons out of all the determinants that enter the MCSCF, defining the Multi-Reference Configuration Interaction (MRCI) method. Compared with the single-reference CSD, the number of configurations is increased by a factor roughly equal to the number of configurations included in the MCSCF. Large-scale MRCI wave functions (many configurations in the MCSCF) can generate very accurate wave functions, but are also computationally very intensive. Since MRCI methods truncate the CI expansion, they are not size extensive.

Even truncating the (MR) CI expansion at the singles and doubles level frequently generates more configurations than can be handled readily. A further truncation is sometimes performed by selecting only those configurations that have an “interaction” with the reference configuration (s) above a selected threshold, where the “interaction” is evaluated by second-order perturbation theory (Section 4.8). Such state-selected CI (or MCSCF) methods all involve a preset cutoff below which configurations are neglected. This may cause problems for comparing energies of different geometries, since the potential energy surface may become discontinuous, i.e. at some point the importance of a given configuration drops below the threshold, and the contribution suddenly disappears.

### 4.8 Many-Body Perturbation Theory

The idea in perturbation methods is that the problem at hand only differs slightly from a problem that has already been solved (exactly or approximately). The solution to the given problem should therefore in some sense be close to the solution to the already known system. This is described mathematically by defining a Hamiltonian operator that consists of two parts, a reference ($H_0$) and a perturbation ($H'$). The premise of perturbation methods is that the $H'$ operator in some sense is “small” compared with $H_0$. Perturbation methods can be used in quantum mechanics for adding corrections to solutions that employ an independent-particle approximation, and the theoretical framework is then called Many-Body Perturbation Theory (MBPT).

Let us assume that the Schrödinger equation for the reference Hamiltonian operator is solved.

$$H \Psi = H_0 \Psi + H' \Phi = E_0 \Phi,$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.28)

The solutions for the unperturbed Hamiltonian operator form a complete set (since $H_0$ is Hermitian) which can be chosen to be orthonormal, and $\lambda$ is a (variable) parameter determining the strength of the perturbation. At present, we will only consider cases where the perturbation is time-independent, and the reference wave function is non-degenerate. To keep the notation simple, we will furthermore only consider the lowest energy state. The perturbed Schrödinger equation is given by eq. (4.29).

$$H' \Psi = W \Psi,$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.29)

If $\lambda = 0$, then $H = H_0$, $\Psi = \Phi$, and $W = E_0$. As the perturbation is increased from zero to a finite value, the new energy and wave function must also change continuously, and they can be written as a Taylor expansion in powers of the perturbation parameter $\lambda$. 

### 4.8.1 van Vleck Transformations

The computational issue for MBPT is to solve the equation $H' \Psi = W \Psi$ with $W$ given as a function of $\lambda$ to some desired accuracy. This is often done by diagonalizing $H_0$ at the reference point, then perturbing the eigenvectors through a finite series expansion of $H'$ in powers of $\lambda$.

$$H_0 \Psi = E \Phi,$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.30)

This equation is then solved for each $E$ individually, which requires finding the $E$-dependence of $W$. One approach is to diagonalize $H_0$ at a larger value of $\lambda$, and then solve for $E$ in the usual way.

$$H' \Psi = W \Psi,$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.31)

The problem here is that $W$ is a function of $\lambda$, and $H'$ changes its eigenvalues as a function of $\lambda$. To circumvent this, van Vleck's transformations $\Phi = \Phi_0 + \lambda \Phi_1 + \lambda^2 \Phi_2 + \cdots$ are used. These transformations preserve the orthonormality of the $\Phi_n$ and the $E_n$ are eigenvalues of $H_0$.

$$H_0 \Phi = E \Phi,$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.32)

The van Vleck transformations are then used to transform $H'$ to a new operator $H'$ that preserves the orthonormality of the $\Phi_n$. The perturbed Schrödinger equation is then solved using the same methodology as for the unperturbed case.
4. Many-Body Perturbation Theory

From this it would appear that the \((n-1)\)th-order wave function is required for calculating the \(n\)th-order energy. However, by using the turnover rule and the \(n\)th- and lower order perturbation equations (4.33), it can be shown that knowledge of the \(n\)th-order wave function actually allows a calculation of the \((2n+1)\)th-order energy.

\[ W_{n+1} = \langle \Psi_n | H | \Psi_n \rangle = \sum_{\ell=0}^{\infty} W_{n+1-\ell} \langle \Psi_{n-\ell} | \Psi_n \rangle \]  

(4.35)

Up to this point, we are still dealing with undetermined quantities, energy and wave function corrections at each order. The first-order equation is one equation with two unknowns. Since the solutions to the unperturbed Schrödinger equation generate a complete set of functions, the unknown first-order correction to the wave function can be expanded in these functions. This is known as Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory, and the \(\lambda\) equation in eq. (4.33) becomes eq. (4.36).

\[ \Psi_1 = \sum c_i \Phi_i \]  

(4.36)

Multiplying from the left by \(\Phi_i^*\) and integrating yields eq. (4.37), where the orthonormality of the \(\Phi_i\) is used (this also follows directly from eq. (4.35)).

\[ \sum c_i \langle \Phi_i | H | \Phi_i \rangle - W_0 \sum c_i \langle \Phi_i | \Phi_i \rangle = 0 \]  

(4.37)

\[ c_i E_i - c_i E_0 + \langle \Phi_i | H | \Phi_i \rangle - W_i = 0 \]

\[ W_i = \langle \Phi_i | H | \Phi_i \rangle \]

The last equation shows that the first-order correction to the energy is an average of the perturbation operator over the unperturbed wave function.

The first-order correction to the wave function can be obtained by multiplying eq. (4.33) from the left by a function other than \(\Phi_0\) (\(\Phi_i\)) and integrating to give eq. (4.38).

\[ \sum_{i,j} \langle \Phi_i | H | \Phi_j \rangle - W_0 \sum_{i,j} \langle \Phi_i | \Phi_j \rangle = 0 \]  

(4.38)

\[ c_i E_i - c_i E_0 + \langle \Phi_i | H | \Phi_j \rangle - W_i = 0 \]

\[ W_i = \langle \Phi_i | H | \Phi_i \rangle \]

The expansion coefficients determine the first-order correction to the perturbed wave function (eq. (4.36)), and they can be calculated from the known unperturbed wave functions and energies. The coefficient in front of \(\Phi_i\) for \(\Psi_i\) cannot be determined from
the above formula, but the assumption of intermediate normalization (eq. (4.31)) makes \( c_0 = 0 \). Starting from the second-order perturbation equation (4.33), analogous formulas can be generated for the second-order corrections. Using intermediate normalization (\( c_0 = 0 \)), the second-order energy correction is given by eq. (4.39).

\[
W_2 = \sum d \Delta \Phi
\]

\[
(H_0 - W_0) \left( \sum d \Phi \right) + (H' - W) \left( \sum c \Phi \right) - W d \Phi = 0
\]

\[
\sum d \langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle - W \sum d \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle + \sum c \langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle - W \sum c \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle = 0
\]

\[
d \psi_{\Phi} - dE_0 + \sum c \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle - cW = 0
\]

\[
dE_0 - dE_0 + \sum c \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle - cW = 0
\]

\[
W_1 = \sum c \langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle = \sum \frac{\langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle}{E_0 - E_1}
\]

The last equation shows that the second-order energy correction may be written in terms of the first-order wave function (\( c \)) and matrix elements over unperturbed states. The second-order wave function correction is given by eq. (4.40).

\[
\sum d \langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle - W \sum d \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle + \sum c \langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle - W \sum c \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle = 0
\]

\[
d \psi_{\Phi} - dE_0 + \sum c \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle - cW = 0
\]

\[
dE_0 - dE_0 + \sum c \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle - cW = 0
\]

\[
d = \sum \frac{\langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle}{(E_0 - E_1)(E_0 - E)}
\]

The formulas for higher order corrections become increasingly complex; the third-order energy correction for example is given in eq. (4.41).

\[
W_3 = \sum \frac{\langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle \langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle}{(E_0 - E_1)(E_0 - E)}
\]

The main point, however, is that all corrections can be expressed in terms of matrix elements of the perturbation operator over unperturbed wave functions, and the unperturbed energies.

### 4.8.1 Möller–Plesset perturbation theory

So far, the theory has been completely general. In order to apply perturbation theory to the calculation of correlation energy, the unperturbed Hamiltonian operator must be selected. The most common choice is to take this as a sum over Fock operators, leading to Möller–Plesset (MP) perturbation theory. The sum of Fock operators counts the (average) electron-electron repulsion twice (eq. (3.44)), and the perturbation becomes the exact \( V_\text{e} \) operator minus twice the \( V_\text{e} \) operator. The operator associated with this difference is often referred to as the fluctuation potential. This choice is not really consistent with the basic assumption that the perturbation should be small compared with \( H_0 \). However, it does fulfill the other requirement that solutions to the unperturbed Schrödinger equation should be known. Furthermore, this is the only choice that leads to a size extensive method, which is a desirable feature.

\[
H_0 = \sum b_0 + \sum i j b_{ij} = \sum b_i + 2V_\text{e}
\]

\[
H' = H - H_0 = \sum b_0 + \sum i j b_{ij} - \sum b_i = V_\text{e} - 2V_\text{e}
\]

The zeroth-order wave function is the HF determinant, and the zeroth-order energy is just a sum of MO energies.

\[
W_0 = \langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle = \sum \frac{\langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle}{E_0 - E_1}
\]

Recall that the orbital energy is the energy of an electron in the field of all the nuclei and includes the repulsion to all other electrons, eq. (3.44), and therefore counts the electron-electron repulsion twice. The first-order energy correction is the average of the perturbation operator over the zeroth-order wave function (eq. (4.37)).

\[
W_1 = \langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle = \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle - 2V_\text{e} = -\langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle
\]

This yields a correction for the overcounting of the electron-electron repulsion at zeroth order. Comparing eq. (4.44) with the expression for the total energy in eq. (3.32), it is seen that the first-order energy (sum of \( W_1 \) and \( W_3 \)) is exactly the HF energy. Using the notation \( E(MP) \) to indicate the correction at order \( n \), and \( MP_n \) to indicate the total energy up to order \( n \), we have eq. (4.45).

\[
MP_0 = E(MP_0) = \sum \epsilon_i
\]

\[
MP_1 = E(MP_1) + E(MP_0) = E(HF)
\]

Electron correlation energy thus starts at order two with this choice of \( H_0 \). In developing perturbation theory, it was assumed that the solutions to the unperturbed problem formed a complete set. This in general means that there must be an infinite number of functions, which is impossible in actual calculations. The lowest energy solution to the unperturbed problem is the HF wave function, additional higher energy solutions are excited Slater determinants, analogous to the CI method. When a finite basis set is employed, it is only possible to generate a finite number of excited determinants. The expansion of the many-electron wave function is therefore truncated.
Let us look at the expression for the second-order energy correction, eq. (4.39). This involves matrix elements of the perturbation operator between the HF reference and all possible excited states. Since the perturbation operator is a two-electron operator, matrix elements with singly excited states are also zero, as indicated in eq. (4.46).

\[
\langle \Phi_{HF} | H' | \Phi_{HF} \rangle = \sum_{ij} \langle \Phi_{HF} | H' | \Phi_{HF} \rangle_{ij} \equiv W
\]

(4.46)

The first bracket is zero owing to Brillouin's theorem (Section 4.2.1), and the second contains contributions from doubly excited determinants. This is also shown by the perturbation expansion, the second- and third-order energy contributions from doubly excited determinants being of similar importance.

\[
E_{2} = \sum_{\text{doubly excited states}} \langle \Phi_{HF} | H | \Phi_{HF} \rangle_{ij} \langle \Phi_{HF} | H | \Phi_{HF} \rangle_{ij}
\]

(4.47)

The matrix elements between the HF and a doubly excited state are given by two-electron integrals over MOs (eq. (4.48)). The difference in total energy between two Slater determinants becomes a difference in MO energy (essentially Kohn-Sham Hamiltonians given in eq. (4.49)).

\[
E_{2} = \sum_{ij} \langle \Phi_{HF} | H | \Phi_{HF} \rangle_{ij} \langle \Phi_{HF} | H | \Phi_{HF} \rangle_{ij}
\]

(4.48)

Once the two-electron integrals over MOs are available, the second-order energy correction becomes of the order of the difference in MO energy (essentially Kohn-Sham Hamiltonians given in eq. (4.49)).

\[
E_{2} = \sum_{ij} \langle \Phi_{HF} | H | \Phi_{HF} \rangle_{ij} \langle \Phi_{HF} | H | \Phi_{HF} \rangle_{ij}
\]

(4.49)

The most important contribution to the energy in a CI procedure comes from doubly excited determinants. This is also shown by the perturbation expansion, the second- and third-order energy contributions from doubly excited determinants being of similar importance. This is again consistent with Table 4.2, which shows that these types of excitations are of similar importance.
The main limitation of perturbation methods is the assumption that the zeroth-order wave function is a reasonable approximation to the real wave function, i.e., the perturbation operator is sufficiently small. This is not the typical behavior for the first few terms. In the ideal case, the HF, MP2, MP3, and MP4 results show a monotonic convergence towards the limiting value. However, it is difficult to ascertain whether the perturbation expansion is convergent or not. Although these expansions are not divergent, they may be so slow or erratic that perturbation series cannot be used. For example, the HF wave function is a poor approximation of the ground state for many molecules, and the majority of studies have employed small- or medium-sized basis sets. A convergent series in a DZP type basis may become divergent in a larger basis, especially if diffuse functions are present.

The convergence properties for the perturbation series can be analyzed by considering the partitioned Hamiltonian in eq. (4.28), with $l$ being a parameter connecting the reference system ($l = 0$) with the real physical system ($l = 1$). For $l$ values, the (exact) energy of the ground state can be written as an infinite summation of all perturbation terms. The mathematical theory of infinite series states that this summation is only convergent within a given radius $R$, i.e., the infinite series in eq. (4.50) only has a well-defined value if $|l| < R$. Since we are interested in the situation where $|l| = 1$ (the smallest value of $l$ at which another state becomes degenerate with the ground state), this means that $l$ may be significant for excited states that become degenerate with the ground state.

In practice, only low orders of perturbation theory can be carried out, and it is often observed that the HF and MP2 results differ considerably. The MP3 result moves back towards the HF and MP2 results, while the MP4 result deviates further away. This is expected for systems containing well-separated electron pairs, and that oscillations occur when this is not the case.

The latter encompasses systems containing lone pairs and/or multiple bonds, covering the large majority of molecules. It has been demonstrated that the convergence properties depend on the size of the basis sets, and that oscillations occur when the basis set is not sufficiently large. If diffuse functions are included, it is difficult to ascertain whether the perturbation expansion is convergent or not. Although these expansions are not divergent, they may be so slow or erratic that perturbation series cannot be used. For example, the HF wave function is a poor approximation of the ground state for many molecules, and the majority of studies have employed small- or medium-sized basis sets. A convergent series in a DZP type basis may become divergent in a larger basis, especially if diffuse functions are present.

In practice, only low orders of perturbation theory can be carried out, and it is often observed that the HF and MP2 results differ considerably. The MP3 result moves back towards the HF and MP2 results, while the MP4 result deviates further away. This is expected for systems containing well-separated electron pairs, and that oscillations occur when this is not the case.

The latter encompasses systems containing lone pairs and/or multiple bonds, covering the large majority of molecules. It has been demonstrated that the convergence properties depend on the size of the basis sets, and that oscillations occur when the basis set is not sufficiently large. If diffuse functions are included, it is difficult to ascertain whether the perturbation expansion is convergent or not. Although these expansions are not divergent, they may be so slow or erratic that perturbation series cannot be used. For example, the HF wave function is a poor approximation of the ground state for many molecules, and the majority of studies have employed small- or medium-sized basis sets. A convergent series in a DZP type basis may become divergent in a larger basis, especially if diffuse functions are present.

In practice, only low orders of perturbation theory can be carried out, and it is often observed that the HF and MP2 results differ considerably. The MP3 result moves back towards the HF and MP2 results, while the MP4 result deviates further away. This is expected for systems containing well-separated electron pairs, and that oscillations occur when this is not the case.
MP2 continues to be a computationally cheap way of including the majority of the electron correlation effect.

### 4.8.2 Unrestricted and projected Møller–Plesset methods

When the reference is an RHF type wave function the dissociation limit will normally be incorrect. As a bond is stretched, RHF gives an increasingly poorer description of the wave function, and consequently causes the perturbation series to break down. The use of a UHF wave function allows a correct dissociation limit in terms of energy but at the cost of introducing spin contamination (Sections 4.3 and 4.4). It is straightforward to derive an MP method based on a UHF reference wave function (UMP): in this case the unperturbed Hamiltonian operator is a sum of the \( a \) and \( b \) Fock operators. The addition of electron correlation decreases the spin contamination of the wave function (in the full CI limit the spin contamination is zero) but the improvement is usually small at low orders (2–4 of perturbation theory. As illustrated in Section 4.4, the UHF energy is lower than that of RHF owing to the inclusion of some electron correlation (mainly static), but it also contains some amounts of higher energy spin states. Since MP methods recover a large part of the electron correlation (both static and dynamical), the net effect at the UMP level is an increase in energy due to spin contamination. In the dissociation limit, this has no consequence, as the different spin states have equal energies. In the intermediate region, where the bond is not completely broken, it is usually observed that the RMP\( n \) energy is lower than the UMP\( n \) energy, although the RHF energy is higher than the UHF (see also Section 11.5.2). The spin contamination in UHF wave functions causes an UMP\( n \) expansion to converge more slowly than RMP\( n \). For open-shell systems, where RHF cannot be used, this would suggest that the reference wave function should be of the ROHF type, instead of UHF. Formulation of ROHF-based perturbation methods, however, is somewhat more difficult than for the UHF case. The reason is that for an ROHF wave function it is not possible to choose a set of MOs that makes the matrix of Lagrange multipliers diagonal (see eqs (3.40) and (3.41)). There is thus not a unique set of canonical MOs to be used in the perturbation expansion, which again has the consequence that several choices of the unperturbed Hamiltonian operator are possible. Different RMP methods therefore give different energies, and there are no firm theoretical grounds for choosing one over the other. In practice, however, different choices of the unperturbed Hamiltonian operator lead to similar results, and perturbation calculations based on ROHF type wave functions are now routine.

While projection methods for removing spin contamination are not recommended at the HF level, they work quite well at the UMP level. Formulas have been derived for removing all contaminants at the UMP2 level, and also the first few states at the UMP3 and UMP4 levels. The associated acronyms are PUMP and PMP, denoting slightly different methods, although in practice they give similar results. For singlet wave functions with bond lengths only slightly longer than the RHF/UHF instability point, such PUMP methods tend to give results very similar to those based on an RHF wave function. At longer bond lengths the RMP perturbation series eventually breaks down, while the PUMP methods approach the correct dissociation limit. It would therefore appear that PUMP methods should always be preferred. There are, however, also some computational factors to consider. First, UMP methods are by nature a factor of ~2 more expensive since there are twice as many MO coefficients. Second, the projection itself also uses CPU time. This is especially true if many of the higher spin states need to be removed, or for projection at the MP4 level. Third, it is difficult to formulate derivatives of projected wave functions, which limits PUMP methods to the calculation of energies. A rule of thumb says that for uncompleted systems the RPM4 treatment gives acceptable accuracy (relative errors of the order of a ~10 kJ/mol) up to bond lengths ~1.5 times the equilibrium length. Longer bonds are better treated by PUMP methods (see also Section 11.5.2). Most transition structures have bond lengths shorter than ~1.5 times the equilibrium length and RPM4 often gives quite accurate activation energies.

Just as single-reference CI can be extended to MRCI, it is also possible to use perturbation methods with a multi-determinant reference wave function. A formulation of MR-MBPT methods, however, is not straightforward. The main problem here is similar to that with ROMP methods: the choice of the unperturbed Hamiltonian operator. Several different choices are possible, which will give different answers when the theory is carried out only to low order. Nevertheless, there are now several different implementations of MP\( 2 \) type expansions based on a CASSCF reference, denoted CASMP2 or CASPT2. Experience of their performance is still somewhat limited.

### 4.9 Coupled Cluster

Perturbation methods add all types of corrections (S, D, T, Q, etc.) to the reference wave function to a given order (2, 3, 4, etc.). The idea in Coupled Cluster (CC) methods is to include all corrections of a given type to infinite order. Let us start by defining an excitation operator \( T \) as in eq. (4.51).

\[
T = T_1 + T_2 + T_3 + \cdots + T_m. \tag{4.51}
\]

The \( T \) operator acting on an HF reference wave function \( \Phi_0 \) generates all \( i \)th excited Slater determinants.

\[
T_i \Phi_0 = \sum_{\alpha} \sum_{\beta} t_{i}^{\alpha \beta} \Phi_{\gamma}, \tag{4.52}
\]

In coupled cluster theory it is customary to use the term amplitudes for the expansion coefficients \( t_{ij} \), which are equivalent to the \( a \) coefficients in eq. (4.1). Using intermediate normalization, a CI wave function can be generated by allowing the excitation operator to work on an HF wave function.

\[
\Psi_{CI} = (1 + T) \Phi_0 = (1 + T_1 + T_2 + T_3 + \cdots + T_m) \Phi_0, \tag{4.53}
\]

The corresponding coupled cluster wave function, on the other hand, is defined in eq. (4.54).

\[
\Psi_{CC} = e^T \Phi_0 = e^{T_1 + T_2 + \cdots + T_m + \cdots} = \sum_{\ell} \frac{1}{\ell!} T^\ell \tag{4.54}
\]
From eqs (4.51) and (4.54) the exponential operator may be written as in eq. (4.55),
\[
e^T = 1 + T_1 + (T_1 + \frac{1}{2} T_1^2) + (T_1 + T_2 + \frac{1}{2} T_1 T_2 + \frac{1}{2} T_2 T_1 + \frac{1}{4} T_1^2 T_2 + \frac{1}{4} T_2 T_1^2 + \frac{1}{4} T_1 T_2^2 + \frac{1}{4} T_2 T_1^2 + \frac{1}{4} T_1^2 T_2^2 + \frac{1}{8} T_1^3 T_2 + \frac{1}{8} T_2 T_1^3 + \frac{1}{8} T_1 T_2^3 + \frac{1}{8} T_2^3 T_1 + \frac{1}{64} T_1^4 T_2 + \frac{1}{64} T_2 T_1^4 + \frac{1}{64} T_1 T_2^4 + \frac{1}{64} T_2^4 T_1 + \frac{1}{256} T_1^5 T_2 + \frac{1}{256} T_2 T_1^5 + \frac{1}{256} T_1 T_2^5 + \frac{1}{256} T_2^5 T_1 + \frac{1}{1024} T_1^6 T_2 + \frac{1}{1024} T_2 T_1^6 + \frac{1}{1024} T_1 T_2^6 + \frac{1}{1024} T_2^6 T_1 + \cdots
\]

The first term generates the reference HF and the second all singly excited states. The first parenthesis generates all doubly excited states, which may be considered as connected \((T_1)\) or disconnected \((\bar{T}_1)\). The second parenthesis generates all triply excited states, which again may be either “true” \((T_2)\) or “product” triplets \((T_1 \bar{T}_2, \bar{T}_1 T_2)\). The quadruply excited states can similarly be viewed as composed of five terms, a true quadruple and four non-interacting pairs of interacting electrons. By comparison with the CI wave function in eq. (4.53), it is seen that the CC wave function at each excitation level contains additional terms arising from products of excitations.

With the coupled cluster wave function in eq. (4.54) the Schrödinger equation becomes eq. (4.56).
\[
\text{He}^T \Phi_0 = E^T \Phi_0 \tag{4.56}
\]
At this point, one could proceed analogously to CI and evaluate the energy as an expectation value of the CC wave function, and use the variational principle to determine the amplitudes.
\[
E^T_0 = \frac{\langle \Phi_0 | H | \Phi_0 \rangle}{\langle \Phi_0 | \Phi_0 \rangle} = \langle \Phi_0 | e^T | \Phi_0 \rangle \tag{4.57}
\]
Expansion of the numerator and denominator according to eq. (4.54) unfortunately leaves a series of non-vanishing terms all the way up to order \(N_{elec}\), which makes a variational coupled cluster approach unmanageable for all but the smallest systems.18

The standard formulation of coupled cluster theory instead proceeds by projecting the coupled cluster Schrödinger equation (4.56) onto the reference wave function. Multiplying from the left by \(\Phi_0^*\) and integrating gives eq. (4.58).
\[
\langle \Phi_0^* | H | \Phi_0 \rangle = E_{CC} \langle \Phi_0^* | e^T | \Phi_0 \rangle \tag{4.58}
\]
Expanding out the exponential in eq. (4.54) and using the fact that the Hamiltonian operator contains only one- and two-electron terms (eq. (3.24)) we get eq. (4.59).
\[
E_{CC} = \langle \Phi_0^* | H | 1 + T_1 + T_2 + \frac{1}{2} T_1 T_2 | \Phi_0 \rangle \tag{4.59}
\]
Note that the infinite expansion of the exponential operator in eqs (4.58) and (4.59) terminates at the 1 and \(T_1\) level, in contrast to \(T^N\) in eq. (4.57). Furthermore, when using HF orbitals for constructing the Slater determinants, the first matrix elements in eq. (4.59) are zero (Brillouin’s theorem) and the second matrix elements are just two-electron integrals over MOs (eq. (4.8)).
\[
E_{CC} = E_0 + \sum_{i<j} \sum_{\alpha<\beta} \langle \Phi_0^* | (T_{\alpha\beta} + T_{\beta\alpha}) | \Phi_0 \rangle \tag{4.60}
\]
The coupled cluster correlation energy is therefore determined completely by the singles and doubles amplitudes and the two-electron MO integrals. Equations for the amplitudes can be obtained by projecting the Schrödinger equation (4.56) onto the space of singly, doubly, trip, ect., excited determinants. While this can be done analogously to eq. (4.58), a more elegant formulation is possible by using a similarity transformation of the Hamiltonian operator. Consider eq. (4.56) where we multiply from the left by \(e^T\).
\[
e^T \text{He}^T \Phi_0 = E^T \Phi_0 \tag{4.61}
\]
Just as \(e^T\) is an excitation operator working on the function to the right, \(e^T\) is a deexcitation operator working on the function to the left. Multiplying with \(\Phi_0^*\) from the left and integrating leads directly to the energy equation.
\[
E_{CC} = \langle \Phi_0^* | e^{-T} \text{He}^T | \Phi_0 \rangle \tag{4.62}
\]
Note that equation (4.62) can be considered as the expectation value of a similarity transformed (non-Hermitian) Hamiltonian. Since \(e^{-T}\) tries to generate deexcitation states, the reference \(\Phi_0\), which is impossible, eq. (4.62) is identical to eq. (4.58).

Equations for the amplitudes are obtained by multiplying with an excited state.
\[
\langle \Phi_0^* | e^{-T} \text{He}^T | \Phi_0 \rangle = 0 \tag{4.63}
\]
\[
\langle \Phi_0^* | (1 - T_1) | \Phi_0 \rangle = 0 \tag{4.64}
\]

Only the indicated terms survive in the expansion when the orthogonality of the Slater determinants and the nature of the Hamiltonian operator (only one- and two-electron terms) are considered. The terms involving singly excited states and the reference wave function are again zero owing to Brillouin’s theorem, and the remaining terms form a coupled set of equations with single, double and triple amplitudes as the variables. Similarly \(e^T\) working on \(\Phi_0^*\) generates both the reference and singly excited states, in addition to the doubly excited states.
\[
\langle \Phi_0^* | e^{-T} \text{He}^T | \Phi_0 \rangle = 0 \tag{4.65}
\]
\[
\langle \Phi_0^* | (1 - T_1 - T_2 - \frac{1}{2} T_1 T_2) | \Phi_0 \rangle = 0 \tag{4.66}
\]
ELECTRON CORRELATION METHODS

4.9 COUPLED CLUSTER

The lower order amplitudes. More equations connecting amplitudes may be obtained by projection against a triple, quadruple, etc., excited determinant.

\[ \phi_{ijkl} = (1 - T_{ij} - T_{ik} - T_{jl} - T_{jk} + T_{ij}T_{ik} + T_{ij}T_{jl} + T_{ik}T_{jl} - T_{ij}T_{ik}T_{jl} + T_{ij}T_{ik}T_{jl} - T_{ij}T_{ik}T_{jl} + T_{ij}T_{ik}T_{jl} - T_{ij}T_{ik}T_{jl}) \phi_0 = 0 \]

Equation (4.69) now in addition has quadruple amplitudes, and additional terms contribute the lower order amplitudes. More equations connecting amplitudes may be obtained by projection against a triple, quadruple, etc., excited determinant.

4.9.1 Truncated coupled cluster methods

All possible excited determinants are generated and the coupled cluster wave function is equivalent to full CI. This is, as already stated, impossible for all but the smallest systems. The cluster operator must therefore be truncated at some excitation level. When the amplitudes derived from these approximate singles and doubles amplitudes (eq. (4.66)) are inserted into (4.66), and are given by the CISD model, the lowest level of approximation is therefore, T = 1, 2, and 3.

The CCSD energy is given by the general CC equation (4.60), and amplitude equations are derived from (4.66).

\[ \sum_{ijkl} \sum_{mn} \sum_{abc} \phi_{ijkl}^* \phi_{mn}^* \phi_{abc}^* H_{ijklmn} \phi_{abc} = 0 \]

The notation (eq. (4.68)) indicates that terms involving permutations of the indices are omitted. From eq. (4.68) we obtain eq. (4.69).
4.10 Connections between Coupled Cluster, Configuration Interaction, and Perturbation Theory

The general cluster operator is given by eq. (4.69), where terms have been collected according to the excitation they generate.

\[ \mathcal{C}_n = \sum_{\text{excitations}} \mathcal{O}_n \]

(4.69)

End of the given operators. The single excitations generate all determinants that are included in a CISDQ calculation, the terms for \( n = 1 \) are included in the definition of \( T_1 \).

The general cluster operator is given by eq. (4.69), where terms have been collected according to the excitation they generate.

\[ \mathcal{C}_n = \sum_{\text{excitations}} \mathcal{O}_n \]

(4.69)

End of the given operators. The single excitations generate all determinants that are included in a CISDQ calculation, the terms for \( n = 1 \) are included in the definition of \( T_1 \).

The general cluster operator is given by eq. (4.69), where terms have been collected according to the excitation they generate.

\[ \mathcal{C}_n = \sum_{\text{excitations}} \mathcal{O}_n \]

(4.69)
4.10.1 Illustrating correlation methods for the beryllium atom

The beryllium atom has four electrons (1s^2 2s^2) and the ground state wave function contains significant multi-reference character owing to the presence of the low-lying 2p-orbital. The correlation energies calculated with MP, CI and CC methods in a 4s2p basis set (cc-pVDZ basis augmented with one set of tight s and p functions) are given in Table 4.5.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>ΔEcorr (au)</th>
<th>% Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MP2</td>
<td>0.053174</td>
<td>67.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3</td>
<td>0.067949</td>
<td>86.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CISD</td>
<td>0.075277</td>
<td>96.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSD</td>
<td>0.078176</td>
<td>99.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP4</td>
<td>0.074121</td>
<td>94.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSD(T)</td>
<td>0.078361</td>
<td>99.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP5</td>
<td>0.076918</td>
<td>98.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CISDT</td>
<td>0.075465</td>
<td>96.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSDT</td>
<td>0.078364</td>
<td>99.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP6</td>
<td>0.078090</td>
<td>99.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CISDTQ</td>
<td>0.078372</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSDTQ</td>
<td>0.078372</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since beryllium only has four electrons, CISDTQ is a full CI treatment and completely equivalent to a CCSDTQ calculation. The multi-reference character displays itself as a relatively slow convergence of the perturbation series, with harmonic-accuracy being attained at the MP6 level and inclusion of terms up to MP20 is required to converge the energy to within 10^-6 au of the exact answer. Note also that the correlation energy is overestimated at order seven, i.e. the perturbation series oscillates at higher orders. The contribution of higher order terms is very small but not negligible.

Analogously to MP methods, coupled cluster theory can also be based on a UHF reference wave function. The resulting UCC methods gain similar convergence properties to MP methods and can be considered as a UHF refinement of the underlying UHF. However, the infinite nature of coupled cluster methods is substantially better than that of UHF, especially at the CCSD(T) level. The contribution of higher order terms is small but not negligible.

4.10.2 Illustrating correlation methods for the neon atom

The neon atom has ten electrons (1s^2 2s^2 2p^6) and the ground state wave function is a closed-shell configuration. The correlation energies calculated with MP, CI and CC methods in a 4s2p basis set (cc-pVDZ basis augmented with one set of tight s and p functions) are given in Table 4.6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>ΔEcorr (au)</th>
<th>% Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MP2</td>
<td>0.01374</td>
<td>3.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3</td>
<td>0.02452</td>
<td>5.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CISD</td>
<td>0.03725</td>
<td>7.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSD</td>
<td>0.078372</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP4</td>
<td>0.078372</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CISDT</td>
<td>0.078372</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSDT</td>
<td>0.078372</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP5</td>
<td>0.078372</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CISDTQ</td>
<td>0.078372</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSDTQ</td>
<td>0.078372</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since neon only has ten electrons, CISDTQ is a full CI treatment and completely equivalent to a CCSDTQ calculation. The multi-reference character displays itself as a relatively slow convergence of the perturbation series, with harmonic-accuracy being attained at the MP6 level and inclusion of terms up to MP20 is required to converge the energy to within 10^-6 au of the exact answer. Note also that the correlation energy is overestimated at order seven, i.e. the perturbation series oscillates at higher orders. The contribution of higher order terms is very small but not negligible.

Analogously to MP methods, coupled cluster theory can also be based on a UHF reference wave function. The resulting UCC methods gain similar convergence properties to MP methods and can be considered as a UHF refinement of the underlying UHF. However, the infinite nature of coupled cluster methods is substantially better than that of UHF, especially at the CCSD(T) level. The contribution of higher order terms is small but not negligible.
4.11 Methods Involving the Interelectronic Distance

The necessity of going beyond the HF approximation is due to the fact that electrons are further apart than described by the product of their orbital densities, i.e. their motions are correlated. This arises from the electron–electron repulsion operator, which is a sum of terms of the type shown in eq. (4.73).

\[
\frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2|} = \frac{1}{r_{12}} \tag{4.73}
\]

Without these terms, the Schrödinger equation can be solved exactly, with the solution being a Slater determinant composed of orbitals.

The electron–electron repulsion operator has a singularity for \( r_{12} = 0 \) which results in the exact wave function having a cusp (discontinuous derivative), since the kinetic energy must cancel the infinity of the potential energy to give a finite result.

\[
\frac{\partial^2 \Psi}{\partial r^2} \bigg|_{r=0} = -\frac{1}{2} \Psi(r_2) \tag{4.74}
\]

The cusp condition implies that the exact wave function must be linear in the inter-electronic distance for small values of \( r_{12} \):

\[
\Psi_{\text{aux}}(r_{12}) = \text{constant} + \frac{1}{2} r_{12} + \cdots \tag{4.75}
\]

It would therefore seem natural that the inter-electronic distance should be a necessary variable for describing electron correlation. For two-electron systems, extremely accurate wave functions may be generated by taking a trial wave function consisting of an orbital product times an expansion in electron coordinates, as given in eq. (4.76), and variationally optimizing the \( \alpha_i \) and \( C_{ia} \) parameters.

\[
\Psi(n_i = n) = e^{-\alpha_i n} e^{-\alpha_i \sum_i C_{ia} (n_i + r_i)} (n_i - r_i)^{\delta ij} \tag{4.76}
\]

Expansions such as eq. (4.76) are known as Hylleraas type wave functions. For the hydrogen molecule, it is possible to converge the total energy to ~10\(^{-7}\) au, which is more accurate than what can be determined experimentally. In fact, the prediction that the experimental dissociation energy for \( \mathrm{H}_2 \) was wrong, based on calculations, was one of the first hallmarks of quantum chemistry. Such wave functions unfortunately become impractical for more than 3–4 electrons.

All electron correlation methods based on expanding the \( N \)-electron wave function in terms of Slater determinants built from orbitals (one-electron functions) suffer from an agonizingly slow convergence. Literally millions or billions of determinants are required for obtaining results that in an absolute sense are close to the exact results. This is due to the fact that products of one-electron functions are poor at describing the cusp behaviour of the wave function when two electrons are close together. At the second-order perturbation level (i.e. MP2) it may be shown that the \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) in the correlation energy behaves asymptotically as \((L + 1/2)^{-4}\), where \( L \) is the highest angular momentum in the basis set. For a general wave function the convergence is \((L + 1/2)^{-4} + (L + 1/2)^{-8} + (L + 1/2)^{-12} + \cdots\). This means that the total energy will converge as \((L + 1)^{-4} + (L + 1)^{-8} + (L + 1)^{-12} + \cdots\), if the basis set is saturated up to angular momentum \( L \). For sufficiently large values of \( L \), the convergence is thus \((L + 1)^{-4}\), which is quite slow.

In order to achieve a high accuracy, it would seem desirable to explicitly include terms in the wave functions that are linear in the inter-electronic distance. This is the idea in the R12 methods developed by Kutzelnigg and coworkers.12 The first-order correction to the HF wave function only involves doubly excited determinants (eq. (4.38)). In R12 methods additional terms are included, which is essentially the HF determinant multiplied with \( r_{ij} \) factors.

\[
\Psi_{\text{R12}} = \Phi_{\text{HF}} + \sum_i \sum_k \alpha_{ik} \phi_i^* \phi_k + \sum_i \beta_i r_{ij} \Phi_{\text{HF}} \tag{4.77}
\]

The exact definition is slightly more complicated, since the wave function has to be properly antisymmetrized and projected onto the actual basis but, for illustration, the above form is sufficient. Such R12 wave functions may then be used in connection with the CI, MBPT or CC methods described above. Consider for example a CI calculation with an R12 type wave function. The energy is given by eq. (4.78), where the \( \alpha_{ik} \) and \( \beta_i \) parameters in (4.77) are optimized variationally.

\[
E = \langle \Psi_{\text{R12}} | H | \Psi_{\text{R12}} \rangle \tag{4.78}
\]

The overwhelming problem is that matrix elements from eq. (4.78) now involve integrals depending on three and four electron coordinates. Consider for example the following terms arising from the \( r_{ij} \) operator written out in terms of the one and two-electron operators (h and g, eq. (3.24)).
The $g$ operator leads to integrals over molecular orbitals of the type shown in eq. (4.80).

\[
\langle \Phi_{\text{MO}} | H | \Phi_{\text{MO}} \rangle = \langle \Phi_{\text{MO}} | H | \phi_1 \phi_2 \phi_3 \rangle + \langle \Phi_{\text{MO}} | H | \phi_1 \phi_2 \phi_3 \rangle
\]

The $g$ operator leads to integrals over molecular orbitals of the type shown in eq. (4.80).

\[
\langle \phi_1 \phi_2 \phi_3 | H | \phi_1 \phi_2 \phi_3 \rangle = \langle \phi_1 \phi_2 \phi_3 | H | \phi_1 \phi_2 \phi_3 \rangle + \langle \phi_1 \phi_2 \phi_3 | H | \phi_1 \phi_2 \phi_3 \rangle
\]

Not only are such integrals difficult to calculate but, when the MOs are expanded in a basis set consisting of $M$ basis AOs, there will be of the order of $M^6$ basis three-electron integrals and of the order of $M^8$ basis four-electron integrals. Such methods are therefore inherently more expensive than for example the full CCSDT model.

The trick for turning the R12 method into a viable computational tool is to avoid calculating the three- and four-electron integrals, without jeopardizing the accuracy. In a complete basis, a three-electron integral may be written in terms of products of two-electron integrals by inserting a “resolution of the identity” between the two operators.

\[
1 = \sum_{\gamma} \phi_\gamma | \phi_\gamma \rangle = \sum_{\gamma} \phi_\gamma \phi_\gamma \langle \phi_\gamma \phi_\gamma | \phi_\gamma \phi_\gamma \rangle
\]

Not only are such integrals difficult to calculate but, when the MOs are expanded in a basis set consisting of $M_{\text{MO}}$ AOs, there will be of the order of $M_{\text{MO}}^3$ three-electron integrals and of the order of $M_{\text{MO}}^4$ four-electron integrals. Such methods are therefore inherently more expensive than for example the full CCSDT model.

The trick for turning the R12 method into a viable computational tool is to avoid calculating the three- and four-electron integrals, without jeopardizing the accuracy. In a complete basis, a three-electron integral may be written in terms of products of two-electron integrals by inserting a “resolution of the identity” between the two operators.

\[
1 = \sum_{\gamma} \phi_\gamma | \phi_\gamma \rangle = \sum_{\gamma} \phi_\gamma \phi_\gamma \langle \phi_\gamma \phi_\gamma | \phi_\gamma \phi_\gamma \rangle
\]

Not only are such integrals difficult to calculate but, when the MOs are expanded in a basis set consisting of $M_{\text{MO}}$ AOs, there will be of the order of $M_{\text{MO}}^3$ three-electron integrals and of the order of $M_{\text{MO}}^4$ four-electron integrals. Such methods are therefore inherently more expensive than for example the full CCSDT model.

The trick for turning the R12 method into a viable computational tool is to avoid calculating the three- and four-electron integrals, without jeopardizing the accuracy. In a complete basis, a three-electron integral may be written in terms of products of two-electron integrals by inserting a “resolution of the identity” between the two operators.

\[
1 = \sum_{\gamma} \phi_\gamma | \phi_\gamma \rangle = \sum_{\gamma} \phi_\gamma \phi_\gamma \langle \phi_\gamma \phi_\gamma | \phi_\gamma \phi_\gamma \rangle
\]

Not only are such integrals difficult to calculate but, when the MOs are expanded in a basis set consisting of $M_{\text{MO}}$ AOs, there will be of the order of $M_{\text{MO}}^3$ three-electron integrals and of the order of $M_{\text{MO}}^4$ four-electron integrals. Such methods are therefore inherently more expensive than for example the full CCSDT model.
4.14 Summary of Electron Correlation Methods

The only generally applicable methods are CISD, MP2, MP3, MP4, CCSD and CCSD(T). CISD is variational, but not size extensive, while MP and CC methods are non-variational but size extensive. CISD and MP are in principle non-iterative
methods, although the matrix diagonalization involved in CASSCF is usually so large that it has to be done iteratively. Solution of the coupled cluster equations must be done by an iterative technique, since the parameter set is not a real matrix. The more mature methods, which are known to converge more quickly, are used for larger systems when the iterative techniques are kept in mind.

Table 4.7: Limiting scaling in terms of basis set size for various methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$M$</th>
<th>CI methods</th>
<th>MP methods</th>
<th>CC methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>CIS</td>
<td>MP2</td>
<td>CC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>CISD</td>
<td>MP3</td>
<td>CC3, CCSD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>CISDT</td>
<td>MP4</td>
<td>CCSDT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>MP4</td>
<td>CC3, CCSD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>CISDTQ</td>
<td>MP5</td>
<td>CCSDTQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>MP6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>CISDTQ</td>
<td>MP7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We have so far been careful to use the wording "formal scaling." As already discussed, HF is formally an $M=4$ method but in practice the scaling may be reduced all the way down to $M=1$. Similarly, MP2 is formally an $M=5$ method. However, an MP2 calculation consists of three main parts: the HF calculation, the AO to MO integral transformation, and the MP2 energy calculation. Only the second part has a formal scaling of $M=5$, the others are (formal) $M=4$ steps. In the large system limit, the transformation required for the MP2 procedure will become the most expensive step, however, in practice where calculations may be restricted to a few hundred basis functions, it is often observed that the MP2 step takes less time than the HF step. The formal scaling is thus $M=5$.

The lower value of $M=5$ scaling for methods involving electron correlation arises from the transformation of the two-electron integrals from the AO to MO basis, but if the transformation is carried out with one of the indices belonging to an occupied MO first, the scaling is actually the number of occupied orbitals $O$ times $M=4$. If we consider making the system larger by doubling the system size, keeping the basis set per atom constant, we observe that $O$ scales linearly with $M$, and we arrive at the $M=5$ scaling. This assumption is valid for large basis sets such as DZP or TZP, and high correlation methods may be classified according to how they scale at a given level of theory, which is shown in Table 4.7. More recently, linear response methods (Section 10.9.1) have been developed in part to avoid the importance of the $M=5$ scaling. These methods are especially useful for obtaining accurate results for excited states. As already mentioned, MP3 results are often inferior to those at MP2. In fact, MP2 often gives surprisingly good results, especially if large basis sets are used.

HF results should by modern standards be considered as model calculations, like semi-empirical methods such as AM1 and PM3. Minimal basis HF calculations often give results that are particularly close to experimental values, but since the errors are to a certain degree systematic (such as all orbital frequencies being overestimated by a constant factor), they are not considered "empirical" corrections to treat especially difficult cases.

HF results are often inferior to those at MP2. In fact, MP2 often gives surprisingly good results, especially if large basis sets are used. The distinct advantage of ab initio methods is the ability to treat systems at an equal level of accuracy that can be expected at a given level of theory to establish the best methods for a particular problem. Of course, the choice of basis set depends on the size of the system and the desired level of accuracy.

The use of CI methods has been declining in recent years at the expense of MP and especially CC methods. It is now recognized that size extensivity is important for obtaining accurate results. Excited states, however, are somewhat difficult to treat by perturbation methods. A two-configurational reference is only a slight improvement over HF, but including all configurations generates a full CI. The ordering above is only valid when the reference is included. girls are used in the calculations. The more mature methods, which are known to converge more quickly, are used for larger systems when the iterative techniques are kept in mind.
inherent accuracy in these methods, and this further reduces the size of the systems that can be handled.

With the continuing advances of computer hardware and more efficient algorithms, these limits are gradually being shifted upwards. Owing to the rather steep scaling with system size, however, they will (barring a fundamental breakthrough) give a rough idea of the size of systems that can be handled also in the future. Currently the speed of computer hardware improves by a factor of two in a timespan of about 18 months. In other words, a factor of 10 in terms of performance for the same price is gained roughly every 5 years. Owing to the scaling between 4 and 7 of the various methods, however, a factor of 10 increase in raw speed only translates into an increase of system size of 1.7 ($M^4$ scaling) or 1.4 ($M^2$ scaling). Linear scaling methods in Hartree–Fock methods will of course benefit fully from increased computational speed.

### 4.15 Excited States

The development of HF and correlated methods in the previous chapters has focused on the electronic ground state. In some cases it is also of interest to consider electronically excited states. It is useful to distinguish between two cases, depending on whether the excited state has the same or a different symmetry than the lower state(s). The different symmetry case is easy to handle, as the lowest energy state of a given symmetry may be handled completely analogously to the ground state. An HF wave function may be obtained by a proper specification of the occupied orbitals, and the resulting wave function can be improved by adding electron correlation by for example CI, MP or CC methods. The only caveat may be that the state is an open shell, which often requires a (small) MCSCF wave function for an adequate zeroth-order description.

Excited states having lower energy solutions of the same symmetry are somewhat more difficult to treat. It is difficult to generate an HF type wave function for such states, as the variational optimization will collapse to the lowest energy solution of the given symmetry. The lack of a proper HF solution means that perturbation and coupled cluster methods are not well suited for calculating excited states, although excited state properties (for example excitation energies) may be calculated directly with response methods (Section 10.9). Response methods can be based on for example a coupled cluster wave function. It is, however, relatively easy to generate higher energy states by CI methods: this simply corresponds to using the ($n$ + 1)th eigenvalue from the diagonalization of the CI matrix as a description of the $n$th excited state (the second root is the first excited state, etc.). Such a CI procedure will normally employ a set of HF orbitals from a calculation on the lowest energy state, and the CI procedure is therefore biased against the excited states.

The simplest description of an excited state is the orbital picture where one electron has been moved from an occupied to an unoccupied orbital, i.e. an S-type determinant as illustrated in Figure 4.2. The lowest level of theory for a qualitative description of excited states is therefore a CI including only the singly excited determinants, denoted CIS. CIS gives wave functions of roughly HF quality for excited states, since no orbital optimization is involved. For valence excited states, for example those arising from excitations between τ-orbitals in an unsaturated system, this may be a reasonable description. There are, however, normally also quite low-lying states that essentially correspond to a double excitation, and those require the inclusion of at least the doubles as well, i.e. CISD.

A more balanced description requires MCSCF-based methods where the orbitals are optimized for each particular state, or optimized for a suitable average of the desired states (state-averaged MCSCF). It should be noted that such excited state MCSCF solutions correspond to saddle points in the parameter space for the wave function, and second-order optimization techniques are therefore almost mandatory. In order to obtain accurate excitation energies it is normally necessary also to include dynamical correlation, for example by the CASPT2 method.

Excited states involve electrons that are more loosely bound than in the ground state, and they thus usually require basis sets with diffuse functions for a proper description. This is especially true for so-called Rydberg states, which may be considered as an electron orbiting a positively charged molecule. Such states resemble an atomic system, with the molecular cation playing the role of the nucleus, and can be characterized as having s-, p-, d- etc. character. Rather than using a regular basis set with diffuse functions on each nucleus, such Rydberg states can be modeled by having a single set of diffuse functions located at the molecular centre of mass.

#### 4.16 Quantum Monte Carlo Methods

Monte Carlo methods refer to techniques for obtaining the value of a multi-dimensional integral of a function by randomly probing its value within the whole variable space, and estimating the integral by statistical averaging. In the limit of an infinite number of sampling points, the result is identical to that obtained from an analytical integration, but for a finite number of points, the calculated value is given as an average with an associated standard deviation. The standard deviation, the uncertainty, depends inversely on the square root of the number of sampling points.

Since the square of the wave function represent a probability function, the associated energy can be calculated by Quantum Monte Carlo (QMC) methods. For a (approximate) variational wave function, the energy can be re-written as in eq. (4.86).

\[
E = \frac{\langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle}{\langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle} = \int \Phi(r)^* H \Phi(r) dr
\]

\[
E = \int \Phi(r)^* \left( \sum_{\tau=1}^{N_{elec}} P(r) \right) \Phi(r) dr
\]

The last equation shows that the energy can be calculated as an integral of the local energy function $\Phi^* H \Phi$ weighted with the probability density $P$. In principle, this integral could be calculated by numerical quadrature methods, such as the Simpson’s trapezoidal rule, but this becomes very inefficient when the number of variables is large. For a system with $N_{elec}$ electrons, the dimensionality of the problem is $3N_{elec}$, and the integral
ELECTRON CORRELATION METHODS

A suitable trial wave function can be constructed from a Hartree–Fock wave function multiplied with a suitable correlation function, often taken as a feature in the form

\[ \psi = \chi \exp[-\sum_{ij} C_{ij} r_{ij}] \]

The functional form of this correlation function depends on the particular wave function and the model used to construct it. The choice of the functional form has a significant impact on the accuracy of the calculated properties.

In order to maintain the wave function antisymmetry, the fixed node approximation is often used. This approximation fixes the nodes of the trial wave function, which results in a reduction of the size of the problem and a significant decrease in the computational cost. However, it also introduces a systematic error, known as the fixed node error, which can be reduced by using techniques such as diffusion QMC or the fixed node diffusion QMC.

The fixed node diffusion QMC thus determines the best wave function with the nodal structure of the initial trial wave function. If the trial wave function has the correct nodal structure, the fixed node QMC method is exact. However, in many applications, the core electrons are replaced by a pseudopotential, which results in a fixed node error.

The scaling of QMC methods is roughly two orders of magnitude more expensive than independent-particle models such as HF and DFT. The relatively low-order scaling makes exact QMC methods unsuitable for running on large parallel computers. Furthermore, the statistical uncertainty makes it difficult to calculate vibrational frequencies, which are essential for optimizing structures and calculating vibrational properties.

**REFERENCES**


REFERENCES

5.1 Slater and Gaussian Type Orbitals

In electronic structure calculations, Slater Type Orbitals (STO) and Gaussian Type Orbitals (GTO) are used. Slater type orbitals have the functional form shown in eq. (5.1).

\[ \psi_{nlm}(r) = N e^{-\alpha r} \cos(\beta r) \]

Here, \( N \) is a normalization constant and \( Y_{lm} \) are spherical harmonic functions. The exponential dependence on the distance between the nucleus and electron mirrors the exact orbitals for the hydrogen atom. However, the STOs do not have any radial nodes. A disadvantage is that the use of STOs for the calculation of exchange and the Coulomb energy requires a large number of functions, which is not feasible in practical applications. Another disadvantage is that the STOs are not easily transformed from one set of coordinates to another.

Gaussian type orbitals can be written in terms of polar or Cartesian coordinates as shown in eq. (5.2).

\[ \chi_{LMJ}(r, \theta, \phi) = N \exp(-\alpha r) \sum_{K} a_{K} \cos(K \theta) \cos(K \phi) \]

Here, \( N \) is a normalization constant and \( Y_{LMJ} \) are spherical harmonic functions. The Gaussian type orbitals are more flexible than the STOs and can be transformed easily between different coordinate systems. Additionally, Gaussian type orbitals are more convergent than STOs for the calculation of exchange and the Coulomb energy.

Ab initio methods try to derive information by solving the Schrödinger equation without fitting parameters to experimental data. Actual ab initio methods also include approximate basis sets, which are used to construct a set of known functions. The selection of the basis set is crucial for the accuracy of the calculations. The size of the basis set affects the computational effort; however, a larger basis set does not necessarily lead to better accuracy.

There are two types of basis functions (also called atomic orbitals (AO), although they in general are not solutions to an atomic Schrödinger equation) commonly used in ab initio calculations: Slater-type orbitals (STOs) and Gaussian-type orbitals (GTOs). STOs are characterized by a radial and an angular part, while GTOs are pure radial functions. The use of GTOs is preferred because they are more flexible and easier to transform between different coordinate systems. Gaussian-type orbitals are also more convergent than STOs for the calculation of exchange and the Coulomb energy.
5.2 Classification of Basis Sets

Having decided on the type of function (STO/GTO) and the location (nuclei), the most important factor is the number of functions to be used. The smallest number of functions possible is a **minimum basis set**. Only enough functions are employed to contain all the electrons of the neutral atom(s). For hydrogen (and helium) this means a single s-function. For the first row in the periodic system it means two s-functions (1s and 2s) and one set of p-functions (2p\(_x\), 2p\(_y\), and 2p\(_z\)). Lithium and beryllium formally only require two s-functions, but a set of p-functions is usually also added. For the second row elements, three s-functions (1s, 2s and 3s) and two sets of p-functions (2p and 3p) are used.

The next improvement of the basis sets is a doubling of all basis functions, producing a **Double Zeta (DZ)** type basis. The term zeta stems from the fact that the exponent of STO basis functions is often denoted by the Greek letter \( \zeta \). A DZ basis thus employs two s-functions for hydrogen (1s and 1s\(^{\prime}\)), four s-functions (1s, 1s\(^{\prime}\), 2s and 2s\(^{\prime}\)) and two sets of p-functions (2p and 2p\(^{\prime}\)) for first row elements, and six s-functions and four sets of p-functions for second row elements. The importance of a DZ over a minimum basis can be illustrated by considering the bonding in the HCN molecule. The H—C bond will primarily consist of the hydrogen s-orbital and the p\(_z\)-orbital on C.

The p-bond between C and N will consist of the p\(_x\) and p\(_y\) orbitals of C and N, and will have a more diffuse electron distribution than the H—C σ-bond. The optimum exponent for the carbon p-orbital will thus be smaller for the z-direction than for the x-direction. If only a single set of p-orbitals is available (minimum basis), a compromise will be necessary. A DZ basis, however, has two sets of p-orbitals with different exponents. The tighter function (larger exponent) can enter the H—C σ-bond with a large coefficient, while the more diffuse function (small exponent) can be used primarily for describing the C—N π-bond. Doubling the number of basis functions thus allows for a much better description of the fact that the electron distribution is different in different directions.

The chemical bonding occurs between valence orbitals. Doubling the 1s-functions in for example carbon allows for a better description of the 1s-electrons. However, the 1s-orbital is essentially independent of the chemical environment, being very close to the atomic case. A variation of the DZ type basis doubles the number of valence orbitals, producing a **split valence basis**. In actual calculations, a doubling of the core orbitals would rarely be considered, and the term DZ basis is used also for split valence basis sets (or sometimes VDZ, for valence double zeta).

The next step up in basis set size is a **Triple Zeta (TZ)**. Such a basis contains three times as many functions as the minimum basis, i.e. six s-functions and three p-functions for the first row elements. Some of the core orbitals may again be saved by only splitting the valence, producing a split valence basis set. Again the term TZ is used to cover both cases. The names **Quadruple Zeta (QZ)** and **Quintuple Zeta (PZ or 5Z, but not QZ)** for the next levels of basis sets are also used, but large basis sets are often given explicitly in terms of the number of basis functions of each type.

So far, only the number of s- and p-functions for each atom (first or second row in the periodic table) has been discussed. In most cases, higher angular momentum functions are also important, and these are denoted **polarization functions**. Consider again the bonding in HCN in Figure 5.2. The H—C bond is primarily described by the hydrogen s-orbital(s) and the carbon s- and p\(_z\)-orbitals. It is clear that the electron distribution along the bond will be different than perpendicular to the bond. If only s-functions are present on hydrogen, this cannot be described. However, if a set of p-orbitals is added to hydrogen, the p component can be used for improving the description of the H—C bond. The p-orbital introduces a polarization of the s-orbital(s). Similarly, d-orbitals can be used for polarizing p-orbitals, f-orbitals for polarizing d-orbitals, etc.

Once a p-orbital has been added to polarize a hydrogen s-orbital, it may be argued that the p-orbital should now be polarized by adding a d-orbital, which should be polarized by an f-orbital, etc. For independent-particle wave functions, where electron correlation is not considered, the first set of polarization functions (i.e. p-functions for
Hydrogen and d functions for heavy atoms) is by far the most important, and will in general describe most of the important charge polarization effects. If methods including electron correlation are used, higher angular momentum functions are essential. Electron correlation describes the energy lowering by the electrons "avoiding" each other, beyond the average effect taken into account by Hartree–Fock methods. Two types of correlation can be identified, an "angular" and an "in–out" correlation. The in–out correlation (e.g. the correlation of the molecular wave functions) is the situation where two electrons are on opposite sides of the nucleus. To describe angular correlation of an s-function, p-functions are needed. The angular correlation is of similar importance as the radial correlation, and higher angular momentum functions are consequently essential for correlated calculations. Although these should probably be included in the basis set used functions with the same magnitude exponents, it is common to choose a single set of polarization functions (function type and magnitude exponents). In contrast to Hartree–Fock methods, the higher angular momentum functions are particularly important for correlated wave functions. In the case of the DZP basis, a (DZP) type basis is obtained. For larger basis sets with many polarization functions the explicit composition in terms of number and types of functions is usually given. The exponent values for the d-type basis functions are determined by performing variational Hartree–Fock calculations for the atoms using the exponents as variational parameters. The exponent values that give the lowest energy are then used. Having decided on the number of basis functions from a consideration of the properties of interest and the computational cost, the question becomes: how are the values for the exponents in the basis functions chosen? The values for the s- and p-functions are typically determined by performing variational Hartree–Fock calculations for the atoms using the exponents as variational parameters. The exponent values that give the lowest energy are then used. 
5.3 Even- and Well-Tempered Basis Sets

The optimization of basis function exponents is a problem that becomes progressively more difficult as the basis set gets larger. The optimization problem is non-orthogonal, and increasing \( K \) thus significantly changes all the expansion coefficients. This problem can be alleviated by using Legendre polynomials instead, since these are orthogonal and significantly improves the optimization.

It has been found that a fourth-order polynomial \((K=3)\) expansion produces much better results than the well-tempered formula, despite having the same number of variables. For example if a single function is assigned with exponents of 0.4 and 1.6 (splitting factor of 4), the details of how the exponents are determined for various basis sets are discussed in the following sections.

Optimized basis sets of many different sizes and qualities are available either in the form of tables, websites or stored internally in the computer programs. The user “merely” has to select a suitable basis set. However, if the interest is in specialized properties the basis set may need to be tailored to meet the specific needs. For example if the property of interest is an accurate value for the electron density at the nucleus it is similar to the even-tempered basis sets, with the exponents being generated by an exponential function. The advantages of this approach is that the converge is somewhat slow, and an explicitly optimized basis of the same size will usually give a better answer than an over-tempered basis with \( M=1 \) functions. The splitting factor is typically taken in the range 2–4. For example if a single function is assigned with exponents of 0.4 and 1.6 (splitting factor of 4), the details of how the exponents are determined for various basis sets are discussed in the following sections.

The \( a, b, \) and \( c \) constants to a good approximation can be written as functions of the size of the basis set, \( M \).

The constants \( a, b, \) and \( c \) depend only on the atom type and the type of function \((s, p, d, \text{or } f)\). Even-tempered basis sets have the advantage that it is easy to generate a sequence of basis sets that are guaranteed to converge towards a complete basis set. This is useful if the attempt is to cover the valence region better than the core region. If the property of interest is an accurate value for the electron density at the nucleus it is similar to the even-tempered basis sets, with the exponents being generated by an exponential function. The advantages of this approach is that the converge is somewhat slow, and an explicitly optimized basis of the same size will usually give a better answer than an over-tempered basis with \( M=1 \) functions. The splitting factor is typically taken in the range 2–4.
Alternatively, for calculating hyperpolarizabilities, very diffuse functions are required. In such cases, the basis function optimization is in terms of the property of interest, and not in terms of energy. i.e. basis functions are added until the change upon addition of one extra function is less than a given threshold.

5.4 Contracted Basis Sets

One disadvantage of all energy-optimized basis sets is the fact that they primarily depend on the wave function in the region of the inner shell electrons. The hydrogen energy-optimized GTOs, for example, are constructed to make the basis set optimum for the core electrons, and are therefore not optimum for describing the outer part of the wave function, i.e. the wave function tails. This is the most efficient way of designing basis sets for describing the outer part of the wave function, instead of using a large number of basis functions, i.e. an energy-optimized basis set that gives a good description of the outer part of the wave function will therefore need to be very large, and the number of functions being used will depend on the desired accuracy of the wave function. Instead, energy optimized basis sets are usually augmented explicitly with diffuse functions (basis functions with small exponents).

Diffractive functions are obtained when some of the exponents of the primitive functions are reduced to such small numbers that the overlap is negligible. The advantage of this is that the wave function is then described by a set of basis functions with small exponents. This is the most efficient way of designing basis sets for describing the outer part of the wave function, instead of using a large number of basis functions, i.e. an energy-optimized basis set that gives a good description of the outer part of the wave function will therefore need to be very large, and the number of functions being used will depend on the desired accuracy of the wave function. Instead, energy optimized basis sets are usually augmented explicitly with diffuse functions (basis functions with small exponents). The fact that many basis functions focus on describing the energetically important, but chemically unimportant, core electrons is the foundation for contracted basis sets.

Diffractive functions are obtained by reducing some of the exponents in the basis functions to such small numbers that the overlap is negligible. The advantage of this is that the wave function is then described by a set of basis functions with small exponents. This is the most efficient way of designing basis sets for describing the outer part of the wave function, instead of using a large number of basis functions, i.e. an energy-optimized basis set that gives a good description of the outer part of the wave function will therefore need to be very large, and the number of functions being used will depend on the desired accuracy of the wave function. Instead, energy optimized basis sets are usually augmented explicitly with diffuse functions (basis functions with small exponents).

The degree of contraction is the number of PGTOs entering the CGTO, typically varying between one and ten. The specification of a basis set in terms of primitive and contracted functions is given in parentheses. For example, the basis set (10s4p1d/4s1p) describes the number of primitive functions for each of the four orbitals: 10 PGTOs in the s-shell, 4 PGTOs in the p-shell, and 1 PGTO in the d-shell. The CGTOs are fixed linear combinations formed from the primitive functions. A given set of PGTOs is partitioned into CGTOs by forming fixed linear combinations of PGTOs. The number of basis functions to be handled by the variational procedure is reduced from ten to three.

Combining the full set of basis functions, known as the primitive GTOs (PGTOs), into a smaller set of functions by forming fixed linear combinations is known as basis set contraction, and the resulting functions are called contracted GTOs (CGTOs).

The previously introduced acronyms DZP, TZ2P, etc., refer to the number of contracted basis functions. In the notation DZP, the 2P stands for a diffuse 2s function, which is added to the complete 1s function. This means that the total number of basis functions is k + 2, where k is the number of s functions. The DP basis set is a diffuse 2s function on carbon, and the P basis set is a diffuse 2s function on hydrogen. The number of primitives being used is therefore the number of PGTOs of the form \( \sum a_i \Phi_i \) that enter the CGTO. The numbers of PGTOs entering CGTOs in the first row elements (10s4p1d/4s1p) are 10 PGTOs in the s-shell, 4 PGTOs in the p-shell, and 1 PGTO in the d-shell. The PGTOs are fixed linear combinations formed from the primitive functions. A given set of PGTOs is partitioned into CGTOs by forming fixed linear combinations of PGTOs. The number of basis functions to be handled by the variational procedure is reduced from ten to three.

In a segmented contraction each primitive is contracted into one CGTO, the one remaining PGTO as the third CGTO. In a general contraction all primitives (on a given atom) enter all the contracted functions, but with different contraction coefficients. In such cases, the basis function optimization is in terms of the property of interest, and not in terms of energy, i.e. basis functions are added until the change upon addition of one extra function is less than a given threshold.

The degree of contraction is the number of PGTOs entering the CGTO, typically varying between one and ten. The specification of a basis set in terms of primitive and contracted functions is given in parentheses. For example, the basis set (10s4p1d/4s1p) describes the number of primitive functions for each of the four orbitals: 10 PGTOs in the s-shell, 4 PGTOs in the p-shell, and 1 PGTO in the d-shell. The CGTOs are fixed linear combinations formed from the primitive functions. A given set of PGTOs is partitioned into CGTOs by forming fixed linear combinations of PGTOs. The number of basis functions to be handled by the variational procedure is reduced from ten to three.

Combining the full set of basis functions, known as the primitive GTOs (PGTOs), into a smaller set of functions by forming fixed linear combinations is known as basis set contraction, and the resulting functions are called contracted GTOs (CGTOs).

5.4 Contracted Basis Sets

One disadvantage of all energy-optimized basis sets is the fact that they primarily depend on the wave function in the region of the inner shell electrons. The hydrogen energy-optimized GTOs, for example, are constructed to make the basis set optimum for the core electrons, and are therefore not optimum for describing the outer part of the wave function, i.e. the wave function tails. Instead, energy-optimized basis sets are usually augmented explicitly with diffuse functions (basis functions with small exponents). Diffuse functions are obtained when some of the exponents in the basis functions are reduced to such small numbers that the overlap is negligible. The advantage of this is that the wave function is then described by a set of basis functions with small exponents. This is the most efficient way of designing basis sets for describing the outer part of the wave function, instead of using a large number of basis functions, i.e. an energy-optimized basis set that gives a good description of the outer part of the wave function will therefore need to be very large, and the number of functions being used will depend on the desired accuracy of the wave function. Instead, energy optimized basis sets are usually augmented explicitly with diffuse functions (basis functions with small exponents).

The fact that many basis functions focus on describing the energetically important, but chemically unimportant, core electrons is the foundation for contracted basis sets. Contracted basis sets are obtained by reducing some of the exponents in the basis functions to such small numbers that the overlap is negligible. The advantage of this is that the wave function is then described by a set of basis functions with small exponents. This is the most efficient way of designing basis sets for describing the outer part of the wave function, instead of using a large number of basis functions, i.e. an energy-optimized basis set that gives a good description of the outer part of the wave function will therefore need to be very large, and the number of functions being used will depend on the desired accuracy of the wave function. Instead, energy optimized basis sets are usually augmented explicitly with diffuse functions (basis functions with small exponents).

The degree of contraction is the number of PGTOs entering the CGTO, typically varying between one and ten. The specification of a basis set in terms of primitive and contracted functions is given in parentheses. For example, the basis set (10s4p1d/4s1p) describes the number of primitive functions for each of the four orbitals: 10 PGTOs in the s-shell, 4 PGTOs in the p-shell, and 1 PGTO in the d-shell. The CGTOs are fixed linear combinations formed from the primitive functions. A given set of PGTOs is partitioned into CGTOs by forming fixed linear combinations of PGTOs. The number of basis functions to be handled by the variational procedure is reduced from ten to three.

Combining the full set of basis functions, known as the primitive GTOs (PGTOs), into a smaller set of functions by forming fixed linear combinations is known as basis set contraction, and the resulting functions are called contracted GTOs (CGTOs).

In a segmented contraction each primitive is contracted into one CGTO, the one remaining PGTO as the third CGTO. In a general contraction all primitives (on a given atom) enter all the contracted functions, but with different contraction coefficients. In such cases, the basis function optimization is in terms of the property of interest, and not in terms of energy, i.e. basis functions are added until the change upon addition of one extra function is less than a given threshold.
Basis Sets

5.4 Contracted Basis Sets

Contracted Basis Sets

These basis sets, designed by Pople and coworkers, and are of the split valence type, with the $k$ in front of the dash indicating how many PGTOs are used for representing the core orbitals. The $nlm$ after the dash indicate both how many functions the valence orbitals are split into, and how many PGTOs are used for their representation. Two values ($nl$) indicate a split valence, while three values ($nlm$) indicate a triple split valence. The values before the G (for Gaussian) indicate the $s$- and $p$-functions in the basis; the polarization functions are placed after the G. These types of basis sets have the further restriction that the same exponent is used for both the $s$- and $p$-functions in the valence. This increases the computational efficiency, but of course decreases the flexibility of the basis set. The exponents and contraction coefficients have been optimized by variational procedures at the HF level for atoms.

The disjoint nature of the primitive set of functions in a contracted segment, on the other hand, often necessitates a duplication of one or more functions, i.e. effectively a general contraction. The segmented—general classification should thus be viewed as limiting cases, with actual basis sets having varying characteristics of both types.

In reality, there are very few truly segmented or general contracted basis sets. General contracted basis sets normally leave the outermost function(s) uncontracted, and a Gram–Schmidt type orthogonalization can be used for partly segmenting the inner functions. The disjoint nature of the primitive set of functions in a segmented contraction, on the other hand, often necessitates a duplication of one or more functions, i.e. effectively a general contraction. The segmented—general classification should thus be viewed as limiting cases, with actual basis sets having varying characteristics of both types.

There are many different contracted basis sets available in the literature or built into programs, and the average user usually only needs to select a suitable quality basis for the calculation. Below is a short description of some basis sets that often are used in routine calculations. The contractions are given for a first row element (such as carbon), while the corresponding ones for other elements can be found in the references.

5.4.1 Pople style basis sets

STO-nG basis sets

These are Slater type orbitals consisting of $n$ PGTOs. This is a minimum type basis where the exponents of the PGTO are determined by fitting to the STO, rather than optimizing them by a variational procedure. Although basis sets with $n = 2–6$ have been derived, it has been found that using more than three PGTOs for representing the STO gives little improvement, and the STO-3G basis is a widely used minimum basis. This type of basis set has been determined for many elements of the periodic table. The designation of the carbon STO-3G basis is (6s3p) $\rightarrow$ [2s1p].

$knlmG$ basis sets

These basis sets, designed by Pople and coworkers, and are of the split valence type, with the $k$ in front of the dash indicating how many PGTOs are used for representing the core orbitals. The $nlm$ after the dash indicate both how many functions the valence orbitals are split into, and how many PGTOs are used for their representation. Two values ($nl$) indicate a split valence, while three values ($nlm$) indicate a triple split valence. The values before the G (for Gaussian) indicate the $s$- and $p$-functions in the basis; the polarization functions are placed after the G. These types of basis sets have the further restriction that the same exponent is used for both the $s$- and $p$-functions in the valence. This increases the computational efficiency, but of course decreases the flexibility of the basis set. The exponents and contraction coefficients have been optimized by variational procedures at the HF level for atoms.

3-21G This is a split valence basis, where the core orbitals are a contraction of three PGTOs, the inner part of the valence orbitals is a contraction of two PGTOs and the outer part of the valence is represented by one PGTO. The designation of the carbon 3-21G basis is (6s3p) $\rightarrow$ [3s2p]. Note that the 3-21G basis contains the same number of primitive GTOs as the STO-3G, however, it is much more flexible as there are twice as many valence functions that can combine freely to make MOs.

6-31G This is also a split valence basis, where the core orbitals are a contraction of six PGTOs, the inner part of the valence orbitals is a contraction of three PGTOs and the outer part of the valence is represented by one PGTO. The designation of the carbon 6-31G basis is (10s4p) $\rightarrow$ [3s2p]. These types of basis set have been derived for hydrogen and the first row elements, and some of the basis sets have also been derived for second and higher row elements. The composition in terms of contracted and primitive functions is given in Table 5.1.

If only one set of polarization functions is used, an alternative notation in terms of $+$ is also widely used. The 6-31G$^*$ basis is identical to 6-31G(d), and 6-31G$^{**}$ is identical to 6-31G(d,p). A special note should be made for the 3-21G$^*$ basis. The 3-21G

\[
\chi_{(CGTO)} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i \chi_{(PGTO)}
\]

\[
\chi_{(CGTO)} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} b_i \chi_{(PGTO)}
\]
basis is basically too small to support polarization functions (it become unbalanced). However, the 3-21G basis by itself performs poorly for hypervalent molecules, such as sulfides and sulfones. This can be improved substantially by adding a set of d-functions. The 3-21G* basis has only d-functions on second row elements (it is sometimes denoted 3-21G(*) to indicate this), and should not be considered a polarized basis. Rather the addition of a set of d-functions is an ad hoc repair of a known flaw.

### 5.4.2 Dunning–Huzinaga basis sets

Huzinaga has determined uncontracted energy-optimized basis sets up to (10s6p) for first row elements. This was latter extended to (14s9p) by van Duijneveldt, and up to (18s13p) by Partridge. Dunning has used the Huzinaga primitive GTOs to derive various contraction schemes, and these are known as Dunning–Huzinaga (DH) type basis sets. A DZ type basis can be made by a contraction of the (9s5p) PGTO to [3s2p]. The contraction scheme is 6,1,1 for s-functions and 4,1 for p-functions. A widely used split valence type basis is a contraction of the same primitive set to [3s2p] where the s-contraction is 7,2,1 (note that one primitive enters twice). A widely used TZ type basis (actually only a triple split valence) is a contraction of the (10s6p) to [5s3p], with the contraction scheme 6,2,1,1 for s-functions and 4,1 for p-functions. Again, a duplication of one of the s- and p-primitives has been allowed.

McLean and Chandler have developed a similar set of contracted basis sets from Huzinaga primitive optimized sets for second row elements. A DZ type basis is derived by contracting (12s9p) → [5s3p], and a TZ type is derived by contracting (12s9p) → [6s5p]. The latter contraction is 6,3,1,1,1 for the s-functions (note a duplication of s-function) and 4,2,1,1,1 for the p-functions, and is often used in connection with the Pople 6-311G when second row elements are present.

The Dunning–Huzinaga type basis sets do not have the restriction of the Pople style basis sets of equal exponents for the s- and p-functions, and they are therefore somewhat more flexible, but computationally also more expensive. The major determining factor, however, is the number of basis functions and less so the exact description of each function. Normally there is little difference in the performance between different DZ or different TZ type basis sets.

The primary reason for the popularity of the Pople and DH style basis sets is the extensive calibration available. There have been so many calculations reported with these basis sets that is possible to get a fairly good idea of the level of accuracy that can be attained with a given basis. This is of course a self-sustaining procedure, the more calculations that are reported with a given basis, the more popular it becomes, since the calibration set becomes larger and larger.

### 5.4.3 MINI, MIDI and MAXI basis sets

Tatewaki and Huzinaga have optimized minimum basis sets for a large part of the periodic table at the HF level. The MINI-n (n = 1–4) basis sets are all minimum basis sets with three PGTOs in the 2s CGTO, and a varying number of PGTOs in the 1s and 2p CGTOs. In terms of PGTOs, the MINI-1 is (3,3s3p), the MINI-2 is (3s3p4d), the MINI-3 is (4s3p4d) and the MINI-4 is (4s3p4d4f). These MINI basis sets in general perform better than STO-3G, but it should be kept in mind that they are still minimum basis sets. The MIDI-n basis sets are identical to MINI-n, except that the outer valence function is decontracted. The MAXI-n basis sets all employ four PGTOs for the 2s CGTO and from five to seven PGTOs for the 1s and 2p CGTOs. The valence orbitals are split into three or four functions, and MAXI-1 is (9s5p) → [4s3p] (contraction 5,2,1,1,1 and 3,1,1,1), MAXI-3 is (10s6p) → [5s3p] (contraction 7,2,1,1,1,1 and 4,1,1,1).

### 5.4.4 Ahlrichs type basis sets

The group centred around R. Ahlrichs has designed basis sets of DZ, TZ and QZ quality for the elements up to Kr. The Split Valence Polarized (SVP) basis set is a [3s2p] contraction of a (7s4p) set of primitive functions (contraction 5,1,1 and 3,1), while the Triple Zeta Valence (TZV) basis set is a [5s3p] contraction of an (11s6p) set of primitive functions (contraction 6,2,1,1,1 and 4,1,1). More recently, the series has been extended by a Quadruple Zeta Valence (QZV) basis set, being a [7s5p] contraction of a (15s9p) set of primitive functions with the contraction 8,2,1,1,1,1 and 5,1,1,1,1. Note that both the TZV and QZV basis sets employ more contracted s-functions than indicated by the TZ and OZ acronyms. The s- and p-exponents and corresponding contraction coefficients are optimized at the HF level, while the polarization functions are taken from the cc-pVQZ basis sets.

### 5.4.5 Atomic natural orbital basis sets

All of the above basis sets are of the segmented contraction type. Modern contracted basis sets aimed at producing very accurate wave functions often employ a general
5.4 Contracted Basis Sets

Table 5.3 Composition in terms of contracted and primitive basis functions for the correlation consistent basis sets. The Atomic Natural Orbitals (ANO) and correlation consistent basis sets below are of the general contraction type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>Hydrogen 1</th>
<th>First row elements</th>
<th>Second row elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>4s2p1d</td>
<td>4s2p1d1f</td>
<td>4s2p1d1f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>3s2p1d</td>
<td>3s2p1d1f</td>
<td>3s2p1d1f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>4s3p2d1f</td>
<td>4s3p2d1f</td>
<td>4s3p2d1f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pV5Z</td>
<td>5s4p3d2f</td>
<td>5s4p3d2f</td>
<td>5s4p3d2f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pV6Z</td>
<td>6s5p4d3f1h</td>
<td>6s5p4d3f1h</td>
<td>6s5p4d3f1h</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The basis set convergence of electron correlation methods is inverse polynomial in the highest angular momentum functions included in the basis set, while the convergence of the independent-particle HF and DFT methods is exponential. The polarization consistent basis sets are developed analogously to the correlation consistent basis sets except that they are optimized for DFT methods. The polarization consistent basis sets are suitable for independent-particle methods in general.

Several different sizes of cc basis sets are available in terms of final number of contracted functions. These are known by their acronyms cc-pVQZ, cc-pVTZ, cc-pVQZ, cc-pV5Z, and cc-pV6Z. The cc-pVQZ basis sets are developed analogously to the correlation consistent basis sets except that they are optimized for DFT methods.
5.4 Contracted Basis Sets

Composition in terms of contracted and primitive basis functions for the polarization consistent basis sets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>Hydrogen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contracted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-1</td>
<td>2s 1p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-2</td>
<td>3s 2p 4s 3p 6s 4p 7s 5p 8s 6p 9s 7p 10s 8p 11s 9p 12s 10p 13s 11p 14s 12p 15s 13p 16s 14p 17s 18s 19s 20p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-3</td>
<td>4s 3p 6s 4p 7s 5p 8s 6p 9s 7p 10s 8p 11s 9p 12s 10p 13s 11p 14s 12p 15s 13p 16s 14p 17s 18s 19s 20p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-4</td>
<td>5s 4p 6s 4p 7s 5p 8s 6p 9s 7p 10s 8p 11s 9p 12s 10p 13s 11p 14s 12p 15s 13p 16s 14p 17s 18s 19s 20p</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An alternative fitting function (eq. (5.11)) for use with the pc-n basis sets has been shown to improve the accuracy of absolute energies by almost an order of magnitude, although relative energies are only marginally improved.

Exponential forms like eq. (5.10) have also been used for extrapolating the total energy at correlated levels of theory with the cc-pVxZ basis sets. Theoretical analysis, however, shows that the cc-pVxZ basis sets are likely to converge with an inverse power dependence with triple factorial terms. Nevertheless, it has been found that extrapolations based on single extrapolation parameters provide a good fit.

The main advantage of the ANO, correlation consistent and polarization consistent basis sets is the ability to generate a sequence of basis sets converging in a systematic fashion. For example, from a series of calculations with the 3-21G, 6-31G(d,p), 6-311G(2d,2p) and 6-311++G(3df,3pd) basis sets it may not be possible to achieve a lower basis set limit. The ANO basis sets provide a sequence of basis sets converging towards the complete basis set limit in a systematic fashion. Basis sets with higher correlation consistent basis functions provide a sequence of basis sets converging towards the complete basis set limit in a systematic fashion. Basis sets with higher correlation consistent basis functions provide a sequence of basis sets converging towards the complete basis set limit in a systematic fashion.
5.5 Plane Wave Basis Functions

Rather than starting with basic functions aimed at modeling the atomic orbitals (STOs or GTOs) and forming linear combinations of these to describe the orbitals for the whole system, one may use functions from a unit cell with periodic boundary conditions. In such a case, the selected basis set turns out to be too close to linear dependence, as the number of plane waves is close to the number of orbitals in the system, and this limit is determined by the finite precision with which the calculations are performed. Therefore, rather than starting with basic functions aimed at modeling the atomic orbitals, one may use functions from a unit cell with periodic boundary conditions. In such a case, the selected basis set turns out to be too close to linear dependence, as the number of plane waves is close to the number of orbitals in the system, and this limit is determined by the finite precision with which the calculations are performed.

5.5 Plane Wave Basis Functions

The wave vector \( \mathbf{k} \) plays the same role as the exponent \( e^{i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \) in a GTO (eq. 5.12), and it is related to the energy by means of eq. (5.13) (conventionally given in units of electronvolts). As seen in eq. (5.10), it can also be thought of as a frequency factor, with high \( k \) values indicating high-frequency or high-frequency functions. Similarly, the high-frequency functions can be written as a complex exponential.

The wave vector \( \mathbf{k} \) plays the same role as the exponent \( e^{i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \) in a GTO (eq. 5.12), and it is related to the energy by means of eq. (5.13) (conventionally given in units of electronvolts). As seen in eq. (5.10), it can also be thought of as a frequency factor, with high \( k \) values indicating high-frequency or high-frequency functions. Similarly, the high-frequency functions can be written as a complex exponential.

The wave vector \( \mathbf{k} \) plays the same role as the exponent \( e^{i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \) in a GTO (eq. 5.12), and it is related to the energy by means of eq. (5.13) (conventionally given in units of electronvolts). As seen in eq. (5.10), it can also be thought of as a frequency factor, with high \( k \) values indicating high-frequency or high-frequency functions. Similarly, the high-frequency functions can be written as a complex exponential.

The wave vector \( \mathbf{k} \) plays the same role as the exponent \( e^{i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \) in a GTO (eq. 5.12), and it is related to the energy by means of eq. (5.13) (conventionally given in units of electronvolts). As seen in eq. (5.10), it can also be thought of as a frequency factor, with high \( k \) values indicating high-frequency or high-frequency functions. Similarly, the high-frequency functions can be written as a complex exponential.

The wave vector \( \mathbf{k} \) plays the same role as the exponent \( e^{i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \) in a GTO (eq. 5.12), and it is related to the energy by means of eq. (5.13) (conventionally given in units of electronvolts). As seen in eq. (5.10), it can also be thought of as a frequency factor, with high \( k \) values indicating high-frequency or high-frequency functions. Similarly, the high-frequency functions can be written as a complex exponential.
BASIS SETS

5.7 Composite Extrapolation Procedures

Harrison and coworkers have recently proposed a multi-resolution procedure where the molecular orbitals are expanded into a set of wavelets, i.e. daubechies scaling functions, at each level of that resolution. The core orbitals are expanded into a set of Legendre polynomials, i.e. g(\textbf{k}) = (\textbf{k}/2\pi)^n \sin(\textbf{k} \cdot \textbf{r})

Recent developments have attempted to combine localized and plane wave basis functions, i.e. describing the core region by radial polynomials or Gaussian functions, and the valence region by plane waves. A plane wave basis set is also more convenient for treating the valence region, as most of the high energy electronic states are plane wave functions. Plane wave basis functions are ideal for describing delocalized slowly varying electron densities, such as the valence bands in a metal. The core electrons, however, are strongly localized around the nucleus and are not as well described by plane waves. The singularity of the nucleus–electron potential is further impossible to describe in a plane wave basis, and this type of basis set is therefore used in connection with the charge of basis function position (Pauli forces). The Coulomb operator is local, as is the exchange operator in density functional theory, but the exchange energy at the Hartree–Fock level involves a non-local operator. Incorporating HF exchange with plane wave basis sets is therefore more difficult than with GTO basis sets, as they are independent of the nuclear positions. This means that the problem of basis set superposition error (Section 5.10) does not occur and the calculation of the gradient of the energy is easy, as is the calculation of the force, i.e. there are no components associated with the change of basis function position (Pauli forces).
The geometry is re-optimized at the HF level with a DZP type basis set. (2) The geometry is optimized at the QCISD(T)/6-31G(d,p) level. This automatically generates the MP2 value as an intermediate result, which in combination with the QCISD(T) part, which increases the number of electrons. The empirical correction is added by time to the MP2 energy, correcting for the number of electrons.

Geometries converge relatively fast: at the HF level with a DZP type basis set, the geometry error is often already "nearly zero". The geometry is optimized at the HF/6-31G(d) level and the vibrational frequencies are calculated. To correct for the known deficiencies at the HF level, these are scaled by 0.893 to produce zero point energies.

The main difference between the G2 and CBS models is the extrapolation of the correlation energy. The G2 methods assume basis set additivity and add an empirical correction to recover some of the remaining correlation energy. The CBS procedures, on the other hand, attempt to perform electronic correlation at the MP2 level, and assuming that enough pairs have been included to reach the asymptotic limit, it may be shown that the MP2 energy

As an example, the G2(MP2) method involves the following steps. (1) The geometry is optimized at the HF/6-31G(d) level and the vibrational frequencies are calculated. To correct for the known deficiencies at the HF level, these are scaled by 0.893 to produce zero point energies.

The main difference between the G2 and CBS methods is the way they try to extrapolate the correlation energy, as described below. Both the G2 methods assume basis set additivity and add an empirical correction to recover some of the remaining correlation energy. The CBS procedures, on the other hand, attempt to perform electronic correlation at the MP2 level, and assuming that enough pairs have been included to reach the asymptotic limit, it may be shown that the MP2 energy

As an example, the G2(MP2) method involves the following steps. (1) The geometry is optimized at the HF/6-31G(d) level and the vibrational frequencies are calculated. To correct for the known deficiencies at the HF level, these are scaled by 0.893 to produce zero point energies.
calculated by a limited natural orbitals expansion (of the size \( N_{ij} \)) behaves as \( 1/N_{ij} \), and can therefore be extrapolated to the complete basis set limit.

There are several different CBS methods, each having their own set of prescriptions and resulting computational cost and accuracy, and they are known by the acronyms CBS-4, CBS-q, CBS-Q and CBS-APNO.

As an explicit example, we will take the CBS-Q model, which computationally is similar to the G2(MP2) method:

1. The geometry is optimized at the HF/6-31G(d) level (d denotes that the exponents for the \( d \)-functions are taken from the 6-311G(d) basis), and the vibrational frequencies are calculated. To correct for the known deficiencies at the HF level, these are scaled by 0.918 to produce zero point energies.
2. The geometry is re-optimized at the MP2/6-31G(d) level, which is used as the reference geometry.
3. An MP4/6-311+G(d2p) calculation is carried out, which automatically yields the corresponding HF energy. The MP2 result is extrapolated to the basis set limit by the pair natural orbital method.
4. The energy is calculated at the MP4(SDQ)/6-31G(d,p) and QCISD(T)/6-31++G(d,p) level to estimate the effect from higher order electron correlation.
5. Corrections due to remaining correlation effects are estimated by an empirical expression,

\[
\Delta E_{\text{corr}} = -0.00533 \sum_{i=1}^{N_c} \left( \sum_{p} C_{ii} \right)^2 |R_{ii}|
\]

where the sum over \( C_{ii} \) is the trace of the first-order wave function coefficients for the natural orbital pair \( i, [S]_i \) is the absolute value of the spatial overlap between the \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) spin components of the \( i \)th MO, and the factor 0.00533 is determined by fitting to the reference data. This empirical correction is size extensive.

(6) For open-shell species the UHF method is used, which in some cases suffers from spin contamination. To correct for this an empirical correction based on the deviation of \( \langle S^2 \rangle \) from the theoretical value is added for the CBS-4 and CBS-Q methods, \( \Delta E_{\text{emp}} = -0.0092 \langle S^2 \rangle - 5(S_z - 1) \), where the factor of -0.0092 is derived by fitting.

The use of the smaller basis for the QCISD(T) calculation means that the CBS-Q model is computationally faster than G2(MP2), but nevertheless gives slightly lower errors. A comparison among the four CBS models is shown in Table 5.6 (p. 218).

It should be noted that the G2-1 data set, with two exceptions (SO \(_2\) and CO\(_2\)), only includes data for molecules containing one or two heavy (non-hydrogen) atoms. It is likely that the typical error for a given model to a certain extent depends on the size of the system, i.e. the G2 method is presumably not able to predict the heat of formation of say C\(_6\)\(_{60}\) (if it were computationally feasible) with an accuracy of ~6 kJ/mol. Furthermore, the properties included (atomization energies, ionization potentials, electron and proton affinities) all correspond to energy differences between well-separated systems: atomization energies are energy differences between a molecule and isolated atoms, and the other three properties correspond to removal or addition of a single electron or proton. As illustrated in Chapter 11, such energy differences are easier to calculate than between systems containing half broken/former bond. As with any scheme that has been parameterized on experimental data, it is questionable to assume that the typical accuracy for a selected set of properties will be true in general. A good performance for the G2 data set does not necessarily indicate that the same level of accuracy can be obtained over a wide variety of geometries, for example including transition structures. A modified version of the G2 method, denoted G2Q, involving geometry optimization and frequency calculation at the QCISD(6-31G(d,p)) level, has been advocated by Durant and Rohlfing for use with transition structures.

The G3 and CBS-APNO methods are capable of calculating average atomization energies to within 2–4 kJ/mol, but the maximum error for the reference data set is often significantly larger. Since it is difficult to know in advance whether the particular system of interest behaves as the average or the exceptional case, the predicted value must realistically be assumed to have an uncertainty of perhaps 10–20kJ/mol. Part of the reason for the relatively large spread in the errors is the assumption of additivity in basis sets effect, which has little theoretical foundation, although the empirical corrections at least partly absorb some of these errors.

If higher accuracy is desired, for example “sub-chemical” (~0.5 kJ/mol) or “spectroscopic accuracy” (~1 cm\(^{-1}\), ~0.01 kJ/mol), a number of other factors must also be considered:

1. Correlation of the core and core-valence electrons. This becomes progressively more important as heavier elements are considered.
### Table 5.6
Computational levels in the CBS models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Geometry</th>
<th>Higher order correlation</th>
<th>Thermo [scale factor]</th>
<th>MAD (kJ/mol)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CBS-4</td>
<td>HF/3-21G(*)</td>
<td>MP2</td>
<td>[6-311++G(2df,2p)]</td>
<td>6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G(2df,p) 6-31+G(d,p)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G(d,p) MP4(SDQ)/6-31G</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[0.917]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBS-q</td>
<td>HF/3-21G(*)</td>
<td>MP2</td>
<td>[6-311++G(2df,2p)]</td>
<td>6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G(2df,p) 6-31+G(d,p)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G(d,p) MP4(SDQ)/6-31G</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[0.918]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBS-Q</td>
<td>MP2/6-31G(d,p)</td>
<td>MP2</td>
<td>[6-311++G(2df,2p)]</td>
<td>4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G(2df,p) 6-31+G(d,p)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G(d,p) MP4(SDQ)/6-31G</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[0.925]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBS-APNO</td>
<td>QCISD/6-31G(d,p)</td>
<td>QCISD</td>
<td>[6s6p3d2f/4s2p1d]</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>QCISD(T)/6-31G</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[0.925]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Geometry = level at which the structure is optimized

Higher order correlation = method(s) for estimating higher order correlation effects

Thermo = level at which the thermodynamic corrections are calculated

MAD = mean absolute deviation relative to the reference data set

(2) Inclusion of high-order correlation effects, such as connected triple, quadruple and quintuple excitations.
(3) Relativistic effects, such as mass-velocity, Darwin and spin–orbit coupling perturbative corrections, or more sophisticated relativistic treatments. Obviously, these corrections become important even at the chemical accuracy level if elements from the lower part of the periodic table are considered.
(4) Non-Born–Oppenheimer corrections. These will be most important for systems containing hydrogen.
(5) Basis set superposition corrections.
(6) Anharmonic vibrations.
(7) Vibrational-rotational coupling.

At present, there is no standard procedure for achieving "spectroscopic accuracy", but Martin and coworkers have developed W1, W2 and W3 methods aimed at a target accuracy of ~1 kJ/mol on the average for atomization energies, with worst-case systems having errors below ~5 kJ/mol. The Wn methods all rely on an explicit extrapolation to the infinite basis set limit for the HF and correlation energies, and addition of relativistic effects. The W3 method is the most sophisticated of these, and consists of the following steps:

(1) The geometry is optimized at the CCSD(T)/cc-pVQZ level.
(2) Anharmonic frequencies are calculated at the CCSD(T)/cc-pVQZ level.
(3) The HF limit is estimated by extrapolating the results from the aug-cc-pVQZ and aug-cc-pV5Z basis sets.
(4) The valence correlation energy is estimated from two-point extrapolation for CCSD, CCSD(T) and CCSDT calculations. The effects of higher order correlation effects are estimated from CCSDTQ/cc-pVDZ results scaled by an empirical factor of 1.25.
(5) Relativistic corrections are estimated by comparing the results from a Douglas–Kroll CCSD(T)/aug-pRQZ (relativistic version of the aug-cc-pVQZ basis) calculation with non-relativistic CCSD(T)/aug-pVQZ results.

The W3 method provides a mean absolute error of 0.8 kJ/mol for 30 molecules, with the worst case having an error of ~2 kJ/mol, and these values can be compared with the average experimental error of 0.6 kJ/mol for the same set of data. It can be noted that the experimental data were carefully selected to have small experimental uncertainties, a more typical experimental error is 5–10 kJ/mol. Such explicit extrapolation procedures are thus capable of yielding results with accuracies comparable to experimental methods, and may soon surpass experiments as the preferred method for obtaining geometry and stability data for small- and medium-sized systems.

There are a few other correction procedures that may be considered as extrapolation schemes. The *Scaled External Correlation* (SEC) and *Scaled All Correlation* (SAC) methods scale the correlation energy by a factor such that calculated dissociation energy agrees with the experimental value.
Table 5.7 | Computational levels in the W_n models; only the largest basis set calculations are indicated, results from smaller basis sets are used for extrapolating to the basis set limit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Geometry</th>
<th>Thermo</th>
<th>Relativistic</th>
<th>MAD (kJ/mol)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W1</td>
<td>B3LYP/ aug-cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>CCSD(T)/ aug-cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>pVQZ</td>
<td>Darwin, spin-orbit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W2</td>
<td>CCSD(T)/ aug-cc-pV5Z</td>
<td>CCSD(aug-cc-pV5Z)</td>
<td>pV5Z</td>
<td>Douglas–Kroll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W3</td>
<td>CCSD(T)/ aug-cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>CCSD(T)/ aug-cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>pVQZ</td>
<td>CCSDT/cc-pVTZ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**
- Geometry = level at which the structure is optimized
- Thermo = level at which the thermodynamic corrections are calculated (vibrational scale factor)
- MAD = mean absolute deviation relative to the reference data set

**References:**
- The SEC acronym refers to the case where the reference wave function is of the MCSCF type and the correlation energy is calculated by a MR-CISD procedure. When the reference is a single-determinant (SD) determinant, the SAC acronym is used. In the latter case, the reference wave function is calculated by a MR-CI method.
- The Parameterized Configuration Interaction (PCI-X) method simply takes the correlation energy calculated by the PCI method and multiplies it by a constant factor X (typically ~1.2), assuming that the given combination of method and basis set recovers a constant fraction of the correlation energy.

**Isogyric and Isodesmic Reactions**

The most difficult part in calculating absolute stabilities (heat of formation) is the correlation energy. For calculating energies relative to isolated atoms, the goal of the G0W0 models is essentially all the correlation energy of the bond being broken must be recovered. This, in turn, necessitates large basis sets and sophisticated correlation methods. But even then, absolute stabilities (heat of formation) are often at a substantially lower cost than that for actually performing the experiments.
5.9 Effective Core Potentials

Molecular systems have traditionally been described by Gaussian type basis sets, while plane waves have been favored for extended (periodic) systems, and this difference has resulted in some differences for ... by the number of electrons chosen to be represented by the ECP. The latter will benefit from cancellation of errors, and therefore stabilize much earlier in terms of theoretical level. Isogyric reactions can thus be used for obtaining relative values. In the above example the CH dissociation energy is given relative to that of CH

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$

$\text{CH}_2\text{H}_3\text{C} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{C} + \text{H}_2$
Although the savings in these cases are marginal relative to all electron calculations.

The size of a plane wave basis set is given by the highest energy wave, which is inversely related to the smallest variation of the wave function that can be described. The singularity of the nuclear potential \( V_n \) and the resulting strongly localized core electrons are essentially impossible to describe by any reasonable-sized plane wave basis set. Pseudopotentials are... use in connection with plane waves have a finite physical extent. The potential for distances smaller than \( r_c \) is described by a suitable analytical function, typically a polynomial or spherical Bessel function, and the pseudo-wave function and its first and second derivatives are required to match those of the reference wave function at \( r_c \). It is clear that a "hard" (small \( r_c \)) pseudopotential will require more plane wave basis functions for describing the region beyond \( r_c \) than a "soft" (large \( r_c \)) pseudopotential, but the essential role of the pseudopotentials is to reduce the necessary number of plane wave for expanding the valence orbitals by roughly a factor of 2.

Figure 5.7 The 5s-orbital for Ag with either an all-electron, large- or small-core effective core potential

While there is essentially no basis set error when using plane waves for expanding the orbitals, the requirement of using a pseudopotential to describe the core region means that there is a fundamental limitation in how accurate the results can be. For systems composed of elements from the first two rows in the periodic table, the error in DFT calculations is roughly equivalent to that imposed by using a Gaussian basis set of TZP quality in an all-electron calculation. An implicit limitation of pseudopotential methods is that of the inability to describe molecular properties that depend directly on the core electrons (as in X-ray photoelectron spectroscopy) or the electron density near the nucleus (as in NMR shielding and coupling constants).

The Projector Augmented Wave (PAW) method is usually also considered a pseudopotential method, although it formally retains all the core electrons. Indeed, the Vanderbilt ultrasoft pseudopotential can be derived by linearization of two terms in the PAW expression. The PAW wave function is written in a valence term expanded in a plane wave basis plus a contribution from the region within the core radius of each nucleus, evaluated on a grid. The contribution from a core region is expanded as a difference between two sets of densities, one arising from the (all-electron) atomic orbitals, the other from a set of nodeless pseudo-atomic orbitals, i.e. this term allow the wave function within the core region to adjust for different environments. In all the applications so far, however, the (all-electron) atomic orbitals have been kept fixed at their form for the isolated atoms, i.e. a "frozen-core" approach. If the atomic orbitals were fully optimized, the PAW would be essentially equivalent to the all-electron mixed basis sets methods discussed in Section 5.6. While the PAW method in principle should be better than using pseudopotential method, very few explicit comparisons have so far been performed.

A closely related idea arising from the chemical community is the use of the frozen-core approximation. The core electrons are here included in the treatment, but the corresponding orbitals are fixed at their atomic values and represented by a fixed expansion in a suitable basis set. This preserves the full electron-electron interaction but ignores the changes in the core orbitals due to the molecular environment. For first row systems the savings are marginal but for heavier elements the computational cost may be significantly reduced. The frozen-core approximation may furthermore be useful for calculations using relativistic wave functions, as it effectively prevents a variational collapse.

A common feature of all pseudopotential methods is that the parameters depend on the employed method, i.e. the potential derived for e.g. the Local Spin Density Approximation (LSDA) functional (Section 6.5.1) is different from that derived from a generalized gradient functional such as Perdew–Burke–Ernzerhof (PBE) (Section 6.5.2). In practice, the difference is relatively small and pseudopotentials optimized for one functional are often used for other functionals without re-optimization.

5.10 Basis Set Superposition Errors

By far the most common type of basis set for molecular applications is centred on the nuclei. As a complete basis set cannot be used in practice, the \( M_{\text{e}} \) (or worse) increase in computational effort limits practical calculations to hundreds or a few thousand basis functions at best. For most systems this means that absolute errors in the energy from basis set incompleteness are quite large, maybe several au (thousands of kJ/mol).
The interest is usually in relative energies, however, and the primary goal is therefore to make the error as constant as possible. This is one of the reasons why it is important to choose a “balanced” basis set. The first, perhaps obvious, step is that the same basis set must be used when comparing energies: comparing energies of two isomers where the 6-31G basis set has been used for one of them, and the DH basis set for the other, is meaningless, although both basis sets are of double zeta quality.

Fixing the position of the basis functions to the nuclei allows for a compact basis set, otherwise sets of basis functions positioned at many points in the geometrical space would be needed. When comparing energies at different geometries, however, the nuclear fixed basis set introduces an error. The quality of the basis set is the same at all geometries, owing to the fact that the electron density around one nucleus may be described by functions centered at another nucleus. This is especially troublesome when calculating small effects, such as energies of van der Waals complexes and hydrogen bonds. Consider for example the hydrogen bond between two water molecules.

The simplest approach consists of calculating the energy of the dimer and subtracting twice the energy of an isolated molecule (assuming a size extensive method). The electron distribution within each water molecule in the dimer is very close to that of the monomer. In the dimer, however, basis functions from one molecule can help compensate for the basis set incompleteness on the other molecule, and vice versa. The dimer will therefore be artificially lowered in energy, and the strength of the hydrogen bond overestimated. This effect is known as the Basis Set Superposition Error (BSSE).

In the limit of a complete basis set, the BSSE will be zero, and adding more basis functions will not give any improvement. The conceptual simplest approach for eliminating BSSE is therefore to add more and more basis functions, until the interaction energy no longer changes. Unfortunately, this requires very large basis sets. Since non-bonded interactions are weak, the desired accuracy is often about 0.5kcal/mol. Using the correlation consistent basis sets, the water dimer interaction energy stabilizes at this level with the aug-cc-pVTZ basis (184 basis functions for H2O) at the HF level, but requires (at least) the aug-cc-pV5Z basis (574 basis functions) at the MP2 level.

As inclusion of electron correlation is mandatory for calculating the dispersion interaction between molecules, even the water dimer potential is computationally challenging.

An approximate way of assessing BSSE is the Counterpoise (CP) correction. In this method the BSSE is estimated as the difference between monomer energies with the regular basis and the energies calculated with the full set of basis functions, even the water dimer potential is computationally challenging.

An approximate way of assessing BSSE is the Counterpoise (CP) correction. In this method the BSSE is estimated as the difference between monomer energies with the regular basis and the energies calculated with the full set of basis functions for the whole complex. Consider two molecules A and B, each having regular nuclear-centred basis sets denoted with subscripts a and b, and the complex AB having the combined basis set ab. The geometries of the two isolated molecules and of the complex are first optimized or otherwise assigned. The geometries of the A and B molecules in the complex will usually be slightly different than for the isolated species, and the complex geometry will be denoted with a*. The dimer energy minus the monomer energies is the directly calculated complexation energy:

\[
\Delta E_{\text{complexation}} = E(AB)_{a*b} - E(A)_a - E(B)_b.
\] (5.16)

To estimate how much of this complexation energy is due to BSSE, four additional energy calculations are needed. Using the a basis set for A, and the b basis set for B, the energies of the two fragments are calculated with the geometry they have in the complex. Two additional energy calculations of the fragments at the complex geometry are then carried out with the full ab basis set. This means that the energy of A is calculated in the presence of both the normal a basis functions and with the b basis functions of fragment B located at the corresponding nuclear positions, but without the B nuclei present, and vice versa. Such basis functions located at fixed points in space are often referred to as ghost orbitals. The fragment energy for A will be lowered due to these ghost functions, since the a basis becomes more complete. The CP correction is defined in eq. (5.17).

\[
\Delta E_{\text{CP}} = E(A)_a + E(B)_b - E(A)_{a*b} - E(B)_{a*b}.
\] (5.17)

The counterpoise-corrected complexation energy is then given as \( \Delta E_{\text{complexation}} - \Delta E_{\text{CP}} \). For regular basis sets, this typically stabilizes at the basis set limiting value much earlier than uncorrected values, but this is not necessarily the case if diffuse functions are included in the basis set. Note that \( \Delta E_{\text{CP}} \) is an approximate correction: it gives an estimate of the BSSE effect but does not provide either an upper or lower limit.

There are variations of this method. For example may it be argued that the full set of ghost orbitals should not be used, since some of the functions in the complex are used for describing the electrons of the other component, and only the virtual orbitals are available for “artificial” stabilization. However, it appears that the method of full counterpoise correction (using all basis functions as ghost orbitals) gives the best results.

It is usually observed that the CP correction for methods including electron correlation is larger and more sensitive to the size of the basis set than at the HF (or DFT) level. This is in line with the fact that the HF wave function converges much faster with respect to the size of the basis set than correlated wave functions.

There have also been attempts at developing methods where the BSSE is excluded explicitly in the computational expressions. An example of this is the Chemical Hamiltonian Approach (CHA), but such methods are not yet commonly used.

The BSSE is always present, also in calculating energies of “normal” species, for example the differential stability of ethanol and dimethyl ether, or the conformational difference between staggered and eclipsed ethane. Indeed, part of what is often referred to as the “basis set effect” (the change in relative energies when the basis is enlarged) should more correctly be considered as intramolecular BSSE. For intermolecular (non-bonded) interactions the CP correction is well defined, although it may not be as accurate as desired. For intramolecular cases, however, it is difficult to define a unique procedure for estimating the BSSE, and it is almost always ignored.

### 5.11 Pseudospectral Methods

The goal of pseudospectral methods is to reduce the formal \( M^2 \) dependence of the Coulomb and exchange operators in the basis set representation (two-electron integrals, eq. (3.52)) to \( M^3 \). This can be accomplished by switching between a grid representation in the physical space (the three-dimensional Cartesian space) and the spectral representation in the function space (the basis set).

Consider the following Coulomb contribution to the \( F_{ab} \) element of the Fock matrix (eq. (3.52)): similar considerations hold for the exchange contribution.
While the formal scaling of pseudospectral methods is $M^4$, compared with $M^3$ for all-integral methods, the effective scaling has been found to be very similar for the two approaches in actual calculations where integral screening is employed to eliminate small contributions to the Fock matrix. The prefactor for pseudospectral methods, however, is somewhat smaller and leads to an order of magnitude faster and more stable time for medium-sized systems. It is unclear how the timing of pseudospectral methods compares with linear scaling methods discussed in Section 3.8.6 for large systems.

References

230 BASIS SETS

REFERENCES


6 Density Functional Methods

The basis for Density Functional Theory (DFT) is the proof by Hohenberg and Kohn\(^1\) that the ground state electronic energy is determined completely by the electron density \( \rho \) (see Appendix B for details). In other words, there exists a one-to-one correspondence between the electron density of a system and the energy. The “intuitive” proof of why the density completely defines the system is due to E. B. Wilson,\(^2\) who argued that:

- The integral of the density defines the number of electrons.
- The cusps in the density define the position of the nuclei.
- The heights of the cusps define the corresponding nuclear charges.

The significance of the Hohenberg–Kohn theorem is perhaps best illustrated by comparing it with the wave function approach. A wave function for an \( N \) electron system contains \( 4N \) variables, three spatial and one spin coordinate for each electron. The electron density is the square of the wave function, integrated over \( N - 1 \) electron coordinates, and each spin density only depends on three spatial coordinates, independent of the number of electrons. While the complexity of a wave function increases exponentially with the number of electrons, the electron density has the same number of variables, independent of the system size. The “only” problem is that although it has been proven that each different density yields a different ground state energy, the functional connecting these two quantities is not known. The goal of DFT methods is to design functionals connecting the electron density with the energy.\(^3,4\)

A note on semantics: a *function* is a prescription for producing a number from a set of variables (coordinates). A *functional* is a prescription for producing a number from a *function*, which in turn depends on variables. A wave function and the electron density are thus functions, while the energy depending on a wave function or an electron density is a functional. We will denote a function depending on a set of variables with parentheses, \( f(x) \), while a functional depending on a function is denoted with brackets, \( F[f] \).

Early attempts at designing DFT models (actually predating wave mechanics) tried to express all the energy components as a functional of the electron density but these methods had poor performance, and wave function-based methods were consequently preferred. The success of modern DFT methods is based on the suggestion by Kohn and Sham in 1965 that the electron kinetic energy should be calculated from an auxiliary set of orbitals used for representing the electron density.\(^5\) The exchange–correlation energy, which is a rather small fraction of the total energy, is then the only unknown functional, and even relatively crude approximations for this term provide quite accurate computational models. The simplest model is the local density approximation, where the electron density is assumed to be slowly varying, such that the exchange–correlation energy can be calculated using formulas derived for a uniform electron density. A significant improvement in the accuracy can be obtained by making the exchange–correlation functional dependent also on the first derivative of the density, and further refinements also add the second derivative and max Hartree–Fock exchange into the functional. Density functional theory is conceptually and computationally very similar to Hartree–Fock theory, but provides much better results and has consequently become a very popular method. The main problem in DFT is the inability to systematically improve the results, and the known failure to describe certain important features, such as van der Waals interactions.

### 6.1 Orbital-Free Density Functional Theory

Compared with the wave mechanics approach, it seems clear that the energy functional may be divided into three parts, kinetic energy, \( T[\rho] \), attraction between the nuclei and electrons, \( E_n[\rho] \), and electron–electron repulsion, \( E_{\text{ee}}[\rho] \) (the nuclear–nuclear repulsion is a constant within the Born–Oppenheimer approximation). Furthermore, with reference to Hartree–Fock theory (eq. (3.32)), the \( E_{n}[\rho] \) term may be divided into Coulomb and exchange parts, \( J[\rho] \) and \( K[\rho] \), implicitly including correlation energy in all the terms. The \( E_{n}[\rho] \) and \( J[\rho] \) functionals are given by their classical expressions.

\begin{align}
E_{n}\left[\rho\right] &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{1}^{N} \left( \int \left( \frac{Z_{i} |R_{i}| \rho^{1/2}(r) dr}{|R_{i} - r|} \right) \right) \\
J[\rho] &= \frac{1}{2} \int \left( \int \left( \frac{\rho^{1/2}(r) \rho^{1/2}(r') dr'}{|r - r'|} \right) \right) \end{align}

(6.1)

Early attempts of deducing functionals for the kinetic and exchange energies considered a uniform electron gas, where it may be shown that \( T[\rho] \) and \( K[\rho] \) are given by eq. (6.2).

\begin{align}
T_{\text{CF}}[\rho] &= C_{T} \int \left( \rho^{3/2}(r) dr \right) \\
K_{\text{CF}}[\rho] &= -C_{K} \int \left( \rho^{1/2}(r) dr \right) \\
C_{T} &= \frac{3}{4} \left( \frac{\pi}{5} \right)^{2} \\
C_{K} &= \frac{3}{4} \left( \frac{3}{4} \pi \right) \end{align}

(6.2)
DENSITY FUNCTIONAL METHODS

The energy functional $E_{DF}[\rho] = T[\rho] + E_x[\rho] + J[\rho]$ is known as Thomas–Fermi (TF) theory, while inclusion of the $K_d[\rho]$ exchange part (first derived by Bloch, but commonly associated with the name of Dirac) constitutes the Thomas–Fermi–Dirac (TFD) model.

The assumption of a uniform electron gas is fair for the valence electrons in certain metallic (periodic) systems, but is poor for atoms and molecules. A serious flaw from a chemical point of view is that neither TF nor TFD theories predict bonding: molecules simply do not exist.

The kinetic and exchange functionals can be improved by the addition of terms depending directly on the electron density. This is equivalent to considering a non-uniform electron gas and performing a Taylor-like expansion with the density as a variable. The expansion for the kinetic energy is given in eq. (6.3), where odd terms vanish owing to the rotational invariance of the energy with respect to $r$.

$$T[\rho] = T_0[\rho] + T_2[\rho] + T_4[\rho] + \ldots$$

$$T_2[\rho] = \frac{\alpha}{2} \int \left( \nabla \rho(r)^2 - \frac{9}{2} \rho(r)^2 \right) \frac{\Delta(r)}{\rho(r)} \, dr$$

The $T_2$ correction contains the von Weizsacker kinetic energy, $\alpha$, where $\lambda$ has a value of 1/3. Various empirical values for $\lambda$ have been used in cases where the expansion is terminated after the $T_2$ term, motivated by the fact that the von Weizsacker expression is equivalent to the Hartree–Fock kinetic energy for one- and two-electron systems. The kinetic energy at the Thomas–Fermi level is typically underestimated by ~10%, which is reduced to ~1% by addition of the $T_4$ term, while inclusion of the $T_6$ correction leads to an overestimation of slightly larger magnitude. In terms of absolute energies, this is comparable to the HF method, but energy differences (e.g., atomicization energies) are calculated with much lower accuracy than with the HF model. Unfortunately, the sixth- and higher order $T$ terms diverge in regions far from the nuclei, preventing further improvements.

The second-order exchange term $K_2$ is given in eq. (6.4) and the $K_4$ term has an expression similar to $T_4$ except that not all the expansion coefficients are known.

$$K_2[\rho] = K_2[\rho] + K_4[\rho] + \ldots$$

$$K_4[\rho] = \frac{5}{216} \int \nabla \rho(r)^4 \frac{\Delta(r)}{\rho(r)} \, dr$$

Addition of gradient correction terms improves the Thomas–Fermi results, for example bonding is then allowed, but the lack of sufficient error cancellation and the divergence of higher order corrections means that this is not a viable approach for constructing DFT models capable of yielding results comparable with those obtained by wave mechanics methods.

Although there have been some recent attempts at constructing such orbital-free (as opposed to the Kohn–Sham version discussed in the next section) $T$ and $K$ functionals depending directly on the electron density, the accuracy is still too low to be of general use. If such functionals could be derived, however, the full potential of DFT in having only three variables independent of system size could be fully realized.

6.2 Kohn–Sham Theory

The foundation for the use of DFT methods in computational chemistry is the introduction of orbitals, as suggested by Kohn and Sham (KS). The main flaw in orbital-free models is the poor representation of the kinetic energy, and the idea in the KS formalism is to split the kinetic energy functional into two parts, one which can be calculated exactly, and a small correction term. The price to be paid is that orbitals are reintroduced, thereby increasing the complexity from 3 to 3N variables, and that electron correlation re-emerges as a separate term. The KS model is closely related to the HF method, sharing identical formulas for the kinetic, electron-nuclear and Coulomb electron–electron energies.

The division of the electron kinetic energy into two parts, with the major contribution being equivalent to the HF kinetic energy, can be justified as follows. Assume for the moment a Hamiltonian operator of the form in eq. (6.5) with $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

$$H_\lambda = T + \lambda V_{ext}$$

The external potential operator $V_{ext}$ is equal to $V_{nuc}$ for $\lambda = 1$, but for intermediate $\lambda$ values it is assumed that $V_{nuc}(\lambda)$ is adjusted such that the same density is obtained for $\lambda = 1$ (the real system), for $\lambda = 0$ (a hypothetical system with non-interacting electrons) and for all intermediates $\lambda$ values. For the $\lambda = 0$ case, the electrons are non-interacting, and the exact solution to the Schrödinger equation is given as a Slater determinant composed of (molecular) orbitals, $\phi$, and the exact kinetic energy functional is given in eq. (6.6).

$$T_\lambda = \sum_\alpha \langle \phi_\alpha | - \nabla | \phi_\alpha \rangle$$

The subscript $S$ denotes that it is the kinetic energy calculated from a Slater determinant. The $\lambda = 1$ case corresponds to interacting electrons, and eq. (6.6) is therefore only an approximation to the real kinetic energy, but a substantial improvement over the TF formula (eq. (6.2)).

Another way of justifying the use of eq. (6.6) for calculating the kinetic energy is by reference to natural orbitals (eigenvectors of the density matrix, Section 9.5). The exact kinetic energy can be calculated from the natural orbitals (NO) arising from the exact density matrix.

$$T[\rho_{nuc}] = \sum_\alpha n_i \langle \phi_\alpha^{NO} | - \nabla | \phi_\alpha^{NO} \rangle$$

$$\rho_{nuc} = \sum_\alpha | \phi_\alpha^{NO} |^2$$

$$N_{nuc} = \sum_\alpha n_i$$
The orbital occupation numbers \( n_i \) (eigenvalues of the density matrix) will be between 0 and 1, corresponding to the number of electrons in the (spin) orbital. Representing the exact density will require an infinite number of natural orbitals, with the \( N \) itself. We will start by defining the first- and second-order reduced density matrices \( \gamma_1 \) and \( \gamma_2 \).

\[
\rho_{\text{form}} = \sum_{\alpha} | \Psi_{\alpha} |^2 \quad (6.3)
\]

This corresponds to eq. (6.7) with occupation numbers of exactly 1 or 0. The “missing” kinetic energy from eq. (6.6) does not provide the total kinetic energy. However, just as HF theory provides ~99% of the correct answer, the difference between the exact kinetic energy and that calculated by assuming non-interacting orbitals is small. The remaining kinetic energy is absorbed into an exchange–correlation term, and a general DFT energy expression can be written as in eq. (6.9)

\[
E_{\text{tot}}[\rho] = T[\rho] + E_{\text{xc}}[\rho] + E_{\text{ne}}[\rho] + E_{\text{pot}}[\rho]
\]

By equating \( E_{\text{DFT}} \) to the exact energy, this expression defines \( E_{\text{xc}} \), i.e. it is the part that remains after subtraction of the non-interacting kinetic energy, and the \( E_{\text{ne}} \) and \( E_{\text{pot}} \) potential energy terms.

\[
E_{\text{ne}}[\rho] = (\gamma_1(\rho) - \gamma_2(\rho)) + (E_{\gamma_2}[\rho] - [\gamma_1(\rho)])
\]

6.3 Reduced Density Matrix Methods

Before embarking on a more detailed analysis of how to design exchange–correlation energy functionals in Kohn–Sham theory, it may be instructive to take a slight detour and consider methods using reduced density matrices, rather than the electron density itself. We will start by defining the first- and second-order reduced density matrices \( \gamma_1 \) and \( \gamma_2 \).

\[
\gamma_1(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2) = N_{\text{elec}} \int \Psi^*(\mathbf{r}_1', \mathbf{r}_2', \ldots, \mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}} \Psi(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}}) \, d\mathbf{r}_1' \ldots d\mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}}
\]

\[
\gamma_2(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{r}_3, \mathbf{r}_4) = N_{\text{elec}} (N_{\text{elec}} - 1) \int \Psi^*(\mathbf{r}_1', \mathbf{r}_3', \ldots, \mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}} \Psi(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{r}_3, \mathbf{r}_4, \ldots, \mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}}) \, d\mathbf{r}_2' \ldots d\mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}}.
\]

We will ignore electron spin, except when required. The corresponding reduced spin density matrices are defined completely analogously to eq. (6.9), if the variables are taken to represent both spatial and spin coordinates.

The diagonal components of the first-order density matrix (setting \( \mathbf{r}_1' = \mathbf{r}_1 \)) gives the electron density function \( \rho_1 \), often written without the subscript 1 when higher order densities are not involved:

\[
\rho_1(\mathbf{r}_1) = \gamma_1(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_1) = N_{\text{elec}} \int \Psi^*(\mathbf{r}_1', \mathbf{r}_2', \ldots, \mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}} \Psi(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}}) \, d\mathbf{r}_2' \ldots d\mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}}.
\]

The integral is the probability of finding an electron at position \( \mathbf{r}_1 \) (it does not matter which, since they are indistinguishable) at position \( \mathbf{r}_1 \), and the \( N_{\text{elec}} \) prefactor ensures that the density integrates to the number of electrons.

The corresponding second-order density matrix yields the electron pair-density upon setting \( \mathbf{r}_1' = \mathbf{r}_1 \) and \( \mathbf{r}_2' = \mathbf{r}_2 \):

\[
\rho_{2,1\rightarrow1}(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2) = \gamma_2(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2) = N_{\text{elec}} (N_{\text{elec}} - 1) \int \Psi^*(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{r}_3, \ldots, \mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}} \Psi(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{r}_3, \ldots, \mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}}) \, d\mathbf{r}_3' \ldots d\mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}}.
\]

The integral is the probability of finding an electron at position \( \mathbf{r}_1 \) and another electron at position \( \mathbf{r}_2 \), and the \( N_{\text{elec}} (N_{\text{elec}} - 1) \) prefactor ensures that \( \rho_2 \) integrates to the number of electron pairs (note that the number of unique electron pairs is only \( \frac{1}{2} N_{\text{elec}} (N_{\text{elec}} - 1) \)).

The exact kinetic and potential energies are given by the (exact) first- and second-order density matrices, with an implicit summation over electron spin.

\[
T = -\frac{1}{2} \int \sum_{\mathbf{r}} \sum_{\mathbf{r}'} \gamma_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') \, d\mathbf{r} \quad \text{and} \quad V_{\text{ne}} = -\sum_{\mathbf{r}} \sum_{\mathbf{r}'} \frac{Z \gamma_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|} \quad \text{and} \quad V_{\text{pot}} = -\sum_{\mathbf{r}} \sum_{\mathbf{r}'} \frac{|Z| \gamma_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}
\]

\[
V_{\text{xc}} = -\frac{1}{2} \int \sum_{\mathbf{r}} \sum_{\mathbf{r}'} \frac{\gamma_2(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}', \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|} \, d\mathbf{r}_1' \ldots d\mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}} - \frac{1}{2} \int \sum_{\mathbf{r}} \sum_{\mathbf{r}'} \frac{\rho_{2,1\rightarrow1}(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|} \, d\mathbf{r}_1' \ldots d\mathbf{r}_{N_{\text{elec}}}.
\]

Note that the potential energy terms in eq. (6.14) can be written in terms of \( \rho_1 \) and \( \rho_2 \); only the kinetic energy requires \( \gamma_1 \).

For the special case of a single-determinant wave function, the first- and second-order reduced density matrices are given by eq. (6.15).
6.3 Reduced Density Matrix Methods

The relation energy can be incorporated by multiplying the orbital products with functions of the occupation numbers as shown in eq. (6.17).

$$V_{\text{rel}} = \frac{1}{2} \int \left[ \rho(r, r') \delta(r-r') \right] dr dr'$$

The choice of $f(n_i, n_j) = g(n_i, n_j) = n_i n_j$ implies the Hartree–Fock model, and optimization of the occupation numbers and natural orbitals with this choice indeed returns the HF wave function, i.e. the HF wave function cannot be improved by allowing fractional occupation numbers. The $f(n_i, n_j)$ function is usually set equal to $n_i n_j$, since this is just the Coulomb interaction, and the exchange–correlation part is modelled by $g(n_i, n_j)$. Modelling the exchange–correlation energy by a $g(n_i, n_j)$ function is still in its infancy.

The Hohenberg–Kohn theorem, which states that the energy is uniquely determined by the one-electron density $\rho_i$ forms the basis for what is commonly called density functional theory. As discussed in Section 6.1, it is difficult to construct a sufficiently accurate total energy functional depending only on $\rho_i$. The Kohn–Sham version, where only the exchange–correlation part of the energy must be estimated as a functional of $\rho_i$, provides viable models, and these will be discussed in more detail in Section 6.5.

Perhaps the most surprising result of the Hohenberg–Kohn theorem is that the correlation energy is completely determined by the one-electron density function $\rho_i$. Electron correlation is inherently a two-electron phenomenon, and it is difficult to envision how an accurate correlation functional depending on only the one-electron density should be constructed from theoretical arguments, although one certainly can understand that the correlation will affect the electron density. Indeed, the interpretation of electron correlation in terms of correlation holes, as discussed in the next section, requires the two-electron density $\rho_{ii}$. P. M. W. Gill has suggested that one could consider a quantity similar to the second-order reduced density matrix, except that the arguments are the position and momentum of the two electrons.

$$W_{ii}(r_1, \ldots, r_n; p_1, \ldots, p_{n_{\text{elec}}}) = N_{\text{elec}}^{-4} \times$$

$$\int W_{ii}(r_1 + \ldots + r_n; p_1 + \ldots + p_{n_{\text{elec}}}) W_{ii}(r_1, \ldots, r_n; p_1, \ldots, p_{n_{\text{elec}}}) dr_1 \ldots dr_n dp_1 \ldots dp_{n_{\text{elec}}}$$

The $W_i$ is called the second-order Wigner intracule and represents a quasi-probability function for finding two electrons at positions $r_i$ and $r_j$ with momentum $p_i$ and $p_j$. It cannot be interpreted as a genuine probability function, as it can achieve negative values. Since one would expect the correlation energy to depend on the distance between the two electrons, the relative momentum between them and the orientation of the distance and momentum difference vectors, Gill has suggested that the corresponding $\Omega$ intracule depending on the “internal” coordinates may contain information sufficient for determining the correlation energy.
Analogously to density functional methods, the task is to construct a correlation kernel \( G \) that yields the correlation energy upon integration with the \( W \) intracule, and use this in connection with the exchange energy calculated at the Hartree–Fock level. Given that the intracule is based on physical... results for atoms using simple correlation kernels are sufficiently accurate that this may represent a viable approach.

The differences between wave mechanics and density-based methods can be summarized as follows:

- Wave mechanics employs the exact Hamiltonian operator, but makes approximations in the form of the wave function.
- Density functional methods make approximations in the energy functional (Hamiltonian), but allow a free variation of the electron density. The functional must therefore implicitly enforce the \( N \)-representability. This is difficult to achieve in orbital-free methods, but the Kohn–Sham approach with a determinantal orbital product takes care of the majority of this problem. More recent work has attempted to address the problem by separating the exchange energy from the correlation energy.
- Methods using the first-order reduced density matrix as variable can be chosen to strictly enforce the \( N \)-representability of the reduced density matrix. The latter, however, inherently depends on the electron density, which in this approach must be approximated as a function of the wave function. One can argue that Hartree–Fock belongs to this class of methods, with implicit neglect of the electron correlation.
- Methods using the second-order reduced density matrix as variable employ the exact energy functional in terms of the reduced density matrix, but must make approximations for enforcing the \( N \)-representability of the electronic density.

Solving the Schrödinger equation by means of reduced density matrices has many appealing features, such as being able to describe the whole potential energy curve with equal accuracy and to account for a very large fraction of the potential energy curve. However, there is a reduced probability of finding an electron near another electron. We can write this formally in terms of a correlation energy, which is defined as

\[
\rho_{\text{corr}}(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') = N \cdot \frac{1}{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'},
\]

where \( \rho_{\text{corr}}(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') \) is the correlation density at points \( \mathbf{r} \) and \( \mathbf{r}' \).
diagonal probability factor \( h_{\alpha}(r, r) \) that includes the \( 1/N_{\text{elec}} \) self-interaction factor in eq. (6.20).

\[
p_{\alpha}(r, r') = \rho_{\alpha}(r) \rho_{\beta}(r') + \rho_{\beta}(r) h_{\alpha}(r, r')
\]  

(6.21)

The reduced probability is called the exchange–correlation hole, and can be written in terms of \( \rho_\alpha \) and \( \rho_\beta \) by solving eq. (6.21).

\[
h_{\alpha}(r, r) = \frac{\rho_{\alpha}(r)}{\rho(r)} - \rho_{\alpha}(r)
\]  

(6.22)

The exchange–correlation hole represents the reduced probability of finding electron 2 at a position \( r \) given that electron 1 is located at \( r_1 \). The exchange part of \( h_{\alpha} \) is called the Fermi hole, while the dynamical correlation gives rise to the Coulomb hole. Since exchange only occurs between electrons of the same spin, the total hole can be also written in terms of individual spin contributions.

\[
h_{\alpha} = h_+ + h_-
\]

\[
h_+ = n^+ + n^0
\]

\[
h_- = n^0 + n^0
\]  

(6.23)

From the definitions of \( \rho_+ \) and \( \rho_- \), it follows that the integral of \( h_{\alpha} \) over \( r \) equals -1.

\[
\int h_{\alpha}(r, r') dr = \frac{\rho_{\alpha}(r)}{\rho(r)} - \rho_{\alpha}(r) = N_{\text{elec}}\frac{(N_{\text{elec}} - 1)}{N_{\text{elec}}} - \frac{1}{N_{\text{elec}}} = -1
\]  

(6.24)

A similar argument for the separate spin densities shows that the Fermi hole itself is negative everywhere and integrates to \(-1\), which means that the integral of the Coulomb hole is \(0\). The Fermi (exchange) hole describes a state reduction in the probability function corresponding to one electron. The Coulomb (correlation) function, on the other hand, reduces the probability of finding an electron near the reference electron, but increases the probability of finding it far from the reference electron.

The exchange energy in Hartree–Fock theory is a non-local function, i.e. the HF exchange hole is delocalized over the whole system (or at least a large part of it). For a diatomic system, for example, the exchange hole is delocalized over both nuclei. When electron correlation is added explicitly, the left-right correlation to a large extent serves to cancel the delocalized nature of the HF exchange hole. The exchange functional in DFT, on the other hand, is local, i.e. the cancellation of the delocalized HF exchange hole by the left-right correlation in wave function approaches should be inherent in the functional, and this is the main difference between the definitions of exchange and correlation in wave function and current density functional descriptions.

A closely related phenomenon is the electron self-interaction energy. The Coulomb energy functional given in eq. (6.1) only depends on \( \rho_\alpha \). This means that the density arising from a single electron will interact with itself (e.g. there will be a non-zero electron–electron Coulomb repulsion even for a one-electron system), and this self-repulsion is clearly non-physical. For a multi-electron system, there will be such a self-interaction term for the density associated with each electron, although it is difficult to define this rigorously. The HF model takes care of this problem elegantly, since the expression for the exchange energy exactly cancels the Coulomb self-interaction (eq. (3.32)).

Within the DFT model, a one-electron system should have an exchange energy exactly opposing the Coulomb energy, \( E_x = -E_C \), and the correlation energy should be zero. In a multi-electron system, one may thus consider part of the exchange energy as a correction for the self-interaction energy, with the remaining being the "true" Fermi hole. In this view, the self-interaction correction is the major part of the exchange energy, with the "true" Fermi hole being comparable to the Coulomb (correlation) hole. It should be noted, however, that such a partitioning is not invariant to a unitary transformation of the occupied orbitals. The self-interaction cancellation by the exchange energy is not guaranteed in DFT, and very few of the current exchange–correlation functionals are completely self-interaction-free. It has been proven that a completely self-interaction-free local potential does not exist. Perdew and Zunger have suggested an approximate correction scheme, where each orbital becomes self-interaction-free. The procedure formally changes the underlying functional and destroys the invariance of the energy with respect to mixing of the occupied orbitals. Since it is furthermore computationally quite expensive and often degrades the quality of the results by overcorrecting the error, it has seen little use. Other versions have been proposed, each having different computational and theoretical disadvantages.

These concepts can be illustrated for the \( H_2 \) molecule for increasing internuclear distances. In wave mechanics, the ground state for \( H_2 \) has two electrons of opposite spin in the same spatial orbital, and the exchange hole is thus entirely the self-interaction correction (no same-spin exchange).

\[
h_x = -\frac{1}{2}\rho_1
\]

\[
\rho_1 = 2\phi
\]

\[
\phi = N(X_A + X_B)
\]  

(6.25)

For the case of \( H_2 \), this is just the negative of the occupied molecular orbital and, by symmetry arguments, the HF exchange hole at each nucleus thus integrates to \(-\frac{1}{2}\), independent of the internuclear separation. This delocalization is clearly non-physical in the dissociation limit, since the correct wave function must have one electron localized at each nucleus. This means that for a reference electron near nucleus A, the total probability hole is localized at nucleus A. The correlation hole must therefore exactly cancel the exchange hole at nucleus B, while increasing the hole at nucleus A in order to integrate to \(-1\) (Figure 6.1), and this is the reason why the wave function correlation energy increases as a function of internuclear distance.

Within wave mechanics, the exchange hole is static and delocalized over the whole molecule, while the long-range part of the electron correlation is dynamical and serves to cancel the exchange hole away from the reference electron.

6.5 Exchange–Correlation Functionals

The difference between various DFT methods is the choice of functional form for the exchange–correlation energy. It can be proven that the exchange–correlation potential is a unique functional, valid for all systems, but an explicit functional form of this potential has been elusive, except for special cases such as a uniform electron gas. It is
The exchange–correlation energy is a central component in Density Functional Theory (DFT), which is a quantum mechanical model used to investigate the electronic structure of many-body systems, especially atoms, molecules, and the condensed phases.[1] It is defined as the difference between the total energy of the system and the energy of its constituent non-interacting electrons:

\[ E_{xc} = E_{tot} - E_{HF} \]

where \( E_{tot} \) is the total energy of the system, \( E_{HF} \) is the energy of the Hartree-Fock (HF) system, and \( E_{xc} \) is the exchange–correlation energy. The HF energy is obtained by solving the Kohn–Sham equations, which are a set of self-consistent equations that describe the behavior of electrons in a periodic potential. The exchange–correlation energy is a functional of the electron density, \( \rho(r) \), and depends on the properties of the system. It is approximated in DFT calculations using exchange–correlation functionals.

### Properties of Exchange–Correlation Functionals

1. **Self-interaction-free**: The exchange–correlation energy should be self-interaction-free, i.e., the exchange energy for a one-electron system, such as the hydrogen atom, should exactly cancel the Coulomb energy, and the correlation energy should be zero. Although these seem like obvious requirements, none of the common functionals have this property.

2. **Density dependence**: When the density becomes constant, the uniform electron gas result should be recovered. While this surely is a valid mathematical requirement, and important for applications in solid-state physics, it is less important for chemical applications, as molecular densities are relatively poorly described by uniform electron gas methods.

3. **Coordinate scaling**: The coordinate scaling of the exchange energy should be linear, i.e., multiplying the electron coordinates with a constant factor should result in a similar linear scaling of the exchange energy.

4. **Scaling law**: The correlation energy should show an asymptotic \(-1\) behaviour as \( r \rightarrow \infty \), where \( r \) is the internuclear distance in a one-electron system. The corresponding exchange and correlation functionals should cancel the long-range exchange component.

5. **Scaling behaviour**: The exchange potential should show an asymptotic \(-1\) behaviour as \( r \rightarrow \infty \), while the correlation potential should show an asymptotic \(-1/2\) behaviour, with \( a \) being a positive constant.

6. **Exchange–correlation potential**: The exchange–correlation potential is discontinuous as a function of the number of electrons, by an amount corresponding to the difference between the ionization potential and electron affinity.

### Exchange–Correlation Functionals

Exchange–correlation functionals have a mathematical form containing parameters. There are two main philosophies for assigning values to these parameters: empirical tuning and correlation consistent wavefunction (CC) methods. As the number of parameters increases, the flexibility of the functionals increases, allowing for better description of the system. However, the increase in parameters also increases the computational cost.

### Scaling Factors

Scaling factors are used to adjust the exchange–correlation energy for different systems. These factors are important for applications in solid-state physics, where the molecular densities are relatively poorly described by uniform electron gas methods.

### Reference

As mentioned at the start of Chapter 4, the correlation between electrons of parallel spin is different from that between electrons of opposite spin. The exchange energy is “by definition” given as a sum of contributions from the $\alpha$ and $\beta$ spin densities, as exchange energy only involves electrons of same spin. The kinetic energy, the nuclear–electron attraction and Coulomb terms are trivially separable in terms of electron spin.

$$E_{\alpha} = E_\alpha^\alpha[\rho_\alpha] + E_\alpha^\beta[\rho_\beta]$$

The total density is the sum of the $\alpha$ and $\beta$ contributions, $\rho = \rho_\alpha + \rho_\beta$, and these are identical ($\rho_\alpha = \rho_\beta$) for a closed shell singlet. Functionals for the exchange and correlation energies may be formulated in terms of separate spin densities, however, they are often given instead as functions of the spin polarization $\zeta$ (normalized difference between $\rho_\alpha$ and $\rho_\beta$), and the radius of the effective volume containing one electron, $r_e$.

$$\zeta = \frac{\rho_\alpha - \rho_\beta}{\rho_\alpha + \rho_\beta}$$

The difference between various wave function-based methods is how the electron correlation is included, and the quality of these methods can be characterized by an ordering parameter, such as the perturbation order or the level of excitations included. There are no similar theoretically founded ordering parameters for DFT methods, as the exchange–correlation functionals to a large extent are empirical. A heuristic characterization can be done by considering the fundamental variables used for defining the exchange–correlation functional. J. P. Perdew has suggested such a “Jacob’s ladder” approach, where one can expect or at least hope for an improvement in the accuracy for each step up the ladder, and this is the approach taken here to systematize the plethora of functionals that has been proposed.

### 6.5.1 Local Density Approximation

In the Local Density Approximation (LDA) it is assumed that the density locally can be treated as a uniform electron gas, or equivalently that the density is a slowly varying function. The exchange energy for a uniform electron gas is given by the Dirac formula (eq. (6.2)).

$$E_{\alpha}^\text{LDA}[\rho] = -\frac{1}{2}C_0 \int \rho^\alpha(t) \rho^\beta(t) \text{d}t$$

In the more general case, where the $\alpha$ and $\beta$ densities are not equal, LDA (where the sum of the $\alpha$ and $\beta$ densities is raised to the $\frac{1}{2}$ power) has been virtually abandoned and replaced by the Local Spin Density Approximation (LSDA) (which is given as the sum of the individual densities raised to the $\frac{1}{2}$ power, eq. (6.33)).

$$E_{\alpha}^\text{LSDA}[\rho] = -\frac{1}{2}C_0 \int (\rho^\alpha(t) + \rho^\beta(t)) \text{d}t$$

LSDA may also be written in terms of the total density and a spin-polarization function.

$$\epsilon_{\alpha}^{\text{LSDA}} = -\frac{1}{2}C_0 \rho^\alpha + f_{\alpha}^{\text{LSDA}}$$

For closed shell systems, LSDA is equal to LDA and, since this is the most common case, LDA is often used interchangeably with LSDA, although this is not true in the general case. The $X$ method proposed by Slater in 1951 can be considered as an LDA method where the correlation energy is neglected and the exchange term is as given in eq. (6.35).

$$\epsilon_{\alpha} = -\frac{1}{2}C_0 \rho^\alpha$$

With $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}$ this is identical to the Dirac expression. The original $X$ method used $\alpha = 1$, but a value of $\frac{3}{4}$ has been shown to give better agreement with both atomic and molecular systems. The name Slater is often used as a synonym for the L(S)DA exchange energy involving the electron density raised to the $\frac{1}{2}$ power.

The analytical form for the correlation energy of a uniform electron gas, which is purely dynamical correlation, has been derived in the high and low density limits. For intermediate densities, the correlation energy has been determined to a high precision by quantum Monte Carlo methods. It is desirable to have a suitable analytic interpolation formula, and such formulas have been constructed by Vosko, Wilk and Nusair (VWN) and by Perdew and Wang (PW), and are considered to be accurate fits. The VWN parameterization is given in eq. (6.36), where a slightly different spin-polarization function has been used.

$$\epsilon_{\alpha}^{\text{VWN}}(r, \zeta) = \epsilon_{\alpha}(r, 0) + \epsilon_{\alpha}(r, \zeta) \left[ f_{\alpha}(0)(1 - \zeta)^4 + \epsilon_{\alpha}(r, 1) - \epsilon_{\alpha}(r, 0)f_{\alpha}(\zeta)^4 \right]$$

The $\epsilon_{\alpha}(r, \zeta)$ and $\epsilon_{\alpha}(r, 0)$ functions are parameterized in terms of $\zeta$, with $A$, $x$, $b$, and $c$ being suitable fitting constants. Several slightly different parameterizations were proposed in the original paper, which has caused some confusion, since different implementations have used different parameterizations, and therefore produce slightly different numerical results.

$$\epsilon_{\alpha}(x) = \frac{\ln x^2}{X(x)} \left. \frac{2b}{Q} t \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{Q}{2x + b} \right) \right|_{x = x_c}$$

$$x = \sqrt{x_c}$$

$$X(x) = x^2 + bx + c$$

$$Q = \sqrt{4c - b^2}$$
6.5 EXCHANGE–CORRELATION FUNCTIONALS

The PW parameterization for $e_{ab}$ is given in eq. (6.38), with $a$, $\alpha$, $\beta_2$, $\beta_3$, and $\beta_4$ being fitting parameters.

$$e_{ab}^{PW}(x) = -2\rho(x) + \alpha x^2 \ln \left( 1 + \frac{1}{2\rho(x)} \right)$$

(6.38)

The LSDA method is an exact DFT method for the special case of a uniform electron gas, except for small differences depending on the interpolation formula chosen for the correlation energy. For molecular systems, the LSDA approximation underestimates the exchange energy by ~10%, thereby creating errors that are larger than the whole correlation energy. Electron correlation is overestimated, often by a factor close to 2, and bond strengths are as a consequence overestimated, often by ~100 kJ/mol. Despite the simplicity in the fundamental assumptions, LSDA methods are often found to provide results with an accuracy similar to that obtained by wave mechanics Hartree–Fock methods. It has furthermore been used extensively in the physics community for describing extended systems, such as metals, where the approximation of a slowly varying electron density is quite valid.

6.5.2 Gradient-corrected methods

Improvements over the LSDA approach must consider a non-uniform electron gas. A step in this direction is to make the exchange and correlation energies dependent not only on the electron density but also derivatives of the density. The first-order correction for the exchange energy is given in eq. (6.4), and the corresponding quantity for the correlation energy is also known.

$$\Delta \varepsilon_{ab}^e = -\beta \rho \nabla \rho$$

(6.4)

While inclusion of the first-order exchange term improves the exchange energy, inclusion of the first-order correlation correction often makes the correlation energy positive. A straightforward inclusion of these first-order terms leads to a model that performs worse than the simple LSDA model. The main reason for the success of the LSDA approach is that it fulfils the requirements of the Fermi hole integrating to ~1, and the Coulomb hole to 0, at the addition of gradient terms destroys these important properties.

In Generalized Gradient Approximation (GGA) methods, the first derivative of the density is included as a variable, and in addition it is required that the Fermi and Coulomb holes integrate to the required values of ~1 and 0. GGA methods are also sometimes referred to as non-local methods, although this is somewhat misleading since the functionals only depend on the density (and derivative) at a given point, not on a space volume as the Hartree–Fock exchange energy.

One of the earliest and most popular GGA exchange functionals was proposed by A. D. Becke (B or B88) as a correction to the LSDA exchange energy:

$$\varepsilon_{ab}^{GGA} = \varepsilon_{ab}^{LSDA} + \Delta \varepsilon_{ab}^{GGA}$$

$$\Delta \varepsilon_{ab}^{GGA} = -\beta \rho \nabla \rho$$

(6.39)

$$x = \frac{\nabla \rho}{\rho^{3/2}}$$

The $\beta$ parameter is determined by fitting to known data for the rare gas atoms using the dimensionless gradient variable $x$. The B88 exchange functional has the correct asymptotic behaviour for the energy density (but not for the exchange potential). It reduces the error in the exchange energy by almost two orders of magnitude relative to the LSDA result, and thus represents a substantial improvement for a simple functional form containing only one adjustable parameter.

Handy and Cohen have investigated several forms related to eq. (6.39) where the PW parameters were optimized with respect to exchange energies calculated at the HF level. The best resulting model had two parameters and was labelled OPTX (Optimized Exchange). It was also found that no significant improvement could be made by including higher order derivatives (discussed in the next section). Hamprecht, Cohen, Tozer and Handy have further extended the B87 model discussed in the next section, but using only the pure density components (i.e. no exact exchange) to a functional containing 15 parameters which were fitted to experimental and ab initio data, giving the acronym HCTH95, HCTH97 and HCTH107, where the number referring to the number of molecules in the fitting data set. There have similarly been various GGA functionals proposed for the correlation energy. One popular functional is due to Lee, Yang and Parr (LYP), which has the rather intimidating form shown in eq. (6.40).

$$\varepsilon_{ab}^{LYP} = -4\alpha \beta \rho \frac{\rho \rho}{1 + \rho d \rho} -$$

(6.40)

$$= 144 (2^{1/3} \pi^2 \beta_2 + \beta_3) + (47 - 76 \frac{\rho \rho}{1 + \rho d \rho})$$

$$\omega = \frac{\rho \rho}{1 + \rho d \rho}$$

$$\delta = \rho d \rho$$

The $a$, $b$, $c$ and $d$ parameters are determined by fitting to data for the helium atom. Although not obvious from the form shown in eq. (6.40), the LYP functional does not include parallel spin correlation when all the spins are aligned (e.g. the LYP correlation energy for $^1\text{He}$ is zero). The LYP correlation functional is often combined with the B88 or OPTX exchange functional to produce the BLYP and OLYP acronyms.

J. P. Perdew and coworkers have proposed several related exchange–correlation functionals based on removing spurious oscillations in the Taylor-like expansion to first order and ensuring that the exchange and correlation holes integrate to the required values of ~1 and 0. The associated acronyms are PW86 (Perdew–Wang 1986), PW91 (Perdew–Wang 1991) and PBE (Perdew–Burke–Ernzerhof). These three functionals should be considered as refinements of the same underlying model, i.e. the PBE version should be used in favour of the PW86 and PW91 versions. The exchange part is written as an enhancement factor multiplied onto the LSDA functional, where the dimensionless gradient variable $x$ is defined in eq. (6.39).
\[
\begin{align*}
\epsilon_{\text{ex}}^{\text{PBE}} &= \epsilon_{\text{ex}}^{\text{LDA}} + H(t) \\
H(t) &= c d \ln \left( 1 + \frac{1 + A t^2}{1 + A L^2} \right) \\
A &= \left[ d \exp \left( \frac{\epsilon_{\text{ex}}^{\text{LDA}}}{c d} \right) \right]^{-1} \\
f(t) &= \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \frac{\xi^2}{\gamma^2} + \frac{1 - \xi^2}{\gamma^2} \right) \\
t &= \frac{1}{2} \left( 3 \left( \frac{\xi}{\gamma} \right)^2 \right)^{\nu_1} + \beta (x)
\end{align*}
\]

The correlation part is similarly written as an enhancement factor added to the LSDA functional, where the \( t \) variable is related to the \( x \) variable by means of yet another spin-polarization factor.

\[
\begin{align*}
\epsilon_{\text{cross}}^{\text{PBE}} &= \epsilon_{\text{cross}}^{\text{LDA}} + H(t) \\
H(t) &= c [ d \ln \left( 1 + \frac{1 + A t^2}{1 + A L^2} \right) ] \\
A &= \left[ d \exp \left( \frac{\epsilon_{\text{cross}}^{\text{LDA}}}{c d} \right) \right]^{-1} \\
\epsilon_{\text{cross}} &= \left[ 1 + \left( \frac{\xi}{\gamma} \right)^2 \right] \epsilon_{\text{cross}}^{\text{LDA}} \\
\epsilon_{\text{cross}}^{\text{PBE}} &= \left[ 1 + \left( \frac{\xi}{\gamma} \right)^2 \right] \epsilon_{\text{cross}}^{\text{LDA}} + \beta (x)
\end{align*}
\]

Inclusion of either the Laplacian or orbital kinetic energy density as a variable leads to the so-called \textit{meta-GGA} functionals, and functionals which in general use orbital information may also be placed in this category. Calculation of the orbital kinetic energy density is numerically more stable than calculation of the Laplacian of the density, and the two functions in eq. (6.44) are common components of \textit{meta-GGA} functionals.

One of the earliest attempts to include kinetic energy functionals was by Becke and Rousset (BR), who proposed the exchange functional shown in eq. (6.47).\textsuperscript{48}

A similar correlation functional shown in eq. (6.48) was proposed somewhat later by A. D. Becke (B95) and is one of the few functionals that does not have the self-interaction problem.\textsuperscript{52}

The logical extension of GGA methods is to allow the exchange and correlation functionals to depend on higher order derivatives of the electron density, with the Laplacian \( (\nabla^2 \rho) \) being the second-order term. Alternatively, the functional can be taken to depend on the orbital kinetic energy density \( \tau \), which for a single orbital is identical to the von Weizsäcker kinetic energy \( \tau_0 \) (eq. (6.3)).

6.5.3 Higher order gradient or \textit{meta-GGA} methods

The logical extension of GGA methods is to allow the exchange and correlation functionals to depend on higher order derivatives of the electron density, with the Laplacian \( (\nabla^2 \rho) \) being the second-order term. Alternatively, the functional can be taken to depend on the orbital kinetic energy density \( \tau \), which for a single orbital is identical to the von Weizsäcker kinetic energy \( \tau_0 \) (eq. (6.3)).

The \textit{HCTH} functional has been extended to also include the kinetic energy density as a variable, producing the acronym \textit{rHCTH}.\textsuperscript{53} The \textit{VSXC} (\textit{Voorhis–Scuseria \textit{eXchange–Correlation}}) functional similarly includes the kinetic energy density and contains 21 parameters that are fitted to experimental data.\textsuperscript{54} The \textit{TPSS}
6.5 Exchange–correlation functionals

The improvement of new functionals by inclusion of exact exchange is a standard feature. At least part of the improvement may be achieved by the introduction of self-interaction corrections.

6.5.1 Local density functional (LDA)

6.5.2 Generalized gradient approximation (GGA)

6.5.3 Hybrid or hyper-GGA methods

Adiabatic Connection Formula (ACF)

From the Hamiltonian in eq. (6.5) and the definition of the exchange–correlation energy in eq. (6.10), one can see that connection can be made between the exchange–correlation energy and the actual system (see appendix B for details). The resulting equation over the parameter \( \lambda \), which turns on the electron–electron interaction:

\[
E_{\text{xc}} = \int \left[ \frac{1}{\lambda} \left( \rho(x) \right) \rho(x) \right] dx
\]

In the limit, the electrons are non-interacting and the exchange–correlation energy is given as the average of the values at the two end-points.

6.5.4 Hybrid or hyper-GGA methods

The GGA exchange–correlation functional provides a substantial improvement over LDA, a generalized gradient functional specification of LSDA. The exchange–correlation energy may similarly be written as a functional decomposition, with the correlation energy being defined by the electronic Hartree–Fock wave function.

The reference wave functions have so far been based on an MBPT type expansion (Section 4.8). The OEP methods are defined by terminating the reference density at first order in the perturbation series. This model is also called the Adiabatic Connection Model (ACM) and is an example of such hybrid models, with the popular B3LYP method defined by eq. (6.52).
Whether one should consider the OEP method as a density or wave functional theory is an open question, as it clearly tries to combine the best of both worlds. It has the advantage of being able to systematically improve the results towards the exact limit, but inherits also the wave function disadvantages of a slow convergence with respect to basis set size.

6.5.6 Functionals overview

The introduction of GGA and hybrid functionals during the early 1990s yielded a major improvement in terms of accuracy for chemical applications, and resulted in the Nobel prize being awarded to W. Kohn and J. A. Pople in 1998. Progress since this initial exciting developments has been slower, and the (infamous) B3LYP functional proposed in 1993 still represents one of the most successful in terms of overall performance. Unfortunately neither the addition of more fitting parameters, the addition of more variables in the functionals, nor imposing more fundamental restrictions for the functional form have (yet) provided models with a significantly better overall performance. Although the performance for a given property can be improved by tailoring the functional form or parameters, such measures often result in the deterioration of the results for other properties.

It should be noted that the implicit cancellation of the long-range part of the exchange and correlation energies implies that the two functional parts should be at the same level of the ladder, and preferably developed in an integrated fashion. A popular topic in the literature is to search for a magic combination of exchange and correlation functionals, perhaps with a few adjustable scaling parameters and a choice of basis set, in order to reproduce a selected set of experimental data. This is not a theoretically justified procedure and should be considered merely as data fitting without much physical relevance. Nevertheless, such a procedure can of course be taken as an “experimental” fitting function that can be useful for predicting specific properties for a series of compounds.

Table 6.1 shows an overview of commonly used functionals given by their acronym, and placed in the Jacob’s ladder classification. One may furthermore differentiate the functionals based on their use (or lack) of experimental data for assigning values to the parameters in the functional forms. The non-empirical ones such as the PW86, PW91, PBE and TPSS functionals use the free parameters to fulfill as many of the requirements in Section 6.5 as possible at each level. Empirical ones such as the BLYP, B3LYP, HCTH and VSXC, on the other hand, attempt to improve the performance by fitting the free parameters to give good agreement with experimental data. This means that these functionals often perform (slightly) better than the non-empirical ones for systems that resemble those in the parameterization set. Since the parameterization data are usually molecular systems, this means that they are often preferred for chemical purposes, but often give inferior performance for, for example, periodic systems such as metals. Note also that most common functionals belong to levels 2 and 4, as inclusion of HF exchange historically has preceded the development of functionals using derivatives beyond first order. As one moves along the rungs of the ladder, it is expected (or hoped) that the accuracy will improve, but there is no guarantee that this is the case.

6.6 Performance and Properties of Density Functional Methods

An evaluation of the performance of the plethora of different functionals for a variety of properties is a major undertaking. We will here just quote two sets of results:

1. Root Mean Square (RMS) errors of atomization energies, ionization potentials, electron and proton affinities over the data set of 407 compounds selected from the G3 data set against experimental data. In addition the RMS error for the residual gradient at the experimental equilibrium geometry is taken as a measure of the accuracy of the functionals for predicting equilibrium geometries. It should be noted that the evaluation data are the same data used for optimizing the parameters in the HCTH functional, and this functional will therefore naturally display good performance. The results are obtained by using a TZP type basis set.

2. Mean Absolute Deviation (MAD) of atomization energies over the 223 molecules in the G3 data set against experimental data. The results were obtained using the 6-311++G(3df,3pd) basis set.

While results with the above basis sets are not converged to the basis set limit, the residual basis set errors are presumably well below the inherent errors in the functionals, and the performance thus reflects the quality of the exchange–correlation functionals (Table 6.2).

Note that the performance ordering of the functionals is not the same for the two sets of results. Only a minor part of this discrepancy can be attributed to the difference in basis sets, the remaining discrepancy is due to differences in the data sets. The LSDA method performs somewhat better than Hartree–Fock, but all the gradient-corrected methods are clearly far superior. The PW91 and PBE functionals are somewhat poorer than the other GGA functionals, reflecting the fact that these do not contain parameters that have been fitted to give a good performance for these systems. Hybrid methods including exact exchange tend to perform (slightly) better than the corresponding pure functionals (e.g. BLYP/B3LYP and PBE/PBE0), but several of the more recent “pure” functionals such as OLYP and VSXC are comparable to for example B3LYP. Since the inclusion of HF exchange is computationally expensive for implementations relying on plane waves for expanding the orbitals, or for programs taking advantage of various density fitting schemes, this represents a computational

| Table 6.1 Perdew classification of exchange–correlation functionals |
|-----------------------------|------------------|----------------|
| Level | Name | Variables | Examples |
| 1 | Local density | ρ | LDA, LSDA, Xα |
| 2 | GGA | ρ, Vρ | BLYP, OPTX, OLYP, PW86, PW91, PBE, HCTH |
| 3 | Meta-GGA | ρ, Vρ, ∇ρ or τ | BR, B95, VSXC, PKZB, TPSS, τ-HCTH |
| 4 | Hyper-GGA | ρ, Vρ, ∇ρ or τ | H-H, ACM, B3LYP, B3PW91, τ-HCTH, PBE0, TPSS, τ-HCTH-hybrid |
| 5 | Generalized RPA | ρ, Vρ or τ | OEP2, τ-HCTH-hybrid |
| | | | Virtual orbitals |
Table 6.2: Comparison of the performance of DFT methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional</th>
<th>RMS (gradient)</th>
<th>RMS (Hessian)</th>
<th>MAD (kJ/mol)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LSDA</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>498</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PW91</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBE</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLP3</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLYP</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSS</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSE06</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCTH</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>βHCTH-hybrid</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPSS</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPSSh</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΨX</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-HCTH</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-HCTH-hybrid</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPSS</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Lagrange multipliers arising in Hartree–Fock theory from the orthogonality constraints of the orbitals, are molecular orbital energies, and the occupied orbital energies correspond to ionization energies. The Lagrange multipliers in DFT do not have the same formal relationship, since Koopmans' theorem does not hold unless the exact exchange–correlation functional is employed. For approximate XC functionals, the Lagrange multipliers can be interpreted as the derivative of the total energy with respect to the occupation number of the orbital, often called the Janak theorem. Although DFT methods often give geometries and vibrational frequencies for stable molecules of the same or better quality than Hartree–Fock methods, there may be cases where DFT methods are not able to predict the correct geometries or vibrational frequencies, especially for molecules with complex structures. This is because DFT methods often contain approximations to the exchange–correlation functional, which may lead to inaccuracies in the calculated properties. For example, linear correlation effects are not included in DFT methods, which may lead to errors in the calculated properties of molecules with complex structures. However, DFT methods have been shown to provide accurate results for a wide range of molecules, and are often used in place of Hartree–Fock methods for computational efficiency. Overall, while DFT methods are not perfect, they are still widely used in computational chemistry due to their computational efficiency and ability to provide reasonable results for many molecular structures.
Schrödinger equation (exactly) with a wave mechanics approach. Indeed, unless one believes that the Schrödinger equation contains superfluous information, this is likely to be the case. Since exact solutions are generally not available in either approach, the important question is instead what the computational cost is for generating a solution of a given accuracy. In this respect, DFT methods have very favourable characteristics.

6.7 DFT Problems

Despite the many successes of DFT, there are some areas where the current functionals are known to perform poorly:

- Weak interactions due to dispersion forces (part of van der Waals type interactions) arise from electron correlation in wave function methods, but this is poorly described by current DFT methods. Rare gas atoms should show a slight attraction, but most functionals display a purely repulsive energy curve, and those that do predict an attraction underestimate the effect and the variation between systems. Furthermore, none have the correct $R^{-6}$ limiting behaviour in the long distance limit, although very recent developments appear to provide quite accurate results with only a single parameter. In some approaches, an empirical attraction term is added that improves the performance, but this is clearly an ad hoc repair. Owing to the general overestimation of bond strengths, LSDA does predict an attraction between rare gas atoms, but significantly overestimates the magnitude. Hydrogen bonding, however, is mainly electrostatic and is reasonably well accounted for by many DFT functionals.

- Loosely bound electrons, such as anions arising from systems with relatively low electron affinities, represent a problem for exchange–correlation functionals that do not include self-interaction corrections or correct for the incorrect long-range behaviour of the exchange-correlation potential. Since loosely bound electrons by definition have most of the associated density far from the nuclei, this may cause the self-interaction error to be larger than the actual binding energy, and thus lead erroneously to an unbound electron. In actual calculations using a limited basis set, this may not be obvious, since the outer electron is confined by the most diffuse basis function. A positive HOMO energy, however, is a clear warning sign, and extending the basis set with many diffuse functions in such cases may cause the outer electron to drift away from the atom. This means that only systems with high electron affinities have a well-defined basis set limiting value. Nevertheless, a medium-sized basis set with a single set of diffuse functions will in many cases give a reasonable estimate of the experimental electron affinity. The basis set confines the outer electron to be in the correct physical space, and the exchange–correlation functional gives a reasonable estimate of the energy of this density. It should be noted that the relatively good performance is in essence due to a correct physical description, rather than a correct theoretical methodology.

- For chemically bonded systems, analysis similar to the $\text{H}_2$ system in Section 6.4 suggest that bonds involving:
  - two-centre two-electrons (e.g. normal covalent bonds),
  - two-centre four-electrons (e.g. steric repulsion between closed shell systems), and
  - three-centre three-electrons (e.g. radical abstraction) should be reasonably described by gradient-corrected methods. Systems involving:
    - two-centre one-electron (e.g. radical cations),
    - two-centre three-electrons (e.g. radical anions),
    - three-centre four electrons (e.g. atom transfer transition structures) are, however, predicted to be too stable. The dissociation of charged odd-electron systems is a problem for most DFT methods, with the dissociation energy profile displaying an artificial barrier and an incorrect dissociation energy, often in error by as much as 100 kJ/mol. Transition structures are similarly predicted to be too stable (barriers are underestimated) by functionals that do not included exact exchange.

- The absence of a wave function makes a direct description of excited states with the same symmetry as the ground state problematic. Excited states must be orthogonal to the ground state, which is easy to enforce if the spatial or spin symmetry differ, but difficult to ensure for excited states having the same spatial and spin symmetry. Excited state properties, however, can be calculated by time-dependent DFT (linear response) methods, since the excited state is never needed explicitly. Such calculations can give for example excitation energies and transition moments, as well as gradients of the excited surface, which allows excited states to be optimized.

- The accuracy of excitation energies is typically ~0.5 eV for valence states, but Rydberg states, where the electron is excited into a diffuse orbital, can be in error by several eV. This problem has the same physical reason as the anion problem above, and can be solved by using corrections for the asymptotic behaviour of the exchange–correlation potential. Such Asymptotic Corrected (AC) functionals display much improved predictions for response properties.

- The exchange–correlation functional is inherently local, depending only on the density and possibly its derivatives at a given point, and this causes DFT methods to be inherently unsuitable for describing charge transfer systems, where an electron is transferred over a large distance. Such systems are predicted to have excitation energies that are too low by several eV.

- Relative energies of states with different spin multiplicity are often poorly described. In HF theory, the energy difference between a singlet and triplet state with the same orbital occupancy is given by an exchange integral. In DFT, this must be described by the exchange–correlation functional, which only depends on the electron density. If the two spin states arise from the same electron configuration the two electron densities are very similar, and this makes the results sensitive to the details of the exchange–correlation functional. These problems are especially problematic for transition metal systems, where several low-energy spin states are often possible, and many of these cannot be described by a single determinant. Pure DFT methods favour low spin states while HF favours high spin states, and hybrid methods with a suitable parameterized amount of exact exchange perform better. These problems can perhaps be improved by adding current density terms to the DFT formalism but this is not yet a commonly used procedure since it requires that the orbitals be allowed to become complex.
Individual spatial components of a spin multiplet may have different energies, even in the absence of a magnetic field. The boron atom, for example, has the electron configuration $1s^2 2p^1$, and the single $p$-electron can be in either a $p_z$, $p_y$, or $p_x$ orbital. These should all have the same energy, but since the density associated with the $p_z$ orbital is different from that of a $p_y$ orbital, their energies as a result differ by ~25 kJ/mol. This is clearly non-physical, but can be significantly improved by introducing current density terms.  

6.8 Computational Considerations

The strength of DFT is that only the total density needs to be considered. In order to calculate the kinetic energy with sufficient accuracy, however, orbitals have to be re-introduced. Nevertheless, Kohn–Sham DFT displays a computational cost similar to HF theory, with the possibility of providing more accurate (exact, in principle) results.

Once an exchange–correlation functional has been selected, the computational problem is very similar to that encountered in wave mechanics HF theory: determine a set of orthogonal orbitals that minimizes the energy. Since the density associated with the $p_z$ orbital is different from that of a $p_y$ orbital, their energies as a result differ by ~25 kJ/mol. This is clearly non-physical, but can be significantly improved by introducing current density terms.  

The basis functions are often the same as used in wave mechanics for expanding the HF orbitals, although basis functions specifically optimized for DFT have recently been proposed (see Section 5.4.7 for details).

The variational procedure again leads to a matrix equation in the atomic orbital basis that can be written in the following form (compare to eq. (3.51)).

$$
\mathbf{h}_{\text{KS}} \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{C}
$$

Once an exchange–correlation functional has been selected, the computational problem is very similar to that encountered in wave mechanics HF theory: determine a set of orthogonal orbitals that minimizes the energy. Since the density associated with the $p_z$ orbital is different from that of a $p_y$ orbital, their energies as a result differ by ~25 kJ/mol. This is clearly non-physical, but can be significantly improved by introducing current density terms.  

As the number of grid points $G$ goes to infinity, the approximation becomes exact. In practice, the number of points is selected based on the desired accuracy of the final results, i.e. if the energy is only required with an accuracy of $10^{-5}$, the number of integration points can be smaller than if the energy is required with an accuracy of $10^{-8}$. There are also some technical skills involved in selecting the optimum distribution of a given number of points to yield the best accuracy, i.e. the points should be dense where the function $\rho$ varies most. The grid is usually selected as being spherical around each nucleus, making it dense in the radial direction near the nucleus, and dense in the angular part in the valence space. For typical applications, 1000–10 000 points are used for each atom.  

A unitary transformation that makes the matrix of the Lagrange multiplier diagonal may again be chosen, producing a set of canonical KS orbitals. The resulting pseudo-eigenvalue equations are known as the Kohn–Sham equations.

$$
\mathbf{h}_{\text{KS}} \phi = \varepsilon \phi
$$

The KS orbitals can be determined completely by a numerical procedure, analogously to numerical HF methods. In practice, such procedures are limited to small systems, and essentially all calculations employ an expansion of the KS orbitals in an atomic basis set.

$$
\phi_i = \sum_n c_{ni} \zeta_n
$$

The basis functions are often the same as used in wave mechanics for expanding the HF orbitals, although basis functions specifically optimized for DFT have recently been proposed (see Section 5.4.7 for details).

The variational procedure again leads to a matrix equation in the atomic orbital basis that can be written in the following form (compare to eq. (3.51)).

$$
\mathbf{h}_{\text{KS}} \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{C}
$$

The $\mathbf{h}_{\text{KS}}$ matrix is analogous to the Fock matrix in wave mechanics, and the one-electron and Coulomb parts are identical to the corresponding Fock matrix elements. The exchange–correlation part, however, is given in terms of the electron density, and possibly also involves derivatives of the density or orbitals.

The $\mathbf{h}_{\text{KS}}$ functional depends on the integration variables implicitly via the electron density, these integrals cannot be evaluated analytically but must be generated by a numerical integration.

As the number of grid points $G$ goes to infinity, the approximation becomes exact. In practice, the number of points is selected based on the desired accuracy of the final results, i.e. if the energy is only required with an accuracy of $10^{-5}$, the number of integration points can be smaller than if the energy is required with an accuracy of $10^{-8}$. There are also some technical skills involved in selecting the optimum distribution of a given number of points to yield the best accuracy, i.e. the points should be dense where the function $\rho$ varies most. The grid is usually selected as being spherical around each nucleus, making it dense in the radial direction near the nucleus, and dense in the angular part in the valence space. For typical applications, 1000–10 000 points are used for each atom.  

A unitary transformation that makes the matrix of the Lagrange multiplier diagonal may again be chosen, producing a set of canonical KS orbitals. The resulting pseudo-eigenvalue equations are known as the Kohn–Sham equations.

$$
\mathbf{h}_{\text{KS}} \phi = \varepsilon \phi
$$

The KS orbitals can be determined completely by a numerical procedure, analogously to numerical HF methods. In practice, such procedures are limited to small systems, and essentially all calculations employ an expansion of the KS orbitals in an atomic basis set.

$$
\phi_i = \sum_n c_{ni} \zeta_n
$$

The basis functions are often the same as used in wave mechanics for expanding the HF orbitals, although basis functions specifically optimized for DFT have recently been proposed (see Section 5.4.7 for details).

The variational procedure again leads to a matrix equation in the atomic orbital basis that can be written in the following form (compare to eq. (3.51)).

$$
\mathbf{h}_{\text{KS}} \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{C}
$$

The $\mathbf{h}_{\text{KS}}$ matrix is analogous to the Fock matrix in wave mechanics, and the one-electron and Coulomb parts are identical to the corresponding Fock matrix elements. The exchange–correlation part, however, is given in terms of the electron density, and possibly also involves derivatives of the density or orbitals.

The $\mathbf{h}_{\text{KS}}$ functional depends on the integration variables implicitly via the electron density, these integrals cannot be evaluated analytically but must be generated by a numerical integration.
6.9 Final Considerations

Should DFT methods be considered *ab initio* or semi-empirical? If *ab initio* is taken to mean that the method is based on theory, which in principle is able to produce the exact results, DFT methods are *ab initio*. The only caveat is that the exchange–correlation contribution has some disadvantages when derivatives of the energy are desired. For this reason, there is also a trend towards grid-free DFT methods where the exchange–correlation potential is expressed completely in terms of analytical integrals.

Alternative versions where the Coulomb part of the Kohn–Sham matrix is assembled using plane waves as the auxiliary basis have also been proposed and, properly implemented, these achieve linear scaling even for small systems and for large basis sets. The computational cost of a DFT calculation depends strongly on the implementation. The use of grid-based techniques for the numerical integration of the exchange–correlation potential is expressed completely in terms of analytical integrals.

The density fitting functions may be chosen such that the Coulomb (and exchange) part of the Kohn–Sham matrix is assembled using plane waves as the auxiliary basis. This opens up the possibility of performing accurate calculations on systems containing thousands of atoms, which is likely to have impacts on many areas of computational chemistry.

The density fitting functions may be the same as those used in expanding the orbitals, but more often an auxiliary basis is used. The fitting terms are then evaluated directly from integrals over the fitted functions. However, as discussed in Section 3.8.6, the Coulomb (and exchange) part can be calculated with an effort that scales only as $M^{3/2}$ basis functions, thereby reducing the computational effort to linear scaling. This opens up the possibility of performing accurate calculations on systems containing thousands of atoms, which is likely to have impacts on many areas of computational chemistry.

The density fitting functions may be the same as those used in expanding the orbitals, but more often an auxiliary basis is used. The fitting terms are then evaluated directly from integrals over the fitted functions. However, as discussed in Section 3.8.6, the Coulomb (and exchange) part can be calculated with an effort that scales only as $M^{3/2}$ basis functions, thereby reducing the computational effort to linear scaling. This opens up the possibility of performing accurate calculations on systems containing thousands of atoms, which is likely to have impacts on many areas of computational chemistry.

The density fitting functions may be the same as those used in expanding the orbitals, but more often an auxiliary basis is used. The fitting terms are then evaluated directly from integrals over the fitted functions. However, as discussed in Section 3.8.6, the Coulomb (and exchange) part can be calculated with an effort that scales only as $M^{3/2}$ basis functions, thereby reducing the computational effort to linear scaling. This opens up the possibility of performing accurate calculations on systems containing thousands of atoms, which is likely to have impacts on many areas of computational chemistry.
therefore, although a progression of methods such as LSDA, BLYP and B3LYP has provided for calibrating the Gaussian-1 type database, there is no guarantee that the same procedure is valid for other systems where experimental or high-quality quantum chemical results are available. In systems where experimental or high-quality quantum chemical results are available, DFT methods, especially those involving gradient corrections and hybrid methods, are significantly more accurate than the MND0 family and DFT is consequently a valuable tool for systems where high accuracy is important.

References

7 Valence Bond Methods

Essentially all practical calculations for generating solutions to the electronic Schrödinger equation have been performed with molecular orbital methods. The zeroth-order wave function is constructed as a single Slater determinant and the MOs are expanded in a set of atomic orbitals, the basis set. In a subsequent step the wave function may be improved by adding electron correlation with either CI, MP or CC methods. There are two characteristics of such approaches: (1) the one-electron functions, the MOs, are delocalized over the whole molecule, and (2) an accurate treatment of the electron correlation requires many (millions or billions) "excited" Slater determinants. The delocalized nature of the MOs is partly a consequence of choosing the Lagrange multiplier matrix to be diagonal (canonical orbitals, eq. (3.42)), they may in a subsequent step be mixed to form localized orbitals (see Section 9.4) without affecting the total wave function. Such a localization, however, is not unique. Furthermore, delocalized MOs are at variance with the basic concept in chemistry that molecules are composed of structural units (functional groups) which to a very good approximation are constant from molecule to molecule. The MOs for propane and butane, for example, are quite different, although "common" knowledge is that they contain CH₃ and CH₂ units that in terms of structure and reactivity are very similar for the two molecules. A description of the electronic wave function as having electrons in orbitals formed as linear combinations of all (in principle) atomic orbitals is also at variance with the chemical language of molecules being composed of atoms held together by bonds, where the bonds are formed by pairing unpaired electrons contained in atomic orbitals. Finally, when electron correlation is important (as is usually the case), the need to include many Slater determinants obscures the picture of electrons residing in orbitals.

There is an equivalent way of generating solutions to the electronic Schrödinger equation that conceptually is much closer to the experimentalist's language, known as Valence Bond (VB) theory. We will start by illustrating the concepts for the H₂ molecule, and note how it differs from MO methods.

7.1 Classical Valence Bond Theory

A single-determinant MO wave function for the H₂ molecule within a minimum basis consisting of a single s-function on each nucleus is given in eq. (7.1) (see also Section 4.3).

\[ \Phi_0 = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_1(1) \\ \psi_2(1) \end{pmatrix} \]

\[ \psi_1 = (\chi_x + \chi_y) \alpha \\
\psi_2 = (\chi_x - \chi_y) \beta \]

(7.1)

We have here ignored the normalization constants. The Slater determinant may be expanded in AOs, as shown in eq. (7.2).

\[ \Phi_0 = \phi \psi - \phi \bar{\psi} = (\phi \phi)_{[\alpha \beta]} (\bar{\psi} - \beta \alpha] \]

\[ \Phi_0 = (\chi_x + \chi_y)(\chi_x + \chi_y) [\alpha \beta - \beta \alpha] \]

\[ \Phi_0 = (\chi_x \chi_x + \chi_x \chi_y + \chi_y \chi_x + \chi_y \chi_y) [\alpha \beta - \beta \alpha] \]

(7.2)

This shows that the HF wave function consists of equal amounts of ionic (\(\chi_x \chi_x\) and \(\chi_x \chi_y\)) and covalent (\(\chi_x \chi_y\) and \(\chi_y \chi_y\)) terms. In the dissociation limit only the covalent terms are correct, but the single-determinant description does not allow the ratio of covalent to ionic terms to vary. In order to provide a correct description, a second determinant is necessary.

\[ \Phi_1 = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_1(1) \\ \psi_2(1) \end{pmatrix} \]

\[ \psi_1 = (\chi_x - \chi_y) \alpha \\
\psi_2 = (\chi_x - \chi_y) \beta \]

(7.3)

By including the doubly excited determinant \(\Phi_1\), built from the antibonding MO, the amounts of the covalent and ionic terms may be varied, and this is determined completely by the variational principle (eq. (4.20)).

\[ \Psi_2 = \phi \Phi_0 + \phi \Phi_1 \]

\[ \Psi_2 = [(\chi_x - \chi_y)(\chi_x \chi_x + \chi_y \chi_y) \alpha \beta - \beta \alpha] \]

(7.4)

This two-configurational CI wave function allows a qualitatively correct description of the H₂ molecule at all distances and in the dissociation limit, where the weights of the two configurations become equal.

The classical VB wave function, on the other hand, is built from the atomic fragments by coupling the unpaired electrons to form a bond. In the H₂ case, the two electrons are coupled into a singlet pair, properly antisymmetrized. The simplest VB description, known as a Heitler–London (HL) function, includes only the two covalent terms in the HF wave function.

\[ \Phi_{\text{HL}} = (\chi_x \chi_x + \chi_y \chi_y) [\alpha \beta - \beta \alpha] \]

(7.5)

Just as the single-determinant MO wave function may be improved by including excited determinants, the simple VB-HL function may also be improved by adding...
7.2 Spin-Coupled Valence Bond Theory

The generalization of a Coulson–Fischer type wave function to the molecular case with an arbitrary-size basis set is known as Spin-Coupled Valence Bond (SCVB) theory.

It is again instructive to compare with the traditional MO approach, taking the CH₄ molecule as an example. The MO single-determinant description (RHF, which is identical to UHF near the equilibrium geometry) of the valence orbitals is in terms of four delocalized orbitals, each occupied by two electrons with opposite spin. The C—H bonding is described by four different, orthogonal molecular orbitals, each expanded in a set of AOs.

$$\Phi_{\text{MO}} = \sum_{\alpha} a_\alpha \phi_\alpha$$

$$\Phi_{\text{HL}} = a\Phi_{\text{MO}}^+ + a\Phi_{\text{MO}}^-$$

The final description, either in terms of a CI wave function written as a linear combination of two determinants build from delocalized MOs (eq. (7.4)), or as a VB wave function written in terms of two VB-HL structures composed of AOs (eq. (7.7)), is identical.

Consider now a covalent VB function built from “atomic” orbitals that are allowed to distort from the pure atomic shape.

$$\Phi_{\text{VB}} = \phi_\alpha + \phi_\beta$$

$$\Phi_{\text{HL}}^\pm = \phi_{\alpha}^{\pm}$$

Such a VB function is known as a Coulson–Fischer (CF) type. The constant is fairly small (for H₂, c is -0.04), but by allowing the VB orbitals to adopt the optimum shape, the need for ionic VB structures is strongly reduced. Note that the two VB orbitals in eq. (7.8) are not orthogonal – the overlap is given by eq. (7.9).

$$\langle \phi_\alpha | \phi_\beta \rangle = \langle \phi_\alpha | \phi_\alpha \rangle + \langle \phi_\beta | \phi_\beta \rangle - 2 \langle \phi_\alpha | \phi_\beta \rangle$$

Compared with the overlap of the undistorted atomic orbitals used in the HL wave function, which is just \(S_{\alpha\beta}\), it is seen that the overlap is increased (c is positive), i.e. the orbitals distort such that they overlap better in order to make a bond. Although the distortion is fairly small (a few percent), this effectively eliminates the need for including ionic VB terms. When c is variationally optimized, the MO-CI, VB-HL, and VB-CF wave functions (eqs (7.4), (7.7), and (7.8)) are all completely equivalent. The MO approach incorporates the flexibility in terms of an “excited” determinant, the VB-HL in terms of “ionic” structures, and the VB-CF in terms of “distorted” atomic orbitals.

In the MO-CI language, the correct dissociation of a single bond requires the addition of a second doubly excited determinant to the wave function. The VB-CF wave function, on the other hand, dissociates smoothly to the correct limit, the VB-orbitals simply reverting to their pure atomic shapes, with the overlap disappearing.

The \(\Theta_{2S}^N\) symbol is used to designate the ith combination of spin functions coupling \(N\) electrons to give an overall spin of \(S\), and there are \(f_{N}^S\) number of ways of doing this. The value of \(f_{N}^S\) is given by eq. (7.11).

$$f_{N}^S = \frac{(2S+1)!}{4S(N+S+1)!}$$

For a singlet wave function (\(S = 0\)), the number of coupling schemes for \(N\) electrons is given in Table 7.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(N)</th>
<th>(f_{N}^S)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>429</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For the eight valence electrons in CH$_4$ there are 14 possible spin couplings resulting in an overall singlet state. The full SCVB function may be written (again neglecting normalization) as in eq. (7.12).

$$\Phi^{(8)}_{\text{valence-SCVB}} = \sum_{i=1}^{14} \alpha_i \Phi_i \Phi_i^*$$

(7.12)

There are now eight different spatial orbitals, $\Phi$, four of which are essentially carbon sp$^3$-hybrid orbitals, with the other four being close to atomic hydrogen s-orbitals. The expansion of each of the VB-orbitals in terms of all the basis functions located on all the nuclei allows the orbitals to distort from the pure atomic shape. The SCVB wave function is variationally optimized, both with respect to the VB-orbital coefficients $c_i$ and the spin coupling coefficients $\alpha_i$. The result is that a complete set of optimum “distorted” atomic orbitals is determined together with the weight of the different spin couplings. Each spin coupling term (in the so-called Rumer basis) is closely related to the concept of a resonance structure used in organic chemistry textbooks. An SCVB calculation of CH$_4$ gives as a result that one of the spin coupling schemes completely dominates the wave function, namely that corresponding to the electron pair in each of the C—H bonds being singlet coupled. This is the quantum mechanical analogue of the graphical representation of CH$_4$ shown in Figure 7.2.

Each of the lines represents a singlet-coupled electron pair between two orbitals that strongly overlap to form a bond, and the drawing in Figure 7.2 is the only important “resonance” form.

Consider now the $n$-system in benzene. The MO approach will generate linear combinations of the atomic p-orbitals, producing six p-orbitals delocalized over the whole molecule with four different orbital energies (two sets of degenerate orbitals). The stability of benzene can be attributed to the large gap between the HOMO and LUMO orbitals.

A SCVB calculation considering only the coupling of the six $n$-electrons gives a somewhat different picture. The VB $n$-orbitals are strongly localized on each carbon, resembling p-orbitals that are slightly distorted in the direction of the nearest neighbour atoms. It is now found that five spin coupling combinations are important, these are shown in Figure 7.4, where a bold line indicates two electrons coupled into a singlet pair.

Each of the two first VB structures contributes ~40% to the wave function, and each of the remaining three contributes ~6%. The stability of benzene in the SCVB picture is due to resonance between these VB structures. It is furthermore straightforward to calculate the resonance energy by comparing the full SCVB energy with that calculated from a VB wave function omitting certain spin coupling functions. The MO wave function for CH$_4$ may be improved by adding configurations corresponding to excited determinants, i.e. replacing occupied MOs with virtual MOs. Allowing all excitations in the minimal basis valence space and performing the full optimization corresponds to an [18.8]-CASSCF wave function (Section 4.6). Similarly, the SCVB wave function in eq. (7.12) may be improved by adding ionic VB structures such as CH$_3$/H$^+$ and CH$_3$/H$^-$, and this corresponds to exciting an electron from one of the singly occupied VB orbitals into another VB orbital, thereby making it doubly occupied. The importance of these excited/ionic terms can again be determined by the variational principle. If all such ionic terms are included, the fully optimized SCVB wave function is for all practical purposes identical to that obtained by the MO-CASSCF approach (the only difference is a possible slight difference in the description of the carbon 1s-core orbital).

Both types of wave function provide essentially the same total energy, and thus include the same amount of electron correlation. The MO-CASSCF wave function attributes the electron correlation to interaction of 1764 configurations, the Hartree–Fock reference and 1763 excited configurations, with each of the 1763 configurations providing only a small amount of the correlation energy. The SCVB wave function (which includes only one resonance structure), however, contains 90% of the correlation energy, and only a few percent is attributed to “excited” structures. The ability of SCVB wave functions to include electron correlation is due to the fact that the VB orbitals are strongly localized and, since they are occupied by only one electron, they have the built-in feature of electrons avoiding each other. In a sense, an SCVB wave function is the best wave function that can be constructed in terms of prob-
products of spatial orbitals. By allowing the orbitals to become non-orthogonal, the large majority (80–90%) of what is called electron correlation in an MO approach can be included in a single-determinant wave function composed of spatial orbitals, multiplied by proper spin coupling functions.

There are a number of technical complications associated with optimizing the SCVB wave function due to the non-orthogonal orbitals. The MO-CI or MO-CASSCF approaches simplify considerably owing to the orthogonality of the MOs, and thereby also of the Slater determinants. Computationally, the optimization of an SCVB wave function, where \( N \) electrons are coupled in all possible ways, is similar to that required for constructing an \( N \), \( N \)-CASSCF wave function. This effectively limits the size of SCVB wave functions to coupling of 12–16 electrons. The actual optimization of the wave function is usually done by perturbation or coupled cluster theory, although (non-orthogonal) CI methods may also be used to describe the wavefunction by perturbation of the SCVB wave function. The difference in the way the results can be analyzed is due to the fact that in the MO-CI approach, the results are obtained from an exact wave function, whereas in the SCVB approach, the results are obtained from an approximation.

The SCVB method is a valuable tool for providing insight into the problem. This is particularly true for molecules where the orbitals are strongly localized, such as in diazomethane. The SCVB wave function can be used to describe the molecular structure, as illustrated in Figure 7.5. The SCVB method is based on the use of non-orthogonal orbitals, which allow a much more compact representation of the wave function. An MO-CI wave function of a certain quality may involve many thousands of determinants, whereas a single SCVB wave function, with its much smaller number of determinants, is able to describe the electron correlation effects in the molecule.
8 Relativistic Methods

The central theme in relativity is that the speed of light, $c$, is constant in all inertia frames (coordinate systems that move with respect to each other). Augmented with the requirement that physical laws should be identical in such frames, this has as a consequence that time and space coordinates become “equivalent”. A relativistic description of a particle thus requires four coordinates, three space and one time coordinate. The latter is usually multiplied by $c$ to have units identical to the space variables.

A change between different coordinate systems can be described by a Lorentz transformation, which may mix space and time coordinates. The postulate that physical laws should be identical in all coordinate systems is equivalent to the requirement that equations describing the physics must be invariant (unchanged) to a Lorentz transformation. Considering the time-dependent Schrödinger equation (8.1), it is clear that it is not Lorentz invariant since the derivative with respect to space coordinates is of second order, but the time derivative is only first order. The fundamental structure of the Schrödinger equation is therefore not relativistically correct.

For use below, we have elected here to explicitly write the electron mass as $m$, although it is equal to one in atomic units.

One of the consequences of the constant speed of light is that the mass of a particle, which moves at a substantial fraction of $c$, increases over the rest mass $m_0$.

The energy of a 1s-electron in a hydrogen-like system (one nucleus and one electron) is $-Z^2/2$, and classically this is equal to minus the kinetic energy, $1/2 m v^2$, owing to the virial theorem ($E = -T = 1/2 V$). In atomic units ($m = 1$) the classical velocity of a 1s-electron is thus $Z$. The speed of light in atomic units is 137.036, and it is clear that relativistic effects cannot be neglected for the core electrons in heavy nuclei. For atoms with large $Z$, the 1s-electrons are relativistic and thus heavier, which has the effect that...
the 1s-orbital shrinks in size, by the same factor as the mass increases (eq. (8.2)). In order to maintain orthogonality, the higher s-orbitals also contract. This provides a more effective screening of the nuclear charge for the higher angular momentum orbitals, which consequently increase in size. For p-orbitals the spin–orbit interaction, which mixes s- and p-orbitals, counteracts the inflation. The net effect is that p-orbitals are relatively unaffected in size, while d- and f-orbitals become larger and more diffuse.

In terms of total energy, the relativistic correction becomes comparable to the correlation energy already for \( Z \sim 10 \), while it becomes comparable to the exchange energy for \( Z \sim 50 \). Since the majority of the relativistic effects are concentrated in the core orbitals, there is a large error cancellation for molecular properties. Relativistic effects for geometries and energetics are normally negligible for the first three rows in the periodic table (up to Kr, \( Z = 36 \), corresponding to a "mass correction" of 1.04), the fourth row represents an intermediate case, while relativistic corrections are necessary for the fifth and sixth rows, and for lanthanide/actinide metals. For effects involving electron spin (e.g. spin-orbit coupling), which are purely relativistic in origin, there is no non-relativistic counterpart, and the "relativistic correction" is of course everything.

Although an in-depth treatment of relativistic effects is outside the scope of this book, it may be instructive to point out some of the features and problems in a relativistic quantum description of atoms and molecules. Furthermore, we will require some operators derived from a relativistic treatment for calculating molecular properties in Chapter 10.

### 8.1 The Dirac Equation

For a free electron, Dirac proposed that the (time-dependent) Schrödinger equation should be replaced by eq. (8.3).

\[
[\alpha \mathbf{p} + \beta mc^2]\Psi = \frac{i}{\hbar} \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t} \tag{8.3}
\]

Here \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) are 4 \( \times \) 4 matrices, \( \alpha \) is written in terms of the three Pauli 2 \( \times \) 2 spin matrices \( \sigma \), and \( \beta \) in term of a 2 \( \times \) 2 unit matrix \( I \).

\[
\alpha_{s,x,y,z} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sigma_{s,x,y,z} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \beta = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix}
\]

Except for a factor of \( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \), the \( \sigma_{s,x,y,z} \) matrices can be viewed as representations of the \( s, s, x, \) and \( s, y, z \) spin operators, respectively, when the \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) spin functions are taken as (1,0) and (0,1) vectors.

\[
\begin{align*}
\sigma_0 &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
\sigma_1 &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
\sigma_2 &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
\sigma_3 &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}
\end{align*}
\]

The \( \alpha \) function is an eigenfunction of the \( s \) operator with an eigenvalue of \( \frac{1}{2} \), and the \( \beta \) function similarly has an eigenvalue of \( -\frac{1}{2} \).

The Dirac equation is of same order in all variables (space and time), since the relation energy already for \( Z \sim 10 \), while it becomes comparable to the exchange energy of 13.6 eV for a hydrogen atom. The two (relativistic and non-relativistic) energy scales may be aligned by subtracting the electron rest energy, which corresponds to replacing the \( \beta \) matrix in eq. (8.3) by \( \beta' \).

\[
\beta' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2I \end{pmatrix}
\]

The Dirac equation corresponds to satisfying the requirements of special relativity in connection with the quantum behaviour of the electron. Special relativity considers only systems that move with a constant velocity with respect to each other, which can hardly be considered a good approximation for the movement of an electron around a nucleus. A relativistic treatment of accelerated systems is described by general relativity, which is a gravitational theory. For atomic systems, however, the gravitational interaction between electrons and nuclei (or between electrons) is insignificant compared with the electrostatic interaction. Furthermore, a consistent theory describing the quantum aspects of gravitation has not yet been developed.

The Dirac equation is four-dimensional, and the relativistic wave function consequently contains four components. Two of the degrees of freedom are accounted for by assigning an intrinsic magnetic moment (spin), while the other two are interpreted as two different particles, electron and positron. The positronic solutions show up as a continuum of "negative" energy states, having energies below \(-2mc^2\), as illustrated in Figure 8.1. Note that the spacing between bound states has been exaggerated, as the binding energy is of the order of eV while \( 2mc^2 \) is of the order of MeV.
It is conventional to write the relativistic wave function as in eq. (8.7).

\[
\Psi' = \begin{pmatrix} \Psi_{\alpha} \\ \Psi_{\beta} \\ \Psi_{s} \\ \Psi_{c} \end{pmatrix}
\]  

(8.7)

Here, \( \Psi_{\alpha} \) and \( \Psi_{\beta} \) are the large and small components of the wave function, and \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) indicate the usual spin functions. Note that the spatial parts of \( \Psi_{\alpha}, \Psi_{\beta}, \Psi_{s}, \) and \( \Psi_{c} \) are not necessarily identical. For electrons, the large component reduces to the solutions of the Schrödinger equation when \( c \rightarrow \infty \) (the non-relativistic limit), and the small component disappears. The small component of the electronic wave function corresponds to a coupling with the positronic states.

### 8.2 Connections Between the Dirac and Schrödinger Equations

#### 8.2.1 Including electric potentials

In the presence of an electric potential \( V \) (e.g. from nuclei), the time-independent Dirac equation may be written as in eq. (8.8), where we have again explicitly indicated the electron mass.

\[
\left[ c \alpha \cdot p + \beta mc^2 + V \Psi = E \Psi \right]
\]  

(8.8)

Since \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) are block matrices in terms of \( \sigma \) and \( \mathbf{I} \), eq. (8.8) can be factorized in two equations.

\[
c(\sigma \cdot p)\Psi_{\alpha} + \Psi_{s} = E\Psi_{\alpha}
\]

\[
c(\sigma \cdot p)\Psi_{\beta} + (\mathbf{s} \cdot p + V)\Psi_{s} = E\Psi_{\beta}
\]

(8.9)

Here \( \Psi_{\alpha} \) and \( \Psi_{\beta} \) are (large and small) two-component wave functions that include the \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) spin functions. The latter equation can be solved for \( \Psi_{s} \).

\[
\Psi_{s} = (E + 2mc^2 - V)^{-1} c(\sigma \cdot p)\Psi_{s}
\]  

(8.10)

The inverse quantity can be factorized as in eq. (8.11).

\[
(E + 2mc^2 - V)^{-1} = (2mc^2)^{-1} \left( 1 + \frac{E-V}{2mc^2} \right)^{-1} = (2mc^2)^{-1} K
\]  

(8.11)

The top equation in (8.9) then becomes eq. (8.12).

\[
\Psi_{s} = K \frac{\sigma \cdot p}{2mc^2} \Psi_{s}
\]  

(8.12)

The top equation in (8.9) then becomes eq. (8.13).

\[
\left[ 1 \frac{(\sigma \cdot p)K(\sigma \cdot p) + (V - E)}{2mc^2} \right] \Psi_{s} = 0
\]  

(8.13)

In the non-relativistic limit \( c \rightarrow \infty \) the \( K \) factor is 1, and the first term becomes \( (\sigma \cdot p)(\sigma \cdot p) \). Using the vector identity \( (\sigma \cdot p)(\sigma \cdot p) = p \cdot p + i(\sigma \cdot p \times p) \), this gives the non-relativistic kinetic energy \( p^2/2m \), since the vector product of any vector with itself is zero \((p \times p = 0)\). The equation for the large component therefore reduces to the Schrödinger equation.

\[
\left[ \frac{p^2}{2m} + V \right] \Psi_{s} = E\Psi_{s}
\]  

(8.14)

The electron spin is still present in eq. (8.14), since \( \Psi_{s} \) is a two-component wave function, but this can trivially be separated out since the operators do not contain any spin dependence.

In the non-relativistic limit the small component of the wave function is given by eq. (8.15).

\[
\Psi_{s} = \frac{\sigma \cdot p}{2mc^2} \Psi_{s}
\]  

(8.15)

For a hydrogenic wave function \( (\Psi_{s} = e^{-2r}) \), this gives eq. (8.16) in atomic units (setting \( m = 1 \)).

\[
\Psi_{s} = \frac{Z}{2c} \Psi_{s}
\]  

(8.16)

For a hydrogen atom the small component accounts for only ~0.4% of the total wave function, whereas for a uranium 1s-electron it is a third of the electron density, but for a uranium 1s-electron it is a third of the electron density. For an atom, the large component accounts for only ~1% of the total wave function.
corrections. Since they have opposite signs, they do to a certain extent cancel each other.

Owing to the divergence of the $K$ expansion near the nuclei, the mass–velocity and Darwin corrections can only be used as first-order corrections. Inclusion of such operators in a variational sense will result in a collapse of the wave function. An alternative method is to partition eq. (8.11) as in eq. (8.19), which avoids the divergence near the nucleus.

\[
\left( E + 2mc^2 - V \right)^{-1} = \left( 2mc^2 - V \right)^{-1} \left( 1 + \frac{E}{2mc^2 - V} \right)^{-1} = \left( 2mc^2 - V \right)^{-1} K^0
\]

(8.19)

In contrast to eq. (8.17), the factor $E(2mc^2 - V)$ is always much smaller than 1, and $K^0$ may be expanded in powers of $E(2mc^2 - V)$, analogously to eq. (8.17). Keeping only the zeroth-order term (i.e. setting $K^0 = 1$) gives the Zeroth-Order Regular Approximation (ZORA) method, eq. (8.20). With the magnetic field, eq. (8.22) is given as the curl of the vector potential.

Note that in this case the spin–orbit coupling is already included in zeroth order. Including the first-order term from an expansion of $K^0$ defines the First-Order Regular Approximation (FORA) method. A disadvantage of these methods is that they are not gauge invariant.

8.2.2 Including both electric and magnetic potentials

The presence of a magnetic field can be included in the so-called minimal coupling by addition of a vector potential $A$ to the momentum operator $p$, forming a generalized momentum operator $\pi$, which for an electron (charge of $-1$) is given by eq. (8.21).

\[
\pi = p + A
\]

(8.21)

The magnetic field is defined as the curl of the vector potential.

\[
B = \nabla \times A
\]

(8.22)

For an external magnetic field, it is conventional to write the potential as in eq. (8.23).

\[
A(r) = \frac{e}{2} \mathbf{B} \times (r - R_0)
\]

(8.23)

Here $R_0$ is the gauge origin, i.e. the “zero” point for the vector potential. The gauge origin is often taken as the centre of mass for the system, but this is by no means unique. The results from an exact calculation will be independent of $R_0$, but, for approximate calculations, this is not guaranteed, and the results may thus depend on where the gauge origin is chosen. Such gauge-dependent properties are clearly undesirable, since different values can be generated by selecting different (arbitrary) gauge origins.

With the generalized momentum operator $\pi$ replacing $p$, the time-independent Dirac equation may be separated analogously to the procedure in Section 8.2.1 to give the equivalent of eq. (8.13).

\[
\frac{1}{2m} \left[ \left( \sigma \cdot \pi + \mathbf{V} - E \right) \right] \psi = 0
\]

(8.24)

Taking the non-relativistic limit corresponding to $K = 1$ gives $\left( \sigma \cdot \pi \right)$ for the first term. Using again the vector identity $\left( \sigma \cdot \mathbf{p} \right) = \mathbf{s} \cdot \mathbf{p} + \mathbf{s} \times \mathbf{p}$, this may be written as in eq. (8.25).

\[
\frac{1}{2m} \left[ \left( \pi \cdot \pi + i\mathbf{s} \cdot \left( \pi \times \pi \right) \right) + \mathbf{V} \right] \psi = E \psi
\]

(8.25)

In contrast to the situation without a magnetic field, the latter vector product no longer disappears. The $\pi \times \pi$ term can be expanded by inserting the definition of $\pi$ from eq. (8.21).

\[
\pi \times \pi = (p + A) \times (p + A)
\]

(8.26)

The first and last terms are zero (since $a \times a = 0$). With $p = -i\mathbf{\nabla}$ the other two terms yield eq. (8.27).

\[
\left( p \times A + A \times p \right) \psi = -i \mathbf{\nabla} \times (A \psi) - iA \times (\mathbf{\nabla} \psi)
\]

(8.27)

The two last terms cancel (since $a \times b = -b \times a$), and the curl of the vector potential is the magnetic field, eq. (8.28). The final result is given in eq. (8.28).

\[
\frac{1}{2m} \left[ \mathbf{\nabla} \times + \frac{e}{2m} \mathbf{B} \right] \psi = E \psi
\]

(8.28)

The $\mathbf{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{B}$ term is called the (spin) Zeeman interaction, and represents the interaction of an (external) magnetic field with the intrinsic magnetic moment associated with the electron. As noted in eq. (8.5), $\mathbf{\sigma}$ represents the spin operator (except for a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$), and the $\mathbf{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{B}/2m$ interaction can (in atomic units) also be written as $s \cdot \mathbf{B}$, with $s$ being the electron spin operator. In a more refined treatment, by including quantum field corrections, it turns out that the electron magnetic moment is not exactly equal to the spin. It is conventional to write the interaction as $g_s \mu_B \mathbf{B}$ where the Bohr magneton $\mu_B = (e\hbar/2m)$ has a value of $\frac{1}{2}$ in atomic units and the electronic $g$-factor $g_s$ is approximately equal to 2.0023 (the deviation from the value of 2 (exactly) is due to quantum field fluctuations).

Although electron spin is often said to arise from relativistic effects, the above shows that spin naturally arises in the non-relativistic limit of the Dirac equation. It may also be argued that electron spin is actually present in the non-relativistic case, as the kinetic energy operator $\mathbf{p}^2/2m$ is mathematically equivalent to $\left( \mathbf{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{p} \right)^2/2m$. If the kinetic energy is written as $\left( \mathbf{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{p} \right)^2/2m$ in the Schrödinger Hamiltonian, then electron spin is present in the non-relativistic case, although it would only have consequences in the presence of a magnetic field.
The Dirac equation automatically includes effects due to electron spin, while this must be introduced in a more or less \textit{ad hoc} fashion in the Schrödinger equation (the Pauli principle). Furthermore, once the spin–orbit interaction is included, the total electron spin is no longer a “good” quantum number: an orbital no longer contains an integer number of $\alpha$ and $\beta$ spin functions. The proper quantum number in relativistic theory is therefore the total angular momentum obtained by vector addition of the orbital and spin moments.

Turning now to the $p^2$ term in eq. (8.28), it can with the use of eq. (8.21) be expanded into eq. (8.29).

\[
n^2 = (p + A)^2 = p^2 + p \cdot A + A^2 + \frac{1}{2} \nabla \cdot A.
\]  

(8.29)

The $p^2$ gives the usual (non-relativistic) kinetic energy operator. Since $p = -i\nabla$, the $p \cdot A$ term gives eq. (8.30).

\[
(p \cdot A)p = -i\nabla(A \cdot p) = -iA \cdot (\nabla p) - A(p \nabla A).
\]  

(8.30)

The \textit{Coulomb gauge} is defined by $V \cdot A = 0$, and in this gauge we have $p \cdot A = A \cdot p$. The two terms involving $A$ in eq. (8.29) can be evaluated by inserting the expression for the vector potential (8.23).

\[
A \cdot p = \left(\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{B} \times (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_0)\right) \cdot p
= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{B} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_0) \times p
= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{B} \cdot L_z
\]  

(8.31)

\[
A^2 = \left(\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{B} \times (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_0)\right) \cdot \left(\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{B} \times (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_0)\right)
= \frac{1}{4} \left(\mathbf{B} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_0)^2 - (\mathbf{r} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_0))^2\right)
\]

Here the vector identities $a \times b \times c = a \cdot b \times c$ and $(a \times b) \times c = (a \cdot c) b - (a \cdot b) c$ have been used. In addition to the Zeeman term for electron spin (eq. (8.28)), the presence of a magnetic field introduces two new terms, being linear and quadratic in the field. The linear operator represents an (orbital) Zeeman type interaction of the magnetic field with the magnetic moment generated by the movement of the electron, as described by the angular momentum operator $L_z$, while the quadratic term gives rise to a component of the magnetizability in a perturbation treatment, as discussed in Section 10.7.6.

8.3 Many-Particle Systems

A fully relativistic treatment of more than one particle would have to start from a full QED treatment of the system (Chapter 1), and perform a perturbation expansion in terms of the radiation frequency. There is no universally accepted way of doing this, and a full relativistic many-body equation has not yet been developed. For many-particle systems it is assumed that each electron can be described by a Dirac operator ($\alpha \cdot \mathbf{p} + \beta mc^2$) and the many-electron operator is a sum of such terms, in analogy with the kinetic energy in non-relativistic theory. Furthermore, potential energy operators are added to form a total operator equivalent to the Hamiltonian operator in non-relativistic theory. Since this approach gives results that agree with experiments, the assumptions appear justified.

The Dirac operator incorporates relativistic effects for the kinetic energy. In order to describe atomic and molecular systems, the potential energy operator must also be modified. In non-relativistic theory, the potential energy is given by the Coulomb operator.

\[
V(r_{12}) = \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial r_{12}}.
\]  

(8.32)

According to this equation, the interaction between two charged particles depends only on the distance between them, \textit{but not on time}. This cannot be correct when relativity is considered, as it implies that the attraction/repulsion between two particles occurs \textit{instantly} over the distance $r_{12}$, violating the fundamental relativistic principle that nothing can move faster than the speed of light. The interaction between distant particles must be "later" than between particles that are close, and the potential is consequently "retarded" (delayed). The relativistic interaction requires a description, \textit{Quantum ElectroDynamics} (QED), which involves exchange of photons between charged particles. The photons travel at the speed of light and carry the information equivalent to the classical Coulomb interaction. The relativistic potential energy operator becomes complicated and cannot be written in closed form. For actual calculations, it may be expanded in a Taylor series in $1/c$ and, for chemical purposes, it is normally only necessary to include terms up to $1/c^2$. In this approximation, the potential energy operator for the electron–electron repulsion is given by eq. (8.33).

\[
V_{\text{ee}}(r_{12}) = \frac{1}{r_{12}} \left[ \alpha_1 \cdot \alpha_2 + \frac{(\alpha_1 \times r_1)(\alpha_2 \times r_2)}{r_{12}^2} \right] \]  

(8.33)

Note that the subscript on the $\alpha$ matrices refers to the particle, and here includes all of the $\alpha$, $\beta$, and $\gamma$ components in eq. (8.4). The first correction term in the square bracket is called the \textit{Gauss} interaction, and the whole term in the square bracket is the \textit{Breit} interaction. The Dirac matrices appear since they represent the velocity operator. The \textit{Breit} interaction is a magnetic interaction (spin) while the other term represents a retardation effect. Equation (8.33) is more often written in the form shown in eq. (8.34).

\[
V_{\text{ee}}(r_{12}) = \frac{1}{r_{12}} \left[ \alpha_1 \cdot \alpha_2 + \frac{(\alpha_1 \times r_1)(\alpha_2 \times r_2)}{r_{12}^2} \right] \]  

(8.34)

Relativistic corrections to the nuclear–electron attraction ($V_{\text{nn}}$) are of order $1/c^2$ (owing to the much smaller velocity of the nuclei) and are normally neglected. An expansion in powers of $1/c$ (or, equivalently, in powers of the fine-structure constant $\alpha = 1/e^2$ in atomic units) is a standard approach for deriving relativistic correction terms. Taking into account electron ($s$) and nuclear spins ($I$), and indicating explicitly an external electric potential by means of the field ($\mathbf{F} = -\nabla \phi$ or $-\nabla \phi - \mathbf{A}\, \mathbf{d}t$ if time dependent), an expansion up to order $1/c^2$ of the Dirac Hamiltonian including the Coulomb-Breit potential gives the following set of operators,\textsuperscript{4} where the QED correction to the electron spin has been introduced by means of the $g\mu_E$ factor. Note that many of these operators arise from the minimal coupling of the magnetic field via the generalized momentum operator, as discussed in more detail in Section 10.10.7.
One electron operators:

\[ H_{\text{ee}}^{s\text{cano}} = g_{\mu B} \mu \sum_i \frac{1}{2m_e c^2} \left[ \mathbf{s} \cdot \mathbf{B} - \frac{1}{2m_e c^2} \left( \mathbf{s} \cdot \mathbf{B} \right) \right] \]

\[ H_{\text{ee}}^{\pi} = \frac{1}{8\pi^2 c^4} \sum_{ij} \pi_i \pi_j \]

\[ H_{\text{ee}}^{\pi} = g_{\mu B} \mu \sum_i \left[ \mathbf{s} \cdot \mathbf{F} - \mathbf{s} \cdot \mathbf{F} \right] \]

\[ H_{\text{ee}}^{\text{Darwin}} = \frac{1}{8\pi^2 c^4} \sum_{ij} \frac{\mathbf{F}}{r_{ij}} \]

Here \( \mathbf{F} \) and \( \mathbf{B} \) indicate the (electric and magnetic) fields at the position of particle \( i \). \( H_{\text{ee}}^{s\text{cano}} \) has the same form as eq. (8.29) and a relativistic correction, and \( H_{\text{ee}}^{\pi} \) is the mass–velocity correction, as is also present in eq. (8.18). \( H_{\text{ee}}^{\text{Darwin}} \) and \( H_{\text{ee}}^{\text{Darwin}} \) are spin–orbit and Darwin type correction with respect to an external electric field. It should be noted that the generalized momentum operator contains magnetic fields via the vector potential \( \mathbf{\pi} = \mathbf{p} + \mathbf{A} \), and eq. (8.35) therefore implicitly includes higher order effects.

Two electron operators:

\[ H_{\text{ee}}^{\text{SOO}} = g_{\mu B} \mu \sum_{ij} \frac{1}{2m_e c^2} \left[ (\mathbf{r}_i \times \mathbf{p}_j) \right] \]

\[ H_{\text{ee}}^{\pi} = \frac{g_{\mu B} \mu}{mc} \sum_{ij} \left[ \mathbf{s}_i \cdot \mathbf{r}_j - \frac{\mathbf{s}_i \cdot \mathbf{r}_j}{r_{ij}} \left( \mathbf{s}_i \cdot \mathbf{s}_j \right) \frac{8\pi}{3} A_i \delta(r_{ij}) \right] \]

(8.36)

The sums run over all values of \( i \) and \( j \), excluding the \( i = j \) term, and there is consequently a factor of \( \frac{1}{i} \) included to avoid overcounting. \( H_{\text{ee}}^{\text{SOO}} \) is a spin–orbit operator, describing the interaction of the electron spin with the magnetic field generated by the electron’s own motion, as given by the angular momentum operator \( \mathbf{r}_i \times \mathbf{p}_j \). \( H_{\text{ee}}^{\pi} \) is a spin–other-orbit operator, describing the interaction of an electron spin with the magnetic field generated by the movement of the other electrons, as given by the angular momentum operator \( \mathbf{r}_i \times \mathbf{p}_j \). \( H_{\text{ee}}^{\text{Darwin}} \) and \( H_{\text{ee}}^{\text{Darwin}} \) are spin–orbit and orbit–orbit terms, accounting for additional magnetic interactions, where the orbit–orbit term comes from the Breit correction to \( \mathbf{V}_{\text{ee}} \) (eq. (8.34)). The (two-electron) Darwin interaction \( H_{\text{ee}}^{\text{Darwin}} \) contains a \( \delta \) function, which arise from the divergence of the field (\( \nabla \mathbf{F} \)) from the potential (\( \mathbf{V} \)). The spin–potential interaction \( H_{\text{ee}}^{\text{Darwin}} \) also has a \( \delta \) function, which comes from taking the curl of the vector potential associated with the magnetic dipole corresponding to the electron spin. A mathematical reformulation leads to a term involving the divergence of the \( \mathbf{V} \).

\[ H_{\text{ee}}^{\text{Darwin}} = \frac{\pi}{2m^2 c^6} \sum_{ijkl} \frac{\mathbf{r}_i \delta(r_{ij})}{r_{ij}} \]

8.4 Four-Component Calculations

Although relativistic effects can be included by perturbative operators describing corrections to the non-relativistic wave function, this rapidly becomes cumbersome if higher order corrections are required, and it is therefore most satisfactory to include relativistic effects by solving the Dirac equation directly. The simplest approximate wave function is a single determinant constructed from four-component one-electron functions, called spindors, having large and small components multiplied by the two spin functions. The spinors are the relativistic equivalents of the spin-orbitals in non-relativistic theory. With such a wave function, the relativistic equation...
corresponding to the Hartree–Fock equation is the Dirac–Fock equation, which in its time-independent form (setting $\pi = p$ and $m = 1$ in eq. (8.8)) can be written as in eq. (8.38).

$$[\alpha \cdot p + \beta c^2 + V] \Psi = E \Psi$$  \hspace{1cm} (8.38)

The requirement that the wave function should be stationary with respect to a variation in the orbitals, results in an equation that is formally the same as in non-relativistic theory, $F_C = S_C \Psi$ (eq. (3.51)). However, the presence of solutions for the positronic states means that the desired solution is no longer the global minimum (Figure 8.1), and care must be taken that the procedure does not lead to variational collapse. The choice of basis set is an essential component in preventing this. Since practical calculations necessarily use basis sets that are far from complete, the large and small component basis sets must be properly balanced. The large component corresponds to the normal non-relativistic wave function, and has similar basis set requirements. The small component basis set is chosen to obey the kinetic balance condition, which follows from (8.15).

$$\chi_{\text{small}} = \frac{\Phi \cdot p}{2 \epsilon} \chi_{\text{large}}$$  \hspace{1cm} (8.39)

The use of kinetic balance ensures that the relativistic solution smoothly reduces to the non-relativistic wave function as $c$ is increased. The presence of the momentum operator in eq. (8.39) means that the small component basis set must contain functions that are derivatives of the large component basis set, making the former roughly twice the size of the latter. This means that there are ~8 times as many large–small two-electron integrals and ~16 times as many small–small integrals, than there are large–large type integrals. A relativistic calculation thus requires roughly 25 times as many two-electron integrals compared with a non-relativistic calculation.

When the Dirac operator is invoked, the point charge model of the nucleus also becomes problematic. For a non-relativistic hydrogen atom, the orbitals have a cusp (discontinuous derivative) at the nucleus. However, the relativistic solutions have a singularity. A singularity is much harder to represent in an approximate treatment (such as an expansion in a Gaussian basis) than a cusp. Consequently, a more realistic finite-size nucleus is often used in relativistic methods. A finite nucleus model removes the singularity of the orbitals, which now assume a Gaussian type behaviour within the nucleus. Neither experiments nor theory, however, provide a good model for how the positive charge is distributed within the nucleus. The wave function and energy will of course depend on the exact form used for describing the nuclear charge distribution. A popular choice is either a uniformly charged sphere, where the radius is proportional to the nuclear mass to the $1/3$ power, or a Gaussian charge distribution (which facilitates the calculation of the additional integrals) with the exponent depending on the nuclear mass. Note that this implies that the energy (and derived properties) depends on the specific isotope, not just the atomic charge, i.e. the results for say $^{37}\text{Cl}$ will be (slightly) different from $^{35}\text{Cl}$. The difference between a finite and a point charge model is large in terms of total energy (~1 au), however, the exact shape for the finite nucleus is not important. For valence properties, any “reasonable” model gives essentially the same results.

### 8.5 Relativistic Effects

The differences due to relativity can be described as:

1. Differences in the dynamics due to the velocity-dependent mass of the electron. This alters the size of the orbitals $s$- and $p$-orbitals contract while $d$- and $f$-orbitals expand.
2. New (magnetic) interactions in the Hamiltonian operator due to electron spin. The spin–orbit coupling, for example, destroys the picture of an orbital having a definite spin.
3. Introduction of “negative” energy (positron) states. The coupling between the electronic and positronic states introduces a “small” component in the electronic wave function. This leads to a change in the shape of the orbitals: relativistic orbitals, for example, do not have nodes.
4. Modification of the potential operator due to the finite speed of light. In the lowest order approximation, this corresponds to addition of the Breit operator to the Coulomb interaction.

Results from fully relativistic calculations are scarce, and there is no clear consensus on which effects are the most important. The Breit (Gaunt) term is believed to be small and many relativistic calculations neglect this term, or include it as a perturbational term evaluated from the converged wave function. For geometries, the relativistic contraction of the $s$-orbitals normally means that bond lengths become shorter.

Working with a full four-component wave function and the Dirac–Fock operator is significantly more complicated than solving the Roothaan–Hall equations. The spin dependence can no longer be separated out, and the basis set for the small component of the wave function must contain derivatives of the corresponding large component basis. This means that the basis set becomes three to four times as large as in the non-relativistic case for a comparable accuracy. Furthermore, the presence of basis term (spin) in the Hamiltonian operator means that the wave function contains both real and imaginary parts, yielding a factor of two in complexity. In practice, a single-determinant Dirac–Fock–Coulomb calculation is about two orders of magnitude more expensive than the corresponding non-relativistic Hartree–Fock case, although implementation of integral screening techniques is likely to reduce this factor. Since heavy atom systems by definition contain many electrons, even small systems (in terms of the number of atoms) are demanding. A relativistic calculation for a single radon atom with a DZP quality basis, for example, is computationally equivalent to a non-relativistic calculation of a C$_{13}$H$_{28}$ alkane, for a comparable quality in term of basis set limitations. To further complicate matters, there are many more systems that cannot be adequately described by a single-determinant wave function in a relativistic treatment owing to the spin–orbit coupling, and therefore require MCSCF type wave functions.

Since working with the full four-component wave function is so demanding, various approximate methods have been developed where the small component of the wave function is “eliminated” to a certain order in $1/c$ or approximated (such as the Foldy–Wouthuysen or Douglas–Kroll transformations) thereby reducing the four-component wave function to only two components. A description of such methods is beyond the scope of this book.
Table 8.1 illustrates the magnitude of relativistic effects for dihydrides of the sixth main group in the periodic table, where the relativistic calculations are of the Dirac–Fock–Coulomb type (i.e. a single-determinant wave function and neglecting the Breit interaction). The relativistic correction to the total energy is significant: even for a first row species such as H$_2$O, the difference is 0.055 au (145 kJ/mol). It increases rapidly down the periodic table, and reaches ~7% of the total energy for H$_2$Po, but the equilibrium distances and angles change only marginally. Similarly, the atomization energies (for breaking both X—H bonds) change only slightly. The difference in the atomization energy is almost solely due to the spin–orbit interaction in the triplet X atom (e.g. H$_2$O $\rightarrow$ $^3$O$^+ + 2^2$H) which is not present in the singlet H$_2$X molecule.

Similar results have been obtained for the fourth group tetrahydrides, CH$_4$, SiH$_4$, SbH$_4$, GeH$_4$, and PbH$_4$, where the Gaunt term has been shown to give corrections typically an order of magnitude less than the other relativistic changes. The general conclusion is that relativistic effects for geometries and energetics can normally be neglected for molecules containing only first and second row elements. This is also true for third row elements, unless a high accuracy is required. Although the geometry and atomization energy changes for H$_2$S and H$_2$Se in Table 8.1 may be considered significant, it should be noted that the errors due to incomplete basis sets and neglect of electron correlation are much larger than the relativistic effects. The experimental geometries for H$_2$S and H$_2$Se, for example, are 1.3356 Å and 92.12°, respectively. While the relativistic contraction of the H—Se bond is 0.0026 Å, the basis set and electron correlation error is 0.0070 Å. Relativistic effects typically
become comparable to those from electron correlation at atomic numbers ~40–50. For molecules involving atoms beyond the fourth row in the periodic table, however, relativistic effects cannot be neglected for quantitative work. It should be noted that an approximate inclusion of the scalar relativistic effects, most notably the change in orbital size, can be modeled by replacing the inner electrons with a relativistic pseudopotential, as discussed in Section 5.9.

Relativistic methods can be extended to include electron correlation by methods analogous to the non-relativistic cases, e.g. CI, MCSCF, MP and CC. Such methods are currently at the development stage. Once relativistic effects are considered, one may thus expand the two-dimensional Figure 4.2 with a third axis describing how accurate the relativistic effects are treated, for example measured in terms of one-, two- or four-component wave functions.

References
Integrating and summing over all occupied MOs gives the total number of electrons, \( N_{\text{elec}} \):

\[
\sum_i \int \psi_i^2 \, d\tau = \sum_i \left( \sum_{\alpha} c_{i\alpha} \right)^2 \int \phi_i^2 \, d\tau = \sum_{\alpha} N_{\text{orb} \alpha} = N_{\text{elec}} \tag{9.3}
\]

We may generalize this by introducing an occupation number (number of electrons), \( n \), for each MO. For a single-determinant wave function, this will be either 0, 1 or 2, while it may be a fractional number for a correlated wave function (Section 9.5).

\[
\sum_i n_i \int \psi_i^2 \, d\tau = \sum_{\alpha} n_{\alpha} \sum_{\beta} c_{i\alpha} c_{i\beta} \int \phi_i^2 \, d\tau = \sum_{\alpha} n_{\alpha} \phi_{\alpha}^{\text{elec}} = N_{\text{elec}} \tag{9.4}
\]

The sum of the product of MO coefficients and the occupation numbers is the density matrix defined in eq. (3.52), and the sum over the product of the density and overlap matrices elements is the number of electrons.

The Mulliken Population Analysis uses the \( D \) matrix for distributing the electrons into atomic contributions (\( D \) is the overlap matrix, Section 16.1, i.e. the products of elements, not elements of the product matrix). A diagonal element \( D_{\alpha\alpha} \) is the number of electrons in the \( \alpha \) AO, and an off-diagonal element \( D_{\alpha\beta} \) is (half) the number of electrons shared by AO \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) (there is an equivalent \( D_{\beta\alpha} \) element). The contributions from all AOs located on a given atom \( A \) may be summed up to give the number of electrons associated with atom \( A \). This requires a decision on how a contribution involving basis functions on different atoms should be divided. The simplest, and the one used in the Mulliken scheme, is to partition the contribution equally between the two atoms. The Mulliken electron population is thereby defined as in eq. (9.5).

\[
\rho_A = \sum_{\alpha} n_{\alpha} \sum_{\beta} D_{\alpha\beta} S_{\alpha\beta} \tag{9.5}
\]

The gross charge on atom \( A \) is the sum of the nuclear and electronic contributions.

\[
Q_A = Z_A - \rho_A \tag{9.6}
\]

The Mulliken method corresponds to a partitioning of the \( D \) matrix product, another commonly used method is the Löwdin partitioning, which uses the \( S^{1/2} D S^{1/2} \) matrix for analysis. These are mathematically related as shown in eq. (9.7).

\[
\sum S^{1/2} (D S) S^{1/2} = S^{1/2} N_{\text{elec}} S^{1/2} \tag{9.7}
\]

The Löwdin method is equivalent to a population analysis of the density matrix in the orthogonalized basis set (Section 13.2) formed by transforming the original set of functions by \( S^{1/2} \).

\[
\gamma = S^{1/2} \gamma \tag{9.8}
\]

The Mulliken and Löwdin methods are just particular examples of a whole family of population analyses using \( S^{1/2} D S^{1/2} \) matrices. The Mulliken and Löwdin methods give different atomic charges but mathematically there is nothing to indicate which of these partitionings gives the “best” result. It should be noted, however, that the Löwdin method is not rotationally invariant if the basis set contains Cartesian polarizations functions rather than spherical functions. The lack of rotational invariance means that symmetry equivalent atoms may end up having different charges.

There are some common problems with all population analyses based on partitioning the wave function in terms of basis functions:

1. The diagonal elements may be larger than two. This implies more than two electrons in the orbital, violating the Pauli principle.
2. The off-diagonal elements may become negative. This implies a negative number of electrons between two basis functions, which clearly is physically impossible.
3. There is no objective reason for dividing the off-diagonal contributions equally between the two atoms. It may be argued that the most “electronagreate” (which then needs to be defined) atom (orbital) should receive most of the shared electrons.
4. Basis functions centred on atom \( A \) may have a small exponent, such that they effectively describe the wave function far from atom \( A \). Nevertheless, the electron density is counted as only belonging to \( A \).
5. The dipole, quadrupole, etc., moments are in general not conserved, i.e. a set of population atomic charges does not reproduce the original multipole moments.

The Mulliken scheme suffers from all of the above, while the Löwdin method solves problems (1), (2) and (3). In the orthogonalized basis, all off-diagonal elements are 0, and the diagonal elements are restricted to values between 0 and 2.

Problem (4) is especially troublesome, as a few examples for the water molecule will demonstrate. A reasonable description of the wave function can be obtained by an HF single determinant with a DZP basis set. An equally good wave function in terms of energy may be constructed by having a very large number of basis functions centred on oxygen, and none on the hydrogens. The latter will, according to the above population analysis, receive most of the shared electrons. Alternatively, another equally good wave function may be constructed by having a large number of basis functions only on the hydrogens. This will give charges of +4 for each of the hydrogens and +8 for the oxygen. Or the basis functions can be taken to be non-nuclear-centred, in which case the electrons are not associated with any nuclei at all, i.e. atomic charges of +1 and +8.

The fundamental problem is that basis functions often describe electron density near another nucleus other than the one they are centred on. An s-type Gaussian function on oxygen with an exponent of 0.15, for example, has a maximum in the radial distribution \( r^2 \) (which peaks at 0.97 Å, i.e. at the distance where the hydrogen nuclei are located). Atomic charges calculated from a Mulliken or Löwdin analysis will therefore not converge to a constant value as the size of the basis set is increased. Three configurations of more and more diffuse basis functions, often leading to unpredictable changes in the atomic charges. This is a case where a “better” theoretical procedure is actually counterproductive. Basis function derived population analyses are therefore most useful for comparing trends in electron distributions, when small- or medium-sized basis sets (which only contain relatively tight functions) are used.
The density matrix can also be used for generating information about bond strengths, via a quantitative measure known as Bond Order (BO). It was originally defined from bond distances as shown in eq. (9.9).

$$BO = \frac{1}{2} \sum_i (e_i^2 - 1)$$

If the bond orders for ethane, ethylene and acetylene are defined to be 1, 2 and 3, respectively, one finds a constant value of approximately 0.3 Å. For bond orders less than 1 (i.e. breaking and forming single bonds), it appears reasonable to take a value of 0.6 Å.

Population analysis with semi-empirical methods requires a special comment. These methods normally employ the ZDO approximation, i.e. the overlap matrix $S$ is a unit matrix. The population analysis can therefore be performed directly on the density matrix. In some cases, however, a Mulliken population analysis is performed with $D \cdot S$, which requires an explicit calculation of the $S$ matrix.

9.2 Population Analysis Based on the Electrostatic Potential

One area where the concept of atomic charges is deeply rooted is in force field methods (Chapter 2). A significant part of the non-bonded interactions between polar molecules is described in terms of electrostatic interactions between fragments having an atomic charge. The fragments are taken as the major contributors to the electrostatic potential, which is sampled by placing a suitable grid of points around each atom. The potential is derived by fitting to an ESP which naturally overestimates the charge polarization (for example, HF/6-31G(d)).

The electrostatic potential depends directly on the wave function and therefore contains all the information about atomic charges. It is, however, more sensitive to the basis set than the BOs. The population analysis can therefore be performed directly on the density matrix. In some cases, however, a Mulliken population analysis is performed with $D \cdot S$, which requires an explicit calculation of the $S$ matrix.

The electrostatic potential depends directly on the wave function and therefore contains all the information about atomic charges. It is, however, more sensitive to the basis set than the BOs. The population analysis can therefore be performed directly on the density matrix. In some cases, however, a Mulliken population analysis is performed with $D \cdot S$, which requires an explicit calculation of the $S$ matrix.

One way of eliminating the problem with conformationally dependent charges is to add additional constraints, for example forcing the three hydrogens in a methyl group to have identical charges. This leads to a more complicated form of the wave function and consequently the charges are not unique.

One way of eliminating the problem with conformationally dependent charges is to add additional constraints, for example forcing the three hydrogens in a methyl group to have identical charges. This leads to a more complicated form of the wave function and consequently the charges are not unique.

The difference between the true electrostatic potential and that generated by a set of atomic charges on any point of the molecule is not significantly reduced even when the molecular wave function is used.

The electrostatic potential is calculated from an electronic wave function. The electrostatic potential is calculated from an electronic wave function. The electrostatic potential is calculated from an electronic wave function. The electrostatic potential is calculated from an electronic wave function.
for a medium-sized molecule, it may only be statistically valid to assign charges to perhaps half the nuclei. Having a full set of atomic charges thus forms a redundant set: many different sets of charges may be chosen, all of which are capable of reproducing the true electrostatic potential to almost the same accuracy. Although a very large number of sampling points (several thousand) may be chosen to be fitted by relatively few (perhaps 20–30) parameters, the fact that the sampling points are highly correlated makes the problem underdetermined. In practical applications, additional penalty terms are therefore often added, to ensure that only those atoms that contribute significantly in a statistical sense acquire non-zero charges.\[16\]

Another problem with atomic charges determined by fitting is related to the absolute accuracy. Although inclusion of charges on all atoms does not significantly improve the results over that determined from a reduced set of parameters, the absolute deviation between the true and fitted electrostatic potentials can be quite large. Interaction energies as calculated by an atom-centred charge model in a force field may be off by several kJ/mol per atom in certain regions of space just outside the molecular surface, an error of one or two orders of magnitude larger than the van der Waals interaction. In order to improve the description of the electrostatic interaction, additional non-nuclear-centred charges may be added,\[17\] or dipole, quadrupole, etc., moments may be added at nuclear or bond positions.\[14\] These descriptions are essentially equivalent since a dipole may be generated as two oppositely charged monopoles, a quadrupole as four monopoles, etc.

Figure 9.1 Generation of dipole and quadrupole moments by charges

The Distributed Multipole Analysis (DMA) developed by A. Stone uses the fact that the electrostatic potential arising from the charge overlap between two basis functions can be written in terms of a multipole expansion around a point between the two nuclei.\[17\] These moments can be calculated directly from the density matrix and the basis functions, and are not a result of a fitting procedure. The multipole expansion is furthermore finite, the highest non-vanishing term is given as the sum of the angular momenta for the two basis functions, e.g. the product of two \(p\)-functions gives at most a quadrupole moment. For Gaussian orbitals the expansion point is given in eq. (9.12), where \(R_A\) and \(R_B\) are the positions of the two nuclei, and \(a\) and \(b\) are the exponents of the basis functions (this follows since the product of two Gaussians is a single Gaussian located between the two original, eq. (3.60)).

\[
R_c = \frac{\alpha R_A + \beta R_B}{\alpha + \beta}
\]

If such distributed multipoles are assigned for each pair of basis functions, the electrostatic potential as seen from outside the charge distribution is reproduced exactly. This, however, would mean that \(M_{\alpha\beta}\) different sites are required. In practice, only the nuclei and possibly the midpoints of all bonds are selected as multipole points, and all the pair expansion points are moved to the nearest multipole point. By moving the origin, the termination after a finite number of terms is destroyed, and an infinite sum over all moments must be used for an exact representation. Since most of the pair expansion points are rather close to either a nucleus or the centre of a bond, the higher order moments are usually quite small. Furthermore, since the majority of the electron density can be represented with just \(s\) and \(p\)-functions for elements belonging to the first or second row of the periodic table, it follows that a representation in terms of charges, dipoles and quadrupoles located on all nuclei and bond centres gives a quite accurate representation of the electrostatic potential. If only nuclear-centred multipoles are used, an expansion up to quadrupoles will typically generate an electrostatic potential of the same quality as a model based on fitted atomic charges. A disadvantage of the DMA approach is that the calculated multipole moments are quite sensitive to the employed basis set, in analogy with other analysis based directly on the basis functions used for representing the wave function. Alternatively, multipoles may be fitted to either the electrostatic potential\[15\] or the DMA multipoles.\[19\] Such fitted multipole methods typically reduce the required moments by one or two, i.e. fitted charges and dipoles can reproduce DMA results including up to quadrupoles or octopoles.

9.3 Population Analysis Based on the Electron Density

The examples in Section 9.1 illustrate that it would be desirable to base a population analysis on properties of the wave function or electron density itself, and not on the basis set chosen for representing the wave function. The electron density is the square of the wave function integrated over \(N_{\text{elec}} - 1\) coordinates (it does not matter which coordinates since the electrons are indistinguishable).

\[
\rho(r) = \int |\Psi(x, r, a, \ldots r_{N_{\text{elec}}})|^2 \, dx_1 \, dx_2 \ldots dx_{N_{\text{elec}}}
\]

(9.13)

Some textbooks state that it is impossible to define a unique atomic charge since there is no quantum mechanical operator associated with charge. This is not true: the electronic charge operator is simply the negative of the number operator (the charge from an electron is \(-1\)). The problem is in the definition of an “atom” within a molecule. If the total molecular volume could somehow be divided into subsections, each belonging to one specific nucleus, then the electron density could be integrated to give the number of electrons present in each of these atomic basins \(\Omega_i\), and the (net) atomic charge \(Q_a\) is then obtained by adding the nuclear charge \(Z\).

\[
Q_a = Z_a - \int_{\Omega_i} \rho(r) \, dx
\]

(9.14)

The division into atomic basins requires a choice to be made as to whether a certain point in space belongs to one nucleus or another, and several different schemes have been proposed.

9.3.1 Atoms In Molecules

Perhaps the most rigorous way of dividing a molecular volume into atomic subspaces is the Atoms In Molecules (AIM) method of R. Bader.\[20\] The electron density is a
function of three spatial coordinates, and it may be analyzed in terms of its topology (maxima, minima and saddle points). In the large majority of cases it is found that the only maxima in the electron density occur at the nuclei (or very close to them), which is reasonable since they are the only sources of positive charge. The nuclei thus act as attractors of the electron density. At each point in space the gradient of the electron density points in the direction of the strongest (local) attractor. This forms a rigorous way of dividing the physical space into atomic subspaces: starting from a given point in space a series of infinitesimal steps may be taken in the gradient direction until an attractor is encountered. The collection of all such points forms the atomic basin associated with the attractor (nucleus). If the negative of the electron density is considered, the attractors are local minima, and a basin is then defined as points which end up at the local minimum by a steepest descent minimization (Section 12.2.1). In the other direction (away from other nuclei) the gradient goes asymptotically to zero, and the atomic basin stretches into infinity in this direction. The border between two three-dimensional atomic basins is a two-dimensional surface, as illustrated in Figure 9.2.

Figure 9.2 Dividing surface between two atomic basins
Reprinted with permission from The American Chemical Society.21

The carbon and hydrogen atomic basins in cyclopropane are shown in Figure 9.3. Once the molecular volume has been divided up, the electron density may be integrated within each of the atomic basins to give atomic charges and dipole, quadrupole, etc., moments. As the dividing surface is rigorously defined in terms of the electron density, these quantities will converge to specific values as the quality of the wave function is increased. Furthermore, as only the electron density is involved, the results are fairly insensitive to the theoretical level used for generating the wave function. If the net charges are taken as nuclear centred (analogous to partial charges for force field methods), they do not reproduce the molecular dipole, quadrupole, etc., moments, nor do they yield a good representation of the molecular electrostatic potential, and they are therefore not suitable for transferring to a force field environment for modelling purposes. If, however, the dipole moments of the atomic basins are also considered, the total molecular dipole moment is reproduced, and similarly for higher order moments. The dipole moment of CO, for example, is close to zero (0.122 debye), despite calculated AIM charges of ±1.1. The large dipole moment generated by the charge transfer is almost exactly cancelled by compensating atomic dipoles. The AIM method is often criticized for generating too large atomic charges for polar bonds, but it should be recognized that this is largely due to the neglect of higher order moments.

A more fundamental problem in the AIM approach is the presence of non-nuclear attractors in certain metallic systems, such as lithium and sodium clusters.23 While these are of interest by themselves, they spoil the picture of electrons associated with nuclei, forming atoms within molecules. It should be noted that non-nuclear attractors can also be found for other systems such as ethyne when a low level of theory is used for calculating the electron density.
For a point on a dividing surface between two atomic basins, the gradient of the electron density must necessarily be tangential to the surface. Following the gradient path for such a point leads to a stationary point, i.e., functional groups react similarly in different molecules. The second derivative of the electron density, the Hessian, is a function of the three (Cartesian) coordinates, i.e., it is a $3 \times 3$ matrix. At stationary points, it may be diagonalized and the number of negative eigenvalues determined. The basin attractor is an overall maximum in the perpendicular directions, i.e., there is one positive and two negative eigenvalues in the Hessian. These are known as bond critical points. If the negative of the electron density is considered instead, the attractors are minima (all positive eigenvalues in the second derivative matrix) and correspond to local minima in the electron density.

The value of the electron density at the bond critical point correlates with the strength of the bond, the bond order. As mentioned above, there are certain systems with weak electron densities, which are strong, i.e., annihilation points. This has also been proposed for the van der Waals gap.

There are two other types of critical points, having either one or no negative eigenvalues in the density Hessian. These correspond to local minima in two or three directions.

The second derivative of the electron density is the Laplacian $\nabla^2 \rho$ and provides information on where the electron density is depleted or increased. The idea is to find the points on the $\text{ECC}$ density that are either a ring critical point or an annihilation point.
The normal approach is to use spherically averaged ground state densities for neutral atoms but, in some cases, other valence configurations may be considered. Furthermore, the level of theory (method and basis set) for calculating the atomic density is a potential variable. Stewart atoms are defined as the spherical densities centred at the nuclei that in a least squares sense fit the molecular density as well as possible, and the resulting densities can be integrated to yield atomic charges and higher order electric moments.

9.3.3 Generalized atomic polar tensor charges

The derivative of the dipole moment with respect to the nuclear coordinates determines intensities of IR absorptions (Section 10.1.5). A central quantity in this respect is the Atomic Polar Tensor (APT), which for a given atom is defined in eq. (9.17).

\[
\mathbf{V}^{\text{APT}} = \begin{pmatrix}
\frac{\partial \mu_x}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial \mu_x}{\partial y} & \frac{\partial \mu_x}{\partial z} \\
\frac{\partial \mu_y}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial \mu_y}{\partial y} & \frac{\partial \mu_y}{\partial z} \\
\frac{\partial \mu_z}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial \mu_z}{\partial y} & \frac{\partial \mu_z}{\partial z}
\end{pmatrix}
\]  

(9.17)

Such a matrix is not independent of the coordinate system, but the trace is. J. Cioslowski has proposed a definition of atomic charges as one-third of the trace over the APT, denoted Generalized Atomic Polar Tensor (GAPT) charges. The charge on atom A is defined in eq. (9.18).

\[
\mathbf{Q}^{\text{GAPT}} = \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{\partial \mu_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \mu_y}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial \mu_z}{\partial z} \right)
\]  

(9.18)

Since the dipole moment itself is the first derivative of the energy with respect to an external electric field (Section 10.1.1), a calculation of GAPT charges requires the second derivative of the energy. This is a computationally expensive method for generating atomic charges, but if vibrational frequencies are calculated anyway, GAPT charges may be determined with very little additional effort. Dipole derivatives determine intensities of IR absorptions and GAPT charges are therefore directly related to experimentally observable quantities. The GAPT charges are computationally expensive to generate, and are sensitive to the amount of electron correlation in the wave function, which has limited the general use of GAPT charges.

9.4 Localized Orbitals

A Hartree–Fock wave function can be written as a single Slater determinant, composed of a set of orthonormal MOs (eqs (9.19) and (3.20)).
This corresponds to determining a set of LMOs that minimizes the spatial extent, i.e. they are as compact as possible. For extended (periodic) systems described by plane wave basis functions, the equivalent of the Boys LMOs is called Wannier orbitals. Feng et al. have shown that the Boys LMOs can be made even more compact by 10–25% by allowing the localized orbitals to be non-orthogonal, but this requires a general optimization procedure, rather than a simple unitary transformation.

The Edmiston–Ruedenberg localization scheme uses the inverse of the distance between two electrons as the operator, and maximizes the expectation value. The von Niessen localization scheme uses the $\delta$ function of the distance between two electrons as the operator, and maximizes the expectation value. The Pipek–Mezey localization scheme corresponds to maximizing the sum of the Mulliken atomic charges. The contribution to atom A is given in eq. (9.25).

$$\rho_A = \sum_{i=1}^{N_{basis}} \sum_{a=1}^{N_{orb}} \sum_{b=1}^{N_{orb}} c_{ai} c_{aj} S_{ab}$$

The function to be maximized is given in eq. (9.26).

$$\Omega_{PM} = \sum_{i} \| \rho_A i \|^2$$

There is little experience with the von Niessen method but, for most molecules, the other three schemes tend to give very similar LMOs. The main exception is systems containing both $\sigma$- and $\pi$-bonds, such as ethylene. The Pipek–Mezey procedure will preserve the $\sigma/\pi$-separation, while the Edmiston–Ruedenberg and Boys schemes produce bent “banana” bonds. Similarly, for planar molecules that contain lone pairs (such as water or formaldehyde), the Pipek–Mezey method will produce one in-plane $\sigma$-type lone pair and one out-of-plane $\pi$-type lone pair, while the Edmiston–Ruedenberg and Boys schemes produce two equivalent “rabbit ear” lone pairs. The canonical MOs and the Boys and Pipek–Mezey LMOs for ethylene are shown in Figure 9.4 for the valence orbitals.

### 9.4.1 Computational considerations

It may be shown that minimization of $\Omega_{Boys}$ is equivalent to maximizing the distance between centroids of the orbitals, defined by the following functional.

$$\Omega_{Boys} = \sum_{i<j} \left( \langle \phi_i | \phi_j \rangle - \langle \phi_i | \phi_i \rangle \right)^2$$

This corresponds to determining a set of LMOs that minimizes the spatial extent, i.e. they are as compact as possible. For extended (periodic) systems described by plane wave basis functions, the equivalent of the Boys LMOs is called Wannier orbitals. Feng et al. have shown that the Boys LMOs can be made even more compact by 10–25% by allowing the localized orbitals to be non-orthogonal, but this requires a general optimization procedure, rather than a simple unitary transformation.

The Edmiston–Ruedenberg localization scheme uses the inverse of the distance between two electrons as the operator, and maximizes the expectation value.

$$\Omega_{ER} = \sum_{i} \left( \langle \phi_i | \phi_i \rangle - \langle \phi_i | \phi_i \rangle \right)^2$$

This corresponds to determining a set of LMOs that maximizes the self-repulsion energy.

The von Niessen localization scheme uses the $\delta$ function of the distance between two electrons as the operator, and maximizes the expectation value.

$$\Omega_{VN} = \sum_i \left( \langle \phi_i | \phi_i \rangle - \langle \phi_i | \phi_i \rangle \right)^2$$

This corresponds to determining a set of LMOs that maximizes the “self-charge”.

The Pipek–Mezey localization scheme corresponds to maximizing the sum of the Mulliken atomic charges. The contribution to atom A is given in eq. (9.25).

$$\rho_A = \sum_{i=1}^{N_{basis}} \sum_{a=1}^{N_{orb}} \sum_{b=1}^{N_{orb}} c_{ai} c_{aj} S_{ab}$$

The function to be maximized is given in eq. (9.26).

$$\Omega_{PM} = \sum_{i} \| \rho_A i \|^2$$

There is little experience with the von Niessen method but, for most molecules, the other three schemes tend to give very similar LMOs. The main exception is systems containing both $\sigma$- and $\pi$-bonds, such as ethylene. The Pipek–Mezey procedure will preserve the $\sigma/\pi$-separation, while the Edmiston–Ruedenberg and Boys schemes produce bent “banana” bonds. Similarly, for planar molecules that contain lone pairs (such as water or formaldehyde), the Pipek–Mezey method will produce one in-plane $\sigma$-type lone pair and one out-of-plane $\pi$-type lone pair, while the Edmiston–Ruedenberg and Boys schemes produce two equivalent “rabbit ear” lone pairs. The canonical MOs and the Boys and Pipek–Mezey LMOs for ethylene are shown in Figure 9.4 for the valence orbitals.

### 9.4.1 Computational considerations

It may be shown that minimization of $\Omega_{Boys}$ is equivalent to maximizing the distance between centroids of the orbitals, defined by the following functional.
9.6 Natural Atomic Orbital and Natural Bond Orbital Analysis

The concept of natural orbitals may be used for distributing electrons into atomic and molecular orbitals, and thereby deriving atomic charges and molecular bonds. The idea in the original definition of natural orbitals was in terms of the density matrix from a full CI wave function, i.e. the best possible for a given basis set. The density matrix can be written in terms of blocks of basis functions belonging to different atoms and orbitals, and it may be diagonalized to obtain a set of natural orbitals.

The electron density calculated from a wave function is given as the square of the function, $|\Psi|^2$. The density matrix can be written in terms of blocks of basis functions belonging to different atoms and orbitals, and it may be diagonalized to obtain a set of natural orbitals.

The reduced density matrix of order $k, \gamma$, is defined by eq. (9.30). 40

$\rho_{k, \gamma} = \langle \Phi_k | \sigma_{\gamma} | \Phi_k \rangle$

where $\Phi_k$ is the $k$th configuration state and $\sigma_{\gamma}$ is the $\gamma$th one-electron operator.

The first-order density matrix is given by

$\rho_{1,1} = N_e$

where $N_e$ is the total number of electrons.

The second-order density matrix is given by

$\rho_{2,2} = \sum_{\Delta, \Gamma} | \langle \Delta | \Delta \rangle |^2$

where $\Delta$ and $\Gamma$ are occupied and virtual orbitals, respectively.

The natural atomic orbitals for atom $A$ in the molecular environment may be defined as those that diagonalize the Fock matrix (eq. (3.52)), and the corresponding eigenvectors and eigenvalues are called natural orbitals. The natural atomic orbitals are often used as starting points for local electron correlation methods, as discussed in Section 4.13.

The natural orbitals in a molecule are generally found to reflect the usual picture of bonding, i.e. they are localized between two nuclei, or in some cases, such as diborane, extended over three nuclei. In that case, the electronic structure theory may be considered more “fundamental” than one based on distance (Boys) or atomic charge (Pipek–Mezey), since there is normally little difference in the shape of the final LMOs.

The localization by an energy criterion (Edmiston–Ruedenberg) may be considered more “fundamental” than one based on distance (Boys) or atomic charge (Pipek–Mezey), since there is normally little difference in the shape of the final LMOs. Of special importance in electronic structure theory are the first- and second-order reduced density matrices, $\rho_{1,1}$ and $\rho_{2,2}$, since the Hamiltonian operator contains one and two-electron operators, respectively. Integrating the first-order density matrix over coordinate $1$ yields the number of electrons, $N_e$, while the integral of the second-order density matrix over coordinates $1$ and $2$ is $N_{2e}$.

The natural atomic orbitals are often used as starting points for local electron correlation methods, as discussed in Section 4.13.
occupied atomic orbitals for the isolated atom), and a remaining set of natural “Rydberg” orbitals based on the magnitude of the occupation numbers. The minimal set of NAOs will normally be strongly occupied (i.e., having occupation numbers significantly different from zero), while the Rydberg NAO usually will be weakly occupied (i.e., having occupation numbers close to zero). There are as many NAOs as the size of the atomic basis set, and the number of Rydberg NAOs thus increases as the basis set is enlarged. It is therefore desirable that the orthogonalization procedure preserves the form of the strongly occupied orbitals as much as possible, which is achieved by using an occupancy-weighted orthogonalizing matrix. If all orbital occupancies are exactly 2 or 0, the orthogonalization is identical to the Löwdin method (eq. (9.8)). The procedure is as follows:

1. Each of the atomic blocks in the density matrix is diagonalized to produce a set of non-orthogonal NAOs, often denoted “pre-NAOs”.
2. The strongly occupied pre-NAOs for each centre are made orthogonal to all the strongly occupied pre-NAOs on the other centres by an occupancy-weighted procedure.
3. The weakly occupied pre-NAOs on each centre are made orthogonal to the strongly occupied NAOs on the same centre by a standard Gram–Schmidt orthogonalization.
4. The weakly occupied NAOs are made orthogonal to all the weakly occupied NAOs on the other centres by an occupancy-weighted procedure.

Once the density matrix has been transformed to the NAO basis, bonds between atoms may be identified from the off-diagonal blocks. The procedure involves the following steps:

1. NAOs for an atomic block in the density matrix that have occupation numbers very close to 2 (say > 1.999) are identified as core orbitals. Their contributions to the density matrix are removed.
2. NAOs for an atomic block in the density matrix that have large occupation numbers (say > 1.90) are identified as lone pair orbitals. Their contributions to the density matrix are also removed.
3. Each pair of atoms (AB, AC, BC, . . .) are now considered, and the two-by-two sub-blocks of the density matrix (with the core and lone pair contributions removed) are diagonalized. Natural bond orbitals are identified as eigenvectors that have large eigenvalues (occupation numbers larger than say > 1.90).
4. If an insufficient number of NBOs are generated by the above procedure (sum of occupation numbers for core, lone pair and bond orbitals significantly less than the number of electrons), the criteria for accepting an NBO may be gradually lowered until a sufficiently large fraction of the electrons has been assigned to bonds. Alternatively, a search may be initiated for three-centre bonds. The contributions to the density matrix from all diatomic bonds are removed, and all three-by-three sub-blocks are diagonalized. Such three-centre bonds are quite rare, boron systems being the most notable exception.

Once NBOs have been identified, they may be written as linear combinations of the NAOs, forming a localized picture of which “atomic” orbitals are involved in the bonding.

9.7 Computational Considerations

Population analysis based on basis functions (such as Mulliken or Löwdin) require insignificant computational time. The NAO analysis involves only matrix diagonalization of small subsets of the density matrix, and also requires a negligible amount of computer time, although it is more involved than a Mulliken or Löwdin analysis. The determination of ESP fitted charges requires an evaluation of the potential at many (often several thousand) points in space, and a subsequent solution of a matrix equation for minimizing the least squares expression. For large systems, this is no longer completely trivial in terms of computer time. The AIM population analysis requires a complete topological analysis of the electron density surface, and a subsequent numerical integration of the atomic basins. For medium-sized systems and medium-quality wave functions, such an analysis may be more time-consuming than determining the wave function itself. Voronoi and Hirshfeld charges similarly require a numerical integration of the electron density, and the determination of Stewart atoms has proven to be computationally quite difficult. GAPT charges require calculation of the second derivative of the wave function, which is computationally demanding, especially for...
large molecules and/or correlated wave functions. There is little doubt that these computational considerations partly explain the popularity of especially the Mulliken population analysis, despite its well-known shortcomings. For analysis purposes, the NAO procedure is an attractive method, but for modeling purposes (i.e., force field charges) ESP charges are clearly the logical choice.

9.8 Examples

Tables 9.1 and 9.2 give some examples of atomic charges and bond orders calculated by various methods as a function of the basis set at the HF level of theory. It is evident that the Mulliken and Löwdin methods do not converge as the basis set is increased, and the values in general behave unpredictably. In particular, the presence of diffuse functions leads to absurd behaviours, as the aug-cc-pVXZ basis sets illustrate for CH4. Note also that for sufficiently large basis sets, the charge on oxygen in H2O can be calculated to be less than that on carbon in CH4! The ESP fitted charges, as well as those derived by the NAO and AIM procedures, attain well-defined values as the basis set is enlarged, and they are rather insensitive to the presence of diffuse functions. The charges assigned by these three methods, however, differ significantly, e.g., the carbon in CH4 may be assigned charges between +0.20 (AIM) and −0.74 (NAO).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>Mulliken</th>
<th>Löwdin</th>
<th>ESP fit</th>
<th>NAO</th>
<th>AIM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STO-3G</td>
<td>−0.25</td>
<td>−0.14</td>
<td>−0.37</td>
<td>−0.20</td>
<td>+0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-21G</td>
<td>−0.79</td>
<td>−0.38</td>
<td>−0.44</td>
<td>−0.90</td>
<td>−0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-31G(d,p)</td>
<td>−0.47</td>
<td>−0.43</td>
<td>−0.36</td>
<td>−0.88</td>
<td>−0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-311G(2d,2p)</td>
<td>−0.08</td>
<td>−0.12</td>
<td>−0.36</td>
<td>−0.70</td>
<td>−0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVDZ</td>
<td>−0.15</td>
<td>−0.31</td>
<td>−0.30</td>
<td>−0.80</td>
<td>−0.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>−0.36</td>
<td>−0.02</td>
<td>−0.34</td>
<td>−0.72</td>
<td>−0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>−0.27</td>
<td>−0.08</td>
<td>−0.35</td>
<td>−0.74</td>
<td>−0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aug-cc-pVDZ</td>
<td>−0.07</td>
<td>−0.17</td>
<td>−0.35</td>
<td>−0.74</td>
<td>−0.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aug-cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>−1.18</td>
<td>−0.30</td>
<td>−0.36</td>
<td>−0.72</td>
<td>−0.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aug-cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>−0.97</td>
<td>−0.62</td>
<td>−0.35</td>
<td>−0.75</td>
<td>−0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aug-cc-pVSZ</td>
<td>−0.58</td>
<td>−0.70</td>
<td>−0.35</td>
<td>−0.74</td>
<td>−0.20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Voronoi, Hirshfeld and Stewart charges with the 6-31G(d,p) basis set are +1.85, +0.10 and −0.38, respectively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>Mulliken</th>
<th>Löwdin</th>
<th>ESP fit</th>
<th>NAO</th>
<th>AIM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STO-3G</td>
<td>−0.37</td>
<td>−0.25</td>
<td>−0.62</td>
<td>−0.40</td>
<td>−0.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-21G</td>
<td>−0.73</td>
<td>−0.46</td>
<td>−0.87</td>
<td>−0.87</td>
<td>−0.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-31G(d,p)</td>
<td>−0.67</td>
<td>−0.45</td>
<td>−0.79</td>
<td>−0.97</td>
<td>−1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-311G(2d,2p)</td>
<td>−0.41</td>
<td>+0.26</td>
<td>−0.70</td>
<td>−0.90</td>
<td>−1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVDZ</td>
<td>−0.31</td>
<td>−0.22</td>
<td>−0.75</td>
<td>−0.91</td>
<td>−1.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>−0.48</td>
<td>+0.18</td>
<td>−0.74</td>
<td>−0.91</td>
<td>−1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>−0.53</td>
<td>+0.41</td>
<td>−0.73</td>
<td>−0.92</td>
<td>−1.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVSZ</td>
<td>−0.56</td>
<td>−0.55</td>
<td>−0.73</td>
<td>−0.91</td>
<td>−1.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aug-cc-pVDZ</td>
<td>−0.30</td>
<td>−0.01</td>
<td>−0.73</td>
<td>−0.96</td>
<td>−1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aug-cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>−0.44</td>
<td>−0.39</td>
<td>−0.72</td>
<td>−0.92</td>
<td>−1.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aug-cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>−0.58</td>
<td>−0.88</td>
<td>−0.72</td>
<td>−0.92</td>
<td>−1.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aug-cc-pVSZ</td>
<td>−0.80</td>
<td>−0.93</td>
<td>−0.72</td>
<td>−0.91</td>
<td>−1.24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The bond order denoted with DS denotes Mulliken, Löwdin and ESP fit, respectively. The bond order denoted with AIM denotes Mulliken, Löwdin and ESP fit, respectively.

References

WAVE FUNCTION ANALYSIS

10 Molecular Properties

The focus in Chapters 3 and 4 is on determining the wave function and its energy at a given geometry in the absence of external fields (electric or magnetic). While relative energies are certainly of interest, there are many other molecular properties that can be calculated by electronic structure methods. Most properties may be defined as the response of a wave function, an energy or an expectation value of an operator to a perturbation, where the perturbation may be any kind of operator not present in the Hamiltonian used for solving the Schrödinger equation. It may for example be terms arising in a relativistic treatment (e.g. spin-orbit interactions), which can be added as perturbations in non-relativistic theory. It may also be external fields (electric or magnetic) or an internal perturbation, such as a nuclear or electron spin. If we furthermore include “perturbations” such as adding or removing an electron, electron affinities and ionization potentials are also included in this definition. There are a few remaining properties that cannot easily be characterized as a response to a perturbation, most notably transition moments, which determine absorption intensities. These depend on matrix elements between two different wave functions.

We will here consider four types of perturbations:

- **External electric field (F)**
- **External magnetic field (R)**
- **Nuclear magnetic moment (nuclear spin, I)**
- **Change in the nuclear geometry (R)**

The first two, electric and magnetic fields, may either be *time independent*, which lead to **static properties**, or *time dependent*, leading to **dynamic properties**. Time-dependent fields are usually associated with electromagnetic radiation characterized by a frequency, and static properties may be considered as the limiting case of dynamic properties when the frequency goes to zero. We will focus on the static case here, and again concentrate on properties of a single molecule for a fixed geometry. A direct comparison with (gas phase) experimental macroscopic quantities may be done by proper averaging over for example vibrational and rotational states. We will furthermore concentrate on the electronic contribution to properties; the corresponding nuclear

---

contribution (if present) is normally trivial to calculate as it is independent of the wave function.\footnote{The nuclear magnetic moment may be considered as an artificial perturbation, since it is an inherent part of a given nucleus (isotope). In most applications, however, the nucleus is modeled as a point particle with an electric charge, and the magnetic moment needs only to be included in the Hamiltonian if the interest is in magnetic interactions involving the nucleus. These interactions are furthermore small and can be treated as a perturbative correction. One may analogously also neglect terms in the Hamiltonian involving electron spins, but one cannot neglect the electron spin in the wave function. The fermion character of the electrons leads to the requirement of wave function antisymmetry, which must be accounted for right from the outset for any theory. With a spin-free Hamiltonian, the spin dependence in the wave function can be integrated out. When properties related to magnetic interactions with the electron spin are desired, the spin-dependent terms in the Hamiltonian can be re-introduced and treated as perturbations.}

There are three main methods for calculating the effect of a perturbation:

- Derivative techniques.
- Perturbation theory based on the energy.
- Perturbation theory based on expectation values of properties, often called response or propagator methods.

The derivative formulation is perhaps the easiest to understand. In this case, the energy is expanded in a Taylor series in the perturbation strength $\lambda$.

$$E(\lambda) = E(0) + \frac{\partial E}{\partial \lambda} \lambda + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial \lambda^2} \lambda^2 + \cdots$$  \hfill (10.1)

The $n$th-order property is the $n$th-order derivative of the energy, $\partial^n E/\partial \lambda^n$. Note that the perturbation is usually a vector, and the first derivative is therefore also a vector, the second derivative a matrix, the third derivative a (third-order) tensor, etc.

### 10.1 Examples of Molecular Properties

#### 10.1.1 External Electric Field

The interaction of an electronic charge distribution $\rho(r)$ with an electric potential $\phi(r)$ gives an energy contribution.

$$E = \int \rho(r) \phi(r) \, d\mathbf{r}$$  \hfill (10.2)

Since the electric field ($\mathbf{F} = -\nabla \phi$) is normally fairly uniform at the molecular level, it is useful to write $E$ as a multipole expansion.

$$E = q \phi - \mu \mathbf{F} - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{F} - \cdots$$  \hfill (10.3)

Here $q$ is the net charge (monopole), $\mu$ is the (electric) dipole moment, $\mathbf{Q}$ is the quadrupole moment, and $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{F}'$ are the field and field gradient ($\partial \mathbf{F}/\partial \mathbf{r}$), respectively. The dipole moment and electric field are vectors, and the $\mu \mathbf{F}$ term should be interpreted as the dot product ($\mu \mathbf{F} = \mu F_x + \mu F_y + \mu F_z$). The quadrupole moment and field gradient are $3 \times 3$ matrices, and $\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{F}$ denotes the sum of all product terms. For an external field it is rarely necessary to go beyond the quadrupole term, but for molecular interactions the octupole moment may also be important (it is for example the first non-vanishing moment for spherical molecules such as CF$_4$).

In the absence of an external field, the unperturbed dipole and quadrupole moments may be calculated from the electronic wave function as simple expectation values.

$$\mu = \langle \mathbf{r} \mathbf{p} \mathbf{r} \mathbf{p} \rangle$$

$$\mathbf{Q} = \langle \mathbf{r} \mathbf{p} \mathbf{r} \mathbf{p} \mathbf{p} \rangle$$  \hfill (10.4)

The superscript 1 denotes a transpose of the $\mathbf{r}$-vector, i.e. converting it from a column to a row vector. The $\mathbf{r} \mathbf{r}$ notation therefore indicates the outer product of $\mathbf{r}$ with itself, and the quadrupole moment is thus a $3 \times 3$ matrix, where the $Q_{xx}$ component is calculated as the expectation value of $xy$.

The presence of a field influences the wave function and leads to induced dipole, quadrupole, etc. moments. For the dipole moment this may be written as in eq. (10.5).

$$\mu = \mu_0 + \alpha \mathbf{F} + \frac{1}{2} \beta \mathbf{F}^2 + \frac{1}{6} \gamma \mathbf{F}^3 + \cdots$$  \hfill (10.5)

Here $\mu_0$ is the permanent dipole moment, $\alpha$ is the (dipole) polarizability, $\beta$ is the (first) hyperpolarizability, $\gamma$ is the second hyperpolarizability, etc. The quadrupole moment may similarly be expanded in the field by means of a quadrupole polarizability, hyperpolarizability, etc.

For a homogeneous field (i.e. the field gradient and higher derivatives are zero), the total energy of a neutral molecule may be written as a Taylor expansion, where all the derivatives are evaluated at $\mathbf{F} = 0$. There will be a derivative for each individual component of the field, which rapidly leads to a large number of indices and summations in a proper mathematical formulation. In order to avoid this notational cluttering, we will adopt a slightly non-standard notation where the field is indicated by a vector notation, implying that derivatives should be taken along all the individual field components.

$$E(\mathbf{F}) = E(0) + \frac{\partial E}{\partial \mathbf{F}} \mathbf{F} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial \mathbf{F}^2} \mathbf{F} \mathbf{F}' + \frac{1}{6} \frac{\partial^3 E}{\partial \mathbf{F}^3} \mathbf{F} \mathbf{F}' \mathbf{F}'' + \cdots$$  \hfill (10.6)

According to eq. (10.3) we also have that $\partial E/\partial \mathbf{F} = -\mu$, where $\mu$ is given by the expression in eq. (10.5). Differentiation of eq. (10.6) with respect to $\mathbf{F}$ gives eq. (10.7).

$$\mu = \frac{\partial E}{\partial \mathbf{F}}, \quad \alpha = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial \mathbf{F}^2}, \quad \beta = \frac{1}{6} \frac{\partial^3 E}{\partial \mathbf{F}^3}, \quad \gamma = -\frac{1}{24} \frac{\partial^4 E}{\partial \mathbf{F}^4} + \cdots$$  \hfill (10.7)

Comparing eqs (10.5) and (10.7) shows that the first derivative is the (permanent) dipole moment $\mu_0$, the second derivative is the polarizability $\alpha$, the third derivative is the hyperpolarizability $\beta$, etc.
The first derivative is the nuclear–electron hyperfine coupling constant $A$, while the second derivative with respect to two different nuclear spins is the NMR coupling constant $J$. The corresponding interaction between two electron spins determines the zero field splitting of the individual components of a triplet (or higher multiplet) state in the absence of a magnetic field.

The dipole moment $m$ for an unperturbed system depends on the total angular momentum, which may be written in terms of the orbital angular momentum operator $L$ and the total electron spin $S$.

As for the electric field, this leads to the definition of the dipole and magnetizability as first and second derivatives of the total energy with respect to the magnetic field. The change in the dipole moment with respect to a geometry displacement along a normal coordinate is related to the intensity of an IR absorption. In the so-called double harmonic approximation (terminating the expansion at first order in the electric field and geometry), the intensity is given by eq. (10.16).

Only fundamental bands can have an intensity different from zero in the double harmonic approximation. Including higher order terms in the expansion allows the calculation of intensities of overtone bands, as well as adding contributions to the fundamental bands. The intensity of a Raman band in the harmonic approximation is given by the derivative of the polarizability with respect to a normal coordinate.

Only fundamental bands can have an intensity different from zero in the double harmonic approximation. Including higher order terms in the expansion allows the calculation of intensities of overtone bands, as well as adding contributions to the fundamental bands. The intensity of a Raman band in the harmonic approximation is given by the derivative of the polarizability with respect to a normal coordinate.
The mixed derivative of an external and a nuclear magnetic field (nuclear spin) is the NMR shielding tensor \( \sigma \).

\[
\text{NMR shielding} = \left( \frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial B \partial \sigma} \right) \tag{10.18}
\]

The corresponding quantity related to the electron spin is the ESR \( g \)-tensor.

Table 10.1 gives some examples of properties that may be calculated from derivatives of a certain order with respect to the above four perturbations.

\[
\text{Property} = \frac{\partial^{n_e+n_m+n_r+n_k} E}{\partial F^{n_e} \partial B^{n_m} \partial \sigma^{n_r} \partial R^{n_k}} \tag{10.19}
\]

All of these properties can be calculated at various levels of sophistication (electron correlation and basis sets). It should be noted that dynamic properties, where one or more of the external electric and/or magnetic fields are time dependent, may involve one or several different frequencies. Time-dependent properties are discussed in Section 10.9.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>( n_e )</th>
<th>( n_m )</th>
<th>( n_r )</th>
<th>( n_k )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Energy</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electric dipole moment</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnetic dipole moment</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperfine coupling constant</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molecular (nuclear) gradient</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electric polarizability</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnetizability</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuclear spin-spin coupling</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harmonic vibrational frequencies</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrared absorption intensities</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optical rotation, circular dichroism</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuclear magnetic shielding</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(first) Electric hyperpolarizability</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(first) Hypermagnetizability</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anharmonic corrections to vibrational frequencies</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raman intensities</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyper-Raman effects</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnetic circular dichroism (Faraday effect)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrared intensities for overtone and combination bands</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electric hyperpolarizability</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypermagnetizability</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anharmonic corrections to vibrational frequencies</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raman intensities for overtone and combination bands</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotton-Mouton effect</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 10.2 Perturbation Methods

Let us first look at some general features. The presence of a perturbation will give rise to extra terms in the Hamiltonian, and we will in the following need to consider operators that are both linear and quadratic in the perturbation.

\[
H = H_0 + \lambda P_1 + \lambda^2 P_2 \tag{10.20}
\]

\( H_0 \) is the normal electronic Hamiltonian operator, and the perturbations are described by the operators \( P_1 \) and \( P_2 \), with \( \lambda \) determining the strength. Based on an expansion in exact wave functions, Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory (Section 4.8) gives the first- and second-order energy corrections.

\[
W_{1} = \lambda \langle \psi_{0}^{\prime} | P_{1} | \psi_{0} \rangle \tag{10.21}
\]

The first-order term is identical to eq. (4.37), while the second-order equation corresponds to eq. (4.39) with an additional term involving the expectation value of \( P_2 \) over the unperturbed wave function. The first-order energy correction is identified with the first-order property, the second-order correction is the second-order property, etc. Although these expressions only hold for exact wave functions, they may also be used for approximate wave functions. The methodology of how the general expressions can be reduced to formulas involving molecular integrals is analogous to that used in Section 3.3.

The first-order term is simply the expectation value of the perturbation operator over the unperturbed wave function, and is easy to calculate. The second-order property, however, involves a sum over all excited states. In some cases, mainly associated with semi-empirical methods, second-order properties are evaluated directly from eq. (10.21), known as \textit{Sum Over States} (SOS) methods. Since this involves a determination of all excited states, it is very inefficient for \textit{ab initio} methods. A computationally efficient way of calculating such properties is by means of response methods (Section 10.9).

### 10.3 Derivative Techniques

Derivative techniques consider the energy in the presence of the perturbation, perform an analytical differentiation of the energy \( n \) times to derive a formula for the \( n \)-th order property, and let the perturbation strength go to zero.

Let us write the energy as in eq. (10.22).

\[
E(\lambda) = \langle \psi_{0}^{\prime} | \left( H_0 + \lambda P_1 + \lambda^2 P_2 \right) | \psi_{0}^{\prime} \rangle \tag{10.22}
\]

This is strictly true for HF, MCSCF and CI wave functions, and can be generalized to MP and CC methods as shown in Section 104. The perturbation-dependent terms in the operator are written explicitly, while the wave function dependence is implicit, via the parameterization (orbital and state coefficients) and possibly also the basis functions.
The first derivative of the energy can be written as in eq. (10.23).

$$\frac{dE}{d\lambda} = \left( \frac{\partial \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda} \right) \left( H | \Psi \rangle + \lambda | P | \Psi \rangle \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle + \lambda \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle \right)\tag{10.23}$$

For real wave functions the first and third terms are identical. Letting the perturbation strength go to zero yields eq. (10.24).

$$\frac{dE}{d\lambda}_{\lambda=0} = \left( \frac{\partial \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right)\tag{10.24}$$

The second derivative of the energy can for a real wave function be written as in eq. (10.29).

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2E}{d\lambda^2} = \left( \frac{\partial^2 \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2 \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H \Psi \rangle + \lambda \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle \right)\tag{10.29}$$

In the limit of the perturbation strength going to zero this reduces to eq. (10.30).

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2E}{d\lambda^2}_{\lambda=0} = \left( \frac{\partial^2 \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2 \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H \Psi \rangle + \lambda \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle \right)\tag{10.30}$$

The implicit wave function dependence on $C$ allows the derivative to be written as in eq. (10.31).

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2E}{d\lambda^2}_{\lambda=0} = \left( \frac{\partial^2 \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2 \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H \Psi \rangle + \lambda \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle \right)\tag{10.31}$$

For a variationally optimized wave function, the first term is again zero (eq. (10.27)). Furthermore, the second term, which involves calculation of the second derivative of the wave function with respect to the parameters, can be avoided. This can be seen by differentiating the stationary condition eq. (10.27) with respect to the perturbation.

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle + \lambda \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle \right)_{\lambda=0} = \left( \frac{\partial \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2 \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right) + \left( \frac{\partial \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right) = 0\tag{10.32}$$

The second derivative in eq. (10.31) therefore reduces to eq. (10.33).

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2E}{d\lambda^2}_{\lambda=0} = \left( \frac{\partial \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2 \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right)\tag{10.33}$$

In a more compact notation, this can be written as eq. (10.34).

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2E}{d\lambda^2}_{\lambda=0} = \left( \frac{\partial \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right) + \left( \frac{\partial^2 \langle \Psi | P | \Psi \rangle}{\partial \lambda^2} \right) \left( \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle \right)\tag{10.34}$$

This shows that only the first-order change in the wave function is necessary. For exact wave functions eq. (10.34) becomes identical to the perturbation expression (10.21).
since the first derivative of the wave function may then be expanded in a complete set of eigenfunctions (eq. (4.36)).

\[
\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial \lambda} = \sum_{ci} n_{ci} \frac{\Psi_{ci}}{E_{ci} - E}
\]  

(10.35)

10.4 Lagrangian Techniques

For variationally optimized wave functions (HF or MCSCF) there is a 2n + 1 rule, analogous to the perturbational energy expression (eq. (4.35)): knowledge of the n-th derivative of the wave function is sufficient for calculating a property to order 2n + 1. For non-variationally optimized wave functions eq. (10.36) suggests that the n-th-order wave function response is required for calculating the n-th-order property. This may be avoided, however, by a technique first illustrated for CSD geometry derivatives by Handy and Schaefer, often referred to as the \textit{Z-vector} method.\textsuperscript{1} It has later been generalized to cover other types of wave functions and derivatives by formulating it in terms of a Lagrange function.\textsuperscript{3}

The idea is to construct a Lagrange function that has the same energy as the non-variational wave function but which is variational in all parameters. Consider for example a CI wave function, which is variational in the state coefficients \( \mathbf{a} \) but not in the orbital coefficients \( \mathbf{c} \), since they are determined by the stationary condition for the HF wave function (note that we employ lower case \( \mathbf{c} \) for the orbital coefficients but capital \( \mathbf{C} \) to denote all wave function parameters, i.e. \( \mathbf{C} \) contains both \( \mathbf{a} \) and \( \mathbf{c} \)).

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial E_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{a}} &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{a}} \langle \Psi_{CI} | H | \Psi_{CI} \rangle = 2 \langle \Psi_{CI} | \frac{\partial \Psi_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{a}} | \Psi_{CI} \rangle = 0 \\
\frac{\partial E_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{c}} \langle \Psi_{CI} | H | \Psi_{CI} \rangle = 2 \langle \Psi_{CI} | \frac{\partial \Psi_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} | \Psi_{CI} \rangle \neq 0 \\
\frac{\partial E_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{c}} \langle \Psi_{HF} | H | \Psi_{HF} \rangle = 2 \langle \Psi_{HF} | \frac{\partial \Psi_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} | \Psi_{HF} \rangle = 0 
\end{align*}
\]  

(10.36)

Consider now the Lagrange function given in eq. (10.37).

\[
L_{CI} = E_{CI} + \kappa \frac{\partial E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}}
\]  

(10.37)

Here \( \kappa \) contains a set of Lagrange multipliers. The derivatives of the Lagrange function with respect to \( \mathbf{a} \) and \( \mathbf{c} \) are given in eq. (10.38).

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial L_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{a}} &= \frac{\partial E_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{a}} = 0 \\
\frac{\partial L_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} &= \frac{\partial E_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} = 0 \\
\frac{\partial L_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} &= \frac{\partial E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} + \kappa \frac{\partial^{2} E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}^{2}} = 0
\end{align*}
\]  

(10.38)

The first two derivatives are zero due to the properties of the CI and HF wave functions, eq. (10.36). The last equation is zero by virtue of the Lagrange multipliers, i.e. we choose \( \kappa \) such that \( \partial L_{CI} / \partial \mathbf{c} = 0 \). It may be written more explicitly in eq. (10.39).

\[
\frac{\partial E_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} = 2 \langle \Psi_{CI} | \frac{\partial \Psi_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} | \Psi_{CI} \rangle + 2 \kappa \frac{\partial^{2} E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}^{2}} = 0
\]  

(10.39)

Note that no new operators are involved, only derivatives of the CI or HF wave function with respect to the MO coefficients. The matrix elements can thus be calculated from the same integrals as the energy itself, as discussed in Sections 3.3 and 4.2.1.

The derivative with respect to a perturbation can now be written as in eq. (10.40).

\[
\frac{\partial L_{CI}}{\partial \lambda} = \frac{\partial E_{CI}}{\partial \lambda} + \kappa \frac{\partial^{2} E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}^{2}} = 0
\]  

(10.40)

Expanding out the terms gives eq. (10.41).

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial L_{CI}}{\partial \lambda} &= \langle \Psi_{CI} | \frac{\partial H}{\partial \lambda} | \Psi_{CI} \rangle + 2 \kappa \frac{\partial^{2} E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}^{2}} + 2 \partial \left( \frac{\partial E_{CI}}{\partial \lambda} \right) \frac{\partial E_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} + 2 \left( \frac{\partial \Psi_{CI}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} \right) \frac{\partial^{2} E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}^{2}} + 2 \left( \frac{\partial E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} \right) \frac{\partial^{2} E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}^{2}} \\
&\quad + \kappa \left[ \frac{\partial^{2} E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}^{2}} \left( \frac{\partial E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} \right) + 2 \partial \left( \frac{\partial^{2} E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}^{2}} \right) \frac{\partial E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} + \frac{\partial^{2} E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}^{2}} \frac{\partial^{2} E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}^{2}} \right]
\end{align*}
\]  

(10.41)

The second term disappears since the CI wave function is variational in the state coefficients, eq. (10.38). The three terms involving the derivative of the MO coefficients \( \partial E_{CI} / \partial \mathbf{c} \) also disappear owing to our choice of the Lagrange multipliers, eq. (10.39). If we furthermore adapt the definition that \( \partial \mathbf{H} / \partial \lambda = \mathbf{P} \), eq. (10.20), the final derivative may be written as eq. (10.42).

\[
\frac{\partial L_{CI}}{\partial \lambda} = \langle \Psi_{CI} | \frac{\partial \mathbf{P}}{\partial \lambda} | \Psi_{CI} \rangle + \kappa \left( \frac{\partial^{2} E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}^{2}} \right) \left( \frac{\partial E_{HF}}{\partial \mathbf{c}} \right)
\]  

(10.42)

Here the Lagrange multipliers \( \kappa \) are determined from eq. (10.39).

What has been accomplished? The original expression (10.26) contains the derivative of the MO coefficients with respect to the perturbation \( \delta \mathbf{e} / \delta \lambda \), which can be obtained by solving the CPF equations (Section 10.5 below). For geometry derivatives, for example, there will be \( 3N_{atom} \) different perturbations, i.e. we need to solve \( 3N_{atom} \) sets of CPF equations. The Lagrange expression (10.42), on the other hand, contains a set of Lagrange multipliers \( \kappa \) that are independent of the perturbation, i.e. we need only to solve one equation for \( \kappa \), eq. (10.39). Furthermore, the CPF equations involve derivatives of the basis functions, while the equation for \( \kappa \) only involves integrals of the same type as for calculating the energy itself.

The Lagrange technique may be generalized to other types of non-variational wave functions (MP and CC), and to higher order derivatives. It is found that the \( 2n + 1 \) rule is recovered, i.e. if the wave function response is known to order \( n \), the \( (2n + 1) \)th-order property may be calculated for any type of wave function.

10.5 Coupled Perturbed Hartree–Fock

Although a calculation of the wave function response can be avoided for the first derivative, it is necessary for second (and higher) derivatives. Eq. (10.32) gives directly an
Just as the variational condition for an HF wave function can be formulated either as a matrix equation or in terms of orbital rotations (Sections 3.5 and 3.6), the CPHF may also be viewed as a rotation of the molecular orbitals. In the absence of a perturbation, the molecular orbitals make the energy stationary, i.e., the derivative of the energy with respect to a change in the MOs is zero. This is equivalent to the statement that the off-diagonal elements of the Fock matrix between the occupied and virtual MOs are zero.

\[ \langle \phi_i | H | \phi_j \rangle = 0 \]

\[ \langle \phi_i | H | \phi_j \rangle + \sum_{l=1}^\infty \left[ \langle \phi_i | H | \phi_l \rangle - \langle \phi_i | \hat{\rho} | \phi_l \rangle \right] = 0 \]

When a perturbation is introduced, the stationary condition means that the orbitals must change, which may be described as a mixing of the unperturbed MOs. In other words, the stationary orbitals in the presence of a perturbation are given by a unitary transformation of the unperturbed orbitals (see also Section 3.6).

\[ \phi_i' = \sum_{j=1}^{N_p} U_{ij} \phi_j \]

The \( U \) matrix describes how the MOs change, i.e., it contains the derivatives of the MO coefficients. In the absence of a perturbation, \( U \) is the identity matrix. Let us now explicitly make \( U^{(1)} \) the matrix containing the first-order changes in the MO coefficients.

\[ \phi_i \rightarrow \phi_i + \sum_{j=1}^{N_p} U_{ij}^{(1)} \phi_j + \cdots \]

In terms of the matrix formulation in eqs (10.45) and (10.46), the equivalent of eq. (10.51) is eq. (10.53).

\[ C^{(0)} = U^{(0)} C^{(0)} \]

An equation for the \( U^{(1)} \) elements can be obtained from the condition that the Fock matrix is diagonal, and by expanding all involved quantities to first order.

\[ \langle \phi_i | H | \phi_j \rangle \rightarrow \langle \phi_i | H | \phi_j \rangle^{(0)} + \langle \phi_i | \hat{\rho} | \phi_j \rangle^{(1)} \]

\[ \langle \phi_i | \hat{\rho} | \phi_j \rangle \rightarrow \langle \phi_i | \hat{\rho} | \phi_j \rangle^{(0)} + \langle \phi_i | \hat{\rho} | \phi_j \rangle^{(1)} \]

The \( \langle \phi_i | H | \phi_j \rangle^{(0)} \) and \( \langle \phi_i | \hat{\rho} | \phi_j \rangle^{(1)} \) elements are integral derivatives with respect to the perturbation, analogous to eq. (10.49), but expressed in terms of molecular orbitals. Inserting these expansions into the \( \langle \phi_i | \hat{\rho} | \phi_j \rangle = 0 \) condition and collecting all terms that are first order in \( \hat{\lambda} \) gives a matrix equation that can be written as

\[ A^{(0)} U^{(0)} = B^{(1)} \]

The \( A^{(0)} \) matrix contains only unperturbed quantities (\( \langle \phi_i | H | \phi_j \rangle^{(0)} \) and \( \langle \phi_i | \hat{\rho} | \phi_j \rangle^{(0)} \)), while the \( B^{(1)} \) matrix contains first derivatives (\( \langle \phi_i | H | \phi_j \rangle^{(1)} \) and \( \langle \phi_i | \hat{\rho} | \phi_j \rangle^{(1)} \)).
Since the energy is independent of a rotation among the occupied or virtual orbitals, only the mixing of occupied and virtual orbitals is determined by requiring that the energy be stationary. The occupied-occupied and virtual-virtual mixing can be diagonalized also in the occupied-occupied and virtual-virtual blocks. Without these additional requirements, the procedure is called **Coupled Hartree–Fock** (CHF), as opposed to CPHF.

The CPHF equations are linear and can be solved by standard matrix operations. The size of the $U$ matrix is the number of occupied orbitals times the number of virtual orbitals, which in general is quite large, and the CPHF equations are therefore normally solved by iterative methods. Furthermore, as illustrated above, the CPHF equations may be formulated either in an atomic orbital or molecular orbital basis. Although the latter has computational advantages in certain cases, the former is more suitable for use in connection with direct methods (where the atomic integrals are calculated as required), as discussed in Section 38.5.

There is one CPHF equation to be solved for each perturbation. If it is an electric or magnetic field, there will in general be three components ($F_x$, $F_y$, $F_z$), if it is a geometry perturbation there will be 3$N_{atom}$ (actually only $3N_{atom} - 6$ independent) components. Since the $A^{(n)}$ matrix is independent of the nature of the perturbation, such multiple CPHF equations are often solved simultaneously.

The CPHF procedure may be generalized to higher order. Extending the expansion to second order allows the derivation of an equation for the second-order change in the MO coefficients, by solving a second-order CPHF equation, etc.

For perturbation-dependent basis sets (e.g. geometry derivatives) the (first-order) CPHF equations involve (first) derivatives of the one- and two-electron integrals with respect to the perturbation. For basis functions that are independent of the perturbation (e.g. an electric field), these derivatives are zero. Typically, the solution of each CPHF equation (for each perturbation) requires approximately half of the time required for solving the HF equations themselves. For basis set dependent perturbations, the first-order CPHF equations are only needed for calculating second (and higher) derivatives, which have terms involving second (and higher) derivatives of the integrals themselves, and solving the CPHF equations is usually not the computational bottleneck in these cases.

Without the Lagrange technique for non-variational wave functions (CI, MP and CC), the nth-order CPHF is needed for the nth derivative. Consider for example the MP2 energy correction.

$$\text{MP2} = \sum_{\lambda, \lambda'} \left[ \langle \phi_\lambda | \phi_{\lambda'} \rangle - \langle \phi_\lambda | \langle \phi_{\lambda'} | | \phi_{\lambda'} \rangle \rangle \right] \frac{1}{E_{\lambda} - E_{\lambda'}}$$

(10.56)

The derivative of a molecular integral is given by eq. (10.57).

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} \langle \phi | \phi \rangle = \sum_{\mu, \mu'} \sum_{\nu, \nu'} c_{\mu \lambda} c_{\nu \lambda} \langle \phi_\mu | \phi_\nu \rangle$$

(10.57)

This requires both the derivative of the MO coefficients and the two-electron integrals in the AO basis. The denominator leads to derivatives of the MO energies, which can be obtained by solving the CPHF equations. A straightforward differentiation of eq. (10.56) thus leads to a formula where the first-order response is required.

Let us exemplify some of the above generalizations for the case of an HF wave function.

### 10.6 Electric Field Perturbation

#### 10.6.1 External electric field

If the perturbation is a homogeneous electric field $F_i (F = Fr)$, the perturbation operator $P_i$ (eq. (10.21)) is the position vector $r$ and $P_i$ is zero. Assuming that the basis functions are independent of the electric field (as is normally the case), the first-order HF property, the dipole moment, is given by the derivative formula eq. (10.24) as shown in eq. (10.58) (since an HF wave function obeys the Hellmann–Feynman theorem).

$$\mu = \frac{\partial E_{HF}}{\partial F} = -\langle \Psi_{HF} | \langle \Psi_{HF} |$$

(10.58)

This is equivalent to the expression from first-order perturbation theory, (10.21). For non-variational wave functions the dipole moment calculated by the two approaches will be different, since the derivative of the wave function with respect to the field will not be zero. The second-order property, the dipole polarizability, is given by the derivative formula eq. (10.34) as shown in eq. (10.59).

$$\alpha = \frac{\partial^2 E_{HF}}{\partial F^2} = 2 \frac{\partial \langle \Psi_{HF} | \langle \Psi_{HF} |$$

(10.59)

Second-order perturbation theory eq. (10.21) yields eq. (10.60).

$$\alpha = -2 \sum_{\mu, \mu'} \langle \Psi_{HF} | \langle \Psi_{HF} |$$

(10.60)

#### 10.6.2 Internal electric field

Although nuclei are often modeled as point charges in quantum chemistry, they do in fact have a finite size. The internal structure of the nucleus leads to a quadrupole moment for nuclei with spin larger than $1/2$ (the dipole and octopole moments vanish by symmetry). This leads to an interaction term that is the product of the quadrupole moment with the field gradient ($F = V \nabla$) created by the electron distribution.

$$\mathbf{H}_q = -\sum_{m, n} \mathbf{Q}_m \cdot \mathbf{F}$$

(10.61)

### 10.7 Magnetic Field Perturbation

The situation is somewhat more complicated when the perturbation is a magnetic field. An electric field interacts directly with the charged particles (electrons and nuclei), and adds a potential energy term to the Hamiltonian operator. A magnetic field,
Molecular Properties

The introduction of the generalized momentum operator in the one-electron kinetic energy part of the Dirac equation leads to three new interaction terms, as shown in eqs. (8.29) and (8.30). It should be noted that the last two terms will also show up in a non-relativistic treatment when the magnetic vector potential is included, and only the \( s \cdot B \) term should be considered a relativistic effect.

\[
p^2 \rightarrow \pi^2 = (p + A)^2
\]

If there is more than one type of magnetic field present there will be an additional mixed \( AA' \) term. Depending on the type of magnetic interactions present, these give operators as shown below. To simplify the expressions, we will use the notations \( r_A = r - R_A, r_{ii} = r_i - r, R_{ii} = R_i - R_{ii} \).

In addition to the magnetic terms arising from the expansion of the generalized momentum operator, there are also magnetic perturbation terms arising from relativistic corrections, as discussed in Section 8.2. These corrections may be derived by an expansion in the inverse speed of light. For consistency, we will in the following only consider terms up to order \( c^{-2} \), with the exception of the indirect nuclear spin–spin coupling, where the lowest non-vanishing term is of order \( c^{-2} \). Furthermore, in the rest of this section the summation over the number of electrons and nuclei has been omitted for clarity.

### 10.7 Magnetic Field Perturbation

The magnetic field expression similarly determines the magnetic field at position \( r \) due to an electron at position \( r_i \).

For an external magnetic field, the three terms in eq. (10.68) becomes eqs (10.69)–(10.71).

\[
g_\mu B = g_\mu \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{A}_\mu
\]

\[
\mathbf{A}_\mu = \frac{g_\mu \mu_A}{c^2} \left[ \mathbf{s}_A \times (r - \mathbf{R}_A) \right] / |r - \mathbf{R}_A|
\]

\[
\mathbf{B}_\mu = \frac{g_\mu \mu_A}{c^2} \left[ \mathbf{s}_A \times \left( \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i \right) \right] / |\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_i|
\]

Here \( g_\mu \mu_A \) is the magnetic moment of nucleus \( A \) and \( \mathbf{R}_A \) is the position (the nucleus is the natural gauge origin). The \( \mathbf{B}_\mu \) expression determines the magnetic field at position \( r \) (not necessarily indicating an electron) due to a magnetic nucleus at position \( \mathbf{R}_A \). The \( \delta \) function in the last term in the \( \mathbf{B}_\mu \) expression arises from the quantum mechanical possibility of \( r - \mathbf{R}_A = 0 \), i.e. the magnetic field directly at the nuclear position. Note that the presence of \( c^{-2} \) emerges from the units of magnetic field (\( \mu_A/4\pi \) in atomic units), and does not indicate a relativistic origin.

The spin associated with an electron also acts as a magnetic dipole \( -g_\mu \mu_A \mathbf{s}_A \), giving rise to a vector potential \( \mathbf{A}_A \) and associated magnetic field.

\[
\mathbf{A}_A = \frac{g_\mu \mu_A}{c^2} \mathbf{B}_A \cdot \mathbf{r}_A / |\mathbf{r}_A| - \frac{3}{2} \mathbf{B}_A \cdot \mathbf{r}_A / |\mathbf{r}_A|^3 \left[ \mathbf{r}_A \times \mathbf{r}_A \right] / |\mathbf{r}_A|^3
\]

\[
\mathbf{B}_A = \frac{g_\mu \mu_A}{c^2} \mathbf{B}_A \cdot \mathbf{r}_A / |\mathbf{r}_A|^3 - \frac{3}{2} \mathbf{B}_A \cdot \mathbf{r}_A / |\mathbf{r}_A|^5 \left[ \mathbf{r}_A \times \mathbf{r}_A \right] / |\mathbf{r}_A|^5
\]

Here the vector identities \( \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} \) and \((\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{d}) = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}) (\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{d}) - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{d}) (\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c})\) have been used, and the angular momentum operator \( \mathbf{L}_A \) is defined implicitly by eq. (10.70). The presence of a magnetic field thus introduces three new terms, two being linear and one being quadratic in the field. The spin-Zeeman term \( s \cdot B \) describes the interaction of the electron spin with the magnetic field, while \( \Delta \) is the orbital-Zeeman term describing the interaction of the magnetic field with
the magnetic moment associated with the movement of the electron. For a many-electron system, the spin-Zeeman term becomes \( \mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{B}_{\text{ext}} \), where \( \mathbf{S} \) indicates the total molecular spin. The quadratic \( P_t \) operator arising from \( \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{L} \) may be written as in eq. (10.72).

\[
P_t^2 = \frac{1}{2} \left( t_{\alpha} \mathbf{r}_{\alpha} - t_{\alpha} \mathbf{r}_{\alpha} \right)
\]  

(10.72)

Here \( t_{\alpha} \mathbf{r}_{\alpha} \) is the inner (dot) product times a unit matrix (i.e. \( t_{\alpha} \mathbf{r}_{\alpha} \mathbf{I} \)) and \( t_{\alpha} \mathbf{r}_{\alpha} \mathbf{I} \) is the outer product, i.e. a \( 3 \times 3 \) matrix containing the products of the \( x, y, z \) components, analogous to the quadrupole moment, eq. (10.4). Note that both the \( \mathbf{L} \) and \( P_t \) operators are gauge dependent.

### 10.7.2 Nuclear spin

The \( g, \mu_B \cdot \mathbf{B} \) term in eq. (10.68) in connection with \( \mathbf{B} \), in eq. (10.66) gives three terms, which conventionally are collected in two operators.

\[
H_{\text{SD}}^{\text{N}} = s_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{P}^{\text{SD}} \mathbf{A}, \quad \mathbf{P}^{\text{SD}} = s_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{p} + 2s_\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{x} \mathbf{p}
\]

(10.73)

\[
H_{\text{FC}}^{\text{N}} = s_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{P}^{\text{FC}} \mathbf{A}, \quad \mathbf{P}^{\text{FC}} = s_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{I} \mathbf{B}
\]

(10.74)

\[
H_{\text{DS}}^{\text{N}} = 1_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{P}^{\text{DS}} \mathbf{A}, \quad \mathbf{P}^{\text{DS}} = 1_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{p} + 21_\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{x} \mathbf{p}
\]

(10.75)

\[
\mathbf{H}_{\text{SD}}^{\text{N}} = s_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{P}^{\text{SD}} \mathbf{A}, \quad \mathbf{P}^{\text{SD}} = s_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{p} + 2s_\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{x} \mathbf{p}
\]

(10.76)

When both nuclear spins and an external magnetic field are present, there is an additional mixed \( \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{A} \) term arising from the expansion of the generalized momentum operator.

\[
\mathbf{H}_{\text{DS}}^{\text{N}} = \mathbf{B}_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{P}^{\text{DS}} \mathbf{A}, \quad \mathbf{P}^{\text{DS}} = \mathbf{B}_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{p} + 2\mathbf{B}_\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{x} \mathbf{p}
\]

This nuclear 

### 10.7.3 Electron spin

The \( g, \mu_B \cdot \mathbf{B} \) term in eq. (10.68) in connection with \( \mathbf{B} \), in eq. (10.67) gives three terms, which again are collected in two operators.

\[
\mathbf{H}_{\text{SD}}^{\text{E}} = s_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{P}^{\text{SD}} \mathbf{A}, \quad \mathbf{P}^{\text{SD}} = s_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{p} + 2s_\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{x} \mathbf{p}
\]

(10.77)

\[
\mathbf{H}_{\text{FC}}^{\text{E}} = s_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{P}^{\text{FC}} \mathbf{A}, \quad \mathbf{P}^{\text{FC}} = s_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{I} \mathbf{B}
\]

(10.78)

\[
\mathbf{H}_{\text{DS}}^{\text{E}} = \mathbf{B}_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{P}^{\text{DS}} \mathbf{A}, \quad \mathbf{P}^{\text{DS}} = \mathbf{B}_\mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{p} + 2\mathbf{B}_\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{x} \mathbf{p}
\]

(10.79)

This electronic 

### 10.7.4 Classical terms

The expansion of the generalized momentum operator only involves the magnetic interactions in the electronic part of the wave function. Since the corresponding nuclear part has been separated out by the Born-Oppenheimer approximations, we need to add a few terms corresponding to the (classical) interaction of the nuclear magnetic moments with an external magnetic field and between nuclei.

The nuclear spin-Zeeman term is analogous to the electronic term in eq. (10.69), except that the electron magnetic moment of \( -g, \mu_B \cdot \mathbf{S} \) is replaced by the nuclear magnetic moment \( g, \mu_B \cdot \mathbf{I} \). The nuclear magneton \( \mu_B \) is defined analogously to the Bohr magneton \( \mu_B \), but using the proton mass \( m_p \) instead of the electron mass \( \mu_B = e h / 2 m_e = 4.72 \times 10^{-27} \) in atomic units, while the \( g, \) factor depends on the specific nucleus (isotope).
The term involving two nuclei is analogous to the electron–electron spin-dipole term in eq. (10.77). The corresponding Fermi contact term disappears since nuclei cannot occupy the same position at energies relevant for chemistry. Note that the direct spin–spin coupling is independent of the electronic wave function; it only depends on the molecular geometry.

\[
H_{\text{Zeeman}}^{\text{rel}} = -\frac{\mu_B m_n}{2e^2} \iota_n \times \mathbf{p} \tag{10.82}
\]

Other relativistic corrections, such as the mass–velocity and Darwin terms, affect the wave function but do not lead to operators associated with molecular properties.

### 10.7.6 Magnetic properties

Table 10.2 shows the perturbation operators arising from inclusion of a magnetic field and relativistic effects. The last three columns indicate the perturbation order with respect to an external \( \mathbf{B} \) and internal nuclear \( \mathbf{I} \) magnetic field, and with respect to the inverse speed of light. Only the most important operators up to order \( c^2 \) have been included, with the exception of the diamagnetic nuclear spin-spin coupling operator, since the leading term for this quantity is of order \( c^4 \).

As seen from eq. (10.21), the first-order property is given as an expectation value of operators linear in the perturbation. The second-order property contains two contributions, an expectation value over quadratic (or bilinear) operators and a sum over products of matrix elements involving linear operators connecting the ground and excited states.

The first-order property with respect to an external field is the magnetic dipole moment \( \mathbf{m} \) (eq. (10.10)). When field-independent basis functions are used, the HF magnetic dipole moment is given as the expectation value of the \( \mathbf{I} \times \mathbf{B} \) operator over the unperturbed wave function, eqs (10.21) and (10.24). Since the \( \mathbf{I} \) operator is imaginary it can only yield a non-zero result for spatially degenerate wave functions and the expectation value of \( \mathbf{S} \) is only non-zero for non-singlet states.

\[
\mathbf{m} = \frac{\partial E_{\text{HF}}}{\partial B_{\text{ext}}} = -\langle \Psi_{\text{HF}} | \mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{B} | \Psi_{\text{HF}} \rangle \tag{10.84}
\]

The second-order term, the magnetizability \( \zeta \), has two components. The derivative expression (10.34) is given by eq. (10.85).

\[
\zeta = \frac{\partial^2 E_{\text{HF}}}{\partial B_{\text{ext}}^2} = -2\langle \Psi_{\text{HF}} | \mathbf{P} \mathbf{S} | \Psi_{\text{HF}} \rangle + 2\langle \Psi_{\text{HF}} | \mathbf{L} \mathbf{B}_{\text{ext}} | \Psi_{\text{HF}} \rangle \tag{10.85}
\]

Second-order perturbation theory (eq. (10.21)) yields eq. (10.86).

\[
\zeta = -2\langle \Psi_{\text{HF}} | \mathbf{P} \mathbf{S} | \Psi_{\text{HF}} \rangle - 2 \sum_m \langle \Psi_{\text{HF}} | \mathbf{S} \mathbf{L}_m | \Psi_{\text{HF}} \rangle \tag{10.86}
\]

The first term is referred to as the *diamagnetic* contribution, while the latter is the *paramagnetic* part of the magnetizability. The total spin operator \( \mathbf{S} \) gives no contribution to the paramagnetic term, since the ground and excited states are orthogonal in the spatial part. Each of the two components depends on the selected gauge origin. However, for exact wave functions the gauge dependence cancels exactly. For approximate wave functions this is not guaranteed, and as a result the total property may depend on where the origin for the vector potential (eq. (10.65)) has been chosen.

The first-order term with respect to a nuclear magnetic moment \( \mathbf{I} \) is the *hyperfine* coupling tensor. Giving the coupling the between the nuclear and electronic magnetic moments. The leading order term \( c^{-2} \) can be evaluated as a simple expectation.
value of the $P_{ee}^{m}$ and $P_{m}^{n}$ operators. The former provides the isotropic part of the tensor, while the latter gives the anisotropic part.

$$A = \langle \Psi_{0} | \left[ P_{ee}^{m} + P_{m}^{n} \right] | \Psi_{0} \rangle$$  \hspace{1cm} (10.87)

The second-order property related to two nuclear spins $I_{A}$ and $I_{B}$ is the direct interaction determined entirely by the molecular geometry and given by eq. (10.81). For rapidly tumbling molecules (solution or gas phase) this contribution averages out to zero, but it is significant for solid-state NMR.

The indirect spin–spin coupling between nuclei $A$ and $B$, which is the observed coupling constant, only the three “diagonal” terms $(P_{i} = P_{j})$ in eq. (10.88) survive. The Fermi contact term is the most important for one-bond couplings ($J_{AB}$) in singly bonded systems, but the other three contributions become important for multiple-bonded systems and for longer-range couplings ($J_{AB}$).

The first-order term with respect to total electron spin $S$ is the spin–orbit splitting of open-shell molecules with a net angular momentum, as for example NO with a $1\Sigma^{+}$ ground state.

$$SO \cdot splitting = \langle \Psi_{0} | \left[ P_{ee}^{m} + P_{m}^{n} \right] | \Psi_{0} \rangle $$  \hspace{1cm} (10.89)

The second-order property related to two electron spins is the Zero Field Splitting (ZFS) tensor $D$, which is responsible for making the three individual components of a triplet state non-degenerate, with a typical magnitude being of the order of a few cm$^{-1}$. It again contains second- and first-order contributions, the latter arising from the spin–orbit operator containing both the one- and two-electron contributions.

$$D = \langle \Psi_{0} | \left[ P_{ee}^{m} + P_{m}^{n} \right] | \Psi_{0} \rangle + \sum_{m} \frac{\langle \Psi_{m} | \left[ P_{ee}^{m} + P_{m}^{n} \right] | \Psi_{m} \rangle}{E_{m} - E_{0}}$$  \hspace{1cm} (10.90)

The $P_{ee}^{m}$ operator just introduces a uniform shift of all energy levels, and thus produces no observable effect on the splitting of the energy levels.

The interaction of an external magnetic field with a nuclear spin gives a Zeeman splitting of the energy levels by the $I_{A} \cdot B_{ext}$ term (Table 10.2). The details of the splitting, however, depend on the molecular environment, since the local magnetic field at a nuclear position is shielded by the electrons relative to the external field, $B_{ext} = (1 - \sigma)B_{ext}$. The NMR shielding tensor $\sigma$, which is the mixed second derivative with respect to a nuclear spin and an external magnetic field, has, by analogy with the magnetizability, a diamagnetic and paramagnetic part. The diamagnetic part arises from $P_{ee}^{m}$, while the paramagnetic contribution contains products of matrix elements involving operators linear in $R$ or $I$. These are given by the angular momentum operator $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}L_{0}$, eq. (10.70) and by the paramagnetic spin–orbit operator $P_{m}^{n}$, eq. (10.74). Written in terms of the perturbation formula (10.21), the expression for the nuclear shielding for atom $A$ becomes eq. (10.91).

$$\sigma_{A} = \langle \Psi_{0} | \left[ P_{ee}^{m} + P_{m}^{n} \right] | \Psi_{0} \rangle - \sum_{m} \langle \Psi_{m} | \left[ P_{ee}^{m} + P_{m}^{n} \right] | \Psi_{m} \rangle \frac{E_{m} - E_{0}}{E_{m} - E_{0}}$$  \hspace{1cm} (10.91)

All the operators $P_{ee}^{m}$, $P_{m}^{n}$ and $L_{0}$ are gauge dependent, and each of the dia- and paramagnetic terms consequently depends on the chosen gauge. The shielding tensor is a $3 \times 3$ matrix, which can be diagonalized to give three eigenvalues. These principal components can be observed by solid-state NMR, but for rapidly tumbling molecules, as in solution phase, only the average can be observed, corresponding to one-third of the trace of the shielding tensor.

The ESR equivalent of the NMR shielding is called the $g$-tensor, and can be considered as the mixed second derivative with respect to the electron spin and an external magnetic field. It is a $3 \times 3$ tensor, and can be written as the diagonal component for the free electron plus a small correction due to the molecular environment.

$$g = g_{i} I_{i} + \Delta g$$  \hspace{1cm} (10.92)

The diagonal term $g_{i} I_{i}$ arises from the spin-Zeeman term $S \cdot B_{ext}$, while the anisotropic part has two contributions. The direct term arises from the $P_{ee}^{m}$ operator (eq. (10.79)) and the relativistic correction from the spin-Zeeman term (eq. (10.83)), with additional contributions coming from the combination of $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}L_{0}$ and the spin–orbit operators $P_{m}^{n}$ and $P_{ee}^{m}$.

$$\Delta g = \langle \Psi_{0} | P_{ee}^{m} | \Psi_{0} \rangle \frac{\mu_{B} B_{ext}}{\hbar c^{2}} \langle \Psi_{0} | \left[ P_{ee}^{m} + P_{m}^{n} \right] | \Psi_{0} \rangle - \sum_{m} \langle \Psi_{m} | \left[ P_{ee}^{m} + P_{m}^{n} \right] | \Psi_{m} \rangle \frac{E_{m} - E_{0}}{E_{m} - E_{0}}$$  \hspace{1cm} (10.93)

It should be noted that the formulas in eqs (10.84)-(10.93) have been derived by considering only the operators from the leading order in the inverse speed of light. One may obtain relativistic corrections by carrying out the expansion to higher orders, but this rapidly becomes quite involved, as many different operators and their combinations can make contributions to a given property. For systems where relativistic effects are important, a full four-component type calculation (Section 8.4) becomes attractive, at least conceptually, since it automatically includes all effects without the necessity of multiple perturbation operators.
10.8 Geometry Perturbations

The general formula for the first derivative of the energy with respect to a change in geometry, the molecular (nuclear) gradient, is given by eq. (10.24).

\( \frac{\partial E}{\partial \mathbf{R}} = \sum_{\alpha} \left[ \frac{\partial E}{\partial h_{\mathbf{R}_\alpha}} + \Delta \right] \mathbf{R}_\alpha \)

(10.97)

The state and MO dependence disappears for HF, DFT and MCSCF type wave functions owing to the variational nature \((\partial \Psi / \partial \mathbf{R} = 0)\). For traditional basis sets consisting of nuclear-centred Gaussian functions, the basis functions are clearly perturbation dependent since the matrix elements become independent of the gauge origin. The wave function \(\Psi\) response. The latter contains contributions from a change in the basis functions, the state and the MO coefficients.

\( \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial \mathbf{R}} = \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial \mathbf{x}} + \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial \mathbf{R}} + \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial \mathbf{R}} \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \)

(10.98)

The state and MO dependence disappears for HF, DFT and MCSCF type wave functions owing to the variational nature \((\partial \Psi / \partial \mathbf{R} = 0)\). For traditional basis sets consisting of nuclear-centred Gaussian functions, the basis functions are clearly perturbation dependent since the functions move along with the nuclei, and standard perturbation theory is therefore not suitable for calculating molecular gradients. For a plane wave basis, however, the basis functions are independent of a geometry perturbation, and the molecular gradient is just the Hellmann–Feynman term.

Since geometry derivatives are important for optimizing geometries, it may be useful to look in more detail at the quantities involved in calculating first and second derivatives of a Hartree–Fock wave function on a geometry change. These formulas are most easily derived directly from the HF energy expressed in terms of the atomic quantities (eq. (3.54)).

\( E_{\text{HF}} = \sum_{\alpha \beta} D_{\alpha \beta} h_{\mathbf{R}_\alpha} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\alpha \beta \gamma} \sum_{\delta \epsilon} D_{\alpha \beta} D_{\gamma \delta} (X_{\alpha \beta} X_{\gamma \delta} - (X_{\alpha \beta} X_{\gamma \delta})) + V_{\text{ex}} \)

(10.99)

Differentiation (using \( \lambda \) as a general geometrical displacement of a nucleus) yields eq. (10.100).

\( \frac{\partial E_{\text{HF}}}{\partial \lambda} = \sum_{\alpha \beta} \left( \frac{\partial D_{\alpha \beta}}{\partial \lambda} h_{\mathbf{R}_\alpha} + \Delta \right) \frac{\partial h_{\mathbf{R}_\alpha}}{\partial \lambda} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\alpha \beta \gamma \delta} \left( \frac{\partial D_{\alpha \beta}}{\partial \lambda} \frac{\partial D_{\gamma \delta}}{\partial \lambda} (X_{\alpha \beta} X_{\gamma \delta} - (X_{\alpha \beta} X_{\gamma \delta})) + \frac{\partial V_{\text{ex}}}{\partial \lambda} \right) \)

(10.100)

The state and MO dependence disappears for HF, DFT and MCSCF type wave functions owing to the variational nature \((\partial \Psi / \partial \mathbf{R} = 0)\). For traditional basis sets consisting of nuclear-centred Gaussian functions, the basis functions are clearly perturbation dependent since the matrix elements become independent of the gauge origin. The wave function response. The latter contains contributions from a change in the basis functions, the state and the MO coefficients.

\( \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial \mathbf{R}} = \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial \mathbf{x}} + \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial \mathbf{R}} + \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial \mathbf{R}} \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \)

(10.98)
The third and fourth terms are identical and may be collected to cancel the factor of \( \mathbf{V}_i \). Rearranging the terms gives eq. (10.101).

\[
\frac{dE_{\text{elec}}}{d\lambda} = \sum_{\alpha} D_{\alpha\beta} \frac{\partial h_{\alpha\beta}}{\partial \lambda} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\alpha \beta} D_{\alpha\beta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} (\langle \mathbf{X}_X \mid \mathbf{X}_X \rangle - \langle \mathbf{X}_X \mid \mathbf{X}_X \rangle) + \sum_{\alpha \beta} \frac{\partial D_{\alpha\beta}}{\partial \lambda} h_{\alpha\beta} + \sum_{\alpha \beta} \frac{\partial D_{\alpha\beta}}{\partial \lambda} (\langle \mathbf{X}_X \mid \mathbf{X}_X \rangle - \langle \mathbf{X}_X \mid \mathbf{X}_X \rangle)
\]

(10.101)

The first two terms involve products of the density matrix with derivatives of the atomic integrals, while the two next terms can be recognized as derivatives of the density matrix times the Fock matrix (eq. (3.52)).

\[
\frac{dE_{\text{elec}}}{d\lambda} = \sum_{\alpha} D_{\alpha\beta} \frac{\partial h_{\alpha\beta}}{\partial \lambda} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\alpha \beta} D_{\alpha\beta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} (\langle \mathbf{X}_X \mid \mathbf{X}_X \rangle - \langle \mathbf{X}_X \mid \mathbf{X}_X \rangle) + \frac{\partial V_{\text{mol}}}{\partial \lambda} + \sum_{\alpha \beta} \frac{\partial D_{\alpha\beta}}{\partial \lambda} F_{\alpha\beta}
\]

(10.102)

The derivative in eq. (10.102) of the nuclear repulsion (third term) is trivial since it does not involve electron coordinates. The one-electron derivatives are given in eq. (10.103).

\[
\frac{\partial h_{\alpha\beta}}{\partial \lambda} = (\mathbf{X}_X \mid \mathbf{X}_X) + \langle \mathbf{X}_X \mid \mathbf{X}_X \rangle
\]

(10.103)

The central term is recognized as the Hellmann–Feynman force. The two-electron derivatives in eq. (10.102) become eq. (10.104).

\[
\frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} (\langle \mathbf{X}_X \mid \mathbf{X}_X \rangle) = \langle \mathbf{X}_X \mid \mathbf{X}_X \rangle
\]

(10.104)

The central term is again the Hellmann–Feynman force, which vanishes since the two-electron operators \( \mathbf{g} \) is independent of the nuclear positions.

The last term in eq. (10.102) involves a change in the density matrix, i.e. the MO coefficients.
The first four terms only involve derivatives of operators and AO integrals. However, for the last three terms we need the derivative of the density matrix and MO energies. These can be obtained by solving the first-order CPHF equations (Section 10.5).

The calculation of the second derivatives is substantially more involved than calculating the first derivative, typically by an order of magnitude, and for large systems, a full calculation of the Hessian (force constant) matrix may thus be prohibitively expensive. If the second derivatives are required only for characterizing the nature of a stationary point (minimum or saddle point), the full Hessian is not required: only a few of the lowest eigenvalues are of interest. As shown by Degmann and Furché, the lowest eigenvalues may be extracted by iterative techniques without explicit construction of the full second derivatives, leading to a substantial saving for large systems.

10.9 Response and Propagator Methods

The perturbation and derivative approaches in sections 10.2 and 10.3 are not suitable for time-dependent properties since there is no well-defined energy function is such cases. The equivalent of eq. (10.20) for a time-dependent perturbation is eq. (10.114).

The perturbation is usually an oscillating electric field, which we can write as in eq. (10.115).

The expectation value of a given operator \( \mathbf{P} \) can be expanded according to perturbations \( \mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{R}, \ldots \).

The first- and second-, third-, etc., order terms are called the linear, quadratic, cubic, etc., responses, and may be interpreted as the change in the property \( \mathbf{P} \) due to the perturbations \( \mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{R}, \ldots \). Note that the linear response is a second-order quantity in the terminology of eq. (10.1), while the quadratic response is a third-order quantity, etc.

For the case where \( \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{R} = \mathbf{r} \) (the position operator), the expansion describes the response of the expectation value of the dipole operator \( \mathbf{r} \) to a uniform electric field, with the first-order term being the polarizability, eq. (10.5). In the limit where \( \omega \to 0 \) (i.e. where the perturbation is time independent), the linear response is...
identical to the second-order perturbation formula for a constant electric field (eq. (10.60)), i.e., the \( \langle \hat{r}\rangle_o \) term determines the static polarizability \( \alpha \). Choosing a non-zero \( \omega = \omega_0 + \alpha_0 \), where \( \alpha_0 \) and \( \omega_0 \) are associated with the two perturbations. The \( \tilde{\beta}_{\omega_0, \omega_0} \) quantity, for example, determines the second harmonic generation (frequency doubling), while \( \tilde{\gamma}_{\omega_0, \omega_0} \) is associated with the electro-optical Pockels effect.

By suitable choices for the \( P, Q, R, \ldots \) operators a whole variety of properties may be calculated.\(^{10}\) The polarizability corresponding to imaginary frequencies, for example, provides the van der Waals dispersion coefficients, with the leading term depending on the inverse sixth power of the interatomic distance between atoms A and B.\(^{19}\)

\[
E_{\text{dispersion}}(R_{AB}) = \frac{C_{6}}{R_{AB}^{6}} + \frac{C_{8}}{R_{AB}^{8}} + \ldots
\]  

An alternative formulation of response theory is in terms of Greens functions, also known as propagators.\(^{18}\) For two time-dependent operators \( P(t) \) and \( Q(t) \), a propagator may be defined as in eq. (10.119).

\[
\langle\langle P(t) \mid Q(t') \rangle\rangle = -i\theta(t-t')\langle\langle P(t) \rangle\rangle_{\langle\langle Q(t') \rangle\rangle} + i\theta(t'-t')\langle\langle P(t) \rangle\rangle_{\langle\langle Q(t') \rangle\rangle}
\]  

Here the \( \pm \) sign depends on whether \( P \) and \( Q \) are number-conserving operators or not, and \( \theta(x) \) is the Heaviside step function \( \theta(x) = 0 \) for \( x < 0 \) and \( \theta(x) = 1 \) for \( x > 0 \). The propagator may be Fourier transformed to an energy representation, also called a spectral or frequency representation:

\[
\langle\langle P, Q \rangle\rangle_n = \sum_{\omega} \frac{\langle\langle \hat{P} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} \langle\langle \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle_{\omega}^{*}}{\omega - E_n + i\eta} = \sum_{\omega} \frac{\langle\langle \hat{P} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} \langle\langle \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle_{\omega}^{*}}{\omega + E_n - i\eta}
\]  

(10.120)

Here \( \eta \) is an infinitesimally small number that ensures that the transformation is also valid when \( \omega = \pm(E_n - E_m) \).

If the \( \hat{P}, \hat{Q} \) operators correspond to removal or addition of an electron, the propagator is called an electron propagator. The poles of the propagator (where the denominator is zero) correspond to ionization potentials and electron affinities.

If the \( \hat{P}, \hat{Q} \) operators are number-conserving operators, the propagator is called a Polarization Propagator (PP), and is completely equivalent to the response formulation in eq. (10.117). The \( \langle\langle \hat{r} \rangle\rangle_o \) propagator, for example, is given in eq. (10.121) and can be compared with the expression for the static case in eq. (10.60).

\[
\langle\langle \hat{r} \rangle\rangle_o = \sum_{\omega} \frac{\langle\langle \hat{P} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} \langle\langle \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle_{\omega}^{*}}{\omega - E_n + E_0} + \frac{\langle\langle \hat{P} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} \langle\langle \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle_{\omega}^{*}}{\omega + E_n - E_0}
\]  

(10.121)

The poles correspond to excitation energies, and the residues (numerator at the poles) transition moments between the reference and excited states (excitation or deexcitation).

Although eq. (10.120) for the propagator appears to involve the same effort as the perturbation approach (sum over all excited states, eq. (10.21)), the actual calculation of the propagator is somewhat different. Returning to the time representation of the polarization propagator, it may be written in terms of a commutator:

\[
\langle\langle P(t) \mid Q(t') \rangle\rangle = -i\theta(t-t')\langle\langle P(t) \rangle\rangle_{\langle\langle Q(t') \rangle\rangle} + i\theta(t'-t')\langle\langle P(t) \rangle\rangle_{\langle\langle Q(t') \rangle\rangle}
\]  

(10.122)

The Heisenberg equation of motion is shown in eq. (10.123).

\[
\frac{d\langle\langle P(t) \rangle\rangle}{dt} = [\langle\langle P(t) \rangle\rangle, H]
\]  

(10.123)

When used for the propagator, it yields eq. (10.124).

\[
\frac{i}{\hbar}\delta\langle\langle P(t) \mid Q(t') \rangle\rangle = \delta(t-t')\langle\langle P(t) \rangle\rangle_{\langle\langle Q(t') \rangle\rangle} + \langle\langle P(t) \rangle\rangle_{\langle\langle Q(t') \rangle\rangle} \delta(t-t')
\]  

(10.124)

Moving back to the frequency representation, and using the fact that \( \langle\langle \hat{P} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} = \langle\langle \hat{P} \mid \hat{H} \mid \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} \), allows eq. (10.124) to be written as eq. (10.125).

\[
\omega\langle\langle \hat{P}, \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} = \langle\langle \hat{P}, \hat{H} \mid \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} + \langle\langle \hat{P}, \hat{H} \mid \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} + \langle\langle \hat{P}, \hat{H} \mid \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} + \ldots
\]  

(10.125)

The propagator may thus be written as an infinite series of expectation values of increasingly complex operators over the reference wave function.

We now define identity and Hamiltonian superoperators as in eq. (10.127).

\[
\hat{I} = Q
\]

\[
\hat{H} = [\hat{Q}, \hat{H}]
\]

\[
\hat{H}^2 = [\hat{H}, \hat{H}]
\]

\[
\hat{H}^3 = [\hat{H}, \hat{H}^2]
\]

Here the “super” reflects that the \( \hat{P}, \hat{Q} \) operators work on operators rather than functions. The binary product corresponding to a bracket is in superoperator space defined as in eq. (10.128).

\[
\langle\langle \hat{P}, \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle = \langle\langle \hat{P} \rangle\rangle_{\langle\langle \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle}^*
\]

(10.128)

The infinite sum eq. (10.126) can then be written as an inverse.

\[
\langle\langle \hat{P} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} = \langle\langle \hat{P} \rangle\rangle_{\omega}^* + \omega \langle\langle \hat{P}, \hat{H} \mid \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} + \omega^2 \langle\langle \hat{P}, \hat{H}^2 \mid \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} + \omega^3 \langle\langle \hat{P}, \hat{H} \mid \hat{H} \mid \hat{Q} \rangle\rangle_{\omega} + \ldots
\]  

(10.129)

This may be further transformed by an “inner projection” onto a complete set of excitation and deexcitation operators, \( \hat{h} \). This is equivalent to inserting a “resolution

\[\ldots\]
of the identity" in the operator space (remember that superoperators work on operators).

\[ \langle [P; Q] \rangle \omega = \langle [\mathbf{H}] \rangle \delta [\mathbf{H}]^{-1} \langle [\mathbf{H}] \rangle \]  

(10.130)

For the electron propagator we may write \( \mathbf{h} \) as in eq. (10.131).

\[ \mathbf{h} = \{ h_1, h_2, \ldots \} \]  

(10.131)

Here \( \mathbf{h} \) corresponds to addition or removal of an electron, \( \mathbf{h}_1 \) to addition or removal of an electron while simultaneously generating a single excitation or deexcitation, \( \mathbf{h}_2 \) to addition or removal of an electron while simultaneously generating a double excitation or deexcitation, etc.

For the polarization propagator we may write \( \mathbf{h} \) as in eq. (10.132).

\[ \mathbf{h} = \{ h_1, h_2, h_3, \ldots \} \]  

(10.132)

Here \( \mathbf{h} \) generates all single excitations and deexcitations, \( \mathbf{h}_1 \), all double excitations and deexcitations, etc.

So far everything is exact. A complete manifold of excitation operators, however, means that all excited states are considered, i.e. a "full CI" approach. Approximate versions of propagator methods may be generated by restricting the excitation level, i.e. truncating \( \mathbf{h} \). A complete specification furthermore requires a selection of the reference, normally taken as an HF, MCSCF or MP wave function.

The simplest polarization propagator corresponds to choosing an HF reference and including only the \( \mathbf{h}_1 \) operator, known as the Random Phase Approximation (RPA), which is identical to Time-Dependent Hartree–Fock (TDHF), with the corresponding density functional version called Time-Dependent Density Functional Theory (TDDFT).\(^2\) For the static case (\( \omega = 0 \)) the resulting equations are identical to those obtained from a coupled Hartree–Fock approach (Section 10.5). When used in conjunction with coupled cluster wave functions, the approach is usually called Equation Of Motion (EOM) methods.\(^2\)

Splitting the \( \mathbf{h}_1 \) operator into an excitation and deexcitation part, \( \mathbf{h}_1 = [e \mathbf{d}] \), allows the propagator to be written as two property vectors times an inverse matrix, often called the principal propagator.

\[ \langle [P; Q] \rangle \omega \approx \langle [\mathbf{d}] \mathbf{e} \rangle \left( \begin{array}{cc} \omega \mathbf{1} - \mathbf{A} & -\mathbf{B} \\ -\mathbf{B} & -\omega \mathbf{1} + \mathbf{A} \end{array} \right)^{-1} \langle [\mathbf{d}] \mathbf{Q} \rangle \]  

(10.133)

The \( \mathbf{A} \) and \( \mathbf{B} \) matrices and \( \langle [P; Q] \rangle \) vectors are defined in eq. (10.134).

\[ \begin{align*} \mathbf{A} &= \langle [\mathbf{e}] \mathbf{e} \rangle = \langle \Psi | [\mathbf{e}] [\mathbf{H}] | \Psi \rangle \\ \mathbf{B} &= \langle [\mathbf{d}] \mathbf{e} \rangle = \langle \Psi | [\mathbf{d}] [\mathbf{H}] | \Psi \rangle \\ \langle [\mathbf{e}] \rangle &= \langle \Psi | [\mathbf{e}] | \Psi \rangle \\ \langle [\mathbf{d}] \mathbf{e} \rangle &= \langle \Psi | [\mathbf{d}] [\mathbf{H}] | \Psi \rangle \end{align*} \]  

(10.134)

The \( \mathbf{A} \) matrix involves elements between singly excited states while \( \mathbf{B} \) is given by matrix elements between doubly excited states and the reference. The \( \langle [P; Q] \rangle \) elements are matrix elements of the operator between the reference and a singly excited state. If \( \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{r} \) this is a transition moment, and in the general case it is often denoted a "property gradient", by analogy with the case where the operator is the Hamiltonian (eq. (3.69)).

\[ \begin{align*} \mathbf{A}^0 &= \langle \Psi | [\mathbf{H}] | \Psi \rangle - E_\mathbf{0} \delta_{\mathbf{0} \mathbf{0}} \\ \mathbf{B}^0 &= -\langle \Psi | [\mathbf{H}] | \Psi \rangle \\ \mathbf{P}^0 &= \langle \Psi | [\mathbf{P}] | \Psi \rangle \end{align*} \]  

(10.135)

The matrix elements may be reduced to orbital energies and two-electron integrals, as described in Section 4.2.1. Although it is not clear from this derivation, the principal propagator in eq. (10.123) is related to the \( \mathbf{A} \) matrix in the CHF eq. (10.55), i.e. \( \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} \) in eq. (10.133) is the same as \( \mathbf{A} \) in eq. (10.55).

Since the dimension of the principal propagator matrix may be large, it is impractical to calculate the inverse matrix in eq. (10.133) directly. In practice, the propagator is therefore calculated in two steps, by first solving for an intermediate vector \( \mathbf{X} \) corresponding to \( \mathbf{U} \) in eq. (10.53).

\[ \begin{pmatrix} \omega \mathbf{1} - \mathbf{A} & -\mathbf{B} \\ -\mathbf{B} & -\omega \mathbf{1} + \mathbf{A} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \langle [d] \mathbf{Q} \rangle \\ \langle \mathbf{d} \rangle \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \langle [d] \mathbf{Q} \rangle \\ \langle \mathbf{d} \rangle \end{pmatrix} \]  

(10.136)

Multiplying it onto the property gradient gives eq. (10.137).

\[ \langle [P; Q] \rangle \omega = \langle [\mathbf{e}] \rangle \langle [\mathbf{d}] \rangle \mathbf{X} \]  

(10.137)

The \( \mathbf{X} \) vector in eq. (10.136) may be determined by iterative techniques, analogous to those used in direct CI (Section 4.2.4), i.e. the principal propagator matrix is never constructed explicitly. If the \( \mathbf{Q} \) vector is set equal to zero in eq. (10.136), the equation corresponds to determining the poles of the principal propagator, i.e. the excitation energies. This is an eigenvalue problem, and finding the principal propagator for a CI wave function is equivalent to diagonalizing the CI Hamiltonian matrix (Section 4.2).

For other types of reference wave functions (e.g. HF, MCSCF or MP), the propagator formulation allows a generalization of calculating excitation energies.

The RPA method may be improved either by choosing an MCSCF reference wave function, leading to the MCRPA method, or by extending the operator manifold beyond \( \mathbf{h}_1 \). By expanding the two parts of the propagator (property vector and principal propagator) as a function of the fluctuation potential (difference between the HF and exact electron–electron repulsion), it may be shown that RPA corresponds to terminating the expansion at first order. In the Second-Order Polarization Propagator Approximation (SOPPA), the expansion is carried out through second order, which may be shown to require inclusion of the \( \mathbf{h}_1 \) operator, and corresponds to choosing an MP wave function as the reference. The Higher RPA (HRPA) method may be considered as an approximation to SOPPA, where the part involving the \( \mathbf{h}_1 \) operator is neglected. A full third-order propagator model has not been implemented, but a hybrid
method called SOPPA(CCSSD) has been proposed, where the first- and second-order perturbation coefficients are replaced with the corresponding coupled cluster amplitudes (eqs (4.36), (4.39) and (4.52)) and this incorporates some of the higher order effects. It tends to perform somewhat better for cases where the HF reference contains significant multi-reference character.

Although the formal expression for the propagator and the second-order perturbation formula are identical, involving a sum over all excited states, the final practical expressions for the propagator refer only to the reference wave function, and the basic computational problem involves matrix elements between Slater determinants, and matrix manipulations. Modern implementations of propagator methods are computationally related to the derivative techniques discussed in Section 10.3. The significance is that propagator methods allow a calculation of a property directly, without having to construct all the excited states explicitly, i.e. avoiding the sum over states method. This also means that there are no excited wave functions directly associated with a given propagator method. The RPA method includes all singly and some doubly excited states, and typically generates results that are better than those from a CI calculation with single excitations only (if the B matrix is neglected in eq. (10.36), the results are identical to CIS), but not as good as CISSD. Similarly, the SOPPA method involves an expansion through second order, and typically gives results of MP2 quality, or slightly better.

10.10 Property Basis Sets

The basis set requirements for obtaining a certain accuracy of a given molecular property is usually different from that required for a corresponding reference property. There is no analogy to the variational principle for properties, since the value in general is not bound. Basis sets for properties must therefore be tailored by adding functions until the desired accuracy is obtained. Given the nature of the perturbation, the specific needs may be very different. An electric field, for example, measures how easily the wave function distorts, i.e. it is primarily dependent on the most loosely bound electrons since they are the ones that are most easily polarized. The important part of the wave function is thus the “tail”, necessitating diffuse function in the basis set. Furthermore, an electric field polarizes the electron cloud, and polarization clouds are therefore also important. For perturbation-independent basis functions, there is a “2n + 1” rule, i.e. if the unperturbed system is reasonably described by basis functions up to angular momentum L, then a basis set that includes functions up to angular momentum L + n can predict properties up to order 2n + 1. A minimum description of molecules containing first and second row atoms require s- and p-functions, implying that d-functions are necessary for the polarizability and the first hyperpolarizability, and f-functions should be included for the second and third hyperpolarizability. A more realistic description, however, would include d-functions for the unperturbed system, necessitating f-functions for the polarizability.

A completely different type of property is for example spin–spin coupling constants, which contain information about the interactions of electronic and nuclear spins. One of the operators is a δ function (Fermi contact, eq. (10.73)), which measures the quality of the wave function at a single point, the nuclear position. Since Gaussian functions have an incorrect behaviour at the nucleus (zero derivative compared with the “cusp” displayed by an exponential function), this requires the addition of a number of very “tight” functions (large exponents) in order to predict coupling constants accurately.

References


Illustrating the Concepts

In this chapter we will illustrate some of the methods described in the previous sections. It is of course impossible to cover all types of bonding and geometries, but for highlighting the features we will look at the \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \) molecule. This is small enough that we can employ the full spectrum of methods and basis sets, and illustrate some general trends.

11.1 Geometry Convergence

The experimental geometry for \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \) has a bond length of 0.9578 Å and an angle of 104.49°.\(^1\,^2\) Let us investigate how the calculated geometry changes as a function of the theoretical sophistication.

11.1.1 Ab Initio methods

We will look at the convergence as a function of basis set and amount of electron correlation (Figure 4.3). For independent-particle methods (HF and DFT) we will use the polarization consistent basis sets (pc-\( n \), while for correlated methods (MP2 and CCSD(T)) we will use the correlation consistent basis sets (cc-p\( \text{VXZ} \), \( X = D, T, Q, 5, 6 \)). Table 11.1 shows how the geometry changes as a function of basis set at the HF level of theory, where the quality of the basis sets is indicated by the maximum angular momentum function (\( L_{\text{max}} \)) included in the basis set.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>L_{\text{max}}</th>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>( R_{\text{OH}} ) (Å)</th>
<th>( \theta_{\text{HOH}} ) (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 pc-0</td>
<td>0.9619</td>
<td>113.08</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 cc-pVDZ</td>
<td>0.9463</td>
<td>104.61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>0.9406</td>
<td>106.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>0.9396</td>
<td>106.22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 cc-pV5Z</td>
<td>0.9396</td>
<td>106.33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 cc-pV6Z</td>
<td>0.9396</td>
<td>106.33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Including electron correlation at the MP2 level increases the bond length by about 0.018 Å, fairly independently of the basis set. As a consequence, the bond angle decreases, by about 2°. Note that the bond length decreases as the basis set is enlarged, thus a minimum or DZP type basis may give bond lengths that are longer than the experimental value for some systems. At the HF limit, however, covalent bond lengths will normally be too short.

The geometry variation at the MP2 level is shown in Table 11.2, with the change relative to the HF level given as \( \Delta \) values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>( R_{\text{OH}} ) (Å)</th>
<th>( \theta_{\text{HOH}} ) (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVDZ</td>
<td>0.9649</td>
<td>101.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>0.9591</td>
<td>103.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>0.9577</td>
<td>104.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pV5Z</td>
<td>0.9579</td>
<td>104.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pV6Z</td>
<td>0.9581</td>
<td>104.34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The variation at the CCSD(T) level is shown in Table 11.3, with the change relative to the MP2 level given as \( \Delta \) values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>( R_{\text{OH}} ) (Å)</th>
<th>( \theta_{\text{HOH}} ) (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVDZ</td>
<td>0.963</td>
<td>101.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>0.9594</td>
<td>103.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>0.9579</td>
<td>104.12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Table 11.1, the \( R_{\text{OH}} \) values for basis sets cc-pV5Z and pc-3 are slightly higher than for the other basis sets, indicating an overestimation of the repulsion between the two hydrogens. The underestimated bond lengths at the HF level are quite general for covalent bonds, while the overestimation of bond angles is not. Although the increased repulsion/attraction between atom pairs in general is underestimated owing to too short bond lengths and too large charge polarization, these factors may pull in different directions for a larger molecule, and bond angles may either be too large or too small. Note that the bond length decreases as the basis set is enlarged, thus a minimum or DZP type basis may give bond lengths that are longer than the experimental value for some systems. At the HF limit, however, covalent bond lengths will normally be too short.

The geometry variation at the MP2 level is shown in Table 11.2, with the change relative to the HF level given as \( \Delta \) values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>( R_{\text{OH}} ) (Å)</th>
<th>( \theta_{\text{HOH}} ) (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVDZ</td>
<td>0.9649</td>
<td>101.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>0.9591</td>
<td>103.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>0.9577</td>
<td>104.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pV5Z</td>
<td>0.9579</td>
<td>104.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pV6Z</td>
<td>0.9581</td>
<td>104.34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Including electron correlation at the MP2 level increases the bond length by about 0.018 Å, fairly independently of the basis set. As a consequence, the bond angle decreases, by about 2°. Note that the convergence in terms of basis set is much slower than at the HF level. From the observed behaviour the MP2 basis set limit may be estimated as 0.9582 ± 0.0001 Å and 104.40° ± 0.04°, which is already in good agreement with the experimental values. \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \) at the equilibrium geometry is a system where the HF is a good zeroth-order wave function, and perturbation methods should consequently converge fast. Indeed, the MP2 method recovers ~94% of the electron correlation energy, as shown in Table 11.7.

The variation at the CCSD(T) level is shown in Table 11.3, with the change relative to the MP2 level given as \( \Delta \) values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>( R_{\text{OH}} ) (Å)</th>
<th>( \theta_{\text{HOH}} ) (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVDZ</td>
<td>0.963</td>
<td>101.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>0.9594</td>
<td>103.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>0.9579</td>
<td>104.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pV5Z</td>
<td>0.9580</td>
<td>104.38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Footnotes:

Additional correlation with the CCSD(T) method gives only small changes relative to the MP2 level, and the effect of higher order correlation diminishes as the basis set is enlarged. For H\textsubscript{2}O the CCSD(T) method is virtually indistinguishable from CCSDT, and presumably very close to the full CI limit.\textsuperscript{3}

The HF wave function contains equal amounts of ionic and covalent contributions (Section 4.3). For covalently bonded systems, such as H\textsubscript{2}O, the HF wave function is too ionic, and the effect of electron correlation is to increase the covalent contribution. Since the ionic dissociation limit is higher in energy than the covalent, the effect is that the equilibrium bond length increases when correlation methods are used. For ionic bonds, such as metal–ligand compounds, the situation is reversed. In this case the HF wave function dissociates correctly, and bond lengths are normally too long. Inclusion of electron correlation adds attraction between ligands (dispersion interaction), which causes the metal–ligand bond lengths to contract.

The MP2 and CCSD(T) values in Tables 11.2 and 11.3 are for correlation of the valence electrons only, i.e. the frozen-core approximation. In order to assess the effect of core electron correlation, the basis sets need to be augmented with tight polarization functions. The corresponding MP2 results are shown in Table 11.4, where the Δ values refer to the change relative to the valence-only MP2 with the same basis set. Essentially identical changes are found at the CCSD(T) level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>(R_{\text{OH}}) (Å)</th>
<th>(q) (°)</th>
<th>(\Delta R_{\text{OH}}) (Å)</th>
<th>(\Delta q) (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cc-pCVDZ</td>
<td>0.9643</td>
<td>101.91</td>
<td>-0.0005</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pCVTZ</td>
<td>0.9580</td>
<td>103.63</td>
<td>-0.0008</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pCVQZ</td>
<td>0.9569</td>
<td>104.14</td>
<td>-0.0009</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pCV5Z</td>
<td>0.9570</td>
<td>104.41</td>
<td>-0.0009</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pCV6Z</td>
<td>0.9572</td>
<td>104.47</td>
<td>-0.0009</td>
<td>0.13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The effect of core electron correlation is small: a small decrease of the bond length and a corresponding small increase in bond angle. Addition of the CCSD(T)–MP2 changes (Table 11.3) to the MP2 basis set limiting results in Table 11.4 gives a bond length of 0.9573 Å and an angle of 104.56°. Further basis set increases will presumably lead to increases of ~0.0002 Å and ~0.08°. Relativistic effects at the Dirac–Fock–Breit level of theory have been reported to give changes of ~0.0003 Å and ~0.07°. Including these corrections allows a final predicted structure of 0.9577 Å and 104.57°, which can be compared with the experimental values of 0.9578 Å and 104.49°.

These results show that \textit{ab initio} methods can give results of very high accuracy, provided that sufficiently large basis sets are used. Unfortunately, the combination of highly correlated methods, such as CCSD(T), and large basis sets means that such calculations are computationally expensive. For the H\textsubscript{2}O system a CCSD(T) calculation with the cc-pV5Z basis is already quite demanding. The results also show, however, that a quite respectable level of accuracy is reached at the MP2/cc-pVTZ level, which is applicable to a much larger variety of molecules. Furthermore, the errors at a given level are quite systematic, and relative values (comparing for example changes in geometries upon introduction of substituents) will be predicted with a substantially higher accuracy.

It should also be noted that the effect of electron correlation at the MP2 level (relative to HF) is largely independent of the basis set, but there is a significant coupling between the basis set and the higher order correlation (beyond MP2) effect. The importance of higher order electron correlation decreases as the basis set is enlarged. This suggests that it is better to invest a given amount of computer time in performing a large basis set MP2 calculation than a highly correlated calculation with a modest basis, at least when the HF is a good zeroth-order wave function.

### 11.1.2 Density functional methods

The two variables in DFT methods are the basis set and the choice of the exchange–correlation potential. The performance for six popular functionals on the geometry for the pc-\(n\) basis sets is given in Tables 11.5 and 11.6. The LSDA functional employs the uniform electron gas approximation, the BLYP, PBE and HCTH functionals are of the gradient-corrected type, while the B3LYP and PBE0 are hybrid types that contain a fraction of Hartree–Fock exchange (Section 6.3.4). The grid size for the numerical integration of the exchange–correlation energy is sufficiently large that the error from incomplete grids can be neglected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>LSDA</th>
<th>BLYP</th>
<th>PBE</th>
<th>HCTH</th>
<th>B3LYP</th>
<th>PBE0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pc-0</td>
<td>0.9878</td>
<td>0.9902</td>
<td>0.9936</td>
<td>0.9854</td>
<td>0.9841</td>
<td>0.9806</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pc-1</td>
<td>0.9764</td>
<td>0.9791</td>
<td>0.9783</td>
<td>0.9656</td>
<td>0.9663</td>
<td>0.9645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pc-2</td>
<td>0.9696</td>
<td>0.9706</td>
<td>0.9689</td>
<td>0.9589</td>
<td>0.9604</td>
<td>0.9574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pc-3</td>
<td>0.9700</td>
<td>0.9704</td>
<td>0.9689</td>
<td>0.9589</td>
<td>0.9604</td>
<td>0.9576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pc-4</td>
<td>0.9700</td>
<td>0.9704</td>
<td>0.9689</td>
<td>0.9590</td>
<td>0.9604</td>
<td>0.9576</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>LSDA</th>
<th>BLYP</th>
<th>PBE</th>
<th>HCTH</th>
<th>B3LYP</th>
<th>PBE0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pc-0</td>
<td>111.82</td>
<td>109.27</td>
<td>109.40</td>
<td>109.43</td>
<td>110.72</td>
<td>110.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pc-1</td>
<td>104.15</td>
<td>103.24</td>
<td>103.09</td>
<td>103.22</td>
<td>104.06</td>
<td>103.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pc-2</td>
<td>105.10</td>
<td>104.56</td>
<td>104.27</td>
<td>104.52</td>
<td>105.19</td>
<td>104.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pc-3</td>
<td>104.98</td>
<td>104.52</td>
<td>104.21</td>
<td>104.44</td>
<td>105.13</td>
<td>104.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pc-4</td>
<td>104.98</td>
<td>104.52</td>
<td>104.21</td>
<td>104.42</td>
<td>105.13</td>
<td>104.90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The total energy in \textit{ab initio} theory is given relative to the separated particles, i.e., bare nuclei and electrons. The experimental value for an atom is the sum of the electronic contributions from the molecular potentials for a molecule. The correlation energy is the difference between finite and infinite nuclear masses, allowing the experimental non-relativistic energy to be estimated (Table 11.7).

The correlation energy is expected to have an inverse power dependence on the basis-set size. A functional form, including a mass correction of 0.0028 au (a non-Born–Oppenheimer effect that accounts for the difference between finite and infinite nuclear masses) allows the "experimental" non-relativistic energy to be estimated as

\[ E_{\text{HF}} - 0.0268, E_{\text{MP2}} - 0.228, E_{\text{MP3}} - 0.235, E_{\text{CCSD}} - 0.238, E_{\text{CISD}} - 0.230 \]

For the cc-pVDZ basis set, the full CI result is available, which allows an assessment of the performance of various approximate methods. The percent of the electron correlation recovered by different methods is shown in Table 11.8.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
\hline
\hline
HF & -0.0268 & -0.0267 & -0.0267 & -0.0267 & -0.0267 & -0.0267 \\
MP2 & -0.226 & -0.226 & -0.226 & -0.226 & -0.226 & -0.226 \\
MP3 & -0.235 & -0.235 & -0.235 & -0.235 & -0.235 & -0.235 \\
CCSD & -0.238 & -0.238 & -0.238 & -0.238 & -0.238 & -0.238 \\
CISD & -0.230 & -0.230 & -0.230 & -0.230 & -0.230 & -0.230 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Total energy convergence}
\end{table}

As already mentioned, the \textit{H} ground state is an eigenstate of the \textit{HF} Hamiltonian. Furthermore, since the \textit{HF} wave function provides a good description of the ground state, the \textit{HF} wave function is used as a reference for the \textit{HF} energy. The \textit{HF} energy is expected to have an exponential behaviour, with an infinite basis set limit of \( -76.0675 \) au in good agreement with the estimated \textit{HF} limit of \( -76.480 \) au. Including also a mass correction of 0.0028 au allows the "experimental" non-relativistic energy to be estimated as

\[ E_{\text{HF}} - 0.0268, E_{\text{MP2}} - 0.228, E_{\text{MP3}} - 0.235, E_{\text{CCSD}} - 0.238, E_{\text{CISD}} - 0.230 \]

\[ E_{\text{CCSD(T)}} - 0.282, E_{\text{CISD(T)}} - 0.272, E_{\text{MP2}} - 0.256, E_{\text{MP3}} - 0.241, E_{\text{CCSD}} - 0.279, E_{\text{CISD}} - 0.230 \]

The \textit{HF} energy is expected to have an inverse power dependence on the basis-set size. A functional form, including a mass correction of 0.0028 au allows the "experimental" non-relativistic energy to be estimated as

\[ E_{\text{HF}} - 0.0268, E_{\text{MP2}} - 0.228, E_{\text{MP3}} - 0.235, E_{\text{CCSD}} - 0.238, E_{\text{CISD}} - 0.230 \]

\[ E_{\text{CCSD(T)}} - 0.282, E_{\text{CISD(T)}} - 0.272, E_{\text{MP2}} - 0.256, E_{\text{MP3}} - 0.241, E_{\text{CCSD}} - 0.279, E_{\text{CISD}} - 0.230 \]
value for the valence electrons (i.e. 0.308 divided between four electron pairs is 0.077 au).

The percent of the total correlation energy is given in parenthesis in Table 11.9; in the infinite basis set limit the MP2 method recovers 97.3%. Notice, however, that while the perturbation series is smoothly convergent with the cc-pVDZ basis, it becomes oscillating with the larger basis set. With the cc-pCVTZ basis, the MP5 result is higher in energy than MP4, and with the cc-pCVQZ the MP3 result is higher than the MP2 value. This may be an indication that the perturbation series is actually divergent in a sufficiently large basis set. The extrapolated MP4 value is in perfect agreement with the experimental estimate, but this is probably fortuitous. The CSD method performs rather poorly, yielding results that are worse than MP2 but at a cost similar to an MP4 calculation.

Since the CCSD(T) result is essentially equivalent to a full CI (Table 11.7), the data show that the cc-pCVTZ, cc-pCVQZ, and cc-pCV5Z basis sets are 90%, 96% and 98%, respectively. Slightly lower percentages have been found in other systems. This illustrates the slow convergence of the correlation energy as a function of basis set. Each step up in basis set quality roughly doubles the number of functions. The cc-pCV1Z basis is capable of recovering 99% of the correlation energy, and improving the basis from cc-pCV1Z to cc-pCV2Z allows an additional 21% to be calculated. The next step up gives only 6% and the expansion from cc-pCV2Z to cc-pCV3Z only 2%. The last 5-10% of the correlation energy is therefore hard to get, and getting only a very large basis set. This slow convergence is the principal limitations of traditional ab initio methods. The CCSD(T)/cc-pCV5Z total energy is still 18 kJ/mol off the experimentally derived non-relativistic value, with the remaining error being distributed roughly equally between incomplete basis set and incomplete electron correlation effects. These errors are comparable to the Born-Oppenheimer correction of 7 kJ/mol, and substantially smaller than the relativistic correction of 118 kJ/mol. Calculating the total energy with an accuracy of a few kJ/mol is thus only borderline possible for this simple system.

Although the total energy calculated by DFT methods should in principle converge to the "experimental" value (~76.438 au), there are no upper or lower bounds for the currently employed methods with approximate exchange-correlation functionals. Indeed, all the gradient-corrected methods used here (BLYP, PBE, and HCTH) give total energies well below the "experimental" value with the pc-4 basis set.

### 11.3 Dipole Moment Convergence

As examples of molecular properties we will look at how the dipole moment and harmonic vibrational frequencies converge as a function of level of theory.

#### 11.3.1 Ab Initio methods

The experimental value for the dipole moment is 1.847 debye,
and the calculated value at various levels of theory is shown in Table 11.10.

The dipole moment may be considered as the response of the wave function (energy) to the presence of an external electric field, in the limit where the field strength is vanishingly small. It is consequently sensitive to the representation of the wave function "tail", i.e. far from the nuclei, and diffuse functions are therefore expected to be important. Although the results with the regular cc-pVXZ basis sets may be converging, the rate of convergence is slow, as compared with the results for the basis sets augmented with diffuse functions. This illustrates that care must be taken when calculating properties other than the total energy, as standard basis sets may not be able to describe important aspects of the wave function.

The HF dipole moment is too large, which is quite general, as the HF wave function overestimates the ionic contribution. The MP2 procedure recovers the large majority of the correlation effect, but the convergence with the cc-pCVQZ basis sets is not smooth, and does not readily allow an extrapolation. The CCSD(T) result with the aug-cc-pVQZ basis is very close to the experimental value, although remaining basis set effects and further correlation may change the value slightly. As expected for this property, the effect of core correlation is small, as shown by MP2 calculations in Table 11.11.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>HF</th>
<th>MP2</th>
<th>CCSD(T)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVDZ</td>
<td>2.057</td>
<td>1.964</td>
<td>1.936</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>2.026</td>
<td>1.922</td>
<td>1.903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>2.008</td>
<td>1.904</td>
<td>1.890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pV5Z</td>
<td>2.003</td>
<td>1.895</td>
<td>1.884</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 11.3.2 Density functional methods

Table 11.10 establishes that diffuse functions are mandatory for calculating dipole moments, and only the aug-pc-n basis set have been used with DFT methods. The calculated results are given in Table 11.12.

The calculated dipole moment is remarkably insensitive to the size of the basis set, once polarization functions have been included (i.e. at least aug-pc-1). Note that the LSDA value in this case is substantially better than the GGA functionals (BLYP, PBE, and HCTH), i.e. this is a case where the theoretically "poorer" method provides better results than the more advanced gradient methods. Inclusion of "exact" exchange (B3LYP and PBE0) again improves the performance, and provides results very close to the experimental value, even with relatively small basis sets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>HF</th>
<th>MP2</th>
<th>CCSD(T)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aug-pc-pCVDZ</td>
<td>2.001</td>
<td>1.869</td>
<td>1.849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aug-pc-pCVTZ</td>
<td>1.983</td>
<td>1.857</td>
<td>1.843</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.4 Vibrational Frequency Convergence

The experimental values for the fundamental vibrational frequencies are 1595, 3657 and 3756 cm$^{-1}$, while the corresponding harmonic values are 1649, 3832 and 3943 cm$^{-1}$. The differences due to anharmonicity are thus 54, 175 and 187 cm$^{-1}$, i.e. 3–5% of the harmonic values.

11.4.1 Ab Initio methods

The calculated harmonic frequencies at the HF level are given in Table 11.13.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>$v_1$</th>
<th>$v_2$</th>
<th>$v_3$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pc-0</td>
<td>1690</td>
<td>3966</td>
<td>4145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pc-1</td>
<td>1751</td>
<td>4120</td>
<td>4233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pc-2</td>
<td>1744</td>
<td>4138</td>
<td>4239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pc-3</td>
<td>1746</td>
<td>4133</td>
<td>4232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pc-4</td>
<td>1748</td>
<td>4130</td>
<td>4231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Experimental</td>
<td>1649</td>
<td>3832</td>
<td>3943</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vibrational frequencies are examples of a slightly more complicated property. The frequencies are obtained from the force constant matrix (second derivative of the energy), evaluated at the equilibrium geometry (Section 16.2.2). Both the equilibrium geometry and the shape of the energy surface depend on the theoretical level. Part of the change in frequencies is due to changes in the geometry since the force constant in general decreases with increasing bond length.

The HF vibrational frequencies are too high by about 7% relative to the experimental harmonic values, and by 30–33% relative to the anharmonic values. This overestimation is due to the incorrect dissociation and the corresponding bond lengths being too short (Table 11.1), and is consequently quite general. Vibrational frequencies at the HF level are therefore often scaled by $\sim 0.9$ to partly compensate for these systematic errors.\[1\]

The inclusion of electron correlation normally lowers the force constants, since the correlation energy increases as a function of bond length. This usually means that vibrational frequencies decrease, although there are exceptions (vibrational frequencies also depend on off-diagonal force constants). The values calculated the MP2 and CCSD(T) levels are shown in Tables 11.14 and 11.15.

The MP2 treatment recovers the majority of the correlation effect, and the CCSD(T) results with the cc-pVQZ basis sets are in good agreement with the experimental values. The remaining discrepancies of 9, 13 and 10 cm$^{-1}$ are mainly due to basis set inadequacies, as indicated by the MP2/cc-pV5Z results. The MP2 values are in respectable agreement with the experimental... frequencies. It should be noted that relativistic corrections for the frequencies are expected to be of the order of 1 cm$^{-1}$ or less.\[12\]

### Table 11.14 H$\text{$_2$}$O MP2 harmonic frequencies (cm$^{-1}$) as a function of basis set (only valence electrons are correlated)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>$v_1$</th>
<th>$v_2$</th>
<th>$v_3$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVDZ</td>
<td>1678</td>
<td>3852</td>
<td>3971</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>1651</td>
<td>3855</td>
<td>3976</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>1643</td>
<td>3855</td>
<td>3978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pV5Z</td>
<td>1636</td>
<td>3849</td>
<td>3974</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Experimental</td>
<td>1649</td>
<td>3832</td>
<td>3943</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11.15 H$\text{$_2$}$O CCSD(T) harmonic frequencies (cm$^{-1}$) as a function of basis set (only valence electrons are correlated)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>$v_1$</th>
<th>$v_2$</th>
<th>$v_3$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVDZ</td>
<td>1690</td>
<td>3822</td>
<td>3928</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVTZ</td>
<td>1669</td>
<td>3841</td>
<td>3946</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pVQZ</td>
<td>1659</td>
<td>3845</td>
<td>3952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Experimental</td>
<td>1649</td>
<td>3832</td>
<td>3943</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11.16 H$\text{$_2$}$O MP2 harmonic frequencies (cm$^{-1}$) as a function of basis set (all electrons are correlated)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>$v_1$</th>
<th>$v_2$</th>
<th>$v_3$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cc-pCVDZ</td>
<td>1679</td>
<td>3853</td>
<td>3973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc-pCVTZ</td>
<td>1651</td>
<td>3857</td>
<td>3976</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For comparing with experimental frequencies (which necessarily are anharmonic), there is normally little point in improving the theoretical level beyond MP2 with a TZP type basis set unless anharmonicity constants are calculated explicitly. Although anharmonicity can be approximately accounted for by scaling the harmonic frequencies by ~0.97, the remaining errors in the harmonic force constants at this level are normally smaller than the corresponding errors due to variations in anharmonicity.

### 11.4.2 Density functional methods

The harmonic frequencies calculated with various DFT methods as a function of basis set are shown in Tables 11.17–11.19.

The convergence as a function of basis set is similar to that observed for the HF method. The hybrid B3LYP and PBE0 functionals again show the best performance. At the basis set limit, the deviations from the experimental harmonic frequencies are ~30 cm⁻¹, which is comparable to the results obtained with the MP2 method (Table 11.14). It is also clear from Tables 11.17–11.19 that inclusion of “exact” exchange (B3LYP and PBE0) substantially improves the performance. The “pure” DFT gradient methods, BLYP and PBE, have errors of ~150 cm⁻¹ for the stretching frequencies and ~50 cm⁻¹ for the angle bending.

### 11.5 Bond Dissociation Curves

As seen in Table 11.9, it is very difficult to converge the total energy to an accuracy of a few kJ/mol. The total energy, however, is in almost all cases irrelevant; the important quantity is the relative energy. Let us now examine how the shape of a potential energy surface depends on the theoretical level. We will look at two cases: stretching one of the O—H bonds in H₂O, and the HOH bending potential. The O—H dissociation curve is a case where the main change is associated with the difference in electron correlation between the two electrons in the bond being stretched. It should be noted that transition structures typically have bonds that are elongated by 0.5–0.8 Å, and the performance for the dissociation curve in this range will model the behaviour for describing bond breaking/forming reactions. The HOH bending energy, on the other hand, does not involve any bond breaking, and should therefore be less sensitive to the level of theory.

#### 11.5.1 Basis set effect at the Hartree–Fock level

Figure 11.1 shows the bond dissociation curves at the HF level with the STO-3G, 3-21G, 6-31G(d,p), cc-pVDZ and cc-pVQZ basis sets.

The total energy drops considerably upon going from the STO-3G to the 3-21G and again to the 6-31G(d,p) basis. This is primarily due to the improved description of the oxygen 1s-orbital. The two different types of DZP basis sets, 6-31G(d,p) and cc-pVDZ, give very similar results, and the improvement upon going to the cc-pVQZ basis is relatively minor.

More important than the total energy is the shape of the curve, i.e. the energy relative to the equilibrium value which is shown in Figure 11.2.

The minimal STO-3G basis increases much more steeply than the other basis sets, while the 3-21G is slightly too low in the ΔR range of 0.3–1.3 Å. Considering that the STO-3G and 3-21G basis set have the same number of primitive GTOs (Section 5.4.1), it is clear that uncontraction of the valence orbitals greatly improves the flexibility. The 6-31G(d,p), cc-pVDZ and cc-pVQZ basis sets give essentially identical curves, i.e. improvement of the basis set beyond DZP has a very minor effect at the HF level. Note also that the total energy for the 6-31G(d,p) basis is ~0.35 au (~130 kJ/mol, Figure 11.1) above the HF limit, but this error is constant to within a few kJ/mol over the whole range.
11.5.2 Performance of different types of wave function

We will now look at how different types of wave function behave when the O—H bond is stretched. The basis set used in all cases is the aug-cc-pVTZ, and the reference curve is taken as the [8,8]-CASSCF result, which is slightly larger than a full valence CI. As mentioned in Section 4.6, this allows a correct dissociation, and since all the valence electrons are correlated, it will generate a curve close to the full CI limit. The bond dissociation energy calculated at this level is 511 kJ/mol, which is comparable to the experimental value of 527 kJ/mol.

\( {\text{H}_2\text{O}} \) is a closed shell singlet and the HF wave function near the equilibrium geometry is of the RHF type. As one of the bonds is stretched, however, a UHF type will become lower in energy at some point (Section 4.4). Beyond this instability point, electron correlation methods may be based either on the RHF or UHF reference. The UHF wave function will be spin contaminated, which has some consequences as shown below. It should be noted that for open-shell species one similarly has the option of using either a ROHF or UHF reference wave function, but in such cases they will be different at all geometries, also near the equilibrium. In many cases, however, the UHF wave function is only slightly spin contaminated, and both approaches will then give similar results.

Figure 11.3 illustrates the behaviour of the single-determinant wave functions, RHF, UHF and PUHF (projected UHF, Section 4.4). The RHF energy continues to increase as the bond is stretched since it has the wrong dissociation limit, while the UHF converges to a value of 366 kJ/mol. At the equilibrium geometry the two electrons in the O—H bonding orbital are correlated, but this correlation energy disappears once the bond is broken. The UHF wave function correctly describes the dissociation limit in
terms of energy, but does not recover any of the electron correlation at equilibrium
(by definition, since UHF = RHF here). The difference between the UHF dissociation
energy and the CASSCF value is therefore a measure of the amount of electron cor-
relation in the O—H bond. With the present basis set this is 140 kJ/mol, a typical value
for the correlation energy between two electron in the same spatial MO.

At the dissociation limit the UHF wave function is essentially an equal mixture of
a singlet and triplet state, as discussed in Section 4.4. Removal of the triplet state by
projection (PUHF) lowers the energy in the intermediate range, but has no effect when
the bond is completely broken since the singlet and triplet states are degenerate here.

The RHF/UHF instability point with this basis occurs when the bond is stretched
0.42 Å. Figure 11.4 shows the behaviour of the energy curves in more detail in this
region. It is seen that the PUHF has a discontinuous derivative at the instability point,
and there is furthermore a shallow minimum right after the instability point, at an elon-
gation of ~0.50 Å.

Since the RHF curve is too high in the transition structure region (ΔR = 0.5–0.8 Å),
it is clear that RHF activation energies in general will be too large. UHF activation
energies may either be too high or too low, but the PUHF value will essentially always
be too low. Furthermore, the shape of a spin contaminated UHF energy surface will
be too flat, and PUHF surfaces will be qualitatively wrong in the TS region. Spin
contaminated UHF wave functions should consequently not be used for geometry
optimizations.

The corresponding difference between restricted, unrestricted and projected unre-
stricted wave functions at the MP2 level is shown in Figure 11.5.

The RMP2 rises too high, owing to the wrong dissociation limit of the underlying
RHF. Both the UMP2 and PUMP2 dissociation energies are in reasonable agreement

Figure 11.5 RHF, UHF and PUHF dissociation curves for H2O near the instability point

with the CASSCF value, but it is clear that the UMP2 energy is too high in the “inter-
mediate” range owing to spin contamination. The PUMP2 curve on the other hand,
traces the reference CASSCF values closely. Figure 11.6 shows the curves in more
detail near the RHF/UHF instability point.

Figure 11.6 RHF, UHF and PUHF dissociation curves for H2O near the instability point
The UMP2 energy is higher than the RMP2, although the UHF energy is lower than the RHF. At the HF level, the UHF energy is lowest owing to a combination of spin contamination and inclusion of electron correlation (Section 4.8.2). Since the MP2 procedure recovers most of the electron correlation, only the energy rising effect due to spin contamination remains, and the UMP2 energy becomes higher than RMP2. Removing the unwanted spin components makes the PUMP2 energy very similar to RMP2 for elongations less than ~1 Å, but is significantly better at longer bond lengths owing to the correct dissociation of the UHF wave function. The RMP2 energy follows the "exact" curve closely out to a ΔR of ~0.5 Å, and is in respectable agreement out to ~1.0 Å. RMP2 activation energies are therefore often in quite reasonable agreement with experimental or higher level theoretical values. It should also be noted that the discontinuity at the PUHF level essentially disappears when the projection is carried out on the MP2 wave function.

Figure 11.7 and 11.8 show the effect of extending the perturbation series at the RMP and UMP levels.

Addition of more terms in the perturbation series improves the results, although the effect of MP3 compared with MP2 is minute. As the bond is stretched more than ~1.5 Å, the perturbation series breaks down owing to the RHF wave function becoming too poor reference, and the energies start to decrease. The RMP4 method performs well out to an elongation of ~1.0 Å, and in the TS region where the bond is stretched 0.5-0.8 Å, the MP4 error is less than a few kJ/mol. Although real transition structures usually have more than one breaking/forming bond, and therefore are more sensitive to correlation effects, it is often found that the MP4 method with a suitable large basis can reproduce activation energies to within a few kJ/mol.

The improvement by extending the perturbation series beyond second order is small when a UHF wave function is used as the reference, i.e. the higher order terms do very little to reduce the spin contamination. In the dissociation limit the spin contamination is inconsequential, and the MP2, MP3 and MP4 results are all in reasonable agreement with the "exact" CASSCF result (but too high compared with the experimental result due to basis set limitations).

Figures 11.9 and 11.10 compare the performance of the CCSD and CCSD(T) methods, based on either an RHF or UHF reference wave function.
Compared with the RMPs curves (Figure 11.7), it can be seen that the infinite nature of coupled cluster performs somewhat better as the reference wave function becomes increasingly poor. While the RMP4 energy curve follows the “exact” out to an elongation of ~1.0 Å, the CCSD(T) has the same accuracy out to ~1.5 Å. Eventually, however, the wrong dissociation limit of the RHF wave also makes the coupled cluster methods break down, and the energy starts to decrease.

The spin contamination makes the UCC energy curves somewhat too high in the intermediate region, but the infinite nature of coupled cluster methods is significantly better at removing unwanted spin states as compared with UMP methods (Figure 11.8).

The only generally applicable CI method is CISD, where the singly and doubly excited configurations are treated variationally. These are also part of the MP4 method, which additionally has a term arising from disconnected quadruples, i.e. products of D-configurations, as well as a term due to (connected) triples. The CCSD method includes effects due to higher order products of singles and doubles, i.e. sextuples, octuples, etc. It is the inclusion of the product excitations that makes the MP and CC methods size extensive. Considering only the single and double excitations, and products thereof, allows a comparison between methods, and the performance of the CISD, MP4(SDQ) and CCSD models are shown in Figure 11.11.

It can be clearly seen that the CISD curve is worse than either of the other two, which are essentially identical out to a ΔR of 1.3 Å. The size inconsistency of the CISD method also has consequences for the energy curve where the bond is only half broken. Figure 11.11 illustrates why the use of CI methods has declined over the years: they normally give less accurate results compared with MP or CC methods, but at a similar or higher computational cost. Furthermore, it is difficult to include the important trityl excited configurations in CI methods (CISDT scales as $M^8$ basis), but relatively easy in MP or CC methods (MP4 and CCSD(T) scales as $M^7$ basis).

11.5.3 Density functional methods

The performance of various DFT methods resembles the HF results. A restricted type determinant leads to an incorrect dissociation, while an unrestricted determinant has the energetically correct dissociation limit. Figure 11.12 shows the performance of restricted and unrestricted type determinants with the BLYP and B3LYP functionals.

It is immediately clear that DFT methods do not have the “spin contamination” problem in the intermediate region; indeed, spin contamination is not well defined in DFT. Furthermore, as electron correlation is implicitly included, DFT methods are closer in shape to the CASSCF curve. Removing the “spin contamination” by projection methods results in discontinuous derivatives and artificial minima, analogously to the PUHF case in Figures 11.3 and 11.4, and should consequently not be employed.
11.6 Angle Bending Curves

The angle bending in H$_2$O occurs without breaking any bonds, and the electron correlation energy is therefore relatively constant over the whole curve. The HF, MP2 and MP4 bending potentials are shown in Figure 11.13, where the reference curve is taken from a parametric fit to a large number of spectroscopic data.$^{15}$ The HF and MP2 methods underestimate the barrier for linearity by 1 and 2 kJ/mol, respectively, while the CCSD(T) result is too high by 1 kJ/mol. The HF curve is slightly too high for small bond angles, while both the MP2 and CCSD(T) results are within a few tenths of a kJ/mol of the exact result over the whole curve. Compared with the bond dissociation discussed above, it is clear that relative energies of conformations that have similar bonding are fairly easy to calculate. While the HF and MP2 total energies with the aug-cc-pVTZ basis are ~1000 and ~300 kJ/mol higher than the exact values at the equilibrium geometry (Table 11.8), these errors are essentially constant over the whole surface.

11.7 Problematic Systems

The H$_2$O case is an example of a system where it is relatively easy to obtain good results. Nature is not always so kind; let us look at a couple of “theoretically difficult” cases.

### Table 11.20 Bond distance (Å) in FOOF with the aug-cc-pVTZ basis set

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>(R_{\text{OO}})</th>
<th>(R_{\text{FO}})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HF</td>
<td>1.300</td>
<td>1.356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP2</td>
<td>1.166</td>
<td>1.619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3</td>
<td>1.300</td>
<td>1.427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP4(SDQ)</td>
<td>1.291</td>
<td>1.453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSD</td>
<td>1.288</td>
<td>1.449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSD(T)</td>
<td>1.234</td>
<td>1.545</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CISD</td>
<td>1.295</td>
<td>1.389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVWN</td>
<td>1.189</td>
<td>1.559</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLYP</td>
<td>1.206</td>
<td>1.632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBE</td>
<td>1.198</td>
<td>1.606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCTH</td>
<td>1.176</td>
<td>1.609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B3LYP</td>
<td>1.227</td>
<td>1.523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBE0</td>
<td>1.233</td>
<td>1.479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Experimental</td>
<td>1.217</td>
<td>1.575</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Figure 11.13 Angle bending curves for H$_2$O

**11.7.1 The geometry of FOOF**

The FOOF molecule has an experimental geometry with an O—O bond length of 1.217 Å and an F—O bond of 1.575 Å.$^{16}$ The calculated bond distances at different levels of theory with the aug-cc-pVTZ basis set are given in Table 11.20. The results in Table 11.20 clearly show that the results are very sensitive to the inclusion of electron correlation. The MP4(SDQ) geometry is very similar to the CCSD one.
but inclusion of the triply excited configurations in the full MP4(SDTQ) method has a huge effect. The F—O bonds are elongated to the point (>2.5 Å) where perturbation theory breaks down since the underlying RHF wave function becomes extremely poor. The MP4(SDTQ) model basically does not work at all.

The DFT methods are all well behaved and perform surprisingly well for such a difficult system, with the B3LYP results being comparable to CCSD. The main problem is of course that there is no way of systematically improving the structure, or knowing beforehand whether DFT will be able to give a good description for the specific problem.

11.7.2 The dipole moment of CO

The experimental value for the dipole moment of CO is 0.122 debye, with the polarity C\(^{-}\)O\(^{+}\), for a bond length of 1.1281 Å.\(^{18}\) Calculated values with the aug-cc-pVXZ basis sets\(^{19}\) are given in Table 11.21.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>(v_1)</th>
<th>(v_2)</th>
<th>(v_3)</th>
<th>MAD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HF</td>
<td>0.259</td>
<td>-0.266</td>
<td>-0.265</td>
<td>-0.264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP2</td>
<td>0.286</td>
<td>0.280</td>
<td>0.275</td>
<td>0.273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3</td>
<td>0.076</td>
<td>0.047</td>
<td>0.036</td>
<td>0.032</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP4</td>
<td>0.220</td>
<td>0.222</td>
<td>0.216</td>
<td>0.214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSD</td>
<td>0.067</td>
<td>0.070</td>
<td>0.059</td>
<td>0.055</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSD(T)</td>
<td>0.141</td>
<td>0.127</td>
<td>0.118</td>
<td>0.115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CISD</td>
<td>0.050</td>
<td>0.023</td>
<td>0.011</td>
<td>0.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSDA</td>
<td>0.232</td>
<td>0.226</td>
<td>0.229</td>
<td>0.229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLYP</td>
<td>0.187</td>
<td>0.194</td>
<td>0.185</td>
<td>0.185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBE</td>
<td>0.229</td>
<td>0.224</td>
<td>0.224</td>
<td>0.224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCTH</td>
<td>0.194</td>
<td>0.181</td>
<td>0.175</td>
<td>0.179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B3LYP</td>
<td>0.091</td>
<td>0.086</td>
<td>0.087</td>
<td>0.088</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBE0</td>
<td>0.107</td>
<td>0.101</td>
<td>0.102</td>
<td>0.102</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The HF level (as usual) overestimates the polarity, in this case leading to an incorrect direction of the dipole moment. The MP perturbation series oscillates, and it is clear that the MP4 result is far from converged. The CCSD(T) method apparently recovers the most important part of the electron correlation, and is very close to the full CCSDT result in an augmented DZP basis.\(^{30}\) However, even with the aug-cc-pV5Z basis sets, there is still a discrepancy of ~0.01 debye relative to the experimental value. The DFT methods are not particularly accurate, although for this specific problem the PBE0 method gives a reasonably good result.

11.7.3 The vibrational frequencies of \(\text{O}_3\)

Ozone is an example of a molecule where the single-reference RHF is quite poor, since there is considerable biradical character in the wave function (as illustrated in Figure 4.9). The harmonic vibrational frequencies derived from experiments are 716, 1089 and 1135 cm\(^{-1}\), where the band at 1089 cm\(^{-1}\) corresponds to an asymmetric stretch.\(^{21}\) As this nuclear motion changes the relative weights of the ionic and biradical structures, the frequency is very sensitive to the quality of the wave function. Although the wave function is equally poor for all the frequencies, the two other vibrations (symmetric stretch and angle bending) conserve the \(C_2V\) symmetry, and thus benefit from a significant cancellation of errors. The calculated frequencies at different levels of theory with the cc-pVTZ basis are given in Table 11.22 together with the mean absolute deviation (MAD).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>(v_1)</th>
<th>(v_2)</th>
<th>(v_3)</th>
<th>MAD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HF</td>
<td>867</td>
<td>1418</td>
<td>1557</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP2</td>
<td>743</td>
<td>2241</td>
<td>1166</td>
<td>403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3</td>
<td>798</td>
<td>1713</td>
<td>1364</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP4</td>
<td>695</td>
<td>1592</td>
<td>1107</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSD</td>
<td>762</td>
<td>1266</td>
<td>1278</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSD(T)</td>
<td>716</td>
<td>1054</td>
<td>1153</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSDT</td>
<td>717</td>
<td>1117</td>
<td>1163</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSDT(Q)(^a)</td>
<td>709</td>
<td>1112</td>
<td>1133</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CISD</td>
<td>815</td>
<td>1535</td>
<td>1407</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[2,2]-CASSCF</td>
<td>799</td>
<td>1497</td>
<td>1189</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[2,2]-CASPT2(^b)</td>
<td>737</td>
<td>1268</td>
<td>1318</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[12,9]-CASPT2(^b)</td>
<td>692</td>
<td>1003</td>
<td>1092</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSDA</td>
<td>744</td>
<td>1147</td>
<td>1248</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLYP</td>
<td>683</td>
<td>980</td>
<td>1129</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBE</td>
<td>710</td>
<td>1057</td>
<td>1184</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCTH</td>
<td>742</td>
<td>1111</td>
<td>1227</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B3LYP</td>
<td>746</td>
<td>1193</td>
<td>1251</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBE0</td>
<td>777</td>
<td>1295</td>
<td>1322</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Experimental</td>
<td>716</td>
<td>1089</td>
<td>1135</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\) Data from Kucharski and Bartlett\(^{22}\)
\(^b\) Data from Ljubč and Sabljic\(^{23}\)

The simple picture with ozone as a resonance structure between ionic and biradical forms suggests that a two-configuration wave function should be able to give a qualitatively correct description. The [2,2]-CASSCF and [2,2]-CASPT2 results, however, show that dynamical correlation is also very important. The poor RHF reference wave function is clearly seen by the MP\(n\) results, with the MP2 value being in error by a factor of 2 for the asymmetric stretch, and the MP4 result is in error by ~500 cm\(^{-1}\) for \(v_2\), despite reproducing \(v_1\) and \(v_3\) to within 30 cm\(^{-1}\). The coupled cluster methods are less sensitive to the quality of the HF wave function, and are in somewhat better agreement with the experiments.
agreement with the experimental values. The CCSD(T) results are within ~20 cm$^{-1}$ of the experimental values, but part of this agreement is accidental as seen by the CCSDT and CCSDT(Q) results, and even the CCSDT(Q) model has errors of ~25 cm$^{-1}$. Part of this discrepancy may be due to basis set errors, although the results for the CASPT2 method indicate that larger basis sets will further increase the value of the vibrational frequencies. The DFT methods perform well, yielding results comparable to those at the CCSD or CCSD(T) levels, at a fraction of the computational cost. Even the local density functional gives acceptable results, but this is a case where the hybrid DFT methods (BLYP and PBE0) perform worse than the pure DFT ones. It can be noted that the cc-pVTZ basis set is sufficiently large that the DFT results are essentially converged, and the results in Table 11.22 thus reflect the intrinsic accuracy of the different DFT methods.

### 11.8 Relative Energies of C$_4$H$_6$ Isomers

The elaborate treatment for the H$_2$O system is only possible because of its small size. For larger systems, less rigorous methods must be employed. Let us as a more realistic example consider a determination of the relative stability of the C$_4$H$_6$ isomers shown in Figure 11.14.

There are experimental values for the first eight structures, which allows an evaluation of the performance of different methods. This in turn enables an estimate of how much trust should be put in the predicted values for structures 9, 10 and 11.

![C$_4$H$_6$ isomers](image)

Figure 11.14 C$_4$H$_6$ isomers

An investigation may start by optimizing the geometries by semi-empirical methods, this will give initial estimates of the energetics and provide reasonable starting geometries for higher level ab initio calculations. Relative energies and associated errors relative to the experimental values for different semi-empirical methods are shown in Table 11.23.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isomer</th>
<th>MINDO/3</th>
<th>MNDO</th>
<th>AM1</th>
<th>PM3</th>
<th>SAM1</th>
<th>Exp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>−83</td>
<td>−17</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>−5</td>
<td>−23</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>−5</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>−14</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>−16</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>232</td>
<td>349</td>
<td>354</td>
<td>318</td>
<td>255</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>227</td>
<td>354</td>
<td>378</td>
<td>336</td>
<td>336</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 11.23** Energies (kJ/mol) relative to 1 calculated by semi-empirical methods

MINDO/3 clearly has severe problems with some of the conjugated systems. The MNDO/AM1/PM3 family performs somewhat better, although none of them can predict the correct ordering. The SAM1 method is not an improvement for this case. The mean absolute deviation (MAD) for the predicted stabilities is ~30 kJ/mol, which is a typical accuracy for semi-empirical methods.

The next step up in terms of theory is ab initio HF with increasingly larger basis sets. Table 11.24 shows the results for various basis sets, where the geometries have been optimized with the STO-3G, 3-21G and 6-31G(d,p) basis sets, but the latter used for the pc-$\pi$ basis sets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isomer</th>
<th>STO-3G</th>
<th>3-21G</th>
<th>6-31G(d,p)</th>
<th>pc-$\pi^*$</th>
<th>pc-$\pi^\dagger$</th>
<th>ZPE</th>
<th>Exp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>−54</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>−3</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>−52</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>+4</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>−3</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>−22</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>−1</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>191</td>
<td>126</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>+4</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>182</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>−2</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>−3</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>216</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>304</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>314</td>
<td>−7</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>188</td>
<td>324</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>317</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>−3</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAD</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 11.24** Energies (kJ/mol) relative to 1 calculated at the HF level with various basis sets

*HF/6-31G(d,p) geometry*
The minimum STO-3G basis performs worse than the semi-empirical methods, at a substantially higher computational cost. From experience, it is known that the geometry usually changes little beyond a DZP type basis, and relative energies change little beyond a TZP type basis set. Indeed, the change by increasing the basis set beyond a-2 is less than 1 kJ/mol, i.e., the pc-2 results reflect the inherent error of the HF model.

Note that the 6-31G(d,p) basis set yields smaller errors than the larger pc-2, i.e. with a medium-sized basis set there are some (fortuitous) cancellations of errors from incomplete basis and neglect of electron correlation. The HF method underestimates the stability of some isomers (3, 7, and 8), and the singlet–triplet energy difference between 10 and 11 is qualitatively incorrect. Since 11 has one fewer electron pair than 10, this stability is reversed once correlation is taken into account. With errors up to ~20 kJ/mol, there is little point in including for example differences in zero point energies (HF/6-31G(d,p) values scaled with a factor of 0.92), as these are only a few kJ/mol. Including them in the above data in general only changes the MAD values by ~1 kJ/mol.

The next level up for improving the results would be to include electron correlation, and the MP2 method clearly is an obvious first choice. Correlated calculations require polarization functions, and at least a DZP type basis is mandatory. The results at the MP2/6-31G(d,p) level using the HF/6-31G(d,p) optimized geometries is shown in the first column in Table 11.25. The largest error is now reduced to less than ~25 kJ/mol. Furthermore, as a good fraction of the correlation energy is recovered, the singlet carbene 10 is stabilized relative to 11 by ~35 kJ/mol. The change by further increasing the basis set (e.g., cc-pVQZ) is of the order of 1 kJ/mol, i.e., the last column reflects the inherent error of the MP2 model. The mean error for the first eight systems is approximately the same for the MP2 and HF methods, but the singlet–triplet energy difference for the carbenes 10 and 11 is significantly improved by the MP2 treatment. Including the differences in zero point energies (MP2/6-31G(d,p) values scaled with a factor of 0.97) again only lead to changes in the MAD values of 1–2 kJ/mol.

Addition of electron correlation beyond MP2 improves the agreement with experiments to ~4 kJ/mol, as shown in Table 11.26, and essentially all of the advanced methods provide similar accuracy for these (uncomplicated) systems. The composite G3 method that tries to estimate the QCISD(T)/6-311++G(2df,2p) results by additivity of lower level calculations provides similar results. From the observed accuracy of ~4 kJ/mol for structures 2–8, the energetics of species 9–11 may be assumed to be reliable to the same level of accuracy.

If further refinements are required, several factors must be considered:

- The MP2/6-31G(d,p) geometry should be re-optimized at a better level, for example coupled cluster and/or with a better basis set.
- Larger basis sets should be used with for example the CCSD(T) method.
- Zero point energy corrections should be included, perhaps evaluated with a better method than MP2/6-31G(d,p).

Results from various DFT methods with the pc-2 basis set are shown in Table 11.27. In general they give results of MP2 quality or better.

### Table 11.25: MP2 energies (kJ/mol) relative to 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isomer</th>
<th>6-31G(d,p)</th>
<th>6-31G(d,p)</th>
<th>cc-pVDZ</th>
<th>cc-pVTZ</th>
<th>ZPE</th>
<th>Exp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>+5</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>+2</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>-6</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>340</td>
<td>343</td>
<td>342</td>
<td>347</td>
<td>-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>375</td>
<td>376</td>
<td>379</td>
<td>393</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAD</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11.26: Energies (kJ/mol) relative to 1 at different levels calculated with the cc-pVQZ basis sets at the MP2/6-31G(d,p) optimized geometry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isomer</th>
<th>HF</th>
<th>MP2</th>
<th>MP3</th>
<th>MP4</th>
<th>CISD</th>
<th>CCSD</th>
<th>CCSD(T)</th>
<th>G3</th>
<th>Exp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>129</td>
<td>129</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>146</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>304</td>
<td>342</td>
<td>326</td>
<td>331</td>
<td>316</td>
<td>321</td>
<td>328</td>
<td>332</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>379</td>
<td>372</td>
<td>381</td>
<td>348</td>
<td>370</td>
<td>379</td>
<td>395</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAD</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11.27: Energies relative to 1 calculated at DFT levels with the pc-2 basis set

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isomer</th>
<th>LSDA</th>
<th>BLYP</th>
<th>PBE</th>
<th>HCTH</th>
<th>B3LYP</th>
<th>PBE0</th>
<th>Exp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>129</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>131</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>337</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>336</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>346</td>
<td>326</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>385</td>
<td>401</td>
<td>373</td>
<td>358</td>
<td>394</td>
<td>394</td>
<td>361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAD</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Calculating the relative energies of a series of hydrocarbons is of course well suited for force field methods, although a comparison of stabilities for isomers containing different number of “functional” groups (CH₃, CH₂, etc.) means that only force fields that are able to convert steric energies to heat of formation can be used (Section 2.2.10). Even for these relatively simple compounds, however, there are several “unequal” features for which adequate parameters are lacking. The straight MM2 and MM3 force fields lack parameters for the cyclopropenes 8 and 9, the methylene-cyclopropane 6, and the allene 4 for MM3. The carbenes 10 and 11 are of course outside the capabilities of force field methods. Table 11.28 compares the performance of the MM2 and MM3 methods, along with MMX, which is a modified MM2 model, where parameters have been added to allow calculations on 4, 6, 8, and 9.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isomer</th>
<th>MM2</th>
<th>MM3</th>
<th>MMX</th>
<th>Exp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>133</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>133</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAD</td>
<td>(7)</td>
<td>(7)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The performance is (as expected) very good. MMX provides relative (and absolute) stabilities with a MAD of only 5kJ/mol, which are on a par with the results from the sophisticated G3 composite model in Table 11.26. Considering that force field calculations require a factor of ~10⁵ less computer time for these systems than the ab initio methods combined in Table 11.26, this clearly stresses that knowledge of the strengths and weaknesses of different theoretical tools is important in selecting a proper model for answering a given question.

References
25. K. E. Gilbert, PCM, PCMODEL, Serena Software.
Many problems in computational chemistry can be formulated as an optimization of a multi-dimensional function. Optimization is a general term for finding stationary points of a function, i.e. points where the first derivative is zero. In the majority of cases, the desired stationary point is a minimum, i.e. all the second derivatives are positive. In some cases, the desired point is a first-order saddle point, i.e. the second derivative is negative in one, and positive in all other, directions. In a few special cases, a higher order saddle point is desired.

Most optimization methods determine the nearest stationary point, but a multi-dimensional function may contain many (in some cases very many!) different stationary points of the same kind. The minimum with the lowest value is called the global minimum, while all the others are local minima. Some examples:

- The energy as a function of nuclear coordinates. Both minima and first-order saddle points (transition structures) are of interest. The energy function may be of the force field type, or from solving the electronic Schrödinger equation.
- An error function depending on parameters. Only minima are of interest, and the global minimum is usually (but not always) desired. This may for example be determination of parameters in a force field, a set of atomic charges, or a set of localized molecular orbitals.
- The energy of a wave function containing variational parameters, such as a Hartree-Fock (one Slater determinant) or multi-configurational (many Slater determinants) wave function. Parameters are typically the molecular orbital and configurational state coefficients, but may also be for example basis function exponents. Usually only minima are desired, although in some cases saddle points may also be of interest (excited states).

When the parameters enter the function to be optimized in a quadratic fashion, the stationary points can be obtained by solving a set of linear equations by standard matrix techniques. In most cases, however, the parameters enter the function in a non-linear fashion, which require iterative methods for locating the stationary points. The latter can be further divided into methods for locating minima, and methods for locating saddle points. The problem of optimizing quadratic functions is treated in Section 12.1, minima and saddle points of general functions in Sections 12.2 and 12.4, respectively. While methods for global optimization are covered in Section 12.6, Optimization of functions subject to external constraints is dealt with in Section 12.5. Finally, Section 12.8 describes methods for following reaction paths, which may be considered either as solving partial differential equations or as a constrained optimization problem.

12.1 Optimizing Quadratic Functions

Data fitting is a typical example of an optimization problem where the parameters enter the function in a quadratic fashion. Consider for example the problem of determining a set of force field partial charges $Q$ by minimizing an error function measuring the fit to the electrostatic potential sampled at a number of points surrounding the molecule (Section 2.2.6).

$$\text{ErrF}(Q) = \sum_{i} \phi_{\text{ELE}}(r_i) - \sum_{j} Q(R_j) \frac{1}{|R_j - r_i|}$$ (12.1)

We will at present ignore the constraint that the sum of the charges must be equal to the total molecular charge; this can be dealt with by the techniques in Section 12.5. The $\text{ErrF}$ in eq. (12.1) can be generalized as in eq. (12.2), with $y_i$ being the reference values, $a$ the fitting parameters ($Q_i$) and $x_i$ the coefficients corresponding to the inverse distances $|R_j - r_i|$.

$$\text{ErrF}(a) = \sum_{i} \left( y_i - \sum_{j} a_j x_{ij} \right)^2$$ (12.2)
12.2 Optimizing General Functions: Finding Minima

The best set of parameters is determined by setting all the first derivatives of ErrF to zero.

The simplest approach for minimizing a function is to find the minimum value for any given set of variables. The function value is then moved to a new set of variables, and the process is repeated until the function value is minimized. This is impractical for more than five–ten variables, and may not work at all for some functions.

The simplex method is one of the most efficient approaches for minimizing a function, especially if the function values can be calculated quickly. This method represents a more efficient approach for constructing an irregular polyhedron in parameter space, and moving this polyhedron towards the minimum, while allowing the size to contract or expand to improve the convergence.

It is better than the simple-minded “one-variable-at-a-time” approach, but becomes too slow for many-dimensional functions. There are three classes of commonly used optimization methods for finding minima, each having their advantages and disadvantages.

12.2.1 Steepest descent

The gradient vector \( g \) points in the direction where the function increases most, i.e. the function value can always be lowered by stepping in the opposite direction. In the (SD) method, a series of function evaluations are performed in the negative gradient direction, defined as \( -g \). Once the function begins to increase, an approximate minimum may be determined by interpolation between the calculated points. At this interpolated point, a new gradient is calculated and used for the next line search.

The steepest descent algorithm is sure-fire. If the line minimization is carried out sufficiently accurately, it will always lower the function value, and is therefore guaranteed to approach a minimum. However, two problems can occur:

- Two subsequent line searches are necessarily perpendicular to each other, and are therefore independent, which may lead to problems, as a function with a very flat surface in a certain region may meet the criteria without containing a stationary point.

- There are many cases in which the gradient points toward a maximum rather than a minimum.

In such cases, the gradient method can be used to find the direction of the maximum, but not the minimum. In many cases, this can be overcome by running the gradient method for a long enough time to reach the stationary point, and then reversing the direction of the gradient.

In actual applications, the \( X \) matrix may be singular or nearly so, and the inverse matrix cannot be obtained. Consequently, the method may not work at all. These cases can be handled by singular value decomposition methods, as discussed in Section 16.2. In any case, the line search aspect of the method must be well controlled by foresight, as there is no guarantee that the function will continue to decrease with each iteration.

The formal solution can be obtained by multiplying the inverse \( X \) matrix with \( \mathbf{b} \):

\[
\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{b}
\]

In actual applications, the \( X \) matrix may be singular or nearly so, and the inverse matrix cannot be obtained. Consequently, the method may not work at all. These cases can be handled by singular value decomposition methods, as discussed in Section 16.2. In any case, the line search aspect of the method must be well controlled by foresight, as there is no guarantee that the function will continue to decrease with each iteration. Other methods, such as the Newton-Raphson method, are therefore necessary. In this case, the method is therefore not limited to the linear case, but can be applied to more complex problems as well.

Another interesting question is whether the minimization is strongly dependent on the charges on the buried atoms. These factors are due to the fact that the potential is only weakly dependent on the charges on the buried atoms. Other factors include the energy of Hartree-Fock (HF) and configuration interaction (CI) wave functions, which are strongly dependent on the charges on the buried atoms. In the CI case, the number of parameters is typically 10^6–10^9, and a direct solution of the linear equations is therefore prohibitive, and special iterative methods are used instead. The use of iterative techniques is due to the computational efficiency considerations, but may not be able to satisfy the function lowering obtained by the previous search. The simplest way to partially satisfy the function lowering obtained by the previous search is by using a modified Newton-Raphson method.
descent path oscillates around the minimum path, as illustrated in Figure 12.2, and this is particularly problematic for surfaces having long narrow valleys.

Furthermore, as the minimum is approached, the rate of convergence slows down. The steepest descent will actually never reach the minimum, it will crawl towards it at an ever decreasing speed.

An accurate line search requires several function evaluations along each search direction. Often the minimization along the line is only carried out fairly crudely, or as a single step is simply taken along the negative gradient direction. In the latter case, the step size is varied dynamically during the optimization; if the previous step reduced the function value, the next step is taken with a slightly longer step size, but if the function values increased, the step size is reduced. Without an accurate line search, the guarantee for lowering of the function value is lost, and the optimization may potentially end up in an oscillatory state.

By its nature, the steepest descent method can only locate function minima. The advantage is that the algorithm is very simple, and requires only storage of a gradient vector. It is furthermore one of the few methods that is guaranteed to lower the function value. Its main use is to quickly relax a poor starting point, before some of the more advanced algorithms take over, or as a "backup" algorithm if the more sophisticated methods are unable to lower the function value.

12.2.2 Conjugate gradient methods

The main problem with the steepest descent method is the partial "undoing" of the previous step. The Conjugate Gradient (CG) method tries to improve on this by performing each line search not along the current gradient but along a line that is constructed such that it is "conjugate" to the previous search direction(s). If the surface is purely quadratic, the conjugate direction criterion guarantees that each successive minimization will not generate gradient components along any of the previous directions, and the minimum is reached after at most \(N\) steps. The first step is equivalent to a steepest descent step, but subsequent searches are performed along a line formed as a mixture of the current negative gradient and the previous search direction.

\[
d_i = -g_i + \beta d_{i-1}
\]  

(12.7)

There are several ways of choosing the \(\beta\) value. Some of the names associated with these methods are Fletcher-Reeves (FR), Polak-Ribiére (PR) and Hestenes-Stiefel (HS). Their definitions of \(\beta\) are given in eq. (12.8).

\[
\begin{align*}
\beta^{FR} &= \frac{\mathbf{g}_i \cdot \mathbf{g}_{i-1}}{\mathbf{d}_i \cdot \mathbf{d}_{i-1}} \\
\beta^{PR} &= \frac{\mathbf{g}_i \cdot (\mathbf{g}_{i-1} - \mathbf{g}_i)}{\mathbf{d}_i \cdot \mathbf{d}_{i-1}} \\
\beta^{HS} &= \frac{\mathbf{g}_i \cdot (\mathbf{g}_{i} - \mathbf{g}_{i-1})}{\mathbf{d}_i \cdot (\mathbf{g}_i - \mathbf{g}_{i-1})}
\end{align*}
\]  

(12.8)

For non-quadratic surfaces, the conjugate property does not hold rigorously and, for real problems, the CG algorithm must often be restarted (i.e. setting \(\beta = 0\)) during the optimization. The PR formula for \(\beta\) has a tendency of restarting the procedure more gracefully than the other two, and is usually preferred in practice. The conjugate property holds best for near-quadratic surfaces, and the convergence properties of CG methods can be improved by scaling the variables by a suitable pre-conditioner matrix, for example containing (approximate) inverse second derivatives. Conjugate gradient methods have much better convergence characteristics than the steepest descent, but they are again only able to locate minima. They do require slightly more storage than the steepest descent, since two (current gradient and previous search direction) vectors must be stored, but this is rarely a problem.

12.2.3 Newton-Raphson methods

The Newton-Raphson (NR) method expands the true function to second order around the current point \(x_0\).

\[
f(x) = f(x_0) + \mathbf{g}(x-x_0) + \frac{1}{2} (x-x_0)^T \mathbf{H}(x-x_0)
\]  

(12.9)

Requiring the gradient of the second-order approximation in eq. (12.9) to be zero produces the step in eq. (12.10).

\[
(x-x_0) = -\mathbf{H}^{-1} \mathbf{g}
\]  

(12.10)

In the coordinate system \((x')\) where the Hessian is diagonal (i.e. performing a unitary transformation, see Section 16.2), the NR step may be written as in eq. (12.11).

\[
\Delta x_i = -\mathbf{H}_{ii}^{-1} \frac{\mathbf{g}_i}{c_i}
\]  

(12.11)

Here \(\mathbf{f}\) is the projection of the gradient along the Hessian eigenvector with eigenvalue \(c_i\) (the gradient component pointing in the direction of the \(i\)th eigenvector).

As the real function contains terms beyond second order, the NR formula can be used iteratively for stepping towards a stationary point. Near a minimum, all the Hessian eigenvalues are positive (by definition), and the step direction is opposite to the gradient direction, as it should be. If, however, one of the Hessian eigenvalues is negative, the step in this direction will be along the gradient component, and thus...
increase the function value. In this case, the optimization may end up at a stationary point with one negative Hessian eigenvalue, a first-order saddle point. In general, the NR method will attempt to converge on the "nearest" stationary point, regardless of whether this is a minimum, saddle point or maximum.

Another problem is the use of the inverse Hessian for determining the step size. If one of the Hessian eigenvalues becomes close to zero, the step size goes toward infinity (except if the corresponding gradient component is exactly zero). The NR step is thus without bound, and it may take the variables far outside the region where the second-order Taylor expansion is valid. This region is often described by a "trust radius". In some cases, the NR step is taken as a search direction along which the function is minimized, analogously with the steepest descent and conjugate gradient methods. The augmented Hessian methods described below are normally more efficient.

The advantage of the NR method is that the convergence is second order near a stationary point. If the function only contains terms up to second order, the NR step will go to the stationary point in a single step. In general, the function contains higher order terms, but the second-order approximation becomes better and better as the stationary point is approached. If the gradient is reduced quadratically, i.e. if the gradient norm is reduced by a factor of 2 between two iterations, it will go down by a factor of 4 in the next iteration, and a factor of 16 in the next. The quadratic convergence, however, is often only observed very close to the stationary point, and the NR method typically only displays linear convergence.

Besides the abovementioned problems with step control, there are also other computational aspects that tend to make the straightforward NR problematic for many problem types. The true NR method requires calculation of the full second derivative matrix, which must be stored and inverted (diagonalized). For some types of function, a calculation of the Hessian is computationally demanding. For others, the number of variables is so large that manipulating a matrix the size of the number of variables squared is impossible. The following two sections address some solutions to these problems.

12.2.4 Step control

There are two aspects in step control, one is controlling the total length of the step, such that it does not exceed the region in which the second-order Taylor expansion is valid, and the second is making sure that the step direction is correct. If the optimization is towards a minimum, the Hessian should have all positive eigenvalues in order for the step to be in the correct direction. If, however, the starting point is in a region where the Hessian has negative eigenvalues, the NR step will take it towards a saddle point or maximum. Both these problems can be solved by introducing a shift parameter \( \lambda \) (compare to eq. (12.11)).

\[
\Delta x' = \frac{f}{\lambda + f} \]

(12.12)

If \( \lambda \) is chosen to be below the lowest Hessian eigenvalue, the denominator is always positive, and the step direction will thus be correct. Furthermore, if \( \lambda \) goes towards \(-\infty\), the step size goes towards zero, i.e. the step size can be made arbitrarily small. Methods that modify the nature of the Hessian matrix by a shift parameter are known by names such as "augmented Hessian", "level-shifted Newton–Raphson", "normalized extended Hessian" or "Eigenvector Following" (EF), depending on how \( \lambda \) is chosen. We will here mention two popular methods for choosing \( \lambda \).

The Rational Function Optimization (RFO) expands the function in terms of a rational approximation instead of a straight second-order Taylor series (eq. (12.9)).

\[
f(\lambda) = f(x_0) + g(x - x_0) + \frac{1}{2}(x - x_0)^T H(x - x_0) + \frac{1}{2}(x - x_0)^T S(x - x_0)
\]

(12.13)

The \( S \) matrix is eventually set equal to a unit matrix which leads to the following equation for \( \lambda \).

\[
\sum_{i} \frac{f_i}{\lambda_i - \lambda} = \lambda
\]

(12.14)

This is a one-dimensional equation in \( \lambda \) which can be solved by standard (iterative) methods. There will in general be one more solution than the number of degrees of freedom, but by choosing the lowest \( \lambda \) solution, it is ensured that the resulting step will be towards a minimum. The RFO step calculated from eq. (12.12) will always be shorter than the pure NR step (eq. (12.11)), but there is no guarantee that it will be within the trust radius. If the RFO step is too long, it may be scaled down by a simple multiplicative factor, however, if the factor is much smaller than 1, it follows that the resulting step may not be the optimum for the given trust radius.

Another way of choosing \( \lambda \) is to require that the step length be equal to the trust radius \( R \), which is in essence the best step on a hypersphere with radius \( R \). This is known as the Quadratic Approximation (QA) method.

\[
[\lambda x]^T = \sum_{i} \frac{f_i}{\lambda_i - \lambda} = R^2
\]

(12.15)

This may again have multiple solutions, but by choosing the lowest \( \lambda \) value, the minimization step is selected. The maximum step size \( R \) may be taken as a fixed value, or allowed to change dynamically during the optimization. If the actual energy change between two steps agrees well with that predicted from the second-order Taylor expansion, the trust radius for the next step may be increased, and vice versa.

12.2.5 Obtaining the Hessian

The second problem, the computational aspect of calculating the Hessian, is often encountered in electronic structure calculations. Here the calculation of the second derivative matrix can be an order of magnitude more demanding than calculating the gradient. In such cases, an updating scheme may be used instead. The idea is to start with an approximation to the Hessian, maybe just a unit matrix. The initial step will thus resemble a steepest descent step. As the optimization proceeds, the gradients at the previous and current points are used for making the Hessian a better approximation for the actual system. After two steps, the updated Hessian is rather
good approximation to the exact Hessian in the direction defined by these two points (but not in the other directions). There are many such updating schemes, some of the commonly used are associated with the names Davidon–Fletcher–Powell (DFP), Broyden–Fletcher–Goldfarb–Shanno (BFGS) and Powell. For minimizations, the BFGS update eq. (12.16) is usually preferred, as it tends to keep the Hessian positive definite.

\[ H_{n+1} = H_n + \Delta H \]

For saddle point searches, the updating must allow the Hessian to develop negative eigenvalues, and the Powell or updates based on combining several methods are usually employed. The use of approximate Hessians within the NR method is known as pseudo-Newton–Raphson or variable metric methods. It is clear that they do not converge as fast as true NR methods, where the exact Hessian is calculated in each step, but if for example five steps can be taken for the same computational cost as one true NR step, the overall computational effort may be less. True NR methods converge quadratically near a stationary point, while pseudo-NR methods display a linear convergence. Far from a stationary point, however, the true NR method will typically also only display linear convergence.

Pseudo-NR methods are usually the best choice in geometry optimizations using an energy function calculated by electronic structure methods. The quality of the initial Hessian of course affects the convergence when an updating scheme is used. The use of an exact Hessian at the first point often gives a good convergence, however, this may not be the most cost-efficient strategy. In many cases, a quite reasonable Hessian for a minimum search may be generated by simple rules connecting for example bond lengths and force constants. Alternatively, the initial Hessian may be taken from a calculation at a lower level of theory. As an initial exploration of an energy surface is often carried out at a low level of theory, followed by frequency calculations to establish the nature of the stationary points, the resulting force constants can be used for starting an optimization at higher levels. This is especially useful for transition structure searches that require a quite accurate Hessian. The success of this strategy relies on the fact that the qualitative structure of an energy surface is often fairly insensitive to the level of theory, although there certainly are many examples where this is not the case.

12.2.6 Storing and diagonalizing the Hessian

The last potential problem of all NR-based methods is the storage and handling of the Hessian matrix. For methods where the calculation of the Hessian is easy but the number of variables is large, this may be a problem. A prime example here is geometry optimization using a force field energy function. The computational effort for calculating the Hessian goes up roughly as the square of the number of atoms. Diagonalization of the Hessian matrix required for the NR optimization, however, depends on the cube of the matrix size, i.e. it goes up as the cube of the number of atoms. Since matrix diagonalization becomes a significant factor around a size of 1000 x 1000, it is clear that NR methods should not be used for force field optimizations beyond a few hundred atoms. For large systems the computational effort for predicting the geometry step will completely overwhelm the calculation of the energy, gradient and Hessian. The conjugate gradient method avoids handling of the Hessian and only requires storage of two vectors, and it is therefore usually the method of choice for force field optimizations.

For large systems many of the off-diagonal elements in the Hessian are very small, essentially zero (the coupling between distant atoms is very small), and the Hessian for large systems is therefore a sparse matrix. NR methods that take advantage of this fact by neglecting off-diagonal blocks, are denoted truncated NR. Some force field programs use an extreme example of this where only the 3 x 3 submatrices along the diagonal are retained. These 3 x 3 matrices contain the coupling elements between the x, y and z coordinates for a single atom. The task of inverting a 3000 x 3000 matrix is thus replaced by inverting 1000 3 x 3 matrices, reducing the computational cost for the diagonalization by a factor of 10^6. If the NR step is not taken directly, but rather used as a direction along which the function is minimized, truncated NR methods start to resemble the conjugate gradient method, although it is somewhat more complicated to implement.

12.2.7 Extrapolations: the GDIIS method

Newton–Raphson methods can be combined with extrapolation procedures, and the best known of these is perhaps the Geometry Direct Inversion in the Iterative Subspace (GDIIS), which is directly analogous to the DIIS for electronic wave functions described in Section 3.8.1. In the GDIIS method, the NR step is not taken from the last geometry but from an interpolated point with a corresponding interpolated gradient based on the previously calculated points on the surface.

\[ x_n^* = \sum c_i x_i \]
\[ g_n^* = \sum c_i g_i \]

The interpolated geometry and gradient are generated by requiring that the norm of an error vector is minimum, subject to a normalization condition.

\[ \text{ErrF}(e) = \sum c_i e_i \]
\[ \sum c_i = 1 \]

The are two common choices for the error vector, either a “geometry” or “gradient” vector, with the latter being preferred in more recent work.

\[ e_i = H_i^* g_i \] or \[ e_i = g_i \]

The DIIS approach attempts to find a low-gradient point within the subspace already searched. For optimizing electronic wave functions, there is usually only one minimum
12.3 Choice of Coordinates

Projecting these components out of the Hessian prior to formation of the NR step is an example of a linear transformation. We could transform to a set of internal coordinates, which might be chosen as $N_1$ distances, $N_2$ angles, and $N_3$ torsional angles, as illustrated in Table 12.1. The Hessian in internal coordinates is diagonal. Hence, the step may be written as

$$
\Delta \mathbf{r} = (\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{a}^{-1})^{-1} \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{g}
$$

where the Hessian is diagonal, the step may be written as in eq. (12.21).

Namely, one may think that any set of coordinates that uniquely describes the function is equally good for optimization. This is not the case. A good set of coordinates may be found by diagonalizing the Hessian. For a simple example, let us consider the geometry optimization of a Morse type function (eq. (2.5)) with $x = \Delta R$.

$$
\Delta x = (\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{a}^{-1})^{-1} \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{g}
$$

Table 12.1: Convergence for different choices of variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Iteration</th>
<th>$x$</th>
<th>$y$</th>
<th>$z$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>4.050</td>
<td>-0.319</td>
<td>-0.184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>9.607</td>
<td>3.016</td>
<td>-0.108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.998</td>
<td>1.000</td>
<td>0.698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.999</td>
<td>0.999</td>
<td>0.999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.999</td>
<td>0.999</td>
<td>0.999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.999</td>
<td>0.999</td>
<td>0.999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.999</td>
<td>0.999</td>
<td>0.999</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The coordinate system $(\mathbf{e})$ where the Hessian is diagonal is the same as in eq. (12.20).

Essentially all computational programs calculate the fundamental properties of the molecular structure $x_{\mathbf{e}} = \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{x}_0$. Of these, three describe the overall orientation of the molecule in the molecular coordinate system, three describe the overall rotation of the molecule about the bond axis, and three describe the overall translation of the molecule. The $x_{\mathbf{e}}$ coordinates are then the quantum mechanical counterparts of the coordinates in the molecular coordinate system. Many calculations, however, are being done in the molecular coordinate system, and the corresponding gradient components, $\mathbf{f}_\mathbf{e}$, should also be identical zero. Numerical methods are often used for large molecules, but they are not always appropriate. Numerical methods are not always the best, but they are sometimes the only choice. Numerical methods are often used for large molecules, but they are not always appropriate. Numerical methods are not always the best, but they are sometimes the only choice. Numerical methods are often used for large molecules, but they are not always appropriate. Numerical methods are not always the best, but they are sometimes the only choice.
12.3 CHOICE OF COORDINATES

Convergence for different choices of variables

Table 12.2

The faster the convergence. One should therefore try to choose a set of coordinates where the third and higher order derivatives are as small as possible. Cartesian coordinates are not particularly good in this respect but have the advantage that conversion into coordinates appropriate for the problem of interest is straightforward. However, Norton has shown that for large molecules the optimum choice of coordinates may slow down or cause divergence. For polyatomic systems, the above-mentioned internal coordinates are often not the best set to use. Other sets of coordinates, such as Natural Internal Coordinates, are more appropriate for such systems.

Another problem is when very soft modes are present. A prototypical example is the rotation of a methyl or hydroxy group. Near the minimum the energy changes very little as a function of the torsional angle. The optimization procedure is then sensitive to small perturbations of the initial coordinates.

The problem of an "optimum" choice of coordinates has been addressed by Pulay and coworkers, who suggested using Natural Internal Coordinates. The atoms are first classified into three types: "terminal" (having only one bond), "ring" (part of a ring) or "internal". All distances between bonded atoms are used as variables. The optimization is then performed by the NR method, but this time using the internal coordinates as variables.

Suitable linear combinations of bending and torsional angles are then formed such that the coupling between these coordinates is exactly zero. The optimization of the NR method is then correct. In this case, the optimization procedure is performed in the original coordinate system, but the optimization is effective because the correct functional form of the energy is used.

In the original formulation, a set of (3N - 6) independent natural internal coordinates could be obtained by using all distances and bending and torsional angles between bonded atoms. These 9 coordinates are then used as variables in the optimization process.

The binding pattern is not as well defined as in the original formulation, but the same optimization characteristics are observed. The optimization procedure is then performed in the original coordinate system, but the optimization is effective because the correct functional form of the energy is used.

Non-linear transformations may strongly affect the convergence properties of an optimization. The more "harmonic" the energy function is, the faster the convergence. One should therefore try to choose a set of coordinates where the third and higher order derivatives are as small as possible. Cartesian coordinates are not particularly good in this respect but have the advantage that conversion into coordinates appropriate for the problem of interest is straightforward. Other sets of coordinates, such as Natural Internal Coordinates, are more appropriate for such systems.

Another problem is when very soft modes are present. A prototypical example is the rotation of a methyl or hydroxy group. Near the minimum the energy changes very little as a function of the torsional angle. The optimization procedure is then sensitive to small perturbations of the initial coordinates.

The problem of an "optimum" choice of coordinates has been addressed by Pulay and coworkers, who suggested using Natural Internal Coordinates. The atoms are first classified into three types: "terminal" (having only one bond), "ring" (part of a ring) or "internal". All distances between bonded atoms are used as variables. The optimization is then performed by the NR method, but this time using the internal coordinates as variables.

Suitable linear combinations of bending and torsional angles are then formed such that the coupling between these coordinates is exactly zero. The optimization of the NR method is then correct. In this case, the optimization procedure is performed in the original coordinate system, but the optimization is effective because the correct functional form of the energy is used.

In the original formulation, a set of (3N - 6) independent natural internal coordinates could be obtained by using all distances and bending and torsional angles between bonded atoms. These 9 coordinates are then used as variables in the optimization process.

The binding pattern is not as well defined as in the original formulation, but the same optimization characteristics are observed. The optimization procedure is then performed in the original coordinate system, but the optimization is effective because the correct functional form of the energy is used.
12.4 Optimizing General Functions: Finding Saddle Points (Transition Structures)

Optimization techniques can be used to locate transition structures where the residual gradients for the fixed variables are sufficiently small. The success of this method depends on the ability to choose a good set of reaction variables, which is often a difficult task even for simple systems.

A comparison of various combinations of these can be found in reference 13. A major advantage is that delocalized internal coordinates can be generated automatically without any user involvement. Some TS's have reaction variables that do not contribute strongly to the actual reaction coordinate at the TS estimate. Some TS's have reaction variables that are not dominated by a few internal coordinates. Finding these is part of the "black magic" involved in locating TS's.

In some cases, another set of internal coordinates may alleviate the problem, but it is often difficult to choose the correct set of reaction variables. A comparison of various combinations of these can be found in reference 13.

The intuitively simple approach for locating a TS is to select a few internal coordinates that describe the main difference between the reactant and product structures. A typical example is the bond breaking/forming reaction. The TS coordinate driving method is used to guide the search towards the TS. The goal is to find a path in mass-weighted coordinates from the TS to the reactant and product structures. The LST path may then be searched for an energy maximum. These methods are illustrated in Figure 12.4.
region. Once the TS region is located, the optimization is switched to a quasi-Newton–Raphson (Section 12.4.6).

The Sphere optimization technique involves a sequence of constrained optimizations on hyperspheres with increasingly larger radii, using the reactant (or product) geometry as a constant expansion point. The lowest energy point on each successive hypersphere thus traces out a low energy path on the energy surface, as illustrated in Figure 12.5. The sphere method may be considered as a coordinate driving algorithm where the driving coordinate is the distance to the minimum. Ohno and Macdela have suggested a variation where the optimization is done in vibrational normal coordinates scaled by the square root of the corresponding Hessian eigenvalues. This makes all directions equivalent in an energetic sense, and potentially allows more saddle points to be found, but at the expense of searching the full variable space rather than just the low-energy region. They have suggested that an exhaustive search along all the normal mode directions can potentially find all the TS's connected with a given minimum. Tracing the IRC from all these TS's will lead to other minima, which then can be subjected to a TS search, thereby potentially tracing out all possible reaction paths for a given system.

Barkema and Mousseau have suggested a closely related dynamical version where the gradient at a given point is split into two components parallel and perpendicular to the vector from the minimum to the current point. The gradient component in the perpendicular directions is followed in the downhill direction, while the structure is advanced in the uphill direction along the parallel component. It should be noted that the success or failure of LST/QST, as with all optimizations, depends on the coordinates used in the interpolation. Consider for example the HNC to HCN rearrangement. In Cartesian coordinates, the LST path preserves the linearity of the reactant and product, and thus predicts that the hydrogen moves through the nitrogen and carbon atoms. In internal coordinates, however, the angle changes from 0° to 180°, and the LST will in this case locate a much more reasonable point with the hydrogen moving around the C–N moiety.

Figure 12.6 LST path in Cartesian and internal coordinates

For large complex systems, the LST path, even in internal coordinates, may involve geometries where two or more atoms clash and it may be difficult or impossible to obtain a function value, for example due to an iterative (SCF) procedure failing to converge.

12.4.2 Two-structure interpolation methods: saddle, line-then-plane, ridge and step-and-slide optimizations

The methods in Section 12.4.1 all optimize one geometrical structure, and differ primarily in how they parameterize the reaction path. The methods in this section operate with two geometrical structures, which attempt to bracket the saddle point and gradually converge on the TS from the reactant and product sides.

In the Saddle algorithm, the lowest of the reactant and product minima is first identified. A trial structure is generated by displacing the geometry of the lower energy species a fraction (for example 0.05) towards the high-energy minimum. The trial structure is then optimized, subject to the constraint that the distance to the high-energy minimum is constant. The lowest energy structure on the hypersphere becomes the new interpolation end-point, and the procedure is repeated. The two geometries will (hopefully) gradually converge on a low-energy structure intermediate between the original two minima, as illustrated in Figure 12.7.
A related idea is used in the Line-Then-Plane (LTP) algorithm, where the constrained optimization is done in the hyperplane perpendicular to the interpolation line between the two end-points, rather than on a hypersphere.

The Ridge method initially locates the energy maximum along the LST path connecting the reactant and product, and defines two points on either side of the energy maximum. These points are allowed to relax in the downhill direction a given distance, and a new energy maximum is located along the interpolation line connecting the two relaxed points, and the cycle is repeated. As the saddle point is approached, the two ridge points gradually contract on the actual TS. This method requires a careful adjustment of the magnitude of the “side” and “downhill” steps as the optimization proceeds.

The Step-and-Slide algorithm is a variation where the reactant and product structures are stepped along the LST line until they have energies equal to a preset value. Both structures are then optimized with respect to minimizing the distance between them, subject to being on an isoenergetic contour surface. The energy is increase, followed by another step-and-slide optimization, and this sequence is continued until the distance between the two structures decreases to zero, i.e. converging on the saddle point.

### 12.4.3 Multi-structure interpolation methods: chain, locally updated planes, self-penalty walk, conjugate peak refinement and nudged elastic band

The methods in this section operate with multiple (more than two) structures or images connecting the reactant and product, and are often called chain-of-state methods. Relaxation of the images will in favourable cases not only lead to the saddle point, but also to an approximation of the whole reaction path. The initial distribution of structures will typically be along a straight line connecting the reactant and product (LST), but may also involve one or more intermediate geometries to guide the search in a certain direction.

The Self-Penalty Walk (SPW) method approximates the reaction path by minimizing the average energy along the path, given as a line integral between the reactant and product geometries (R and P).

![Figure 12.7 Illustration of the saddle method; energy minima on the hyperspheres are denoted by *](image)

The line element $d(x)$ belongs to the reaction path, which has a total length of $L$. In practice, the line integral is approximated as a finite sum of $M$ points, where $M$ typically is of the order of 10–20.

$$S(R, P) = \frac{1}{L} \sum_{i=1}^{M} E(x_i) \Delta x_i$$

In order to avoid all points aggregating near the minima (reactant and product), constraints are imposed for keeping the distance between two neighbouring points close to the average distance. Furthermore, repulsion terms between all points are also added to keep the reaction path from forming loops. The resulting target function $T_{\text{spw}}(R, P)$ may then be minimized by for example a conjugate gradient method.

$$T_{\text{spw}}(R, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_M, P) = \frac{1}{M} \sum_{i=1}^{M} E(x_i) \Delta x_i + \frac{1}{M} \sum_{i=1}^{M} \sum_{j=i+1}^{M} \exp \left( -\frac{d_{ij}}{\lambda} \right)$$

The $\chi, \lambda$ and $\rho$ parameters are suitable constants for weighting the distance and repulsion constraints relative to the average path energy. In the original version of SPW, the TS is estimated as the grid point with the highest energy after minimization of the target function, but Ayala and Schlegel have implemented a version where one of the points is optimized directly to the TS and the remaining points form an approximation to the IRC path.

The chain method initially calculates the energy at a series of points placed at regular intervals (spacing of $d_{\text{max}}$ along a suitable reaction coordinate). The highest energy point is allowed to relax by a maximum step size of $d_{\text{max}}$, along a direction defined by the gradient component orthogonal to the line between the two neighbouring points. This process is repeated with the new highest energy point until the gradient becomes tangential to the path (within a specified threshold). When this happens, the energy $d_{\text{max}}$ cannot be further relaxed, and is instead moved to a maximum along the path.

![Figure 12.8 Illustration of the SPW method; optimized path points are denoted by x](image)
During the relaxation the chain may form loops, in which case intermediate point(s) is (are) discarded. Similarly, it may be necessary to add points to keep the distance between neighbours below \( d_{\text{max}} \).

The \textit{Locally Updated Planes} (LUP) minimization is related to the chain method, where the relaxation is done in the hyperplane perpendicular to the reaction coordinate, rather than along a line defined by the gradient. Furthermore, all the points are moved in each iteration, rather than one at a time.

The \textit{Conjugate Peak Refinement} (CPR) method may be considered as a dynamical version of the chain method, where points are added or removed based on a sequence of maximizations along line segments and minimizations along the conjugate directions. The first cycle is analogous to the Bell and Crighton version of the QST: location of an energy maximum along a line between the reactant and product, followed by sequential minimizations in the directions of the initial gradient

\[ T_{\text{NEB}}(R, \mathbf{x}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_n) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{i-1} T_{\text{NEB}}(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j) \]

A straightforward minimization of \( T_{\text{NEB}} \) gives a reaction path that has a tendency of cutting corners at the minimum, but a problem of points sliding down towards the minimum. This results in the formation of a series of "hanging" points, i.e. only the component of the reaction coordinate parallel to the tangent of the TS path, and only the component of the kinetic energy along the reaction coordinate is used in the optimization. The distance between neighbouring points can be alleviated by "nudging" the chain, i.e. only the component of the reaction coordinate perpendicular to the tangent of the TS path is used in the optimization. The distance between neighbours can be estimated by the distance between the reactant and product, and the distance between the reactant and TS.

Despite the optimization issue, the NEB method is one of the most popular interpolation methods, and several improvements and variations have been reported. In the \textit{Climbing Image} (CI-NEB) version, one of the images is allowed to move along the hyperplane defined by the gradient of the TS path, thereby reducing the number of iterations. The method is also used in dynamical systems, in which case the optimization is performed along the time evolution of the system.

Despite the optimization problem, the NEB method is one of the most popular interpolation methods, and several improvements and variations have been reported. In the \textit{Climbing Image} (CI-NEB) version, one of the images is allowed to move along the hyperplane defined by the gradient of the TS path, thereby reducing the number of iterations. The method is also used in dynamical systems, in which case the optimization is performed along the time evolution of the system.

Despite the optimization problem, the NEB method is one of the most popular interpolation methods, and several improvements and variations have been reported. In the \textit{Climbing Image} (CI-NEB) version, one of the images is allowed to move along the hyperplane defined by the gradient of the TS path, thereby reducing the number of iterations. The method is also used in dynamical systems, in which case the optimization is performed along the time evolution of the system.
(3) There may be several TS's (and therefore at least one minimum) between the two selected end-points. Some algorithms may find one of these, and the two connecting minima can then be found by tracing the IRC path, or all the TS's and intermediate minima may be located. Multi-structure methods (e.g., NEB) are examples of the latter behaviour.

(4) The reaction path formed by a sequence of points generated by constrained optimizations may be discontinuous. For methods where two points are gradually moved from the reactant and product sides (e.g., saddle and LTP), this means that the distance between end-points does not converge towards zero.

(5) There may be more than one TS connecting two minima. As many of the interpolation methods start off by assuming a linear reaction coordinate between the reactant and product, the user needs to guide the initial search (for example by adding various intermediate structures) to find more than one TS.

(6) A significant advantage is that the constrained optimization can usually be carried out using only the first derivative of the energy. This avoids an explicit, and computationally expensive, calculation of the second derivative matrix.

(7) For the one- and two-structure methods, each successive refinement of the TS estimate requires either location of an energy maximum or minimum along a one-dimensional path (typically a line), or a constrained optimization in an \( N - 1 \) dimensional hyperspace. A path minimization or maximization will normally involve several function evaluations, while a multi-dimensional minimization requires several gradient calculations. Geometry changes are often quite small in the endgame, but each step may still require a significant computational effort involving many function and/or gradient calculations. In such cases, it is often advantageous to switch to one of the Newton–Raphson methods described in Section 12.4.6, but the dimensionality of the problem may prevent this.

(8) The multi-structure methods in Section 12.4.3 involve an optimization of a target function with \( M \) images each having \( 3N_{\text{atom}} \) coordinates, i.e. optimization of a function with \( 3MN_{\text{atom}} \) variables. Since the number of iterations typically increases with the number of variables, the optimization of the target function often requires a large number (several hundred or thousand) of gradients.

(9) The multi-structure methods are quite tolerant towards the presence of many soft degrees of freedom, which often causes problems with the local optimization methods described in Sections 12.4.5–12.4.7. Multi-structure methods such as NEB are therefore well suited for large systems such as extended (periodic) systems.

12.4.5 Local methods: gradient norm minimization

Since transition structures are points where the gradient is zero, they may in principle be located by minimizing the gradient norm. This is in general not a good approach for two reasons:

(1) There are typically many points where the gradient norm has a minimum without being zero.

(2) Any stationary point has a gradient norm of zero, thus all types of saddle points and minima/maxima may be found, not just TS's.

12.4.6 Local methods: Newton–Raphson

By far the most common local methods are based on the augmented Hessian Newton–Raphson approach. Sufficiently close to the TS, the standard NR formula will locate the TS rapidly. Sufficiently close means that the Hessian should have exactly one negative eigenvalue, and the eigenvector should be in the correct direction, along the "reaction coordinate". Furthermore, the NR step should be inside the trust radius. By using augmented Hessian techniques, the convergence radius may be enlarged over the straight NR approach, and first-order saddle points may be located even when started in a region where the Hessian does not have the correct structure, as long as the lowest eigenvector is in the "correct" direction.

Near a first-order saddle point the NR step maximizes the energy in one direction (along the Hessian TS eigenvector) and minimizes the energy along all other directions. Such a step may be enforced by choosing suitable shift parameters in the augmented Hessian method, i.e. the step is parameterized as in eq. (12.12). The minimization step is similar to that described in Section 12.2.4 for locating minima, the only difference is for the unique TS mode.
In the Partitioned Rational Function Optimization (P-RFO), two shift parameters are employed:

\[
\sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{f_i^2}{\epsilon_i - \lambda} = \lambda \quad \text{(12.27)}
\]

\[
\frac{f_{TS}^2}{\epsilon_{TS} - \lambda_{TS}} = \lambda_{TS}
\]

The \(\lambda\) for the minimization modes is determined as for the RFO method, eq. (12.14). The equation for \(\lambda_{TS}\) is quadratic and by choosing the solution that is larger than \(\epsilon_{TS}\) it is guaranteed that the step component in this direction is along the gradient, i.e. a maximization. As for the RFO step, there is no guarantee that the total step length will be within the trust radius.

The Quadratic Approximation (QA) method uses only one shift parameter, requiring that \(\lambda_{TS} = -\lambda\), and restricts the total step length to the trust radius (compare with eq. (12.15)).

\[
[\Delta x]^2 = \sum_{i=TS} \left( \frac{f_i}{\epsilon_i - \lambda} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{f_{TS}}{\epsilon_{TS} - \lambda} \right)^2 = R^2
\]

The exact same formula may be derived using the concept of an “image potential” (obtained by inverting the sign of \(f_{TS}\) and \(\lambda_{TS}\)), and the QA name is often used together with the TRIM acronym, which stand for Trust Radius Image Minimization.

The ability of augmented Hessian methods for generating a search toward a first-order saddle point, even when started in a region where the Hessian has all positive eigenvalues, suggests that it may be possible to start directly from a minimum and “walk” to the TS by following a selected Hessian eigenvector uphill. Such mode followings, however, are only possible if the eigenvector being followed is only weakly coupled to the other eigenvectors (i.e. third and higher derivatives are small). All NR-based methods assume that one of the Hessian eigenvectors points in the general direction of the TS but this is only strictly true when the higher order derivatives are small. If this is not the case, NR-based methods may fail to converge even when started from a “good” geometry, where the Hessian has one negative eigenvalue. Note also that the magnitude of the higher derivatives depends on the choice of coordinates, i.e. a “good” choice of coordinates may transform a divergent optimization into a convergent one.

All NR methods assume that a reasonable guess of the TS geometry is available. Generating this guess is part of the magic, but some of the interpolating schemes described in Sections 12.4.1–12.4.3 may be useful in this respect.

There are two main problems with all NR-based methods. One is the already mentioned need for a good starting geometry. The other is the requirement of a Hessian, which is quite expensive in terms of computer time for electronic structure methods. Contrary to minimizations, TS optimizations cannot start with a diagonal matrix and update it as the optimization proceeds. An NR TS search requires the definition of a direction along which to maximize the energy, the reaction vector, i.e. the start Hessian should preferably have one negative eigenvalue. Normally the Hessian needs to be calculated explicitly at the first step, and subsequent steps the Hessian may be updated. An interesting alternative is to use a force field Hessian for starting the optimization, since this effectively removes one of the more expensive steps in a TS optimization. If the geometry changes substantially during the optimization, however, it may be necessary to recalculate the Hessian at certain intervals. Owing to the relatively high cost of calculating the energy, gradient and especially the Hessian, pseudo-Newton-Raphson methods have traditionally been the preferred algorithm with ab initio wave functions.

12.4.7 Local methods: the dimer method

The main problem with Newton–Raphson methods is the need for generating (calculating or updating) and manipulating (storing and diagonalizing) the Hessian matrix. The main function of the Hessian for saddle point optimization is to provide the direction along which the energy should be maximized. Sufficiently near the TS, the direction is along the eigenvector corresponding to the lowest eigenvalue. Determination of this direction, however, can be done without calculating the Hessian by placing two symmetrically displaced images, a dimer, and minimizing the sum of their energies, subject to a constant distance between them. After minimization the lowest mode direction is given by the line connecting the two images, and it can be used for displacing the central structure, followed by a new dimer optimization. Since the dimer optimization can be done using only first derivatives, this alleviates the need for the Hessian matrix. There is relatively little experience with this method so far, but one would expect it to have the same requirements as Newton–Raphson-based methods, i.e. a good starting Geometry must be required for a stable convergence to the TS. Whether the added computational cost of optimizing each dimer configuration outweighs the saving by not having an explicit Hessian is unclear, and will in any case depend on the size of the system.

12.4.8 Coordinates for TS searches

The choice of a “good” set of coordinates is even more critical in TS optimizations than for minimizations. A good set of coordinates enlarges the convergence region, relaxing the requirement of a good starting geometry. On the other hand, a poor set of coordinates decreases the convergence radius, forcing the user to generate a starting point very close to the actual TS in order for NR methods to work. Furthermore, NR methods are best suited for relatively “stiff” systems; large flexible systems with many small eigenvalues in the Hessian are better handled by some of the interpolations methods, such as NEB.

Mapping out whole reaction pathways by locating minima and connecting TSs is often computationally demanding. The (approximate) geometries of many of the important minima are often known in advance, and as mentioned above, energy minimizations are fairly uncomplicated. Locating TSs is much more involved. On a multi-dimensional energy surface, there will in general not be TS connecting all pairs of minima. It is, however, essentially impossible to prove that a TS does not exist. Symmetry can sometimes be used to facilitate the location of TSs. For some reactions, especially those where the reactant and product are identical, the TS will have a symmetry different from the reactant/product. The reaction vector will belong to one of the non-totally symmetric representations in the point group. The TS can therefore
be located by constraining the geometry to a certain symmetry and minimizing the energy. Consider for example the S$_2$2 reaction of Cl$^-$ with CH$_3$Cl. The reactant and product have C$_3v$ symmetry, but the TS has D$_3h$ symmetry. Minimizing the energy under the constraint that the geometry should have D$_3h$ symmetry will produce the lowest energy structure within this symmetry, which is the TS.

Figure 12.11 The TS for an identity S$_2$2 reaction has a higher symmetry than the reactant/product

For non-identity reactions, it is often useful to start a search for stationary points by minimizing high-symmetry geometries. A subsequent frequency calculation on the symmetry-constrained (and minimized) structure will reveal the nature of the stationary point. If it is a minimum or TS we have already obtained useful information. If it turns out to be a higher order saddle point, the normal coordinates associated with the imaginary frequencies show how the symmetry should be lowered to produce lower energy species, which may be either minima or TSs. As calculations on highly symmetric geometries are computationally less expensive than on non-symmetric structures, it is often a quite efficient strategy to start the investigation by concentrating on structures with symmetry.

### 12.4.9 Characteristics of local methods

Local methods have the following characteristics:

1. A starting geometry close to the saddle point is needed. Especially for reactions that are not dominated by a few (internal) reaction variables, it may be difficult to generate such a guess. In many cases, the convergence radius is small, i.e. the starting geometry must be (very) close to the saddle point in order to converge.

2. Hessian-based methods (Section 12.4.6) require explicit calculation of the second derivative matrix, which may be computationally expensive. Furthermore, for large systems, an explicit handling of the Hessian matrix becomes problematic.

3. Systems with many soft vibrational modes are often problematic, as the resulting low Hessian eigenvalues interfere with the negative curvature along the reaction vector.

4. If a good starting geometry and Hessian is available, the convergence is rapid, often requiring only a few tens of gradient calculations.

### 12.4.10 Dynamic methods

The methods in Sections 12.4.1–12.4.8 focus on finding a TS connecting a reactant and product, and the resulting activation energy can provide reaction rates via the Arrhenius or Eyring formula (eqs (13.39) and (13.40)). For large complex systems, however, the concept of a single “structure” becomes blurred. In cycloheptadecane, for example, there are hundreds of conformations within 10kJ/mol of the global minimum, and any experimentally observed property at room temperature will be a Boltzmann average over many individual conformations. The reaction rate for a large system will similarly be a Boltzmann average over perhaps hundreds of TSs and a single reaction path connecting two minima via a saddle point no longer dominates the reaction rate. A systematic location of all minima (conformations) and corresponding TSs followed by a Boltzmann averaging is a possibility, but this rapidly becomes unmanageable even for medium-sized systems. For large systems, one is therefore forced to perform a sampling of the TS’s in order to estimate the reaction rate, in analogy with the ensemble averaging discussed in Section 13.6 for minima. Standard molecular dynamics methods (Section 14.2.1) only sample the low-energy part of the surface, and are therefore unsuitable for the (high-energy) saddle point region. A specific part of the surface can be sample by a biasing potential, as for example in the umbrella sampling technique (Section 14.2.9). Such an approach, however, requires a priori knowledge of the reaction path or at least the saddle point region. Alternatively, a dynamics simulation may be initiated in the transition state region and the trajectory followed in both directions.

### 12.5 Constrained Optimization Problems

In some cases, there are restrictions on the variables used to describe the function, as for example:

1. Certain geometrical constraints may be imposed. Experimental data, for example, may indicate that some atom pairs are within a certain distance of each other, or one may for analysis reasons want to impose certain geometrical restrictions on a molecular structure.

2. Fitting atomic charges to give a best match to a calculated electrostatic potential. The constraint is that the sum of atomic charges should equal the net charge of the molecule.

3. A variation of wave function coefficients is subject to constraints such as maintaining orthogonality of the MOs, and normalization of the MOs and the total wave function.

4. Finding conical intersections between different energy surfaces. The constraint is that two different energy functions should have the same energy for the same set of nuclear coordinates.

There are three main methods for enforcing constraints during function optimization:

1. Penalty functions
2. Lagrange undetermined multipliers
3. Projection methods.

The penalty function approach adds a term of the type $k(r - r_0)^2$ to the function to be optimized. The variable $r$ is constrained to be near the target value $r_0$, and the “force constant” $k$ describes how important the constraint is compared with the unconstrained optimization. By making $k$ arbitrarily large, the constraint may be fulfilled to any given accuracy. It cannot, however, make the constraint variable exactly equal to $r_0$. This
OPTIMIZATION TECHNIQUES

12.6 Conformational Sampling and the Global Minimum Problem

The methods described in Section 12.2 can only locate the "nearest" minimum, which is normally a local minimum, when starting from a given set of variables. In some cases, however, the interest is in the lowest of all such minima, the global minimum. This is important in the case of conformational sampling, where the global minimum problem is an extremely difficult task for a multi-dimensional function. The number of minima, the global optimization problem, can be expressed as the number of possible permutations of the variables, or the combinatorial explosion problem in the literature.

Consider for example determining the lowest energy conformations of linear alkanes, CH$_3$(CH$_2$)$_n$CH$_3$, by a force field method, with three possible energy minima for rotation around each C–C bond. In the CH$_3$(CH$_2$)$_n$CH$_3$ case there are $n$ such different conformations, and in order to find the global minimum the energy must be calculated for each one. Alternatively, a micro-iterate based on successive linear approximations may be performed in each optimization of the objective function.

A more elegant method of enforcing constraints is the Lagrange method. The function to be optimized depends on a number of variables, $f(x_1,x_2,\ldots,x_N)$, and the constraint condition can always be written as another function, $g(x_1,x_2,\ldots,x_N)=c$. Define the Lagrange function as the original function minus a constant times the constraint function:

$$L(x_1,x_2,\ldots,x_N,\lambda) = f(x_1,x_2,\ldots,x_N) - \lambda(g(x_1,x_2,\ldots,x_N) - c)$$

If there is more than one constraint, one additional multiplier term is added for each constraint. The optimization is then performed on the Lagrange function by requiring that the gradient components with respect to the - and -variable(s) are equal to zero.

The Lagrange function allows the constraint condition to be optimally imposed by projection onto the constraint manifold, which may be thought of as the orthogonal complement of the constraint manifold. The constraint manifold is the set of all points in the $N$-dimensional space that satisfy the constraint function.

The Lagrange function is a powerful tool for solving constrained optimization problems. It is generally more efficient than the penalty function approach, which is often used for numerical problems when it becomes sufficiently large compared with the other terms. The penalty function approach is often used for restricting the design variables, such as $x_1$, $x_2$, $\ldots$, $x_N$, $x_1$, $x_2$, $\ldots$, $x_N$, $x_1$, $x_2$, $\ldots$, $x_N$.

In some cases, the constraint manifold is a vector in the $N$-dimensional space. Instead of eliminating a variable explicitly, the constraint condition can be fulfilled by removing the corresponding component of the object function by projecting out the first-order (linear) Taylor approximation to the function. Since the constraint manifold is a vector in the $N$-dimensional space, the constraint condition can be fulfilled by removing the corresponding component of the object function by projecting out the first-order (linear) Taylor approximation to the function. Since the constraint manifold is a vector in the $N$-dimensional space, the constraint condition can be fulfilled by removing the corresponding component of the object function by projecting out the first-order (linear) Taylor approximation to the function.
computer time. Nevertheless, the exponential increase in the number of conformations means that it is impossible to perform a complete sampling of systems with more than ~20 degrees of freedom.

The total number of conformations for a given resolution of each variable (e.g., 120° steps) can be thought of as branches in a combinatorial tree, as illustrated in Figure 12.12.

Figure 12.12 Visualizing conformations as a combinatorial tree

For a reasonable sized system, there may be certain combinations of torsional angle that always lead to high-energy structures, for example by atoms clashing. These combinations correspond to specific branches in the combinatorial tree, and it is clear that these may be pruned from the search at an early stage. This allows somewhat larger systems to be treated compared with a brute force combinatorial search, but the number of possible conformations still increases rapidly with the size of the system.

Finding “reasonable” minima for large biomolecular systems is heavily dependent on selecting a “good” starting geometry. One way of attempting this is by “building up” the structure. A protein, for example, may be built from amino acids, which have been optimized to their global minimum, and/or smaller fragments of the whole structure may be subjected to a global minimum search. By combining such pre-optimized fragments, it is hoped that the starting geometry for the whole protein will also be “near” the global minimum for the full system.

The systematic, or grid, search is only possible for small molecules. For larger systems, there are methods that can be used for perturbing a geometry from one local minimum to another. Some commonly used methods for conformational sampling are:

1. Stochastic and Monte Carlo methods
2. Molecular dynamics
3. Simulated annealing
4. Genetic algorithms
5. Diffusion methods
6. Distance geometry methods.

None of these are guaranteed to find the global minimum, but they may in many cases generate a local minimum that is close in energy to the global minimum (but not necessarily close in terms of structure). A brief description of the ideas in these methods is given below. For simplicity, we assume that the optimization is of an energy as a function of atomic coordinates, but it is of course equally valid for any function depending on a set of parameters.

12.6.1 Stochastic and Monte Carlo methods

These methods start from a given geometry, which is typically a local minimum, and new conformations are generated by adding a random “kick” to one or more atoms. In Monte Carlo (MC) methods, the new geometry is accepted as a starting point for the next perturbing step if it is lower in energy than the current. Otherwise, the Boltzmann factor $e^{-\Delta E/kT}$ is calculated and compared with a random number between 0 and 1. If $e^{-\Delta E/kT}$ is less than this number, the new geometry is accepted, otherwise the next step is taken from the old geometry. This generates a sequence of conformations from which geometries may be selected for subsequent minimization. In order to have a reasonable acceptance ratio, however, the step size must be fairly small, and is often chosen to give an acceptance ratio of ~0.5.

In stochastic methods, the random kick is somewhat larger and is usually performed on all the atoms, and a standard minimization is carried out starting at the perturbed geometry. The efficiency of the optimization can be improved by first re-adjusting all bond lengths to values close to their starting values. The optimization may or may not produce a new minimum, and a database of all unique structures is gradually built up. A new perturbed geometry is then generated from one of the structures in the database and minimized, etc. There are several variations on how this is done:

- The length of the perturbing step is important; a small kick essentially always return the geometry to the starting minimum, a large kick may produce high-energy structures, which minimize to high-energy local minima.
- The perturbing step may be done directly in Cartesian coordinates or in a selected set of internal coordinates, such as torsional angles. The Cartesian procedure has the disadvantage that many of the perturbed geometries are high in energy as two (or more) atoms are moved close together by the kick, although this can be partly alleviated by an adjustment of the bond lengths prior to the optimization. The use of torsional angles as variables is highly efficient for acyclic systems but is problematic for cyclic and confined structures. Cyclic structures can be treated by opening the ring, performing a random perturbation of the torsional angles, and attempting to re-close the ring. In the majority of cases this is not possible, and this results in many trial structures being discarded.
- The perturbing step may be taken either from the last minimum found or from all the previous found minima, weighted by a probability factor such that low-energy minima are used more often than high-energy structures.

Kolossvary and Guida have proposed generating the perturbing step along the eigenvectors with small eigenvalues obtained by diagonalizing the Hessian matrix at each minimum, a method called low-mode search. The premise is that the soft deformation modes for a given structure are likely to lead to low-energy transition structures, and consequently to other low-energy minima. The strategy is thus similar to the eigenvector-following tactic discussed in Section 12.4.6 for locating transition structures, except that no attempt is made to find the actual TS. The interest is only in perturbing the geometry sufficiently to get “past” the TS, such that a minimization will locate a new minimum. The advantage of the low-mode search is that the search is concentrated on the low-energy part of the energy surface, and the method furthermore...
essentially solves the problem of generating trial structures for ring systems. The number of acceptable trial structures generated by the open-perturb-re-close method is often very low, only a few percent, resulting in an inefficient search. Since the Hessian eigenvalues contain information about the coupling of the internal (torsional) coordinates, the low-mode technique can generate trial structures without opening and re-closing ring.

The disadvantage of the low-mode search is that it requires calculating and diagonalizing the Hessian matrix for each minimum found, which becomes problematic for systems with more than a few hundred atoms. In order to use the method for large systems, the soft Hessian modes can be calculated by an iterative procedure requiring only the gradient. Although this solves the problem of calculating and diagonalizing the Hessian, the computational effort for determining the low-mode directions is still substantial. It has been suggested that for e.g. proteins, the low-mode directions for one minimum can be reused for other minima as well, thereby avoiding the expensive mode calculation.

The main problem with stochastic methods is generating trial structures. In small flexible molecules, the torsional angles form a good set of coordinates for randomly perturbing the geometry. For cyclic and confined structures, however, a perturbation of a single torsional angle will usually lead to a high-energy structure, either because the remaining (cyclic) structure becomes strained, or because of atoms clashing into each other. The low-mode technique solves this by determining the proper combinations of internal coordinates to avoid this, but the Hessian diagonalization prevents its use for systems with thousands of atoms. Stochastic methods are therefore primarily useful for searching the conformational space for flexible extended systems, but not for confined molecules such as proteins and DNA. Stochastic methods, however, have the big advantage that they can generate conformations separated by large energy barriers, since the random kick is performed without calculating any energies along the perturbing step, i.e. the conformations can “tunnel” through large energy barriers.

**12.6.2 Molecular dynamics**

Molecular Dynamics (MD) methods solve Newton’s equation of motion for atoms on an energy surface (see Section 16.3.1). The available energy for the molecule is distributed between potential and kinetic energy, and molecules are thus able to overcome barriers separating minima if the barrier height is less than the total energy minus the potential energy. Given a high-enough energy, which is closely related to the simulation temperature, the dynamics will sample the whole surface but will also require an impractically long simulation time. Since quite small time steps must be used for integrating Newton’s equation, the simulation time is short (pico- or nanoseconds). Combined with the use of “reasonable” temperatures (a few hundreds or thousands of degrees), this means that only the local area around the starting point is sampled, and that only relatively small barriers (a few tens of a kJ/mol) can be overcome. Different (local) minima may be generated by selecting configurations at suitable intervals during the simulation and subsequently minimizing these structures. MD methods use the inherent dynamics of the system to search out the low-energy deformation modes and they can be used for sampling the conformational space for large confined systems. MD methods are typically used for sampling the conformational space when the starting geometry is derived from experimental information, such as an X-ray or NMR structure. The main disadvantage of MD is the inability to overcome barriers larger than the internal energy determined by the simulation temperature. Since this is one of the advantages of MC methods, it is no surprise that mixed MC/MD methods have been developed.

**12.6.3 Simulated Annealing**

Both MD and MC methods employ a temperature as a guiding parameter for generating or accepting new geometries. At sufficiently high temperatures and long run times, all the conformational space is sampled. In Simulated Annealing (SA) techniques, the initial temperature is chosen to be high, maybe 2000–3000 K. An MD or MC run is then initiated, during which the temperature is slowly reduced. Initially the molecule is allowed to move over a large area, but as the temperature is decreased, it becomes trapped in a minimum. If the cooling is done infinitely slowly (implying an infinite run time), the resulting minimum is the global minimum. In practice, however, an MD or MC run is so short that only the local area is sampled. The name simulated annealing, comes from the analogy of growing crystals. If a melt is cooled slowly, large single crystals can be formed. Such a single crystal represents the global energy minimum for a solid state. A rapid cooling produces a glass (local minimum), i.e. a disordered solid.

**12.6.4 Genetic algorithms**

Genetic Algorithms (GA) or Evolutionary Algorithms take their concepts and terminology from biology. The idea is to have a “population” of structures, each characterized by a set of “genes”. The “parent” structures are allowed to generate “children” having a mixture of the parent genes, allowing for “mutations” to occur in the process. The best species from a population are selected based on Darwin’s principle, survival of the fittest, and carried on to the next “generation”, while the less fit structures are discarded.

Consider for example a molecule having 20 torsional angles, which may have ~10⁹ possible conformations. The species in an initial population of say 100 different conformations are characterized by their fitness, for example a low energy is equivalent to a good structure. These 100 structures are allowed to produce offspring with a probability depending on their fitness, i.e. low-energy structures are more likely to contribute to the next generation than high-energy conformations. Two child conformations can be generated by taking the first n torsional angles from one of the parents and the remaining 20 – n from the other (“single-point cross-over”), with the second child being the complementary. A small amount of mutation is usually allowed in the process, i.e. randomly changing angles to produce conformations outside the range contained in the current population. Having generated say 100 such children, their (minimized) energies are determined and a suitable portion of the best parent and children structures are carried over to the next generation. The population is then allowed to evolve for perhaps a few hundred generations. There are many variations on the GA method: varying the size of the population, the mutation rate, the breeding selection, the ratio of children to parents surviving to the next generation, ...
single- or multi-point cross-over, etc. Genetic algorithms have become popular in
recent years as they are easy to implement and have proven to be robust for locating
a point in parameter space close to the global minimum. If the parameters are coded
into genes the sampling is pointwise, and the final structures should therefore be
refined using a standard gradient optimization. Alternatively, the trial structures may
be subjected to a local optimization, making the parameter space continuous.53

12.6.5 Diffusion methods

In Diffusion Methods the energy function is changed such that it will eventually contain
only one minimum.54 The function may be changed for example by adding a contribu-
tion proportional to the local curvature of the function (second derivative). This
means that minima are raised in energy, and saddle points (and maxima) are reduced
in energy (negative curvature). Eventually only one minimum remains. Using the
single minimum geometry of the modified potential, the process can be reversed,
ending up with a minimum on the original surface that often (but not necessarily)
is the global minimum. The mathematical description of this process turns out to be ident-
tical to the differential equation describing diffusion.

Figure 12.13 Illustration of the diffusion method

12.6.6 Distance geometry methods

The idea in Distance Geometry methods is that trial geometries can be generated from
a set of lower and upper bounds on distances between all pairs of atoms.55 The method
was originally developed for generating possible geometries based on experimental
information such as NMR NOE effects, which place certain constraints on the distance
between protons that may be far from each other in terms of bonding. The bonding
information itself, however, also places restrictions on distances between all pairs of
atoms. Once a set of upper and lower bounds for all pairs distances has been assigned,
many different trial sets of distances may be generated by selecting random numbers
between these limit. Such a random distance matrix can then be translated into a three-
dimensional structure, a procedure known as embedding. Distance geometry can thus
be used for generating trial conformations that can be optimized using conventional
methods. The main advantage of distance geometry method is the ease with which
distant constraints between atoms far apart in terms of bonding can be translated into
valid trial structures. Without such constraints, some of the other methods in this
section are usually more efficient in searching the conformational space.

From the above it may be clear that MD, MC and stochastic methods tend to pri-
marily sample the local area, generating a relatively large number of local minima in
the process. The use of a larger step size in stochastic methods normally means that
they are more efficient than MC or MD. Simulated annealing and diffusion methods,
on the other hand, are primarily geared to locating the global minimum, and will in
general only produce one final structure, this being the best estimate of the global
minimum. Genetic algorithms also focus on the global minimum, but the final popu-
lation contains a distribution of low-energy structures. Distance geometry methods are
more or less random searches, where “impossible” structures are excluded. Simulated
annealing normally explores a significantly smaller space than genetic algorithms, but
there is currently no clear consensus on which method is better for locating the global
minimum. It is most likely that the best method will depend on the problem at hand.

12.7 Molecular Docking

An important example of a global optimization problem is determining the best align-
ment of two molecules with respect to each other, typically trying to fit a small mole-
cule into a large protein structure, a process called docking. Given an X-ray structure
of an enzyme, preferably with a bound ligand to identify the active site, the ligand can
be removed, and other (virtual) compounds may be docked into the active site to pos-
sibly identify new molecules with a stronger binding affinity. Since many drugs act by
inhibiting specific enzymes, docking is an important element in drug design and lead
optimization.

The process of docking a ligand into the active site of a rigid enzyme has six degrees
of freedom, three translational and three rotational, besides those arising from the
ligand conformations. The three translational degrees of freedom can be sampled on
a grid, for example by placing the ligand centre of mass within a central box with grid
points every 1 Å, which for even a rather small 10 × 10 × 10 Å box generates ~1000
possible points. For each of these points, the overall rotational orientation of the ligand
must be sampled, for example by the Euler angles, typically generating a few hundred
possibilities. A specific set of intermolecular translational and rotational variables is
called a pose, and each ligand conformation may thus have ~105 possible poses, even
on a rather coarse grid. Even though the majority of these can be rejected based on
for example atom pair distances between the ligand and receptor, the combinatorial
space is still large for even a relatively small ligand. A systematic sampling is often too
demanding, and global optimization schemes such as genetic algorithms are often
employed for solving the optimization problem. Since the interest is typically to dock
perhaps thousands of ligands for (virtual) screening a library of compounds, this fur-
thermore calls for a fast method for estimating the binding energy. Given that the
binding energy is the Gibbs free energy, this is clearly a challenging task.

A standard force field energy-only attempt to calculate the enthalpic interaction and
an estimate of the free energy by simulation methods (Section 14.5) is much too expen-
sive computationally. Instead, the non-bonded part of a force field function can be aug-
mented with empirical terms, hopefully capturing some of the entropy and solvent
effects, and the resulting scoring function can be parameterized against experimental
binding data. The entropy terms are typically structural descriptors, as the number of
torsional degrees of freedom and the number of hydrogen acceptors and donors,
the argument being that the fixing of torsional angles by binding to the enzyme causes
a rather constant loss of entropy for each entity. The weighting factors can then be fitted to actual binding data for specific
protein–ligand systems.

Developing scoring functions capable of accurately ranking binding energies is an
active area of research but it is probably fair to say that no general scoring function has
yet been developed. Some scoring functions employ only force field terms, such as the
first two in eq. (12.32), others parameterize it entirely from descriptive terms, such as
the last three in eq. (12.32), and some employs a mixture of these. It should be noted that
the interaction of the enzyme atoms with potential ligand atoms at the grid points in the
active site is the same for all ligands and their poses, and can therefore be pre-computed
to save computational resources. The main purpose of the scoring function is to rapidly
rank a large number of poses, from which a smaller number of promising candidates may
be subjected to more refined methods for estimating the binding energies.

The main problem of docking ligands into an active site generated by removing an
existing ligand from an X-ray structure is that the hole left behind naturally bears a
strong resemblance to the compound that was removed. This will thus be a tendency of finding
compounds differing only slightly from the already-known inhibitor. The fundamental
problem is that the flexibility of the enzyme is neglected, i.e. the protein is able to some
to adapt to the different shapes of the active site for different ligands. Taking
the enzyme conformational degrees of freedom into consideration during the docking
increases the computational problem to essentially unequally manageable proportions.
A heuristic proposition is to reduce the van der Waals parameters of the enzyme atoms
at the surface of the active site, thereby allowing larger ligands to be docked. Subse-
quently, the original van der Waals parameters can be re-introduced followed by relaxation
of the enzyme structure. Such methods are at the forefront of current research.

12.8 Intrinsic Reaction Coordinate Methods

The optimization methods described in Sections 12.2–12.4 concentrate on locating sta-
tionary points on an energy surface. The important points for discussing chemical reac-
tions are minima, corresponding to reactant(s) and product(s), and saddle points,
corresponding to transition structures. Once a TS has been located, it should be
verified that it indeed connects the desired minima. At the TS the vibrational
normal coordinate associated with the imaginary frequency is the reaction coordinate
(Section 16.2.3), and an inspection of the correspondingly atomic motions may be a
strong indication that it is the “correct” TS. An rigorous proof, however, requires a
determination of the Minimum Energy Path (MEP) from the TS to the connecting
minima. If the MEP is located in mass-weighted coordinates, it is called the Intrinsic
Reaction Coordinate (IRC). The IRC path is of special importance in connection
with studies of reaction dynamics, since the nuclei will usually stay close to the
IRC, and a model for the reaction surface may be constructed by expanding the energy
to a second order around points on the IRC (Section 14.27). The IRC is formally the reaction path taken in the limit of a zero temperature, and for a modest
temperature the deviation from this path is usually small. For high temperatures,
however, the favoured dynamical path will tend to be the shortest path, regardless of
the fact that this may be significantly higher in energy than along the (longer) IRC
path.

The IRC path is defined by the differential equation (12.33).

\[
\frac{dx(s)}{ds} = -g = t
\]

Here \(x\) are the (mass-weighted) coordinates, \(s\) is the path length and \(t\) is the (negative)
normalized gradient. Determining the IRC requires solving eq. (12.33) starting from a
geometry slightly displaced from the TS along the normal coordinate for the imagi-
nary frequency.

The simplest method for integrating eq. (12.33) is the Euler method. A series of
steps are taken in the opposite direction of the normalized gradient at the current
geometry \(x_n\).

\[
x_{n+1} = x_n + \Delta t(x_n)
\]

This corresponds to a steepest descent minimization with a fixed step size \(\Delta t\). As dis-
cussed in Section 12.2.1, such an approach tends to oscillate around the true path and
consequently requires a small step size to follow the IRC accurately.

A more advanced method is the Runge–Kutta (RK) algorithm. The idea here is
that the generation of some intermediate steps that allow a better and more stable estimate of
the next geometry for a given step size. The second-order Runge–Kutta (RK2) method first calculates the gradient at a point corresponding to an Euler step with
half the step size. The gradient at the halfway point is then used for taking the full
step.

\[
k_1 = \Delta t(x_n)
\]

\[
k_2 = \Delta t(x_n + \frac{1}{2} k_1)
\]

\[
x_{n+1} = x_n + k_1
\]

The fourth-order Runge–Kutta (RK4) method generates four intermediate gradients,
and combines the steps as follows.
Another method for following the IRC which does not rely on integration of the differential equation (12.23) has been developed by Gonzales and Schlegel (GS). The idea is to generate points on the IRC by means of a series of constrained optimizations. The algorithm is illustrated in Figure 12.14.

An expansion point is generated by taking a step along the current direction with a step size of \( \Delta s \). The energy is then minimized on a hypersphere with radius \( \frac{1}{2} \Delta s \), located at the expansion point. This is an example of a constrained optimization that can be handled by means of a Lagrange multiplier (Section 12.5). The GS procedure ensures that the tangent to the IRC path is correct at each point.

Although it is clear that RK4 is more stable and accurate than the Euler method for a given step size, this does not necessarily mean that it is the most efficient method. Since the RK4 method requires four gradient calculations for each step, the simple Euler can employ a step size 4 times as small for the same computational cost. Similarly, although the Gonzales–Schlegel method appears to be quite tolerant for large step sizes, each constrained optimization may take a significant number of gradient calculations to converge, which could also be used for advancing the Euler algorithm at a slower pace. Nevertheless, the Gonzales–Schlegel method appears at present to be one of better methods for accurately following the IRC path. Which algorithm is the optimum will depend on the system at hand and the required accuracy of the IRC path. If only the nature of the two minima on each side of the TS is required, a crude IRC is sufficient, and a simple Euler algorithm may be the most cost efficient. For use in connection with reaction path methods (Section 14.2.7), however, the IRC needs to be located very accurately, and a sophisticated method and a small step size may be required.

References

The separation of the nuclear and electronic degrees of freedom by the Born–Oppenheimer approximation leads to a mental picture of a chemical reaction as nuclei moving on a potential energy surface. The easiest path from one minimum to another, i.e. for transforming one chemical species to another, is along the reaction path having the lowest energy. The highest energy point along this path is the transition structure, and the energy relative to the reactant completely determines the reaction rate within Transition State Theory (TST). Transition state theory is a semi-classical theory where the quantum nature is taken into account by means of the quantization of vibrational and rotational energy states. The connection between the properties of a single molecule and the experimental conditions employing a very large number of species is given by statistical mechanics, which provides a framework for performing the statistical averaging over a very large number of possible energy distributions. For an ideal gas the averaging can be performed in a closed analytical form within the rigid-rotor harmonic-oscillator approximation. For systems in condensed states, i.e. liquid or solid states, the averaging must be done by explicitly sampling the phase space.

### 13.1 Transition State Theory

Consider a chemical reaction of the type $A + B \rightarrow C + D$. The rate of reaction may be written as in eq. (13.1), with $k_{\text{rate}}$ being the rate constant.

$$\frac{d[A]}{dr} = - \frac{d[B]}{dr} = \frac{d[C]}{dr} = \frac{d[D]}{dr} = k_{\text{rate}}[A][B] \quad (13.1)$$

If $k_{\text{rate}}$ is known, the concentration of the various species can be calculated at any given time from the initial concentrations. At the microscopic level, the rate constant is a
The macroscopic rate constant is an average over such "microscopic" rate constants, weighted by the probability of finding a molecule with a given set of quantum numbers. This probability is given by the Boltzmann distribution, and the microscopic rate constant thereby becomes a function of the quantum states of A, B, C and D, i.e. the electronic, translational, rotational and vibrational quantum numbers. The Boltzmann distribution is a function of the quantum states of a molecule, and the rate constant is calculated by averaging over all possible microscopic rate constants, weighted by the probability of finding a molecule in a given quantum state.

Stable molecules correspond to minima on the potential energy surface within the Born–Oppenheimer approximation and a chemical reaction can be described as nucleimoving from one minimum to another. In this process, the potential energy of the system changes from one valley to another, and the reaction path is defined by the path of least energy. The transition state is the configuration that divides the reactant and product parts of the surface (i.e. a molecule that has reached the transition state will continue on to product), while the geometrical configuration of the energy maximum along the reaction path is called the transition structure.

The transition state is the configuration that divides the reactant and product parts of the surface, and the transition structure is the maximum in the reaction coordinate direction. The transition state is a macroscopic ensemble with a Boltzmann energy distribution, while the transition structure refers to the geometry of the molecule at the energy maximum along the reaction coordinate. The transition state is the configuration that is most important at high temperatures, giving \( k \ll 1 \). For the majority of reactions, the calculated accuracy in the free energy difference is much larger than a factor of 2 and the transition state can be calculated from the free energy difference between the reactant and product states.

The expression for the rate constant is

\[
K = k_0 e^{-\Delta G}/kT
\]

where \( k_0 \) is the pre-exponential factor, \( \Delta G \) is the Gibbs free energy difference between the TS and reactant, and \( k \) is Boltzmann's constant. The transition state theory (TST) is a semi-classical theory where the dynamics along the reaction coordinate is treated classically, while the perpendicular directions take into account the quantization of, for example, the vibrational energy. This theory assumes an equilibrium distribution of the vibrational energy states, and the probability of finding a molecule in a given state is given by the Boltzmann distribution. Assuming that the total energy of the molecule is the sum of the electronic, rotational and translational energies, the probability of finding a molecule in a given state is

\[
p = e^{-\Delta E/kT}
\]

where \( \Delta E \) is the energy difference between the TS and reactant, and \( kT \) is the thermal energy. This factor also allows for the quantum mechanical phenomenon of tunnelling, i.e. molecules that have insufficient energy to pass over the TS may tunnel through the barrier and appear on the product side. The transmission coefficient is difficult to calculate but is usually close to 1 and rarely falls outside the range 0.5–2. At low temperatures the tunnelling contribution dominates, while the re-crossing effect is the most important at high temperatures, giving a \( k \approx 1 \). The majority of reactions have a transition state that is in equilibrium with the reactant, and the macroscopic rate constant can be expressed as

\[
K = k_0 e^{-\Delta G}/kT
\]

where \( K \) is the rate constant at temperature \( T \), \( k \) is Boltzmann's constant, \( \Delta G \) is the Gibbs free energy difference between the TS and reactant, and \( k_0 \) is the pre-exponential factor. The conversion of the free energy difference into a rate constant involves dividing by the thermal energy \( kT \).
geometries where the two surfaces “touch” each other, a point known as a conical intersection. Two energy surfaces of the same symmetry cannot cross for a diatomic system, and instead make an avoided crossing, as illustrated in Figure 3.2. In a multi-dimensional system, however, there is no such restriction, and two energy surfaces may have the same energy for the same set of nuclear coordinates. Locating such conical intersections is a constrained optimization problem, involving finding a set of nuclear coordinates where two different energy functions have the same value, and also involves the non-adiabatic coupling elements between different wave functions, as discussed in Section 3.1.

A conical intersection may be thought of as a “funnel” in the $N - 2$ dimensional subspace that serves as the dynamical bottleneck for a photochemical reaction, analogously to the TS for a thermal reaction. It should be noted, however, that the transition between the excited and ground state surfaces may occur over quite a wide range of nuclear configurations, making the concept of a single “transition structure” somewhat blurred. Furthermore, for many systems it is the movement on the excited state surface to achieve the geometry of the conical intersection that limits the reaction rate, and not the actual transition between the two surfaces at the conical intersection.

13.2 Rice–Ramsperger–Kassel–Marcus Theory

The canonical TST theory in Section 13.1 assumes fast energy exchange with the surroundings, i.e. that the reacting molecule is in thermal equilibrium with the environment. For unimolecular reactions in the gas phase this assumption may not hold, especially not if the pressure is low (e.g. fragmentations in a mass spectrometer). Alternatively, TST may be formulated in terms of the total energy, also known as micro-canonical TST. When applied to unimolecular reactions, this is usually known as Rice–Ramsperger–Kassel–Marcus (RRKM) theory. The fundamental assumption here is that no re-crossing occurs for a given total energy of the molecule.

Consider a reaction where a molecule $A$ acquires energy by collision with a molecule $M$ (which may be the same as $A$) to form an energized molecule $A^*$, with the energy being distributed between the translation, rotation and vibrational degrees of freedom. The vibrational energy can be transferred between the different modes owing to vibrational anharmonicity, and if it is higher than the activation energy $E^*$, it may at some point accumulate in a specific mode to reach an activated state $A^\ast$ (transition state) leading to a chemical product $P$:

$$A + M \overset{k_1}{\rightarrow} A^* + M \overset{k_1}{\rightarrow} A^\ast + M \overset{k_2}{\rightarrow} A^\ast \rightarrow P$$

(13.4)

Assuming that the decay rate $k_2$ for the activated $A^\ast$ is much faster than $k_1$, the rate for production of $P$ can be written in terms of the $k_1$, $k_1$, and $k_2$ constants by making a steady state approximation for $A^*$, as shown in eq. (13.5).

$$\frac{d[P]}{dt} = k_2[A^*] = k_2 [M][A] / [k_2 [M] + k_1] = k_2[A^*]$$

(13.5)

The effective rate constant $k_{dd}$ is thus a function of the concentration of $M$, i.e. the pressure of the gas. The amount of energy transferred to $A^*$ by $M$ will be a variable, and the rate constants for the activation and reaction (but not the deactivation) will depend on the energy, i.e. $k(E)$ and $k(E)$. The effective rate constant in a small energy interval around $E$ is obtained by rearranging eq. (13.5).

$$k_{dd}(E + dE) = \frac{dk_2(E)}{dE} k_1(E) \int \frac{1}{1 + k(E)/k_2[M]} dE$$

(13.6)

The ratio $k_2/E$ is the equilibrium constant for the first step in eq. (13.4) and $dk_2(E)/k_1$ is the probability of $A^*$ being in a state with energy $E$, $P(E)$. The $k_2[M]$ factor is the collision frequency for deactivation that is usually denoted by $\omega$. The unimolecular rate constant can be obtained by integrating the effective rate constant over all energies higher than the activation barrier.

$$k_{dd} = \int \frac{k_2(E)}{1 + k(E)/k_2[M]} dP(E)dE$$

(13.7)

The probability factor $P(E)$ is given by a Boltzmann distribution for the reactant, while $k_2$ is determined by the number of vibrational quantum states for the activated state $A^\ast$. The details are sufficiently complex that the reader is referred to more specialized textbooks, but the essence of eq. (13.7) is that the rate constant can be evaluated from the TST expression (eq. (13.2)). RRKM calculations typically assume harmonic vibrations, which may be poor for high-barrier reactions where the vibrational anharmonicity significantly increases the state count. An exact calculation of all the anharmonic vibrational states, however, is a significant computational undertaking.

13.3 Dynamical Effects

The inherent assumption of both TST and RRKM is that the internal (vibrational) energy redistribution is significantly faster than the timescale for breaking/forming a bond. This means that the reaction rate only depends on the total amount of internal energy, not on how the energy is acquired. In other words, the reaction is independent of whether the energy is supplied by excitation of bending or stretching vibrations. In the large majority of chemical reactions, this is probably a valid assumption. For certain reactions where the reaction path involves an intermediate, however, the product distribution indicates that the energy is not completely randomized for the intermediate, i.e. the timescale for internal redistribution is comparable to that for the progression along the reaction coordinate. A specific example is shown in Figure 13.2.

The reaction in Figure 13.2 involves a biradical intermediate and if it has a sufficiently long lifetime, the thermal randomization of the energy should lead to a symmetric product distribution. Experimentally, however, the $exo$ product is found to be favoured over the $endo$ isomer by 4:1. Given that the potential energy surface is symmetric, this has been interpreted as a non-statistical distribution of the internal kinetic energy in the bond-forming step. The bond-breaking reaction occurs from a sample of molecules with a Boltzmann energy distribution, but the small fraction of molecules...
that in a given timeframe actually reacts must necessarily have the energy localized in the C−N bonds. The molecules passing over the first TS (breaking the C−N bonds) therefore enter the biradical minimum on the potential energy surface with the nuclear kinetic energy in a non-random fashion. In the example shown in Figure 13.2, a direct continuation of the nuclear movement arising from breaking both the C−N bonds leads to the *exo* product. The favouring of the *exo* product can thus be explained by the molecules “surfing” over the intermediate minimum on the potential energy surface, rather than being trapped and thermally randomized. Describing such effects requires an explicit simulation of the dynamics, as discussed in Section 14.2.

### 13.4 Statistical Mechanics

Most experiments are performed on macroscopic samples, containing perhaps ~10²⁰ particles. Calculations, on the other hand, are performed on relatively few particles, typically 1–10³, or up to 10⁶ in special cases. The (macroscopic) result of an experimental measurement can be connected with properties of the microscopic system. The temperature, for example, is related to the average kinetic energy of the particles.

\[ (E_{\text{kin}}) = \frac{1}{2} kT \]  (13.8)

The connection between properties of a microscopic system and a macroscopic sample is provided by statistical mechanics.

At a temperature of 0K, all molecules are in their energetic ground state but at a finite temperature there is a distribution of molecules in all possible (quantum) energy states. The relative probability \( P \) of a molecule being in a state with an energy \( e \) at a temperature \( T \) is given by a Boltzmann factor.

\[ P \propto e^{-\frac{e}{kT}} \]  (13.9)

The exponential dependence on the energy means that there is a low (but non-zero) probability for finding a molecule in a high-energy state. This decreased probability for high-energy states is partly offset by the fact that there are many more states with high energy than low energy. The most probable energy of a molecule in a macroscopic ensemble is therefore not necessarily the one with lowest energy, and a typical distribution is shown in Figure 13.3.

The key feature in statistical mechanics is the partition function. Just as the wave function is the cornerstone in quantum mechanics (from which everything else can be calculated by applying proper operators), the partition function allows calculation of all macroscopic functions in statistical mechanics.

The partition function for a single molecule is usually denoted \( q \), and is defined as a sum of exponential terms involving all possible quantum energy states.

\[ q = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{e_i}{kT}} \]  (13.10)

The partition function can also be written as a sum over all distinct energy levels, multiplied with a degeneracy factor \( g \) that indicates how many states there are with the same energy \( e_i \).

\[ q = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} g_i e^{-\frac{e_i}{kT}} \]  (13.11)

The partition function can be considered as an average excited state number-operator, since it is the probability-weighted sum of energy states, each counted with a factor of 1. It may also be viewed as the normalization factor for the Boltzmann probability distribution.

\[ P(e_i) = q_i e^{-\frac{e_i}{kT}} \]  (13.12)

The partition function \( q \) is for a single particle; the corresponding quantity \( Q \) for a collection of \( N \) non-interacting particles (ideal gas) is given in eq. (13.13).

\[ Q = \frac{q^N}{N!} \]  (different particles, non-interacting)
\[ Q = \frac{q^N}{N!} \]  (identical particles, non-interacting)  (13.13)
If the particles are interacting (liquid or solid state), the partition function \( Q \) must be calculated by summing over all energy states \( E \), for the whole system. Note that \( Q \) here describes the whole system consisting of \( N \) interacting particles, and the energy states \( E \) are consequently for all the particles.

\[
Q = \sum_{E} e^{-\frac{E}{kT}}
\]

(13.14)

Owing to the closely spaced energy levels, quantum effects can often be neglected and the state distribution treated as continuous. This corresponds to replacing the discrete sum over energies by an integral over all coordinates (\( r \)) and momentum (\( p \)), called the phase space.

\[
Q = \int e^{-\frac{\mathcal{H}}{kT}} \, dr dp
\]

(13.15)

More correctly, the partition function in eq. (13.15) should be written in terms of the Hamiltonian for the system, i.e. replacing \( E \) with \( \mathcal{H} \). The kinetic and potential energy components, however, can be separated (\( \mathcal{H} = T + V \)). In the absence of potential energy, the Hamiltonian is purely kinetic energy and the system is an ideal gas. The interesting component is therefore the potential energy part in the partition function, which we denote by \( E \). In the large majority of cases, the energy \( E \) is of the force field type described in Chapter 2.

The significance of the partition function \( Q \) is that thermodynamic functions, such as the internal energy \( U \) and Helmholtz free energy \( A = U - TS \), can be calculated from it.

\[
U = kT \left( \frac{\partial \ln Q}{\partial T} \right)_V
\]

(13.16)

\[
A = -kT \ln Q
\]

(13.17)

Other thermodynamic functions, such as the entropy \( S \) and Gibbs free energy \( G \), may be constructed from these relations.

\[
H = U + PV = kT \left( \frac{\partial \ln Q}{\partial T} \right)_V + kTV \left( \frac{\partial \ln Q}{\partial V} \right)_T
\]

\[
S = \frac{U - A}{T} = kT \left( \frac{\partial \ln Q}{\partial T} \right)_V + kT \ln Q
\]

\[
G = H - TS = kTV \left( \frac{\partial \ln Q}{\partial V} \right)_T - kT \ln Q
\]

(13.18)

Note the difference between energetic properties such as \( U, P \) and \( H \), which all depend on derivatives of \( Q \), and entropic properties such as \( A, S \) and \( G \), which depend directly on \( Q \). For simplicity, we will use \( U \) and \( A \) for illustrations in the following, but other quantities such as \( H \) and \( S \) can be treated completely analogously.

In order to calculate the partition function \( q \), one needs to know all possible quantum states for the system. In principle, these can be calculated by solving the nuclear Schrödinger equation, once a suitable potential energy surface is available, for example from solving the electronic Schrödinger equation. Such a rigorous approach is only possible for di- and triatomic systems. For an isolated polyatomic molecule, the energy levels for a single conformation can be calculated within the rigid-rotor harmonic-oscillator (RRHO) approximation, where the electronic, vibrational and rotational degrees of freedom are assumed to be separable. Additional conformational changes can be included straightforwardly by simply offsetting the energy scale relative to the most stable conformation. An isolated molecule corresponds to an ideal gas state, and the partition function can be calculated exactly for such a system within the RRHO approximation, as discussed in Section 13.5.

For a condensed phase (liquid, solution, solid) the intermolecular interaction is Owing to the closely spaced energy levels, quantum effects can often be neglected and no separation of degrees of freedom is possible. Calculating \( \mathcal{H}, \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{A} \) over all phase space, is therefore impossible. It is, however, possible by sampling to estimate differences in \( \mathcal{H}, \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{A} \) from \( \ln Q \).

\[
\ln \frac{Q_{\text{total}}}{Q_{\text{isolated}}} = \int \ln \left( \frac{Q_{\text{total}}}{Q_{\text{isolated}}} \right) \, dp
\]

(13.19)

For each of the partition functions the sum over allowed quantum states runs to infinity. However, since the energies become larger, the partition functions are finite. Let us examine each of the \( q \) factors in a little more detail.

13.5 The Ideal Gas, Rigid-Rotor Harmonic-Oscillator Approximation

For an isolated molecule, the total energy can be approximated as a sum of terms involving translational, rotational, vibrational and electronic states, and this is a good approximation for the large majority of systems. For linear, "floppy" (soft bending potential) molecules the separation of the rotational and vibrational modes may be problematic. If two energy surfaces come close together (avoided crossing), the separability of the electronic and vibrational modes may be a poor approximation (breakdown of the Born–Oppenheimer approximation, Section 3.1).

There are in principle also energy levels associated with nuclear spins. In the absence of an external magnetic field, these are degenerate and consequently contribute a constant term to the partition function. As nuclear spins do not change during chemical reactions, we will ignore this contribution.

The assumption that the energy can be written as a sum of terms implies that the factors in a little more detail.
13.5.1 Translational degrees of freedom

The translational degrees of freedom can be exactly separated from the other $3N-3$ coordinates. The allowed quantum states for the translational energy are determined by placing the molecule in a "box," i.e., the potential is zero inside the box but infinite outside. The only purpose of the box is to allow normalization of the translational wave function, i.e., the exact size is not important. The solutions to the Schrödinger equation for such a "particle in a box" are standing waves, cosine and sine functions. The energy levels are associated with a quantum number $n$, and depend only on the total molecular mass $M$.

$$\epsilon_n = \frac{n^2 \hbar^2}{8mM} \quad (13.20)$$

Although the energy levels are quantized, the energy difference between levels is so small that the distribution can be treated as continuous. The summation involved in the partition function can therefore be replaced by an integral (an integral is just a sum in the limit of infinitely small contributions).

$$q_{\text{trans}} = \sum_n e^{-\epsilon_n/kT} = \int_0^\infty e^{-\epsilon/kT} d\epsilon \quad (13.21)$$

Inserting the energy expression and performing the integration gives eq. (13.22).

$$q_{\text{trans}} = \left(\frac{2\pi MKT}{\hbar^2}\right)^{3/2} \quad (13.22)$$

The only molecular parameter that enters is the total molecular mass $M$. The volume depends on the number of particles. It is customary to work on a molar scale, in which case $V$ is the volume of 1 mol of (ideal) gas.

13.5.2 Rotational degrees of freedom

In the lowest approximation, the rotation of a molecule is assumed to occur with a geometry that is independent of the rotational and vibrational quantum numbers. A more refined treatment allows the geometry to "stretch" with rotational energy, which may be described by adding a "centrifugal" correction, and such corrections are typically the order of a few percent. The presence of vibrational anharmonicity will furthermore cause the effective geometry to depend on the vibrational quantum state. Within the rigid-rotor approximation these effects are neglected, i.e., the rotation of the molecule is assumed to occur with a fixed geometry.

The energy levels calculated from the Schrödinger equation for a diatomic "rigid rotor" are given in terms of a quantum number $J$ running from zero to infinity, and the moment of inertia $I$.

$$\epsilon_J = J(J+1)\frac{\hbar^2}{8\pi\alpha} \quad (13.23)$$

The moment of inertia is calculated from the atomic masses $m_1$ and $m_2$ and the distances $r_1$ and $r_2$ of the nuclei relative to the centre of mass.

13.5.3 Vibrational degrees of freedom

In the lowest approximation, the molecular vibrations may be described as those of a harmonic oscillator. This can be derived by expanding the energy as a function of the nuclear coordinates in a Taylor series around the equilibrium geometry. For a diatomic molecule, the only relevant coordinate is the internuclear distance $R$.

$$E(R) = E(R_0) + \frac{dE}{dR}(R-R_0) + \frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2E}{dR^2}(R-R_0)^2 + \frac{1}{6} \frac{d^3E}{dR^3}(R-R_0)^3 + \cdots \quad (13.29)$$
The first term may be taken as zero, since this is just the zero point for the energy. The second term (the gradient) vanishes since the expansion is around the equilibrium geometry. Keeping only the lowest non-zero term results in the harmonic approximation, where $k$ is the force constant.

$$E(\Delta R) = \frac{1}{2} k \Delta R^2 = \frac{1}{2} k \Delta R^2 \quad (13.30)$$

Including higher order terms leads to anharmonic corrections to the vibration, and such effects are typically of the order of a few percent. The energy levels obtained from the Schrödinger equation for a one-dimensional harmonic oscillator (diatomic system) are given in eq. (13.31).

$$e_n = (n + \frac{1}{2}) \hbar \nu \quad (13.31)$$

Here $n$ is a quantum number running from zero to infinity and $\nu$ is the vibrational frequency given in terms of the force constant $k$ ($\partial^2 E / \partial R^2$) and the reduced mass $\mu$.

In contrast to the translational and rotational energy levels, the spacing between vibrational energy levels is comparable to $kT$ for temperatures around 300 K, and the summation for $q_{en}$ (eq. (13.11)) cannot be replaced by an integral.Due to the regular spacing, however, the infinite summation can be written in a closed form.

$$q_{en} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} e^{-n \frac{kT}{\hbar \nu}} = e^{\frac{\mu \nu}{2kT}} + e^{-\frac{\mu \nu}{2kT}} + e^{-\frac{3\mu \nu}{2kT}} + \ldots$$

$$q_{en} = e^{\frac{\mu \nu}{2kT}} (1 + e^{-\frac{\mu \nu}{2kT}} + e^{-\frac{3\mu \nu}{2kT}} + \ldots) \quad (13.32)$$

The vibrational frequencies are needed for calculating $q_{en}$, and can be obtained from the force constant matrix and atomic masses.

### 13.5.4 Electronic degrees of freedom

The electronic partition function involves a sum over electronic quantum states. These are the solutions to the electronic Schrödinger equation, i.e. the lowest (ground) state and all possible excited states. In almost all molecules, the energy difference between the ground and excited states is large compared with $kT$, which means that only the first term (the ground state energy) in the partition function summation (eq. (13.11)) is important.

$$q_{elec} = \sum_{\mu=0}^{N_e} g_{\mu} e^{-\frac{\mu \nu}{2kT}} = g_0 e^{-\frac{\mu \nu}{2kT}} \quad (13.33)$$

Defining the zero point for the energy as the electronic energy of the reactant, the electronic partition functions for the reactant and TS is given in eq. (13.35).

$$q_{elec} = \sum_{\mu=0}^{N_e} g_{\mu} e^{-\frac{\mu \nu}{2kT}} = g_0 e^{-\frac{\mu \nu}{2kT}} \quad (13.33)$$

The $\Delta E$ term is the difference in electronic energy between the reactant and TS, and $g_0$ is the electronic degeneracy of the (ground state) wave function. The degeneracy may be either in the spin part ($g_0 = 1$ for a singlet, 2 for a doublet, 3 for a triplet, etc.) or in the spatial part ($g_0 = 1$ for wave functions belonging to an $A$, $B$ or $\Sigma$ representation in the point group, 2 for an $E$, $\Delta$ or $\Phi$ representation, 3 for a $T$ representation, etc.).

### 13.5.5 Enthalpy and entropy contributions

Given the partition function, the enthalpy and entropy terms may be calculated by carrying out the required differentiations in eq. (13.18). For one mole of molecules, the results for a non-linear system are ($R$ being the gas constant).
TS. The six remaining degrees of freedom are transformed into the reaction coordinate and five new vibrations at the TS. These additional vibrations usually make \( \Delta H_{\text{vib}} \) positive by 5–10 J/mol, relative to the electronic energy alone.

Similarly, in order to calculate \( \Delta G = G_{\text{ts}} - G_{\text{reactant}} \) we need \( \Delta H \) and \( \Delta S \). The generalization for the electronic, translational and rotational contributions to \( \Delta H \) and \( \Delta S \) given above also holds for \( \Delta H \) and \( \Delta S \). The considerations for a unimolecular reaction hold for reactions where the number of reactant and product molecules is the same, while the generalizations for a bimolecular reaction correspond to an addition where two reactants form a single product molecule (the reverse process being a fragmentation). The vibrational contribution to \( \Delta H \) and \( \Delta S \) for a “number-conserving” reaction is usually small, since there is the same number of vibrational modes in the reactant and product. For an addition reaction, the number of vibrational modes increases by six, and the contributions to \( \Delta H \) and \( \Delta S \) are again slightly positive, typically by a few kJ/mol and 5–10 J/mol.

Tables 13.1–13.3 give some examples of the magnitude of each term for two bimolecular reactions (Diels–Alder and \( \text{S}_2 \) reactions, forming either one or two molecules as the product) and a unimolecular rearrangement (Claisen reaction).

---

**Table 13.1** Diels–Alder reaction of butadiene and ethylene to form cyclohexene

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( \Delta H ) kJ/mol</th>
<th>( \Delta S ) kJ/mol K</th>
<th>( -T \Delta S ) kJ/mol</th>
<th>( \Delta H ) kJ/mol</th>
<th>( \Delta S ) kJ/mol K</th>
<th>( -T \Delta S ) kJ/mol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Electronic</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibrational</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-7</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotational</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-11</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>-13</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translational</td>
<td>-6</td>
<td>-35</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>-6</td>
<td>-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>-41</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>-198</td>
<td>-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Experimental</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>-41</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>-166</td>
<td>-45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Figures**

- **Figure 13.4** The Diels–Alder, \( \text{S}_2 \) and Claisen reactions.
436

STATISTICAL MECHANICS AND TRANSITION STATE THEORY

13.5 THE IDEAL GAS, RIGID-ROTOR HARMONIC-OSCILLATOR APPROXIMATION

It should be noted that the experimental activation enthalpy for the Diels–Alder reaction is 105 ± 8 kJ/mol, i.e. the MP2/6-31G(d) value is −25 kJ/mol too low. Similarly, the calculated reaction energy of −190 kJ/mol is in rather poor agreement with the experimental value of −166 kJ/mol. The S_{2}2 reaction refers to the situation in the gas phase where the reactants initially form an ion-dipole complex, pass over the TS and form another ion-dipole complex. The energies given above are relative to the isolated reactants, which is the reason for the low activation energy. Note also that the rotational contribution to the reaction enthalpy is not zero; this is due to the fact that one of the reactants is a diatomic molecule, while one of the products is an atom (which has no rotational term). The MP2/6-31G(d) activation enthalpy for the Claisen reaction is even somewhat lower than the experimental value of 125 kJ/mol, while the calculated activation entropy is in good agreement with the experimental value.

In summary, to calculate rate and equilibrium constants we need to calculate ΔG^0 and ΔS^0. This can be done within the RRHO approximation if the geometry, energy and force constants are known for the reactant, TS and product. The translational and rotational contributions are trivial to calculate, while the vibrational frequencies require the full force constant matrix (i.e. all energy second derivatives), which may be a significant computational effort.

The above treatment has made some assumptions, such as harmonic frequencies and “sufficiently small” energy spacing between the rotational levels. If a more elaborate treatment is required, the summation for the partition functions must be carried out explicitly. An approximate account for vibrational anharmonicity can be obtained by using the harmonic form for the partition function (and resulting enthalpy and entropy terms, eqs (13.36) and (13.37)), but using calculated anharmonic frequencies. The latter can be obtained from the third derivative and partial (diagonal components only) fourth-order derivatives of the energy with respect to the nuclear geometry.

Many molecules have internal rotations around bonds with quite small barriers. In the above treatment, they are assumed to be described by simple harmonic vibrations, which may be a poor approximation. The calculated “vibrational frequency” for a low-barrier rotation is often close to zero, and inspection of eq. (13.36) shows that the enthalpy term in such cases approaches a constant factor of RT. The entropy term (eq. (13.37)), however, goes towards infinity as the frequency approaches zero. Calculating the energy levels and partition function for a hindered rotor is somewhat complicated, and is rarely done. If the barrier is very low, the motion may be treated as a free rotor, in which case it contributes a constant factor of RT to the entropy and 1/2 R to the entropy. The enthalpy contribution is thus asymptotically correct when a low-barrier internal rotation is treated...
point other factors also become important for the activation energy. These include:
(a) The position of the TS has been assumed to be at the maximum on the electronic energy surface, whereas in reality it should be at the maximum on the \( \Delta G \) surface. This would include entropy effects and thus allow the position of the TS to depend on temperature. Such treatments are referred to as \textit{Variational Transition State Theory (VTST)}\(^1\) and are important for reaction with small (or zero) enthalpy barriers, such as recombination of radicals or carbene additions.\(^6\)
(b) The possibility of re-crossings and tunnelling (which requires a quantum description of the nuclear motion) should be included in order to produce a transmission coefficient. Tunnelling can be estimated from the imaginary frequency at the TS, but an accurate estimate requires elaborate calculations. The re-crossing effect requires simulation of the dynamics of the reaction, again a substantial computational problem.

Calculating the electronic barrier with an accuracy of \(-0.5\) kJ/mol is only possible for very simple systems. An accuracy of \(-5\) kJ/mol is usually considered a good, but hard to get, level of accuracy. The situation is slightly better for relative energies of stable species, but a \(-5\) kJ/mol accuracy still requires significant computational effort. Thermodynamic corrections beyond the rigid-rotor/harmonic vibrations approximation are therefore rarely performed.

A prediction of \( \Delta \delta / \Delta \varepsilon \) to within \(-0.5\) kJ/mol may produce a \( \Delta G^*/\Delta \varepsilon \), accurate to maybe \(-1\) kJ/mol. This corresponds to an error of a factor of \(-1.5\) (at \( T = 300\) K) in the rate/equilibrium constant, which is poor compared with what is routinely obtained by experimental techniques. Calculating \( \Delta G^*/\Delta \varepsilon \) to within \(-5\) kJ/mol is still only possible for fairly small systems. This corresponds to predicting the absolute rate constant, or the equilibrium distribution, to within a factor of 10. Theoretical calculations are therefore not very useful for predicting absolute rate or equilibrium constants. Relative rates, however, are somewhat easier. Often the interest is not in how fast a certain product is formed, but rather on what the rate difference is between two reactions. The absolute rate (only) influences how long the total reaction time will be, or how high the temperature should be. Rate differences, on the other hand, determine what the ratio between products is. When comparing calculated activation parameters for similar reactions, one can always hope for some “cancellation of errors”. Theoretical methods are most useful for predicting and rationalizing different reaction pathways, not in predicting absolute rates.

The activation enthalpies and entropies in principle depend on temperature (eqs (13.36) and (13.37)), but only weakly so, and for a limited temperature range they may be treated as constants. Obtaining these quantities experimentally is possible by measuring the reaction rate as a function of temperature, and plotting \( \ln(k_{\text{obs}}/T) \) against \( T \).\(^-1\)

\[
\ln\left( \frac{k_{\text{obs}}}{T} \right) = \ln\left( \frac{k}{h} \right) + \frac{\Delta \varepsilon^*}{R} - \frac{\Delta H^*}{RT} \tag{13.39}
\]

Such plots should produce a straight line with the slope being equal to \(-\Delta H^*/R\) and the intercept equal to \( \ln(k/h) + \Delta S^*/R \). As the available temperature range often is \(-100\) °C, the error in \( \Delta H^* \) will typically be \(0.5-2\) kJ/mol. The activation entropy is determined by extrapolating outside the data points to \( T \to \infty \) (\( T = 0 \)), and is usually somewhat less well defined; a typical error may be \(3\) kJ/mol K.

Experimentalists often analyze their data in terms of an Arrhenius expression instead of the TST expression eq. (13.39) by plotting \( \ln(k_{\text{obs}}) \) against \( T^{-1} \).

\[
k_{\text{obs}} = A e^{-\frac{\Delta \varepsilon^*}{RT}} \tag{13.40}
\]

The connection with the TST expression (13.39) may be established from the definition in eq. (13.40) of the activation energy.

\[
\Delta \varepsilon^* = RT \left( \frac{d \ln k_{\text{obs}}}{dT} \right) \tag{13.41}
\]

This produces the relationship shown in eq. (13.42).

\[
\Delta H^* = \Delta \varepsilon^* - (1 - \Delta \sigma)RT \tag{13.42}
\]

Here \( \Delta \sigma \) is the change in the number of molecules from the reactant to the TS, i.e. \( \Delta \sigma = 0 \) for a unimolecular reaction, \(-1 \) for a bimolecular reaction, etc. For a solution phase reaction \( \Delta \sigma \) is approximately 0.

Note that for a reaction taking place by multiple reaction paths (e.g. conformational TS’s), the observed activation energy is obtained from the observed rate constant, which is a sum over individual rate constants.

\[
k_{\text{obs}} = \sum_i k_i e^{-\frac{\Delta \varepsilon^*}{RT}} \tag{13.43}
\]

The presence of multiple reaction paths with similar activation energies will thus result in an effective activation energy that is \(\textit{lower} \) than the activation energy of the lowest TS.

### 13.6 Condensed Phases

For a single molecule in the rigid-rotor harmonic-oscillator approximation, the quantum energy states are sufficiently regular to allow an explicit construction of the partition function. For a collection of many interacting particles (condensed phase), the relevant energy states are those describing the vibrations, and translation and rotation of molecules relative to each other. For such systems, the energy levels are
not only numerous but also so irregularly spaced that it is impossible to derive them directly from molecular quantities. It is consequently not possible to construct the partition function explicitly. It is, however, possible to estimate derivatives of \(\mathcal{Q}\) and differences on the energy, i.e., although high-energy states occur infrequently, they contribute significantly owing to the exponential weighting factor. Alternatively stated, \(U\) depends exponentially on \(A\), while \(A\) depends directly on \(\mathcal{Q}\). If, however, a representative collection of configurations can be generated, the sum over all states can be approximated by an average over a finite set of configurations. Representative here means that the number of configurations with a given energy is proportional to that given by the Boltzmann distribution, and that all “important” parts of the phase space are sampled. For a finite number of points \(M\), it is possible to calculate the average value of a given property \(X\) according to eq. (13.49), where the points can be denoted either by their energies or by their positions and momentum.

In a typical simulation the number of sampling points is perhaps ~10^6, which represents only an infinitesimal fraction of the 6Natom-dimensional phase space (a rough 10 point sampling in each dimension would give 10^30 points). As already mentioned, however, the vast majority of the huge phase space is high in energy and is not accessible at normal temperatures. Consider for example placing 1000 water molecules at random in a box with a dimension corresponding to a density of 1 g/cm^3. If any two water molecules have a significant overlap, there will be a large repulsive interaction, and therefore a vanishing probability of such a configuration occurring. Placing all 1000 water molecules in the box without any two molecules having an overlap is difficult, and will essentially never occur by a random placement. Starting from an energy-minimized structure and allowing the system to evolve by a molecular dynamics algorithm, however, will only sample those configurations where no serious molecular overlaps occur, i.e., the important low-energy region.

The “magic” in simulations is generating an ensemble that yields a good representation of the “important” phase space for the given property. A collection of configurations is called an ensemble, and eq. (13.49) is called an ensemble average, with the subscript indicating what is being averaged over. There are two main techniques for generating an ensemble, Monte Carlo and molecular dynamics, which are discussed in Chapter 14. These methods are based on the ergodic hypothesis (which can be proven rigorously only for a hard-sphere gas), which makes the assumption that the average obtained by following a small number of particles over a long time is equivalent to averaging over a large number of particles for a short time. Taken to the limit, this implies that a time average over a single particle is equivalent to an average of a large number of particles at any given time snapshot, i.e. time-averaging is equivalent to ensemble-averaging.

\[
\langle X \rangle = \lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{1}{t} \int_{0}^{t} X(t) dt = \lim_{M \to \infty} \frac{1}{M} \sum_{i=1}^{M} X_i
\]
Alternatively stated, the ergodic hypothesis implies that no matter where a system is started, it is possible to get to any other point in phase space. For $A$ and $A'$, this leads to the following expressions:

$$(A_A) = kT \ln \left( \frac{\sum_i \exp(-E_i/kT)}{\sum_i \exp(-E_i/kT)} \right).$$

The important difference is that the exponential now involves an energy difference $E_A - E_B$. Provided that this is sufficiently small compared with $kT$, the ensemble average will show much better convergence than the absolute entropy of either system.

Analogously to eqs (13.51), the difference can be evaluated as an ensemble average:

$$(A_A - A_B) = kT \ln \left( \frac{\sum_i \exp(-E_i/kT)}{\sum_i \exp(-E_i/kT)} \right).$$

The key result is that the exponential now involves an energy difference $E_A - E_B$. However, if this is sufficiently small compared with $kT$, the ensemble average will show much better convergence than the absolute entropy of either system.

The difference in free energy can be evaluated as an ensemble average:

$$(A_A - A_B) = kT \ln \left( \frac{\exp(-E_A/kT)}{\exp(-E_B/kT)} \right).$$

This in principle makes it possible to simulate an ensemble that provides a uniform coverage of the whole phase space, and therefore allows calculation of absolute values of entropies and free energies. However, the correct sampling of the phase space is crucial.

The sampling can then be performed for each value of $\lambda$, and all the intermediate results added together to provide the difference $A_A - A_B$. It should be noted that a small energy difference in the system corresponds to an intermediate value of $\lambda$. Analogous to eqs (13.51), it is possible to calculate $\Delta S$ for each value of $\lambda$, and all the intermediate results added together to provide the difference $A_A - A_B$. However, the correct sampling of the phase space is crucial.

The main problem in estimating thermodynamic quantities from simulations is the estimation of the density of states. The probability for accepting a trial move depends on the change in energy relative to the temperature, $\Delta E/kT$. Provided that this is sufficiently small, the probability for accepting a trial move will be independent of $\Delta E$.

The goal is to obtain a microscopic property of the system that depends on the density of states, rather than the energy. This can be achieved in two ways. One is to generate an ensemble of configurations that provides a uniform representation of the whole phase space, and the other is to use a method in which such an ensemble is generated. As an example of the latter, we consider the problem of estimating thermodynamic quantities from simulations. The density of states is unknown $a priori$, and the method requires a sequence of simulations involving progressively lower entropy regions of the phase space. Hence, the method requires a sequence of simulations involving progressively lower entropy regions of the phase space.

The error in the calculation of thermodynamic quantities from simulations is a function of the number of points collected from the whole phase space. Since Monte Carlo and molecular dynamics techniques preferentially sample the low-energy region of the phase space, it is computationally difficult to achieve a reasonable statistical error for entropic quantities.

The importance of the ergodic hypothesis is that it is possible to get to any other point in phase space. For $A$ and $A'$, this leads to the following expressions:

$$(A_A) = kT \ln \left( \sum_i \exp(-E_i/kT) \right).$$

The key result is that the exponential now involves an energy difference $E_A - E_B$. However, if this is sufficiently small compared with $kT$, the ensemble average will show much better convergence than the absolute entropy of either system.

In general, a macroscopic observable can be calculated as an average over a corresponding microscopic quantity. The average value of, for example, $U$, calculated from a set of configurations, is

$$\left\langle U \right\rangle = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} U_i.$$

The statistical uncertainty in $U$ is

$$\sigma(U) = kT \sum_{i=1}^{N} \left| \frac{U_i - \left\langle U \right\rangle}{\langle U \rangle} \right|^2.$$

Increasing the sample size from 1000 to 4000 reduces the standard deviation by a factor of 2. How well the calculated average (from eq. (13.49)) resembles the true value, however, depends on whether the generated set of configurations forms a representative set. In practice, this is impossible to guarantee. The sensitivity of the results to the choice of the starting conditions can be evaluated by performing several simulations with different starting conditions.
The analysis of a potential energy surface by locating the minima and saddle points (Chapter 12) corresponds to modelling the system at a temperature of 0 K, where all molecules are in their ground electronic, vibrational and rotational states. The effects of a finite temperature can be incorporated by means of the statistical mechanics methods discussed in Chapter 13. For a system of non-interacting molecules (ideal gas), the partition function can be evaluated quite accurately by the rigid-rotor harmonic-oscillator approximation from relatively simple quantities for the isolated molecule (geometry and vibrational frequencies). Similar approaches are possible for crystalline solid states, where the translational symmetry implies that only properties for the unit cell are required for describing the whole system. For other systems, most notably liquids and solutions, the macroscopic quantities derived from the partition function must be estimated from a representative sampling of the phase space. Simulation refers to methods aimed at generating a representative sampling of a system at a finite temperature.1

Electronic structure methods are typically used for solving the Schrödinger equation for a single or a few molecules, infinitely removed from all other molecules. Physically this corresponds to the situation occurring in the gas phase under low pressure (vacuum). Experimentally, however, the majority of chemical reactions are carried out in solution. Biologically relevant processes also occur in solution, aqueous systems with rather specific pH and ionic conditions. Most reactions are both qualitatively and quantitatively different under gas and solution phase conditions, especially those involving ions or polar species. Molecular properties are also sensitive to the environment. Simulations are therefore intimately related with describing solute-solvent interactions, but such effects can also be modelled with less rigorous methods.

There are two major techniques for generating an ensemble: Monte Carlo and molecular dynamics.

In Monte Carlo (MC) methods,2 a sequence of points in phase space is generated from an initial geometry by adding a random “kick” to the coordinates of a randomly chosen particle (atom or molecule). The new configuration is accepted if the energy decreases and with a probability of $e^{-\Delta E/kT}$ if the energy increases. This Metropolis procedure3 ensures that the configurations in the ensemble obey a Boltzmann
The efficiency is therefore inversely proportional to the accessible phase space, and the probability of acceptance is lower near the initial state. The power of MC methods lies in their ability to explore a large portion of phase space, and the possibility of accepting higher energy configurations allows MC methods to climb uphill and escape from a local minimum. In order to have a reasonable acceptance ratio, however, the starting temperature may actually be higher than the true value of the system.

The Metropolis selection procedure ensures that a proper ensemble is generated. The geometry perturbation in each step may be done by comparing a random number with another random number. A typical geometry perturbation is a random change in the starting geometry, with a maximum allowed change that is a fraction of the total energy. MD simulations generate series of time-correlated points in phase space by propagating a starting set of coordinates and velocities according to Newton’s second equation by a series of finite time steps. A typical time step is ~10⁻¹⁵ s and a simulation involving ~10⁶ steps thus only covers ~10⁻⁹ s. This is substantially shorter than many important phenomena, and MD methods, in analogy with MC, tend to only sample the region in phase space close to the starting condition. Furthermore, MD simulations simulate the physical evolution of configurations and can therefore be trapped in energy wells, while MC methods only generate configurations in a random fashion, and the Metropolis selection procedure ensures that a proper ensemble is generated. The geometry perturbation in each step may be done by comparing a random number with another random number. A typical geometry perturbation is a random change in the starting geometry, with a maximum allowed change that is a fraction of the total energy.

The result of a simulation or an experiment involves averaging over both the number of molecules and time, but usually with significantly different averaging lengths, and it is not completely obvious that this is equivalent. An IR spectrum, for example, records averages over a sample’s time evolution, while a simulation is an averaging over many different configurations. The variance in a small number of ensemble averages is typically significant. In order to reduce the variance, one simulation can be compared with the average of many, even if it has not yet reached equilibrium. This is often done with the Gromos force field, which is a common choice for MD simulations.

Alternatively stated, the ergodic hypothesis implies that no matter where a system is started, it is possible to get to any other state in phase space. MC techniques perform an ensemble average, while MD performs a time average. A simulation can be characterized by quantities such as volume (V), pressure (p), total energy (E), temperature (T), number of particles (N), chemical potential (μ), etc., but not all of these are independent. For a constant number of particles, only volume and pressure are independent, and the number of particles is determined by the temperature and volume. MD simulations simulate the physical evolution of configurations and can therefore be trapped in energy wells, while MC methods only generate configurations in a random fashion, and the Metropolis selection procedure ensures that a proper ensemble is generated. The geometry perturbation in each step may be done by comparing a random number with another random number. A typical geometry perturbation is a random change in the starting geometry, with a maximum allowed change that is a fraction of the total energy.

The inherently non-deterministic nature of MC methods and the non-deterministic behaviour of actual MD simulations might be considered as potential problems. In reality the only concern is generating a representative sample of the phase space, and the variance is typically significant. In order to reduce the variance, one simulation can be compared with the average of many, even if it has not yet reached equilibrium. This is often done with the Gromos force field, which is a common choice for MD simulations.

An MC simulation employs the temperature as the parameter for deciding acceptance or rejection of trial moves, and MC simulations are therefore of the "ensemble-averaging" type. The result of an MC simulation is therefore the average over a large number of particles at any given time snapshot, i.e. time-averaging is equivalent to ensemble-averaging. As mentioned above, the dependence of the MD results on the starting conditions is illustrated by the fact that the two MD trajectories deviate from each other. This is an example of the non-deterministic nature of MD simulations, which can be problematic when attempting to reproduce deterministic MD trajectories with the same initial conditions and velocities.
NVT type. An MD simulation, on the other hand, preserves energy and is therefore naturally of the NVE type, but other ensembles for both MC and MD can be generated by the techniques described in Section 14.2.2. Table 14.2 summarizes some of the differences between MC and MD.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>MC</th>
<th>MD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic information needed</td>
<td>Energy, Gradient</td>
<td>Energy, Gradient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particles moved in each step</td>
<td>One</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinates</td>
<td>Any, Cartesian</td>
<td>Cartesian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constraints</td>
<td>Easy, Difficult</td>
<td>Difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atomic velocities</td>
<td>No, Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time dimension</td>
<td>No, Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deterministic</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>(Yes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling</td>
<td>Non-physical</td>
<td>Physical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural ensemble</td>
<td>NVT, Grand canonical</td>
<td>NVE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is probably no surprise that hybrid MC/MD methods have been devised, trying to capture the best of both methods. These combined methods typically perform an MD simulation with an occasional MC step thrown in, in order to give a better coverage of the phase space. Alternatively, a trial step may be generated by an MD recipe, using a somewhat larger time step than for pure MD, and this trial step is then accepted or rejected based on an MC criterion.

### 14.1 Monte Carlo Methods

On of the advantages of Monte Carlo methods is the ease with which they can be implemented in computer programs. The heart of the algorithm is a random number generator, and the ability to calculate the energy of the system for a given set of coordinates. Although truly random numbers are difficult to come by, several implementations of pseudo-random number generators are available. A pseudo-random number generator indicates a computer implementation of an algorithm that produces a sequence of seemingly random numbers, but the sequence is repeated (exactly) after some period. A good pseudo-random number generator is characterized by having a long periodicity, and within this periodicity the numbers do not show any systematic correlation with each other. As long as the simulation only uses numbers from within one period, the random aspect is fulfilled and the simulation data should be valid.

An MC simulation starts from a suitable set of coordinates for all the particles. The set of coordinates is perturbed in a random fashion and the new geometry is accepted as a starting point for the next perturbing step if it is lower in energy than the current. If the new geometry is higher in energy, the Boltzmann factor $e^{-\Delta E/kT}$ is calculated and compared with a random number between 0 and 1. If $e^{-\Delta E/kT}$ is larger than this number the new geometry is accepted, otherwise the old configuration is added to the sampling (again), and a new perturbing step is attempted.

The main variation of MC methods is how the perturbing step is done. For a system composed of spherical particles (atoms), the only variables are the centre of mass of each particle, and the trial moves are simple translations of particles. For rigid non-spherical particles, the three rotational degrees of freedom must also be sampled, while for flexible molecules, it is usually also of interest to sample the internal degrees of freedom (conformations, vibrations). The latter can be done in Cartesian coordinates, or selectively in for example only the torsional variables.

A key point in MC methods is to ensure that the chain of configurations arises from a symmetric probability decision. Symmetric in this context means that each step is reversible, i.e. the probability of undoing a step by the next move is equal to the probability of generating the step, sometimes also called the detailed balance condition. If this is not fulfilled, the properties derived from the resulting ensemble can (but do not necessarily) display systematic errors, which are usually hard to detect. Generating random moves corresponding only to translations in the positive direction, rather than both positive and negative directions, will almost be sure to lead to artefacts, although one might think that this would be acceptable in a system subjected to periodic boundary conditions. The detailed balance condition is obeyed when a single random particle is subjected to a single random perturbation in each step, but this is not the case if a random perturbing step is applied sequentially to all the particles. Nevertheless, it has been shown that the sequential update obeys a weaker balance condition and does in fact generate a proper Boltzmann distribution.

From a computational point of view, a procedure where only one particle is moved in each trial step is usually more efficient than a trial step consisting of moving all particles. When only a single particle is moved, only the change in the energy related to this particle is required, not the whole energy function. This makes the evaluation of each trial move somewhat faster than a single step in an MD simulation. Furthermore, if many (all) particles are allowed to move in each trial step, the acceptance ratio usually becomes prohibitively small, unless very small perturbations are selected.

The size of the perturbing step is an important control parameter. A small step will give a high acceptance ratio but only a slow change of configurations. A large step, on the other hand, gives a low acceptance ratio and therefore a sampling consisting of only a few relatively widely distributed points in the configuration space. The optimum step size can formally be defined as the one that gives the fastest convergence of a given property for a given amount of computer time, but this is difficult to translate into an optimum acceptance ratio. Lacking a more objective criterion, a heuristic acceptance ratio around 0.5 is usually selected, although slightly smaller ratios in many cases may give a better sampling.
The ability to generate non-physical moves means that attention must be paid to the molecular stereochemistry. A random move of atoms makes it possible to invert the configuration of a chiral atom, a movement that is impossible with a single atom. A Monte Carlo procedure must therefore be able to detect such chirality changes and reject such moves.

The procedure of making random moves of a single or several (all) particles gives MC methods a drawback for describing correlated motions. Exploring the conformational space of a large molecule such as a protein in a solvent is inefficient, since several simultaneous perturbations of torsional angles are required for generating acceptable conformational changes. Such correlated movements are difficult to generate by random perturbations in either Cartesian or internal coordinates, and almost impossible if only single particle movements are employed in each trial step. MC methods are therefore best for exploring the translational and rotational space for relatively small molecules, such as a solvent or solution, and internal degrees of freedom for small molecules.

### 14.2 Time-Dependent Methods

At a finite temperature, the average kinetic energy is directly related to the temperature and the molecule(s) explores a part of the surface with energies lower than or equal to the typical kinetic energy. One possible way of simulating the behaviour at a finite temperature is by allowing the system to evolve according to the relevant dynamical equation (Section 14.1). For nuclei, this is normally Newton’s second law, although the (nuclear) Schrödinger equation must be used for including quantum effects, such as zero point vibrational energy and tunnelling. A dynamics simulation is also required if the interest is in studying time-dependent phenomena, such as transport, and the results of a simulation can yield information about the spectral properties, such as the IR spectrum.

A dynamics simulation requires a set of initial coordinates and velocities, and an interaction potential (energy function). For a short time step, the interaction may be considered constant, allowing a set of updated positions and velocities to be estimated, at which point the new interaction can be calculated. By taking a large number of (small) time steps, the time behaviour of the system can be obtained. Since the phase space is huge, and the fundamental time step is short, the simulation will only explore the region close to the starting point, and several different simulations with different starting conditions are required for estimating the stability of the results.

#### 14.2.1 Molecular dynamics methods

Nuclei are heavy enough that they, to a good approximation, behave as classical particles and the dynamics can thus be simulated by solving Newton’s second equation, \( F = ma \), which in differential form can be written as in eq. (14.2).

\[
\frac{d^2 \mathbf{r}}{dt^2} = -\nabla V(\mathbf{r})
\]  

(14.2)

Here \( V \) is the potential energy at position \( \mathbf{r} \). The vector \( \mathbf{r} \) contains the coordinates \( r_i \) for all the particles, i.e. in Cartesian coordinates it is a vector of length 3 for each atom. The left-hand side is the negative of the energy gradient, also called the force, and the right-hand side is the force on the particle(s).

Given a set of particles with positions \( \mathbf{r}_i \) the positions a small time step \( \Delta t \) later are given by a Taylor expansion.

\[
\mathbf{r}_{i+1} = \mathbf{r}_i + \mathbf{v}_i \Delta t + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{a}_i \Delta t^2 + \cdots
\]  

(14.3)

The velocities \( \mathbf{v}_i \) are the first derivatives of the positions with respect to time \( (\partial \mathbf{r}/\partial t) \) at time \( t \), the accelerations \( \mathbf{a}_i \) are the second derivatives \( (\partial^2 \mathbf{r}/\partial t^2) \) at time \( t \), the hyperaccelerations \( \mathbf{b}_i \) are the third derivatives, etc. The positions a small time step \( \Delta t \) earlier are derived from eq. (14.3) by substituting \( \Delta t \) with \(-\Delta t\).

\[
\mathbf{r}_{i-1} = \mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{v}_i \Delta t + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{a}_i \Delta t^2 + \cdots
\]  

(14.4)

Addition of eqs (14.3) and (14.4) gives a recipe for predicting the position a time step \( \Delta t \) later from the current and previous positions, and the current acceleration. The latter can be calculated from the forces, or equivalently, the potential.

\[
\mathbf{r}_{i+1} = (2\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{r}_{i-1}) + \mathbf{a}_i \Delta t^2 + \cdots
\]

(14.5)

\[
\mathbf{a}_i = \frac{\mathbf{F}_i}{m_i} = -\frac{dV}{dt} \]

This is the Verlet algorithm for solving Newton’s equation numerically. Note that the term involving the change in acceleration \( (\mathbf{b}_i) \) disappears, i.e. the equation is correct to third order in \( \Delta t \). At the initial point, the previous positions are not available, but can be estimated from a first-order approximation of eq. (14.5).

\[
\mathbf{r}_i = \mathbf{r}_{i-1} - \mathbf{v}_i \Delta t
\]

(14.6)

At each time step, the acceleration must be evaluated from the forces, eq. (14.5), which then allows the atomic positions to be propagated in time and thus generate a trajectory. As the step size \( \Delta t \) is decreased, the trajectory becomes a better and better approximation to the "true" trajectory, until the practical problems of finite numerical
accuracy arise (e.g., the forces cannot be calculated with infinite precision). A small time
step, however, means that more steps are necessary for propagating the system a given
total time, i.e., the computational effort increases inversely with the size of the time
step.

The Verlet algorithm has the numerical disadvantage that the new positions are
obtained by adding a term proportional to $\Delta t^2$ to a difference in positions $(2r_i - r_{i-1})$.
Since $\Delta t$ is a small number and $(2r_i - r_{i-1})$ is a difference between two large numbers,
this may lead to truncation errors due to finite precision. The Verlet algorithm fur-
thermore has the disadvantage that velocities do not appear explicitly, which is a
problem in connection with generating ensembles with constant temperature, as dis-
cussed in Section 14.2.2.

The numerical aspect and the lack of explicit velocities in the Verlet algorithm can
be remedied by the leap-frog algorithm. Performing expansions analogous to eqs
(14.3) and (14.4) with half a time step followed by subtraction gives eq. (14.7).

$$v_{i+1} = v_i + a_i \Delta t$$

The velocity is obtained by analogous expansions to give eq. (14.8).

$$v_{i+1} = v_i + \frac{a_i}{2} \Delta t$$

Eqs (14.7) and (14.8) define the leap-frog algorithm, and it is seen that the position
and velocity updates are out of phase by half a time step. In terms of theoretical accu-
ricity it is also of third order, and the Verlet algorithm, but the numerical accuracy is
better. Furthermore, the velocities appear directly, which facilitates a coupling to an
external heat bath (Section 14.2.2). The disadvantage is that the positions and veloci-
ties are not known at the same time, they are always out of phase by half a time step.
The latter abnormality can be removed by the velocity Verlet algorithm, where the
equations used to propagate the atoms are given in eq. (14.9).

$$v_i = v_{i-1} + \frac{a_{i-1}}{2} \Delta t$$

The preference of Verlet and leap-frog type algorithms over for example Runge–Kutta
methods (Section 12.8) in MD simulations is that they are time-reversible, which in
general tend to improve the energy conservation over long simulation times.

The above solves the dynamical equation by a numerical integration of Newton’s
second equation. In some cases, it is useful to rewrite the equations in a more general
form. Denoting a generalized coordinate with $q$ and its conjugate moment by $p$ ($p = m qi \partial / \partial t$), eq. (14.2) becomes eq. (14.10).

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial q} - \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}$$

This can also be formulated in terms of a Lagrange function $L$.

$$L = T - V$$

Using the fact that $T = p^2 / 2m$, it can be seen that the Lagrange equation is completely
equivalent to the Newton formulation.

Yet another formulation is given by the Hamilton function $H$ and eq. (14.12), which
again may be verified to be completely equivalent to eq. (14.2).

$$\frac{\partial H}{\partial \dot{q}} = 0$$

The main advantage of the Lagrange and Hamilton formulations is that any set of non-
redundant variables can be used, while the Newton formulation focuses on spatial
coordinates and corresponding velocities. The main difference between the Lagrange
and Hamilton formulations is that the former is a single second-order differential equa-
tion, while the latter is a coupled set of first-order differential equations. Depending
on the system, one of them may be easier to solve than the other.

The maximum time step that can be taken is determined by the rate of the fastest
process in the system, i.e., typically an order of magnitude smaller than the fastest process.
Molecular motions (rotations and vibrations) typically occur with frequencies in the range
$10^{-1} - 10^4$ s$^{-1}$ (corresponding to wavenumbers of $3 - 3300$ cm$^{-1}$), and time steps of the
order of femtoseconds ($10^{-15}$ s) or less are required to model such motions with suffi-
cient accuracy. This means that a total simulation time of 1 nanosecond ($10^{-9}$ s) requires
~10$^9$ time steps, and 1 microsecond ($10^{-6}$ s) requires ~10$^6$ time steps. A million time steps
is already a significant computational effort and typical simulation times are in the
nano- or picosecond range. Unfortunately, many interesting phenomena occur on a
substantially longer time scale: protein folding and chemical reactions, for example,
are on the order of milliseconds or seconds. Furthermore, a single trajectory may
not be adequate for representing the dynamics, thus requiring that many runs must be
carried out with different starting conditions (positions and velocities) and be prop-
erly averaged.

For molecules, the fastest processes are the stretching vibrations, especially those
involving hydrogen. These degrees of freedom, however, have relatively little influence
on many properties. It is therefore advantageous to freeze all bond lengths involving
hydrogen atoms, which allow longer time steps to be taken, and consequently longer
simulation times to be obtained for the same computational cost. As all atoms move
individually according to Newton’s equation, constraints must be applied for keep-
ing bond lengths fixed. This is normally done by either the SHAKE$^{12}$ (Verlet) or
RATTLE$^{13}$ (velocity Verlet) algorithms, where the distance constraints are incorpo-
rated by the method of Lagrange undetermined multipliers (Section 12.5). The atoms
are first allowed to move under the influence of the forces, and subsequently forced to
obey the constraints by making a few sequential passes through all the variables.

Enforcement of bond length constraints typically allows the time step to be
increased by a factor of 2 or 3. Angles may also be frozen by adding a distance con-
straint on atoms that are 1,3... other. Angle bending, however, affects calculated properties more than bond stretching and fixing them may often introduce
unacceptable errors. Angle constraints are therefore used less frequently. A simulation can also be performed using fixed molecular geometries, i.e. only the positions and relative orientations of individual molecules are allowed to change. In such cases, the natural variables to propagate in time are the centre of mass position and the three Euler angles of each molecule.

14.2.2 Generating non-natural ensembles

A standard MD simulation generates an NVE ensemble, i.e. the temperature and pressure will fluctuate. The total energy is a sum of the kinetic and potential energies, and can be calculated from the positions and velocities:

\[ E_{tot} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \frac{1}{2} m_i v_i^2 + V(r) \]  

(14.13)

Owing to the finite precision with which the atomic forces are evaluated, and the finite time step used, the total energy is not exactly constant, but this error can be controlled by the magnitude of the time step. Indeed, preservation of the energy to within a given threshold may be used to define the maximum permissible time step.

The temperature of the system is proportional to the average kinetic energy.

\[ \langle E_{kin} \rangle = \frac{3}{2} kT \]  

(14.14)

The number of constraints is typically three, corresponding to conservation of linear momentum. Note that for 1 mole of particles, eq. (14.14) reduces to the familiar expression \( E_{tot} = \frac{3}{2} N k T \). Since the kinetic energy is the difference between the total energy (almost constant) and the potential energy (depends on the positions), the kinetic energy will vary significantly, i.e. the temperature will be calculated as an average value with an associated fluctuation. Similarly, if the volume of the system is fixed, the pressure will fluctuate.

Although the NVE is the natural ensemble generated by an MD simulation, it is possible also to generate NVT or NPT ensembles by MD techniques by modifying the velocities or positions in each time step. As indicated in eq. (14.14) the instant value of the temperature is given by the average of the kinetic energy. If this is different from the desired temperature, all velocities may be scaled by a factor of \((T_{desired}/T_{actual})^{\frac{1}{2}}\) in each time step to achieve the desired temperature. Such an “instant” correction procedure actually alters the dynamics, such that the simulation no longer corresponds to a canonical (NVT) ensemble. Performing the scaling at larger intervals introduces some periodicity into the simulation, which is also undesirable. Alternatively, the system may be coupled to a “thermostat”, which gradually adds or removes energy from the system with a suitable time constant, often called a thermostat.\(^{16}\) The kinetic energy of the system is again modified by scaling the velocities, but the rate of heat transfer is controlled by a coupling parameter \(\tau\).

\[ \frac{dT}{dt} = \frac{1}{\tau} (T_{desired} - T_{actual}) \]  

(14.15)

velocity scale factor \(= \sqrt{\frac{1}{1 + \frac{N}{\tau} (T_{desired} - 1)}}\)

Thermostat methods such as eq. (14.15) are widely used but again do not produce a canonical ensemble. They do produce correct averages but give incorrect fluctuations of properties. In Nosé–Hoover methods\(^{17}\) the heat bath is considered an integral part of the system and assigned fictive dynamic variables, which are evolved on an equal footing with the other variables. These methods are analogous to the extended Lagrange methods described in Section 14.2.5, and can be shown to produce true canonical ensembles.

The pressure can similarly be held (approximately) constant by coupling to a “pressure bath”. Instead of changing the velocities of the particles, the volume of the system is changed by scaling all coordinates according to eq. (14.16).

\[ \frac{dP}{dt} = \frac{1}{\tau} (P_{desired} - P_{actual}) \]  

(14.16)

coordinate scale factor \(= \sqrt{1 + \frac{N}{\tau} (P_{desired} - P_{actual})}\)

Here the constant \(x\) is the compressibility of the system. Such barostat methods are again widely used, both in MC and MD simulations, but do not produce strictly correct ensembles. Alternatively, the pressure may be maintained by a Nosé–Hoover approach in order to produce a correct ensemble.

14.2.3 Langevin methods

Molecular dynamics methods generate detailed information about all the particles in the system and are therefore well suited for calculating collective properties. In other cases, the major interest is in the dynamics of a single molecule, in which case the surrounding molecules can be modelled by only including the average interactions. This average interaction is assumed to have a friction term (with a friction coefficient \(\zeta\)) proportional to the atomic velocity, and a random component (\(F_{random}\)) that averages to zero. These terms are in addition to the normal intramolecular forces (\(F_{intra}\)) and possibly also external forces, for example from an electric field. The random force is associated with a temperature and adds energy to the system, while the friction term removes energy. The random force is typically taken to have a Gaussian distribution with a mean value of zero.

\[ m \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = -\zeta \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} + F_{intra} + F_{random} \]  

(14.17)

Eq. (14.17) is called the Langevin equation of motion, and gives rise to stochastic or Brownian dynamics.\(^{18}\) The magnitude of the friction coefficient determines the importance of the intramolecular forces compared with the friction term, and large values of \(\zeta\) lead to the Brownian dynamics limit.

14.2.4 Direct methods

The major computational effort in a molecular or Langevin dynamic simulation is the calculation of the forces on all particles at each time step. In principle, any type of energy function can be used: force field, semi-empirical, \textit{ab initio} electronic structure
or DFT methods. Owing to the small time step required, and the resulting many force evaluations necessary, the large majority of simulations are performed with parameterized energy functions of the force field type. For studying macromolecules and solution, general force fields of the type discussed in Chapter 2 are normally used. While these may be of sufficient accuracy for simulating structural properties, they are unable to describe chemical reactions or to achieve high accuracy. For such cases, a "global" energy surface may be constructed by fitting high-level ab initio results and experimental data to a suitable functional form. For sufficiently small time steps, the result of a simulation is determined entirely by the quality of the energy surface. To obtain "converged" results for the dynamics, the energy surface must be accurate to better than 1 kJ/mol, over the whole surface that is accessible at the given energy (temperature). Constructing such high-quality "global" energy surfaces is very demanding and has only been done for a few systems. As mentioned in Chapter 1, the sheer dimensionality prevents an adequate sampling of a surface by point calculations for more than three or four atoms, and high-level dynamics have thus been limited to systems of this size.

Even for low-dimensional surfaces (three to six atoms), it is often difficult to design a well-behaved fitting function capable of yielding a balanced description of all reaction channels. A simulation of the reaction between an oxygen atom and methane, for example, requires a balanced energy description of the following (stable) species, as well as the reaction paths connecting these:

- \( \text{CH}_4 + \frac{1}{2} \text{O} \)
- \( \text{CH}_3\text{OH} \)
- \( \text{H}_2\text{CO} + \text{H}_2 \)
- \( \{(\text{HCOH}\,(\text{cis and trans})\, + \, \text{H}_2\}\)
- \( \text{CH}_2 + \frac{1}{2} \text{H}_2 \)
- \( \frac{1}{2} \text{CH}_3 + \frac{1}{2} \text{H}_2 \)
- \( \text{CH}_3 + \text{OH} \)

Note that both singlet and triplet energy surfaces are important for this reaction. Achieving a high-quality surface will require a large number of MR-CI type calculations, and designing a suitable interpolation function to reproduce the experimental energy differences between all the above exit channels is a non-trivial exercise.

The surface design and fitting process can be bypassed by performing the dynamics "directly", i.e. by calculating the required energies and forces in each time step of a simulation. The advantage is that full energy conservation over the whole simulation length, however, such Born–Oppenheimer dynamics require a very tight convergence of the wave function in each time step, otherwise the electrons will create an artificial frictional term on the nuclei, and this makes the procedure computationally expensive. In an elegant breakthrough by Car and Parrinello (CP), it was shown that it is not necessary to fully converge the wave function in each time step. After having determined a converged wave function at the first point, the essence of the CP technique is to let the wave function parameters (orbitals) evolve simultaneously with the changes in nuclear positions. This can be achieved by including the wave function parameters as variables with fictive "masses" in the dynamics, analogous to the nuclear positions and masses. Since this involves generalized variables, the Lagrange formulation (eq. (14.11)) for the dynamical equation is convenient. The use of such extended Lagrange functions for describing the evolution of a system with both "real" (nuclear/electronic) and "fictive" (method parameters) is quite general, and is for example also used in force field methods incorporating fluctuating charges and/or polarization.

For the case of the CP method, the nuclear contributions are given by eq. (14.18).

\[
L = T_{\text{exc}} - V_{\text{exc}}
\]

\[
T_{\text{exc}} = \frac{1}{2} \sum \frac{M}{R_c} \left( \frac{dR_c}{dt} \right)^2
\]

\[
V_{\text{exc}} = V(R_{\text{exc}})
\]

We now add contributions corresponding to treating the orbital expansion coefficients as variables with fictive masses \( \mu \).

\[
\phi_i = \sum_{\alpha \epsilon} \phi_i \epsilon_i x_{\alpha}
\]

\[
T_{\text{orb}} = \frac{1}{2} \sum \mu \left( \frac{d\epsilon_i}{dt} \right)^2
\]

\[
V_{\text{orb}} = E(\epsilon_i
\]

\[
L = T_{\text{exc}} + T_{\text{orb}} - V_{\text{exc}}
\]

The two potential energies can be combined to a single term depending on both the nuclear positions and the orbital coefficients.

\[
L = T_{\text{exc}} + T_{\text{orb}} - V_{\text{exc}} + \phi_i \epsilon_i
\]

The orbital orthogonality constraints can be included by addition of terms involving Lagrange multipliers.
The resulting dynamical equations then become eq. (14.22)
\[
\langle \phi | \psi \rangle = \delta_{\phi \psi},
\]
\[
\sigma_{i} = \sum_{\text{basis}} c_{i,\phi} Z_{\phi} \delta_{\phi \psi} = 0
\tag{14.22}
\]
L = T_{\text{nuc}} + V_{\text{ext}} - \sum_{i} k_{i} \sigma_{i}

The constraint forces are handled iteratively, analogously to the constraint of fixed bond lengths in the SHAKE algorithm.

If the nuclear positions R are kept constant and the fictive orbital kinetic energy \( T_{\text{orb}} \) is quenched, the resulting algorithm is essentially a steepest descent minimization of the electronic energy with respect to the orbital coefficients. This is done at the initial point, but at subsequent points the orbital parameters are allowed to evolve along with the nuclear position according to the dynamical equation. This means that the nuclear forces are not strictly correct since the electronic wave function is not converged in the orbital parameter space. This error, however, can be controlled by suitable choices of the fictive masses associated with the orbital parameters, i.e. small values provide results closer to the “true” Born–Oppenheimer results, but also require the use of small time steps since the resulting “orbital parameter frequency” is high. Typically, the fictive masses are taken to be a few hundred atomic units, giving time steps of \( \sim 0.1 \) femtoseconds, i.e. roughly an order of magnitude smaller than for classical molecular dynamics. It should be noted that the optimum value for the fictive masses depends on the system, and for metals and semiconductors, for example, it is difficult to choose suitable values. Systems containing hydrogen are especially problematic, since the proton mass (1.00784 amu) is only a factor of 5–10 higher than the fictive orbital parameter mass. This in some cases leads to a coupling of these degrees of freedom, but this can be partly countered by using deuterium instead of hydrogen.

In the CP approach, the total energy is conserved, and this now includes the fictive kinetic energy of the orbital parameters. The “real” system of course has no orbital kinetic energy, and this must therefore be kept small compared with the other terms in order for the CP method to provide realistic simulation results. The magnitude of the fictive masses for the orbital parameters serves as a coupling parameter between the nuclear and parameter kinetic energies. In an equilibrium condition, the temperature associated with the nuclei and orbital parameters are the same, but it is usually desirable to have the parameter kinetic energy to be significantly lower (a value of zero corresponds to the Born–Oppenheimer case). This can be obtained by continuously removing the fictive kinetic energy associated with the orbital parameters, while compensating for the energy loss by adding energy to the nuclei. In practice this can be obtained by allowing the orbital parameters to interact with a “heat bath” of a low temperature, while the nuclei interact with a heat bath of the desired simulation temperature.

The CP technique can be used both in a “static” sense, for simultaneously optimizing the wave function and the nuclear positions by periodically quenching the kinetic energies, but it can also be used in a “dynamical” sense for sampling the (nuclear) phase space. The main advantage of the CP technique is the much better error cancellation compared with a Born–Oppenheimer dynamics, i.e. even with non-converged wave function parameters, the long-term energy conservation is fulfilled to a quite high accuracy. The coupling of the real and fictive parameters builds a self-correction into the CP method, i.e. if the nuclei at some point get slightly “ahead” of the electron cloud, they will be slowed down, thus allowing the electrons to “catch up” with the nuclei. Similarly, if the electronic parameters get ahead of the nuclei, the nuclei will be accelerated owing to the Coulomb attraction.

Such \textit{ab initio} simulations can in principle be carried out with any type of wave function but they are still significantly more expensive computationally than traditional parameterized energy functions. The CP method was originally implemented with DFT methods using plane waves as the basis set but more recently the technique has also been used with other types of methods (e.g. HF or MP2) and Gaussian type basis functions, where the density matrix elements are used as variables instead of the molecular orbital coefficients. The great advantage over force field type functions is that electronic structure methods are able to describe bond breaking/formation, i.e. CP methods allow a direct simulation of chemical reactions and processes such as hydrogen exchange in water. Even with the CP technique, however, the use of \textit{ab initio} electronic structure calculations (HF, DFT) is so expensive that only picosecond simulation can be carried out, compared with nano- or microsecond simulations with parameterized energy functions.

The CP method may be considered as a semi-classical dynamics approach where the electrons are treated quantum mechanically while the nuclear motion is treated classically. The latter implies that for example zero point vibrational effects are not included, nor can nuclear tunnelling effects be described; this requires fully quantum methods, as described in the next section.

\subsection{14.2.6 Quantum methods using potential energy surfaces}

In order to incorporate quantum effects into the nuclear motions (vibrational effects and tunnelling), the time-dependent (nuclear) Schrödinger equation must be used in place of Newton’s equation.

\[
\Psi(t) = \left( T + V \right) \Psi = \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t}
\tag{14.23}
\]

Here \( T \) is the kinetic energy operator and \( V \) is the potential energy. The square of the wave function is the probability of finding a particle at a given position. Heisenberg’s uncertainty principle means that a quantum description of a nucleus must be a continuous function, not a single specific position as in classical mechanics. Such a continuous function is often denoted a wave package and may be modelled by Gaussian functions (semi-classical methods) or numerically (quantum methods). Analogously to classical dynamics, the wave function may be propagated through a series of small, but finite, time steps.
14.2 TIME-DEPENDENT METHODS

is prohibitively expensive. In order to treat large systems, it is necessary to concentrate the computational effort on the "chemically important" part of the potential energy surface.

Each time step thus involves a calculation of the effect of the Hamiltonian operator acting on the wave function. In fully quantum methods, the wave function is often represented on a grid of points, those being the equivalent of basis functions for an electronic wave function. The kinetic energy operator, however, involves the derivative of the wave function, and so an accurate representation is required.

A simple description of a Hamiltonian operator is given by the equation:

\[ \Psi = -i \hat{H} \Psi + \hat{V} \Psi \]

(14.27)

where \( \Psi \) is the wave function, \( \hat{H} \) is the Hamiltonian, and \( \hat{V} \) is the potential energy operator. The potential energy operator is easy to evaluate, as it just involves a sum over points on the grid. The kinetic energy operator is proportional to the square of the momentum,

\[ T = \frac{p^2}{2m} \]

(14.28)

The idea is to only consider the energy surface in the vicinity of the current point, and then to deform this energy surface as the wave function changes. This requires an accurate and efficient calculation of the gradient of the potential energy surface.

The kinetic energy operator is proportional to the square of the momentum, and so its effect is a simple multiplication operator, analogous to a coordinate transformation. The potential energy operator can be represented on a grid of points, and so its effect is a simple addition operator. The requirement of an accurate global energy surface is even more important for a quantum mechanical treatment than for the classical case, since the wave function depends on a finite part of the surface, and the curvature of the potential energy surface at the transition state is very important.

14.2.7 Reaction path methods

The main problem is that the reaction path in the quantum case is not a continuous curve. The Born-Oppenheimer approximation breaks the quantum-mechanical wave function into two parts: a nuclear and a vibrational function. The nuclear function is a quantum mechanical calculation, while the vibrational function is a classical calculation. The Born-Oppenheimer approximation makes it possible to treat the nuclear motion quantum mechanically and the vibrational motion classically.

The reaction path method is based on the idea of treating a single, fixed reaction coordinate as the independent variable. This coordinate is chosen to be the reaction coordinate, which is typically the bond length or angle between the reactant and product. The potential energy surface is then represented by a function of this reaction coordinate, and the reaction coordinate is integrated along this surface.

The reaction path method is a powerful tool for calculating reaction rates and activation energies. It is based on the assumption that the reaction coordinate is a good approximation to the true reaction path. This assumption is usually valid for small molecules, but may not be valid for large molecules. For large molecules, it is necessary to use more sophisticated methods, such as the multi-configuration time-dependent Hartree-Fock (MCTDH) method.

The reaction path method is also useful for calculating the electronic structure of molecules. The reaction path method is based on the idea of treating a single, fixed reaction coordinate as the independent variable. This coordinate is chosen to be the reaction coordinate, which is typically the bond length or angle between the reactant and product. The potential energy surface is then represented by a function of this reaction coordinate, and the reaction coordinate is integrated along this surface.

The reaction path method is a powerful tool for calculating reaction rates and activation energies. It is based on the assumption that the reaction coordinate is a good approximation to the true reaction path. This assumption is usually valid for small molecules, but may not be valid for large molecules. For large molecules, it is necessary to use more sophisticated methods, such as the multi-configuration time-dependent Hartree-Fock (MCTDH) method.

The reaction path method is also useful for calculating the electronic structure of molecules. The reaction path method is based on the idea of treating a single, fixed reaction coordinate as the independent variable. This coordinate is chosen to be the reaction coordinate, which is typically the bond length or angle between the reactant and product. The potential energy surface is then represented by a function of this reaction coordinate, and the reaction coordinate is integrated along this surface.

The reaction path method is a powerful tool for calculating reaction rates and activation energies. It is based on the assumption that the reaction coordinate is a good approximation to the true reaction path. This assumption is usually valid for small molecules, but may not be valid for large molecules. For large molecules, it is necessary to use more sophisticated methods, such as the multi-configuration time-dependent Hartree-Fock (MCTDH) method.

The reaction path method is also useful for calculating the electronic structure of molecules. The reaction path method is based on the idea of treating a single, fixed reaction coordinate as the independent variable. This coordinate is chosen to be the reaction coordinate, which is typically the bond length or angle between the reactant and product. The potential energy surface is then represented by a function of this reaction coordinate, and the reaction coordinate is integrated along this surface.

The reaction path method is a powerful tool for calculating reaction rates and activation energies. It is based on the assumption that the reaction coordinate is a good approximation to the true reaction path. This assumption is usually valid for small molecules, but may not be valid for large molecules. For large molecules, it is necessary to use more sophisticated methods, such as the multi-configuration time-dependent Hartree-Fock (MCTDH) method.

The reaction path method is also useful for calculating the electronic structure of molecules. The reaction path method is based on the idea of treating a single, fixed reaction coordinate as the independent variable. This coordinate is chosen to be the reaction coordinate, which is typically the bond length or angle between the reactant and product. The potential energy surface is then represented by a function of this reaction coordinate, and the reaction coordinate is integrated along this surface.
Except for reactions with low barriers (i.e., $<40$ kJ/mol at $T = 300$ K) or at high temperatures, the quantity $\Delta E/kT$ is large and the last series can be neglected. The tunnelling correction is then given completely in terms of the magnitude of the imaginary frequency. For small values of $\upsilon$ the first term may be Taylor expanded to give eq. (14.26).

$$k_{\text{Bell}} = 1 + \frac{1}{2} (\upsilon^*)^2 + \cdots \quad (14.26)$$

The first-order term is known as the Wigner correction.\(^{31}\)

It is possible to derive tunnelling corrections for functional forms of the energy barrier other than an inverted parabola, but these cannot be expressed in analytical form. Since any barrier can be approximated by a parabola near the TS, and since tunnelling is most important for energies just below the top, they tend to give results in qualitative agreement with the Bell formula.

The main approximation of such one-dimensional corrections is that the tunnelling is assumed to occur along the MEP. This may be a reasonable assumption for reactions having either early or late (close to either reactant or product) transition states. For reactions where bond breaking and formation are both significant at the TS (as is usually the case), the dominant tunnelling effect is "corner cutting" (Figure 14.1), i.e. the favoured tunnel path is not along the MEP. Although the energy increases away from the MEP, the barrier also becomes narrower on the concave side of the reaction path, which favours the tunnelling probability.

![Figure 14.1 A contour plot illustration of the "corner cutting" tunnelling path](image)

Truhlar and coworkers have developed various approximate schemes for including tunnelling in multi-dimensional systems.\(^{32}\) In the Minimum Energy Path Semi-classical Adiabatic Ground state (MEPSAC) approximation the tunnelling is assumed to occur along the MEP, analogous to the Bell approach, but for an arbitrary shape of the energy surface. The Small Curvature Semi-classical Adiabatic Ground state (SCSAC) approximation allows tunnelling to occur within one vibrational half-amplitude perpendicular to the reaction path, while the Large Curvature Ground state (LCG) approximation allows tunnelling to occur outside this region. The SCSAC method requires a knowledge of the (generalized) frequencies along the IRC (Section 12.8), which can be obtained by calculating the force constant matrix at suitable intervals and interpolating the results. The LCG methods require additional calculations away from the IRC.

### 14.2.8 Non-Born–Oppenheimer methods

The methods in Sections 14.2.5 and 14.2.6 attempt to include nuclear quantum corrections based on the Born–Oppenheimer separation of the nuclear and electronic degrees of freedom, i.e. solving the nuclear dynamics on a potential energy surface obtained by solving the electronic Schrödinger equation. When quantum corrections such as tunnelling are large, however, it is an implicit warning that the Born–Oppenheimer approximation may also be problematic. Rather than trying to improve on the underlying model by adding correction terms, it may be both easier and better to treat the nuclei within a quantum framework from the start.

Methods that treat all of the electron and nuclear degrees of freedom within a combined quantum framework are starting to appear; so far they are mostly based on a mean-field (i.e. Hartree-Fock) approximation where the coupling of the nuclear and electron motions is included in an average fashion. Both conceptual and computational developments are required before such methods can be considered mature.\(^{33}\) One clear advantage of these methods is the ability to implicitly include both tunnelling and vibrational effects, and to selectively treat some nuclei as classical, thereby allowing a simplification for large systems.

In the spirit of the Car–Parrinello approach, the whole set of variables (nuclei and wave function parameters) may also be allowed to evolve simultaneously by solving the time-dependent Schrödinger equation. Öhrn and coworkers have developed an Electron–Nuclear Dynamics (END) method,\(^{34}\) where both the orbitals describing the electronic wave function and the nuclear degrees of freedom are described by expansion into a Gaussian basis set, which moves along with the nuclei. Such an approach in principle allows a complete solution of the combined nuclear–electron Schrödinger equation without having to invoke approximations beyond those imposed by the basis set. Inclusion of the electronic parameters in the dynamics, however, means that the fundamental time step is short, and this results in a high computational cost for even quite short simulations and simple wave functions.

### 14.2.9 Constrained sampling methods

The reaction path methods described in Section 14.2.7 focuses on the lowest energy reaction path on the electronic energy surface. The activation energy related to the experimental reaction rate, however, depends on the free energy, i.e. one would optically like to locate the reaction path on the free energy surface. For small systems, this can be done by adding finite temperature corrections to the enthalpy and entropy in a rigid-rotor harmonic-oscillator approximation based on a second-order expansion of the energy around each point (eqs (13.36) and (13.37)). For large systems, however, the harmonic approximation is less suitable and a more complete sampling by dynamical methods is usually desired. This will also yield information about the dynamics in the perpendicular direction around the reaction path.
A straightforward sampling of the reaction path is not possible since the dynamics are placed in a suitable box, often (but not necessarily) having a cubic geometry. This box is then duplicated in all directions, i.e., the central molecules are surrounded by 26 identical cubes, which are again surrounded by 98 identical cubes, and so on. This box is then duplicated in all directions, i.e., the central box is surrounded by 26 identical cubes, which are again surrounded by 98 boxes, etc.

The penalty approach corresponds to augmenting the energy surface with a biasing potential \( V \), for example a harmonic function centered at position \( r \) with a suitable width \( kU \).

\[
V(r) = V_{0} + U_{k}(r) = V_{0} + kU_{k}(r) = V_{0} + k \left( r - r_{0} \right)^{2}
\]

(14.27)

As mentioned in Section 2.2.5, the electrostatic interaction is long-ranged and will extend beyond the boundary of a box. Truncating the interaction by using a cutoff distance of say 10 Å gives rise to unrealistic non-physical distributions of the solvent molecules near the cutoff distance and producing "hot" and "cold" spots. A short-range switching function is multiplied in real space, thus bringing the free energy of the system up to the right value. This procedure is done in order to switch the function that has zero first derivatives at both limits. An example of a third-order switching function that has zero first derivatives at both limits is given in eq. (14.29).

\[
S(r) = \frac{1}{10} \left[ \frac{R_{c} - R_{w}}{R_{c}} \right]_{1/2}^{5/2} \left[ \frac{R_{c} - R_{w}}{R_{c}} \right]_{1/2}^{3/2} \left[ \frac{R_{c} - R_{w}}{R_{c}} \right]_{1/2}^{1/2}
\]

(14.29)

An alternative form for the central part that also has vanishing second derivatives at both limits is given in eq. (14.30).

\[
S(r) = \frac{1}{10} \left[ \frac{R_{c} - R_{w}}{R_{c}} \right]_{1/2}^{5/2} \left[ \frac{R_{c} - R_{w}}{R_{c}} \right]_{1/2}^{3/2} \left[ \frac{R_{c} - R_{w}}{R_{c}} \right]_{1/2}^{1/2}
\]

(14.30)

A variation of this is to use a shifting function which corresponds to a switching function with \( R_{c} = 0 \). Such functions modify the potential for all values less than \( R_{c} \), and an example is given in eq. (14.31).

A realistic model of a solution requires at least several hundred solvent molecules. To prevent the outer solvent molecules from boiling off into space and minimizing surface effects, periodic boundary conditions are normally employed. The solvent molecules are placed in a suitable box, often (but not necessarily) having a cubic geometry. This box is then duplicated in all directions, i.e., the central molecules are surrounded by 26 identical cubes, which are again surrounded by 98 identical cubes, etc.
The use of both switching and shifting functions modifies the model, since the potential and forces are changed, and therefore affects the results of the simulation. Whether these changes are significant relative to the other approximations in the model depends on the specific system and properties.

Figure 14.3 shows the energy function of two unit charges interacting with a Coulomb potential, one that has been subjected to the switching function eq. (14.29) with $R_1 = 10 \, \text{Å}$ and $R_2 = 12 \, \text{Å}$, and one that has been subjected to the shifting function eq. (14.31) with the same limits.

\[
S(r) = \begin{cases} 
1 - \frac{r^2}{R_i^2} & r \leq R_i \\
0 & r \geq R_i 
\end{cases} \quad (14.31)
\]

The difference between original, switched and shifted Coulomb potentials

Methods have also been developed where the electrostatic interaction is treated "exactly" (to within a numerical threshold), but without having to perform the $N^2$ summation over all atoms. Ewald sum methods have been developed for periodic systems (such as crystals) but can also be applied to quasi-periodic models arising by applying periodic boundary conditions. The idea in these methods is to split the interaction into a "near"- and "far"-field contribution. The near-field contribution is obtained by dividing the physical space into boxes, and the interaction between all molecules in one box with all molecules in another is approximated as interactions between multipoles located at the centres of the boxes. The further away from each other two boxes are, the larger the boxes can be for a given accuracy; thereby reducing the formal $N^2$ scaling into something that approaches linear scaling. The prefactor, however, is rather large and when properly implemented it appears that the cross-over point, where FMM becomes faster than PME, is around $10^5$ particles. FMM furthermore works best when the particles are relatively uniformly distributed; for a non-uniform distribution of particles, the multipole order must be significantly increased in order to achieve a given accuracy. A disadvantage of FMM is that the maximum error (relative to an exact calculation) is significantly larger than for Ewald type methods, i.e. there are certain particle pairs for which the error is larger than the average error by perhaps a factor of 10. FMM, in contrast to Ewald-based methods, however, does not have the requirement of periodicity, i.e. it is capable of modelling large non-periodic systems.

The original FMM has been refined by also adjusting the accuracy of the multipole expansion as a function of the distance between boxes, producing the very Fast Multipole Moment (vFMM) method. The exact calculation of the electrostatic interaction, albeit by treating the system as being pseudo-crystalline, has been shown to give significantly different results than a simple truncation scheme and also different from a switching function approach. Given the existence of computationally efficient methods for performing for example PME, there seems to be little reason for employing a non-physical truncation of the electrostatic interaction.

Figure 14.4 Illustration of the Ewald method

A key point in these methods is that the existence of computationally efficient methods for performing Fourier transformations, which reduces the scaling from $N^2$ to $N^{\frac{3}{2}}$. A related method is the Particle Mesh Ewald (PME) method, which scales (only) as $N \ln(N)$. The Fast Multipole Moment (FMM) method similarly splits the contribution into a near- and far-field, and calculates the near-field exactly. The far-field energy is calculated by dividing the physical space into boxes, and the interaction between all molecules in one box with all molecules in another is approximated as interactions between multipoles located at the centres of the boxes. The further away from each other two boxes are, the larger the boxes can be for a given accuracy; thereby reducing the formal $N^2$ scaling into something that approaches linear scaling. The prefactor, however, is rather large and when properly implemented it appears that the cross-over point, where FMM becomes faster than PME, is around $10^5$ particles. FMM furthermore works best when the particles are relatively uniformly distributed; for a non-uniform distribution of particles, the multipole order must be significantly increased in order to achieve a given accuracy. A disadvantage of FMM is that the maximum error (relative to an exact calculation) is significantly larger than for Ewald type methods, i.e. there are certain particle pairs for which the error is larger than the average error by perhaps a factor of 10. FMM, in contrast to Ewald-based methods, however, does not have the requirement of periodicity, i.e. it is capable of modelling large non-periodic systems.

The original FMM has been refined by also adjusting the accuracy of the multipole expansion as a function of the distance between boxes, producing the very Fast Multipole Moment (vFMM) method. The exact calculation of the electrostatic interaction, albeit by treating the system as being pseudo-crystalline, has been shown to give significantly different results than a simple truncation scheme and also different from a switching function approach. Given the existence of computationally efficient methods for performing for example PME, there seems to be little reason for employing a non-physical truncation of the electrostatic interaction.
14.4 Extracting Information from Simulations

A necessary (but not sufficient) requirement for producing a representative sampling is that the system is in equilibrium. The starting configuration may be generated by completely random positions (and velocities) of the particles, or it may be generated by simulating the particles at or near the lattice points of a suitable crystal. The system is then equilibrated by running perhaps $10^4$–$10^5$ MD or MC steps, followed by perhaps $10^5$–$10^7$ production steps. Various quantities, such as the average potential energy or correlation functions, can be monitored to validate whether equilibrium has been achieved.

The averaging in eq. (14.1) should be over configurations that are uncorrelated, and this is not the case for nearby points in an MD trajectory or sequence of MC steps. The whole set of points should therefore be divided into nonoverlapping blocks of sufficiently large size (as determined by the required size of the determined quantity), and the variance can be estimated from the variances of the blocks.

Flyvbjerg and Pedersen have shown how to determine the optimum block length by a sequence of statistical analyses. For the original data set the mean and variance are calculated according to eq. (14.32).

The variance calculated from eq. (14.32) is only valid for uncorrelated data, which is not the case for the original data. In order to determine a realistic estimate of the true variance, we must perform a data compression to filter out the dependence, i.e., find the distance between (uncorrelated) data in MD methods has the dimension of time and is called the correlation time, and for some properties it may be comparable to or exceed the total length of the simulation. A direct procedure for determining the correlation times is lost.

Flyvbjerg and Pedersen have shown how to determine the optimum block length by a sequence of statistical analyses. The distance between (uncorrelated) data in MD methods has the dimension of time and is called the correlation time, and for some properties it may be comparable to or exceed the total length of the simulation. A direct procedure for determining the correlation times is lost.
In a standard MC simulation the temperature is fixed (NVT conditions), while it is a derived quantity in a standard MD simulation (NVE conditions).

The pressure is related to the product of positions and forces (for pairwise potentials).

\[ PV = N_{\text{atom}} kT \frac{1}{3} \left( \sum_{i<j} r_{ij} E_{ij} \right) \]

Here the first part is for an ideal gas.

The internal (potential) energy is directly a sum of energies, which is normally given as a sum over pairwise interactions (i.e. van der Waals and electrostatic contribution in a force field description).

\[ U = \sum_i E_i = \sum_{i<j} E_{ij} \]

The internal energy will fluctuate around a mean value that may be calculated by averaging over the number of configurations, \( \langle U \rangle_M \).

The heat capacity at constant volume is the derivative of the energy with respect to temperature at constant volume (eq. (13.17)). There are several ways of calculating such response properties. The most accurate is to perform a series of simulations under NVT conditions and thereby determine the behaviour of \( \langle U \rangle_M \) as a function of \( T \) (for example by fitting to a suitable function). Subsequently this function may be differentiated to give the heat capacity. This approach has the disadvantage that several simulations at different temperatures are required. Alternatively, the heat capacity can be calculated from the fluctuation of the energy around its mean value.

\[ C_v = \frac{1}{kT^2} \left( \langle U^2 \rangle_M - \langle U \rangle_M^2 \right) \]

This approach requires only a single simulation. Since the fluctuation has a longer relaxation time than the energy itself, the ensemble average in eq. (14.37) must be over a larger number of points than for \( \langle U \rangle_M \) to achieve a similar statistical error, i.e. the efficiency obtained by avoiding multiple simulations is partly lost owing to a longer simulation time required. Another disadvantage is that eq. (14.37) involves taking differences between large numbers, which is susceptible to round-off errors.

Distribution functions measure the (average) value of a property as a function of an independent variable. A typical example is the radial distribution function \( g(r) \) that measures the probability of finding a particle as a function of distance from a “typical” particle relative to that expected from a completely uniform distribution (i.e. an ideal gas with density N/V). The radial distribution function is defined in eq. (14.38).

\[ g(r, \Delta r) = \frac{V}{N^2} \frac{N(r, \Delta r) \Delta r}{4\pi r^2 \Delta r} \]

For a solution, the radial distribution function will typically have a structure as shown in Figure 14.6 for a simulation of a benzene radical anion in water. For molecules, the radial distribution function can be extended with orientational degrees of freedom to characterize the angular distribution.

Correlation functions measure the relationship between two variables, \( x \) and \( y \). A common definition is given in eq. (14.39).

\[ C_{xy} = \frac{\langle (x-x_{\mu})(y-y_{\mu}) \rangle_M}{\sqrt{\langle (x-x_{\mu})^2 \rangle_M \langle (y-y_{\mu})^2 \rangle_M}} \]

The correlation function is a number between -1 and 1, where 1 indicates that the two quantities are completely correlated, -1 that they are (completely) anti-correlated, and 0 means that they are independent (uncorrelated).
Often such correlation functions are time dependent and measure how the correlation between two quantities changes over time. They may be normalized by the corresponding static (i.e. $t \rightarrow \infty$) limit.

\[ C_{xy}(t) = \frac{\langle x(t) y(t) \rangle_x}{\langle x(t) y(t) \rangle_x} \]  

(14.40)

Notice that the averaging is done over the number of particles $N$ and $t$, but not the number of configurations $M$. Since an MD simulation produces a set of time-connected configurations, the number of a given configuration is directly related to the simulation time.

In the case where $x$ and $y$ are the same, $C_{xx}(t)$ is called an autocorrelation function; if they are different, it is called a cross-correlation function. For an autocorrelation function, the initial value at $t = 0$ is 1, and it approaches 0 as $t \rightarrow \infty$. How fast it approaches 0 is measured by the relaxation time. The Fourier transforms of such correlation functions are often related to experimentally observed spectra; the far IR spectrum of a solvent, for example, is the Fourier transform of the dipole autocorrelation function.\(^6\)

\[ I(\omega) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int \langle \mu(t) \mu(0) \rangle e^{i\omega t} dt \]  

(14.41)

### 14.5 Free Energy Methods

As noted in Section 13.6, it is difficult to calculate entropic quantities with any reasonable accuracy within a finite simulation time. It is, however, possible to calculate differences in such quantities.\(^7\) Of special importance is the Gibbs free energy, since it is the natural thermodynamic quantity under normal experimental conditions (constant temperature and pressure, Table 14.1), but we will illustrate the principle with Helmholtz free energy instead (constant temperature and volume). As indicated in eq. (13.6) the fundamental problem is the same. There are two commonly used methods for calculating differences in free energy: Thermodynamic Perturbation and Thermodynamic Integration.\(^8\)

#### 14.5.1 Thermodynamic perturbation methods

The difference in entropy properties between two systems $A$ and $B$ can be calculated by an ensemble average, as discussed in Section 13.6.

\[ \langle \Delta S_{A \rightarrow B} \rangle_M = -kT \ln \left( e^{-\Delta E_{A \rightarrow B}/kT} \right) \]  

(14.42)

Since the energy difference must be small compared with $kT$, the transformation from $A$ to $B$ must usually be broken into several intermediate steps described by a $\lambda$ parameter, and the total free energy change is given as the sum of changes in each step.

\[ E_{\lambda} = \lambda E_A + (1 - \lambda) E_B \]  

(14.43)

To test the quality of the averaging, the perturbation is usually run in both directions (i.e. $A \rightarrow B$ and $B \rightarrow A$), and the difference is taken as a measure of how well $\Delta A$ is statistically converged. It should be noted that (too) short simulation times may lead to forward- and backward-calculated values that are in good agreement, without the energy difference being calculated accurately. Establishing a reliable estimate of the statistical error requires running several independent simulations and carefully analyzing the size of the perturbation steps and the correlation times for the various processes occurring in the system.\(^9\) Calculation of free energy differences by means of eq. (14.42) is often called Thermodynamic Perturbation\(^10\) or Free Energy Perturbation (FEP).

Instead of performing a series of simulations with a fixed energy function as in eq. (14.42), it may also be allowed to change continuously in each time step. This is called the Slow Growth method and requires that the increase in $\lambda$ is slow enough that the system essentially remains at equilibrium at all times. This is difficult to ensure in practice,\(^11\) and the slow growth method is therefore less commonly used.

#### 14.5.2 Thermodynamic integration methods

Given an energy function as in eq. (14.43), the partition function, and thereby also the free energy, is a function of $\lambda$.

\[ A(\lambda) = -kT \ln Q(\lambda) \]  

(14.44)

Differentiating this expression yields eq. (14.45).

\[ \frac{\partial A}{\partial \lambda} = -kT \frac{\partial Q}{\partial \lambda} \frac{\partial E}{\partial \lambda} \]  

(14.45)

Here the definition of $Q$ (eq. (13.4)) has been used. Replacing the right-hand side by an ensemble average and integrating over $\lambda$ gives eq. (14.46).

\[ A(1) - A(0) = \int \left( \frac{\partial E(\lambda)}{\partial \lambda} \right) d\lambda \]  

(14.46)

The left-hand side is the desired free energy difference, and the right-hand side may be approximated by a discrete sum.

\[ \Delta A = \sum \left( \frac{\partial E(\lambda)}{\partial \lambda} \right) \Delta \lambda \]  

(14.47)

The use of eq. (14.47) for calculating $\Delta A$ is normally called Thermodynamic Integration (TI).\(^12\) The difference between eqs (14.42) and (14.47) is that the former averages over finite differences in energy functions, while the latter averages over a differentiated energy function. For parameterized energy functions, it is fairly easy to form the energy derivative with respect to the coupling parameter analytically, and the averaging in (14.47) is therefore no more complicated than averaging over energy differences as in eq. (14.42). Furthermore, it should be noted that the computational cost of performing the averaging is negligible compared with the cost of generating the ensemble, and the same ensemble can therefore be used to calculate the free energy difference by either eq. (14.42) or (14.47). This allows a measure of the reliability of the calculated value to be obtained.
Free energy calculations are often combined with solvation models to calculate properties that would otherwise require impossible long simulation times. A direct method is that the non-physical transformation is carried out in sufficiently small steps that the sampling of the phase space at each successive point overlaps. Even for quite complicated models, such overlap is straightforward and the computational requirements are usually not problematic. In the LIE method, only the physical properties that would otherwise require impossible long simulation times are calculated. The basic requirement of the three parameters against experimental bonding energies for the PES of the system confirms that the optimum value is close to 0.5, while values of 10–20 steps, with each step requiring extensive sampling, are generally required. In the second method, the solvation energy is calculated by transforming the first solvation shell and treating the rest by a continuum model. Each of these methods has its limitations and advantages, and the best choice depends on the specific system but the LIE offers a computational saving of an order of magnitude or more compared with FEP or TI methods. Since $G$ is a state function, the difference in solvation energy, $\Delta G_{\text{solv}}$, which is difficult to calculate, may instead be obtained as $\Delta G_{\text{solv}} = \Delta G_{\text{gas}} - \Delta G_{\text{internal}}$. This difference also is part of $\Delta G_{\text{gas}}$ and $\Delta G_{\text{internal}}$ is the difference in solvation of the solute species, i.e., the solute is transferred from a gas phase to a continuum phase. In the acetone/propane example, the $\Delta G_{\text{gas}}$ values correspond to differences in the internal energy of the molecules, which can be calculated as discussed in Section 13.5. This difference also is part of $\Delta G_{\text{gas}}$. The internal energy changes in the solute are less important, and the solute is transferred into two types of solvents: those described by the individual solvent molecules and those that treat the solvent as a continuous medium. The effects of solvation can be partitioned into two main groups: non-specific (long-range) solvation and specific (short-range) solvation. The former includes solvation of the polar groups, such as hydrogen bonds, dipole–dipole interactions, and solvation of the non-polar groups, such as van der Waals interactions. The latter includes solvation of the polar groups, such as hydrogen bonds, dipole–dipole interactions, and solvation of the non-polar groups, such as van der Waals interactions.
Creation of a hole in the medium costs energy, i.e., this is a destabilization, while dispersion interactions between the solvent and solute add a stabilization (this may be roughly thought of as the van der Waals energy between solvent and solute). In principle, there may also be a contribution due to the change in the dielectric constant of the medium, which in turn acts back on the molecule, thereby producing an electrostatic stabilization. The solvation free energy may thus be written as in eq. (14.49).

\[
\Delta G_{solv} = \Delta G_{solv}^{0} + \Delta G_{disp} + \Delta G_{el} + \Delta G_{dipole} + \Delta G_{polarization}
\]

(14.49)

Reaction field models differ in five aspects:

1. How the size and shape of the hole are defined.
2. How the cavity/dispersion contribution is calculated.
3. How the charge distribution of M is represented.
4. How the solute M is described, either classical (force field) or quantum (semi-empirical or ab initio).
5. How the dielectric medium is described.

Continuum solvation models are normally taken to have a constant value of \( e \), but for some purposes alternative values may be used (e.g., the response of the solvent is different for a fast reaction, such as an electronic transition, than for a slow reaction, such as a molecular reorientation). Since this is computationally expensive, there is a need for a model that can account for differences in the dielectric constant, as will be discussed in more detail in the next section.

14.7 Continuum Solvation Models

Continuum models consider the solvent as a uniform polarizable medium with a dielectric constant \( \varepsilon \). The simplest shape for the hole is a sphere or an ellipsoid. This has the advantage of allowing for an analytical calculation of the electrostatic interaction. More realistic models employ the shape of the molecule itself, which in turn is defined by the van der Waals surface. Such a surface may be described by a set of points representing the van der Waals radius of each atom. The solvent accessible surface (SAS) of M is illustrated in Figure 14.9. Since an SAS is computationally more expensive to generate than a van der Waals surface, a van der Waals surface is often used, especially for small molecules. A suitable factor is to use a value of 0.3 to 0.4 of the van der Waals radius to account for the surface tension of the solvent.

The simplest shape for the hole is a sphere or an ellipsoid. This has the advantage of allowing for an analytical calculation of the electrostatic interaction. More realistic models employ the shape of the molecule itself, which in turn is defined by the van der Waals surface. Such a surface may be described by a set of points representing the van der Waals radius of each atom. The solvent accessible surface (SAS) of M is illustrated in Figure 14.9. Since an SAS is computationally more expensive to generate than a van der Waals surface, a van der Waals surface is often used, especially for small molecules. A suitable factor is to use a value of 0.3 to 0.4 of the van der Waals radius to account for the surface tension of the solvent.

It is generally found that the shape of the hole is important, and that molecular shaped cavities are necessary to be able to account for the cavitation effects. However, the solvent dynamics of an almost spherical CCl₄ molecule will be different from the planar benzene molecule. The simplest shape for the hole is a sphere or an ellipsoid. This has the advantage of allowing for an analytical calculation of the electrostatic interaction. More realistic models employ the shape of the molecule itself, which in turn is defined by the van der Waals surface. Such a surface may be described by a set of points representing the van der Waals radius of each atom. The solvent accessible surface (SAS) of M is illustrated in Figure 14.9. Since an SAS is computationally more expensive to generate than a van der Waals surface, a van der Waals surface is often used, especially for small molecules. A suitable factor is to use a value of 0.3 to 0.4 of the van der Waals radius to account for the surface tension of the solvent.

The simplest shape for the hole is a sphere or an ellipsoid. This has the advantage of allowing for an analytical calculation of the electrostatic interaction. More realistic models employ the shape of the molecule itself, which in turn is defined by the van der Waals surface. Such a surface may be described by a set of points representing the van der Waals radius of each atom. The solvent accessible surface (SAS) of M is illustrated in Figure 14.9. Since an SAS is computationally more expensive to generate than a van der Waals surface, a van der Waals surface is often used, especially for small molecules. A suitable factor is to use a value of 0.3 to 0.4 of the van der Waals radius to account for the surface tension of the solvent.
models are incapable of modelling specific (short-range) solvation effects, i.e. those occurring within the first solvation sphere.

The energy required to create the cavity (entropy factors and loss of solvent–solute van der Waals interactions), and the stabilization due to van der Waals interactions between the solute and solvent (which may also contain a small repulsive component), is usually assumed to be proportional to the surface area. The corresponding energy terms may be taken simply as being proportional to the total SAS area (a single proportionality constant), or parameterized by having a constant $\xi$ specific for each atom type (analogous to van der Waals parameters in force field methods), with the $\xi$ parameters being determined by fitting to experimental solvation data.

$$G_{\text{cav}} + \Delta G_{\text{dispersion}} = \gamma \text{SAS} + \beta$$  \hspace{1cm} (14.50)

$$G_{\text{cav}} + \Delta G_{\text{dispersion}} = \sum_i^\text{atoms} \xi S_i$$  \hspace{1cm} (14.51)

For solvent models where the cavity/dispersion interaction is parameterized by fitting to experimental solvation energies, the use of a few explicit solvent molecules for the first solvation sphere is not recommended, as the parameterization represents a best fit to experimental data without any explicit solvent present. The electrostatic component of eq. (14.49) can be described at several different levels of approximation, as discussed in the following sections.

### 14.7.1 Poisson–Boltzmann methods

The Poisson equation is a second-order differential equation describing the connection between the electrostatic potential $\phi$ the charge distribution $\rho$ and the dielectric constant $\varepsilon$:

$$\nabla^2 \phi(r) = -\frac{4\pi}{k} \rho(r)$$  \hspace{1cm} (14.52)

Note that the dielectric “constant” may depend on the position. When it is independent of the position (i.e. truly a constant), eq. (14.52) becomes eq. (14.53).

$$\nabla^2 \phi(r) = -\frac{4\pi}{k} \rho(r)$$  \hspace{1cm} (14.53)

If the charge distribution is a point charge, the solution of eq. (14.53) reduces to the Coulomb interaction. Eq. (14.52) can be used for describing for example the solvation of a protein in water, where the protein region is taken to have a low dielectric constant ($2 < \epsilon < 5$) while the solvent has a high dielectric constant ($\epsilon = 78$). The boundary between the two regions is typically taken as the SAS.

The Poisson equation can be modified by taking into account a (thermal) Boltzmann distribution of ions in the solvent. The negative ions will accumulate where the potential is positive, and vice versa, subject to a thermal fluctuation. The charge densities from a collection of ions with charges $q$ and $-q$ and concentration $c$ are given by eq. (14.54).

$$\rho_+ = qce^{-\phi/kT}$$  \hspace{1cm} (14.54a)

$$\rho_- = -qce^{-\phi/kT}$$  \hspace{1cm} (14.54b)

Addition of these contributions to eq. (14.52) leads to the Poisson–Boltzmann Equation (PBE).

$$\nabla \cdot (\epsilon(r) \nabla \phi(r)) = -\kappa^2 \frac{kT}{q} \sinh \frac{q\phi(r)}{kT} = -4\pi \rho(r)$$  \hspace{1cm} (14.55)

Here $I$ is the ion strength of the solution, and the $\kappa^2$ factor is inversely related to the Debye–Hückel length, measuring how far the electrostatic effects extend into the solution. The sinh($q\phi(r)/kT$) term only applies for the region corresponding to the solvent, i.e. for $r$ outside the cavity. Since $q\phi/kT$ is dimensionless, the PBE is often written in terms of a reduced potential $\bar{a}$ instead.

$$\nabla \cdot (\epsilon(r) \nabla \phi(r)) = -\kappa^2 \sinh(\bar{a}\phi(r)) = -4\pi \rho(r)$$  \hspace{1cm} (14.56)

If the potential is sufficiently small (i.e. the solute is not strongly charged), the sinh($\bar{a}\phi$) function can be expanded in a Taylor series, $\sinh(\bar{a}\phi) = \bar{a}\phi + \frac{\bar{a}^2}{6}\phi^3 + \ldots$. Keeping only the first term gives the Linearised Poisson–Boltzmann Equation (LPBE).

$$\nabla \cdot (\epsilon(r) \nabla \phi(r)) = -4\pi \rho(r)$$  \hspace{1cm} (14.57)

All of these equations ((14.52)–(14.57)) are differential equations that must be solved numerically, typically by a grid representation, and the results give information about the electrostatic potential at any point in space. It can be mapped onto the surface of the solute where it may suggest regions for interaction with other polar molecules. It can also be used for generating the reaction field, defined as the difference between the potential in the presence of a solvent ($\epsilon = 78$) and in vacuum ($\epsilon = 1$), i.e. $\phi_{\text{solv}} = \phi_{\text{vac}} - \phi_{\text{vac}}$. Multiplication of the reaction field with the solute charges in either a continuous ($Q$) or partial charge ($Q$) description gives the electrostatic component of the free energy.

$$\Delta G_{\text{elec}} = \frac{1}{2} \int \rho(r) \phi_{\text{vac}}(r) \, dr$$

$$\Delta G_{\text{elec}} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_i Q_i \phi_{\text{vac}}(r_i)$$  \hspace{1cm} (14.58)
14.7.2 Born/Onsager/Kirkwood models

The numerical aspects of solving the Poisson or Poisson–Boltzmann equations make them too demanding for use in connections with for example geometry optimizations of macromolecules. For certain special cases, however, the Poisson equation (14.52) can be solved analytically, and this forms the basis for many approximate models for estimating the electronic component in eq. (14.49).

The simplest reaction field model is a spherical cavity, where only the lowest order electric moment of the molecule is taken into account. For a net charge $q$ in a cavity of radius $a$, the difference in energy between a vacuum and a medium with a dielectric constant of $\varepsilon$ is given by the Born model:

$$\Delta G_{\text{Born}}(q) = -\left(1 - \frac{1}{\varepsilon}\right) \frac{q^2}{2a}$$ \hspace{1cm} (14.59)

It can be noted that the Born model predicts equal solvation energies for positive and negative ions of the same size, which is not the observed behaviour in solvents such as water. Furthermore, the reciprocal dependence on the dielectric constant means that the calculated solvent effect is sensitive to the variation of $\varepsilon$ in the low dielectric limit but virtually unaffected by large differences in the high dielectric limit. Changing $\varepsilon$ from 1 to 2 gives a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$ in eq. (14.59) but there is virtually no difference between a solvent with a dielectric constant of 30 (e.g. acetonitrile) and one with a dielectric constant of 78 (e.g. water), although in actual experiments there may be a significant difference.

Using partial atomic charges in eq. (14.59) is often called the generalized Born model, which has been used especially in connection with force field methods in the Generalized Born/Surface Area (GB/SA) model. In this case, the Coulomb interaction between the partial charges (eq. (2.20)) is combined with the Born formula by means of a function $f_{ij}$ depending on the internuclear distance and Born radii for each of the two atoms, $a_i$ and $a_j$.

$$G_{\text{GB}}(Q_1, Q_2) = -\sum_{i,j} \left(1 - \frac{1}{\varepsilon}\right) \frac{Q_i Q_j}{r_{ij}} f_{ij}$$

$$f_{ij} = \frac{1}{\varepsilon} + a_i \varepsilon^{-1/2}$$

$$a_i = a_i$$

$$D = \frac{\varepsilon}{4\pi\varepsilon_i}$$

The effective Born radius for a given atom depends on the nature and position of all the atoms. In practice, the dependence on the other atoms is relatively weak, and updates of the $a_i$ parameters can be done at suitable intervals, for example when updating the non-bonded list in an optimization or simulation. The boundary between the solute and solvent is usually taken as a modified van der Waals surface generated from the unification of atomic van der Waals radii scaled by a suitable factor. The cavity/ dispersion terms are parameterized according to the SAS, as in eq. (14.51). The GB/SA model provides a very fast method of incorporating solvent effects, and it is furthermore relatively easy to formulate gradients of the energy function, making it possible to perform optimization and simulations. It has been shown to reproduce the results from Poisson–Boltzmann calculations rather accurately, but it should be noted that the results are somewhat sensitive to the magnitude of the partial charges.

14.7.3 Self-consistent reaction field models

A classical description of the molecule $M$ in Figure 14.9 can be a force field with (partial) atomic charges, while a quantum description involves calculation of the electronic wave function. The latter may be either a semi-empirical model, such as AMI or PM3, or more sophisticated electronic structure methods, i.e. HF, DFT, MCSCF, MP2, CCSD, etc. When a quantum description of $M$ is employed, the calculated electric moments induce charges in the dielectric medium, which in turn acts back on the molecule, causing the wave function to respond and thereby changing the electric moments, etc. The interaction with the solvent model must thus be calculated by an iterative procedure, leading to various Self-Consistent Reaction Field (SCRF) models.

The interaction of a fixed dipole moment with a polarizable medium is given by eq. (14.61). This, however, is not an SCRF model, as the dipole moment and stabilization are not calculated in a self-consistent way. When the back-polarization of the medium is taken into account, the dipole moment changes, depending on how polarizable the molecule is. Taking only the first-order effect into account, the stabilization is given by eq. (14.62).

$$\Delta G_{\text{SCRF}}(\mu) = -\frac{e-1}{2e+1} \frac{\mu^2}{2a}$$

Here $\alpha$ is the molecular polarizability, i.e. the first-order change in the dipole moment with respect to an electric field. In the SCRF model the full polarization is taken into account, i.e. the initial dipole moment generates a polarization of the medium, which changes the dipole moment, which in turn generates a slightly different polarization, etc.
For spherical or ellipsoidal cavities the Poisson equation can be solved analytically, but for molecular shaped surfaces it must be done numerically. This is typically done by reformulating it in terms of a surface integral over surface charges. The surface charges are related to the electric field \( F \) (the derivative of the potential \( f \)) perpendicular to the surface by eq. (14.63).

\[
\phi(r) = \frac{4\pi e}{482} \left( r - \frac{1}{r} \right)
\]

Once \( \phi(r) \) is determined the associated potential is added as an extra term to the Hamiltonian operator.

\[
H = H_0 + f_s
\]

The potential \( f_s \) from the surface charge is given by the molecular charge distribution (eq. (14.64)), but also enters the Hamiltonian and thus influences the molecular wavefunction. The procedure is therefore iterative.

For the case of the Onsager model (spherical cavity, dipole moment only) the term added to the molecular Hamiltonian operator is given by eq. (14.65).

\[
\phi = -\frac{\mu}{4\pi \varepsilon_0 R}
\]

\[
\phi_r = -\frac{\mu}{4\pi \varepsilon_0 R}
\]

\[
\phi_r = -\frac{\mu}{4\pi \varepsilon_0 R}
\]

\[
\phi_r = -\frac{\mu}{4\pi \varepsilon_0 R}
\]

\[
\phi_r = -\frac{\mu}{4\pi \varepsilon_0 R}
\]

\[
\phi_r = -\frac{\mu}{4\pi \varepsilon_0 R}
\]

At the HF level of theory the A operator corresponds to the addition of an extra term to the Fock matrix elements (Section 3.3).

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

At the HF level of theory the A operator corresponds to the addition of an extra term to the Fock matrix elements (Section 3.3).

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

At the HF level of theory the A operator corresponds to the addition of an extra term to the Fock matrix elements (Section 3.3).

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

At the HF level of theory the A operator corresponds to the addition of an extra term to the Fock matrix elements (Section 3.3).

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

\[
F_{ij} = \left( \phi \right)_i \left( \phi \right)_j
\]

At the HF level of theory the A operator corresponds to the addition of an extra term to the Fock matrix elements (Section 3.3).
component is underestimated by continuum models by roughly a factor of 2, while the non-bonded part is essentially uncorrelated with the surface area. Including of solvent effects may change the geometry, charge distribution and conformational preferences. Employing a PCM type solvation water model in connection with the B3LYP/6-31g++-pVTZ method for example leads to an increase of the C—O bond length in acetonitrile by 0.015 Å, while the C—N bond is reduced by a similar amount. The calculated dipole moment correspondingly changes from 3.9 to 5.2 debye. Since solvation preferentially stabilizes the more polar states, it may also change the conformational preference of molecules. Using the above computational model for example changes the energy difference between the anti (no dipole moment by symmetry) and gauche (gas phase dipole moment of 2.8 debye) conformations of 1,2-dichloroethane from 6.7 kJ/mol in the gas phase to 1.1 kJ/mol in solution. Molecular properties are in many cases also sensitive to the environment, but a detailed discussion of this is outside the scope of this book.19

References


15 Qualitative Theories

Although sophisticated electronic structure methods may be able to accurately predict a molecular structure or the outcome of a chemical reaction, the results are often hard to rationalize. Generalizing the results to other similar systems therefore becomes difficult. Qualitative theories, on the other hand, are unable to provide accurate results but they may be useful for gaining insight, for example why a certain reaction is favoured over another. They also provide a link to many concepts used by experimentalists. Frontier molecular orbital theory considers the interaction of the orbitals of the reactants and attempts to predict relative reactivities by second-order perturbation theory. It may also be considered as a simplified version of the Fukui function, which considered how easily the total electron density can be distorted. The Woodward–Hoffmann rules allow a rationalization of the stereochemistry of certain types of reactions, while the more general qualitative orbital interaction model can often rationalize the preference for certain molecular structures over other possible arrangements.

15.1 Frontier Molecular Orbital Theory

Frontier Molecular Orbital (FMO) theory attempts to predict relative reactivity based on properties of the reactants. It is commonly formulated in terms of perturbation theory, where the energy change in the initial stage of a reaction is estimated and “extrapolated” to the transition state. For a reaction where two different modes of reaction are possible, this may be illustrated as shown in Figure 15.1.

The reaction mode that involves the least energy change in the initial stage is assumed also to have the lowest activation energy. FMO theory uses a low-order perturbation expansion with the reactants and it is clear that such a treatment can only be used to follow the reaction a short part of the whole reaction pathway.

The change in energy can be derived from second-order perturbation theory (Section 4.8) and is given in equation (15.1).
15.1 Frontier Molecular Orbital Theory

Larger than the single HOMO–LUMO term. Nevertheless, it is possible to rationalize many trends in terms of FMO theory and thus the result justifies the means. If we furthermore consider a matrix element $\langle c|V|ca \rangle$ to be non-zero only between atoms where new bonds are being formed (where it is furthermore assumed to be roughly constant), the deciding factor becomes a sum over products of MO coefficients from the HOMO on one fragment with LUMO coefficients on the other. A few examples should help clarify this.

The reaction of a nucleophile involves the addition of electrons to the reactant, i.e. interaction of the HOMO of the nucleophile with the LUMO of the reactant. If there is more than one possible centre of attack, the preferred reaction mode is predicted to occur on the atom having the largest LUMO coefficient. Figure 15.2 shows that the orbital component shows preference for addition to the 4-position of acrolein (as a model for unsaturated carbonyl compounds in general), with the second most reactive position being C−2. The net charges, however, prefer position 2, as it is the most positive carbon. Experimentally, it is found that attack at the 4-position is usually favoured (especially with “soft” nucleophiles such as organolithium compounds), but attack at the 2-position is also observed (and may dominate with “hard” nucleophiles such as organocuprates). This is consistent with the reaction switching from being orbital controlled to charge controlled as the nucleophile becomes more ionic.

Similarly, the reaction of an electrophile will involve the HOMO of the reactant, i.e. the reaction should occur preferentially on the atom having the largest HOMO coefficient. The coefficients for furan shown in Figure 15.3 indicate that electrophilic substitution should preferentially occur at the 2-position, again in agreement with experimental results.

Consider now the reaction between butadiene and ethylene, where both 2+2 and 4+2 reaction modes are possible. The qualitative appearances of the butadiene HOMO and ethylene LUMO are given in Figure 15.4. The MO coefficients are given as $a$, $b$, and $c$, where $a > b > c$. 

![Figure 15.1 FMO region of a reaction profile](image)

$$\Delta E = - \sum_{\mu \nu} (\rho_\mu + \rho_\nu) \langle \chi_\mu | V | \chi_\nu \rangle \chi_\mu \chi_\nu + \sum_{\mu \nu} \frac{Q_\mu Q_\nu}{R_{\mu \nu}} + 2 \left( \sum e_{\mu a} e_{\nu b} \langle \chi_\mu | V | \chi_\nu \rangle \right)^2 / (\epsilon_\mu - \epsilon_\nu)$$

(15.1)

Here, A and B denote atoms in each of the two interacting molecules. The $V$ operator contains all the potential energy operators from both molecules, and the $\langle c|V|c \rangle$ integral is a “resonance” type integral between two atomic orbitals, one from each molecule. The $\rho_\mu$ is the electron density on atom A, and the first term in (15.1) represents a repulsion ($\langle c|V|c \rangle$ is a negative quantity) between occupied MOs (steric repulsion). This will usually lead to a net energy barrier for a reaction. The second term represents an attraction or repulsion between charged parts of the molecules, $Q_\mu$ being the (net) charge on atom A. The last term is a stabilizing interaction $(\epsilon_\mu - \epsilon_\nu < 0)$ due to mixing of occupied MOs on one molecule with unoccupied MOs on the other, $e_{\mu a} e_{\nu b}$ being MO coefficients and $\epsilon_\mu$ MO energies. The summation is over all pairs of occupied/unoccupied MOs.

If we are comparing reactions that have approximately the same steric requirements, the first term is roughly constant. If the species are very polar the second term will dominate, and the reaction is charge controlled. This means for example that an electrophilic attack is likely to occur at the most negative atom or, in a more general sense, along a path where the electrostatic potential is most negative. If the molecules are non-polar, the third term in eq. (15.1) will dominate and the reaction is said to be orbital controlled. This means that the reaction will occur where the molecular orbital coefficients are largest.

All other things being equal, the largest contribution to the double summation over orbital pairs in the third term will arise where the denominator is smallest. This corresponds to the Highest Occupied Molecular Orbital (HOMO) and Lowest Unoccupied Molecular Orbital (LUMO) pair of orbitals. FMO theory considers only this one contribution to the whole summation. From a purely numerical consideration this is certainly not a good approximation: the contributions from all the other pairs are much larger than the single HOMO–LUMO term. Nevertheless, it is possible to rationalize many trends in terms of FMO theory and thus the result justifies the means. If we furthermore consider a matrix element $\langle c|V|c \rangle$ to be non-zero only between atoms where new bonds are being formed (where it is furthermore assumed to be roughly constant), the deciding factor becomes a sum over products of MO coefficients from the HOMO on one fragment with LUMO coefficients on the other. A few examples should help clarify this.

The reaction of a nucleophile involves the addition of electrons to the reactant, i.e. interaction of the HOMO of the nucleophile with the LUMO of the reactant. If there is more than one possible centre of attack, the preferred reaction mode is predicted to occur on the atom having the largest LUMO coefficient. Figure 15.2 shows that the orbital component shows preference for addition to the 4-position of acrolein (as a model for unsaturated carbonyl compounds in general), with the second most reactive position being C−2. The net charges, however, prefer position 2, as it is the most positive carbon. Experimentally, it is found that attack at the 4-position is usually favoured (especially with “soft” nucleophiles such as organocuprates), but attack at the 2-position is also observed (and may dominate with “hard” nucleophiles such as organolithium compounds). This is consistent with the reaction switching from being orbital controlled to charge controlled as the nucleophile becomes more ionic.

Similarly, the reaction of an electrophile will involve the HOMO of the reactant, i.e. the reaction should occur preferentially on the atom having the largest HOMO coefficient. The coefficients for furan shown in Figure 15.3 indicate that electrophilic substitution should preferentially occur at the 2-position, again in agreement with experimental results.

Consider now the reaction between butadiene and ethylene, where both 2+2 and 4+2 reaction modes are possible. The qualitative appearances of the butadiene HOMO and ethylene LUMO are given in Figure 15.4. The MO coefficients are given as $a$, $b$, and $c$, where $a > b > c$. 

![Figure 15.2 AM1 LUMO coefficients for acrolein with net charges in parenthesis](image)

![Figure 15.3 AM1 HOMO coefficients for furan](image)
For the 2+2 pathway the FMO sum becomes \((ab - ac)^2 = a(b - c)^2\) while for the 4+2 reaction it is \((ab + ab)^2 = a(2b)^2\). As \((2b)^2 > (b - c)^2\), it is clear that the 4+2 reaction has the largest stabilization, and therefore increases least in energy in the initial stages of the reaction (eq. (15.1), remembering that the steric repulsion will cause a net increase in energy). The 4+2 reaction should consequently have the lowest activation energy, and therefore occur more easily than the 2+2. This is indeed what is observed: the Diels–Alder reaction occurs readily but cyclobutane formation is not observed between non-polar dienes and dieneophiles.

The appearance of the difference in MO energies in the denominator in eq. (15.1) suggests that a smaller gap between the diene HOMO and dieneophile LUMO in a Diels–Alder reaction should lower the activation energy. If the diene is made more electron-rich (electron-donating substituents), or the dieneophile more electron-deficient (electron-withdrawing substituents), the reaction should proceed faster. This is indeed the observed trend. For the reaction between cyclopentadiene and cyanoethylenes (mono-, di-, tri- and tetra-substituted), the correlation is reasonably quantitative, as shown in Figure 15.5.²

This is of course a rather extreme example, as the reaction rates differ by \(-10^7\), and rate differences of over a factor of 100 are observed for quite similar HOMO–LUMO differences. For a more varied set of compounds where the reaction rates are more similar, the correlation is often quite poor.

FMO theory can also be used for explaining the stereochemistry of the Diels–Alder reaction, as can be illustrated by the reaction between 2-methylbutadiene and cyanoethylene. These may react to give two different products, the "para" and/or "meta" isomer.

The MO coefficients for the p-orbitals on the butadiene HOMO and ethylene LUMO (taken from AM1 calculations) are given in Figure 15.6. The FMO sum for the "para" isomer is \((0.594 \times 0.682 + 0.517 \times 0.552)^2 = 0.690\), while the sum for the "meta" isomer is \((0.594 \times 0.552 + 0.517 \times 0.682)^2 = 0.680\). FMO theory thus predicts that the "para" isomer should dominate, as is indeed observed (experimental ratio 70:30). If cyanoethylene is replaced by 1,1-dicyanoethylene, the LUMO coefficients change to 0.708 and −0.511. The corresponding "para" and "meta" FMO sums change to 0.685 and 0.670, i.e. a larger difference between the two isomers. This is again reflected in the experimental data, where the ratio is 91:9. The regiochemistry is thus determined by matching the two largest sets of coefficients and the two smaller sets, rather than making two sets of large/small.

FMO theory was developed at a time when detailed calculations of reaction paths were unfeasible. As many sophisticated computational models, and methods for actually locating the transition state, have become widespread, the use of FMO arguments for predicting reactivity has declined. The primary goal of computational chemistry, however, is not to provide numbers, but to provide understanding. As such, FMO
theory still forms a conceptual model that can be used for rationalizing trends without having to perform time-consuming calculations.

15.2 Concepts from Density Functional Theory

The success of FMO theory is not because the neglected terms in the second-order perturbation expansion (eq. (15.1)) are especially small; an actual calculation will reveal that they completely swamp the HOMO–LUMO contribution. The deeper reason is that the shapes of the HOMO and LUMO resemble features in the total electron density, which determines the reactivity. There are also other quantities derived from density functional theory that directly relate to the properties and reactivity of molecules, and these are discussed in this section. 6

A reaction will in general involve a change in the electron density, which may be quantified in terms of the Fukui function: 7

\[ f(r) = \frac{\partial \rho(r)}{\partial N_{\text{elec}}} \] (15.2)

The Fukui function indicates the change in the electron density at a given position when the number of electrons is changed. We may define two finite difference versions of the function, corresponding to addition or removal of an electron.

\[ f_{+}(r) = \rho_{n+1}(r) - \rho_{n}(r) \]

\[ f_{-}(r) = \rho_{n}(r) - \rho_{n-1}(r) \] (15.3)

The \( f_{+} \) function is expected to reflect the initial part of a nucleophilic reaction, and the \( f_{-} \) function an electrophilic reaction, i.e. the reaction will typically occur where the \( f_{+} \) function is large. 8 For radical reactions the appropriate function is an average of \( f_{+} \) and \( f_{-} \).

\[ f_{\pm}(r) = \frac{1}{2} (f_{+}(r) + f_{-}(r)) \] (15.4)

The change in the electron density for each atomic site can be quantified by using the change in the atomic charges, although this of course suffers from the usual problems of defining atomic charges, as discussed in Chapter 9. The \( f_{\pm} \) functions may also be written in terms of orbital contributions.

\[ f_{+}(r) = \phi_{\text{HOMO}}(r) + \sum_{i} \frac{\partial \phi_{i}(r)}{\partial N_{\text{elec}}} \]

\[ f_{-}(r) = \phi_{\text{LUMO}}(r) + \sum_{i} \frac{\partial \phi_{i}(r)}{\partial N_{\text{elec}}} \] (15.5)

In the frozen MO approximation the last terms are zero and the Fukui functions are given directly by the contributions from the HOMO and LUMO. The preferred site of attack is therefore at the atom(s) with the largest MO coefficients in the HOMO/LUMO, in exact agreement with FMO theory. The Fukui function(s) may be considered as the equivalent (or generalization) of FMO methods within density functional theory (Chapter 6).

In the Atoms In Molecules approach (Section 9.3), the Laplacian \( \nabla^{2} \) (trace of the second-derivative matrix with respect to the coordinates) of the electron density measures the local increase or decrease of electrons. Specifically, if \( \nabla^{2} \) is negative, it marks an area where the electron density is locally concentrated, and therefore susceptible to attack by an electrophile. Similarly, if \( \nabla^{2} \) is positive, it marks an area where the electron density is locally depleted, and therefore susceptible to attack by a nucleophile. It has in general been found that a map of negative values of \( \nabla^{2} \) resembles the shape of the HOMO, and a map of positive values of \( \nabla^{2} \) resembles the shape of the LUMO.

The fact that features in the total electron density are closely related to the shapes of the HOMO and LUMO provides a much better rationale than the perturbation derivation as to why FMO theory works as it does. It should be noted, however, that improvements in the wave function do not lead to better performance of the FMO method. Indeed, the use of MOs from semi-empirical methods usually works better than data from \textit{ab initio} wave functions. Furthermore, it should be kept in mind that only the HOMO orbital converges to a specific shape and energy as the basis set is improved in a \textit{ab initio} calculation; the LUMO is normally determined by the most diffuse functions in the basis. The Fukui functions, on the other hand, can be calculated for any type of wave function.

Besides the already mentioned Fukui function, there are a couple of other commonly used concepts that can be connected with density functional theory (Chapter 6). 9 The electronic chemical potential \( \mu \) is given as the first derivative of the energy with respect to the number of electrons, which in a finite difference version is given as the average of the ionization potential (IP) and electron affinity (EA). Except for a difference in sign, this is also the Mulliken definition of electronegativity \( \chi \).

\[ -\mu = \frac{\partial E}{\partial N_{\text{elec}}} = \frac{1}{2}(\text{IP} + \text{EA}) \] (15.6)

It should be noted that there are several other definitions of electronegativity, which do not necessarily agree on the ordering of the elements. 10

The second derivative of the energy with respect to the number of electrons is the hardness \( \eta \) (the inverse quantity \( \eta^{-1} \) is called the softness), which again may be approximated in terms of the ionization potential and electron affinity.

\[ \eta = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^{2} E}{\partial N_{\text{elec}}^{2}} = 4(\text{IP} - \text{EA}) \] (15.7)

The electrophilicity, which measures the total ability to attract electrons, is defined as in eq. (15.8). 11

\[ \omega = \chi^{2} \frac{(\text{IP} + \text{EA})^{2}}{4(\text{IP} - \text{EA})} \] (15.8)

A local version of the electrophilicity can be obtained by multiplying \( \omega \) with the relevant Fukui function. These concepts play an important role in the Hard and Soft Acid and Base (HSAB) principle, which states that hard acids prefer to react with hard bases, and vice versa. 12 By means of Koopmans’ theorem (Section 3.4) the hardness is
related to the HOMO–LUMO energy difference. A “hard” molecule thus has a large HOMO–LUMO gap, and is expected to be chemically unreactive, i.e. hardness is related to chemical stability. A small HOMO–LUMO gap, on the other hand, indicates a “soft” molecule, and from second-order perturbation theory it also follows that a small gap between occupied and unoccupied orbitals will give a large contribution to the polarizability (Section 10.6.1), i.e. softness is a measure of how easily the electron density can be distorted by external fields, for example generated by another molecule. In terms of the perturbation equation (15.1), a hard–hard interaction is primarily charge controlled, while a soft–soft interaction is orbital controlled. Both FMO and HSAB theories may be considered as being limiting cases of chemical reactivity described by the Fukui function.

15.3 Qualitative Molecular Orbital Theory

Frontier molecular orbital theory is closely related to various schemes of qualitative orbital theory where interactions between fragment MOs are considered. Ligand field theory, as commonly used in systems involving coordination to metal atoms, can be considered as a special case where only the d-orbitals on the metal and selected orbitals of the ligands are considered.

Two interacting orbitals will in general produce two new orbitals, having lower and higher energies than the non-interacting orbitals. The magnitude of the changes is determined by the orbital energy difference \( e_a - e_b \) and the overlap \( S_{ab} \). The overlap depends on the symmetries of the orbitals (orbitals of different symmetry have zero overlap), and the distance between them (the shorter the distance, the larger the overlap). The energies of the new orbitals can be calculated from the variational principle, and the qualitative result is shown in Figure 15.7.

\[
\Delta = \frac{|S_{ab}|}{|e_a - e_b|} \quad (15.9)
\]

There are two important features. The change in orbital energies is dependent on the magnitude of the overlap, \(|S_{ab}|\), and inversely proportional to the energy difference of the original orbitals, \( |e_a - e_b| \). Furthermore, the effect is largest for the highest energy orbital (antibonding combination), i.e. \( \Delta_1 > \Delta_2 \).

If the two initial orbitals contain one, two or three electrons, the interaction will lead to a lower energy, with the stabilization being largest for the case of two electrons (e.g. a filled orbital interacting with an empty orbital). If both initial orbitals are fully occupied, the interaction will be destabilizing, i.e. a steric type repulsion. By adapting a set of HOMO and LUMO orbitals for atomic or molecular fragments, the favourable interactions may be identified based on overlap and energy considerations. Qualitative MO theory may thus be considered as an intramolecular form of FMO theory, with suitably chosen fragments.

Consider for example the two conformations for propene shown in Figure 15.8: which should be the more stable?

By “chemical intuition”, the most important interaction is likely to be between the (filled) hydrogen s-orbitals and the (empty) \( \pi^* \)-orbital. The CH3 group as a fragment has C\(_3\)v symmetry, and the three proper (symmetry adapted) linear combinations of the s-orbitals, together with the antibonding \( \pi^* \)-orbital, are given in Figure 15.9. The \( \phi \) orbital is lowest in energy, while the \( \phi_1 \) and \( \phi_2 \) orbitals are degenerate in perfect C\(_3\)v symmetry.

The \( \phi_1 \) and \( \phi_2 \) orbitals have a different symmetry than the \( \pi^* \)-orbital and can consequently not interact (\( S = 0 \)). The interaction of the \( \phi \) orbital with the \( \pi^* \) system in the two conformations is shown in Figure 15.10.
The Woodward–Hoffmann Rules

15.4 Woodward–Hoffmann Rules

The Woodward–Hoffmann (W–H) rules are qualitative statements regarding the relative activation energies for two possible modes of reaction, which may have different stereochemical outcomes. The rules are derived from a consideration of the symmetry of the orbitals involved in the reaction. The rules are as follows:

1. Symmetry
   - The reaction occurs if the symmetry of the reactant orbitals is preserved and the symmetry of the product orbitals is preserved.
   - The reaction does not occur if the symmetry of the reactant orbitals is preserved but the symmetry of the product orbitals is not preserved.

2. Symmetry adaptation
   - The reaction occurs if the symmetry of the reactant orbitals is adapted to the symmetry of the product orbitals.
   - The reaction does not occur if the symmetry of the reactant orbitals is not adapted to the symmetry of the product orbitals.

3. Symmetry breaking
   - The reaction occurs if the symmetry of the reactant orbitals is broken and the symmetry of the product orbitals is broken.
   - The reaction does not occur if the symmetry of the reactant orbitals is broken but the symmetry of the product orbitals is not broken.

The W–H Rules are based on the concept of orbital symmetry and can be used to predict the stereochemical outcome of reactions. The rules are useful in predicting the stereochemical outcomes of reactions such as addition, elimination, and rearrangements.
The ground state wave function for the whole system (all four active and the remaining core and valence electrons) is symmetric with respect to both mirror planes, while the first excited state is... The presence of a reaction barrier due to symmetry conservation for the orbitals makes this a Woodward–Hoffmann forbidden reaction. The excited state, however, does not encounter a barrier and is therefore denoted an allowed reaction. The same conclusion may be reached directly from a consideration of the frontier orbitals. Formation of two new \( \sigma \)-bonds requires interaction of the HOMO of one fragment with the LUMO on the other. When the interaction is between orbital lobes on the same side (Suprafacial) of each fragment (2s + 2s), this leads to the picture shown in Figure 15.14.

It is clearly seen that the HOMO–LUMO interaction leads to the formation of one bonding and one antibonding orbital, i.e. this is not a favourable interaction. The FMO approach also suggests that the 2s + 2s reaction may be possible if it could occur with bond formation on opposite sides (Antarafacial) for one of the fragments. Although the 2s + 2s reaction is Woodward–Hoffmann allowed, it is sterically so hindered that thermal 2s + 2s reactions in general are not observed. Photochemical 2s + 2s reactions, however, are well known. The 4s + 2s reaction of a diene with a double bond can in a concerted and synchronous reaction be envisioned to occur with the preservation of \( C_2 \) symmetry. The corresponding orbital correlation diagram is shown in Figure 15.17.
electron configuration in the product, $(\sigma_1)^2(\sigma_2)^2(\pi_1)^2$. This is also shown by the corresponding state correlation diagram, Figure 15.18.

In this case, there is no energetic barrier due to unfavourable orbital correlation, although other factors lead to an activation energy larger than zero. The direct correlation of ground state configurations for the reactant and product indicates a (relatively) easy reaction, and is an allowed reaction. The lowest excited state for the reactant, however, does not correlate with the lowest excited product state, and the photochemical reaction is consequently forbidden.

The FMO approach again indicates that the $4s + 2s$ interaction should lead directly to formation of two new bonding $\sigma$-bonds, i.e. this is an allowed reaction.

The preference for a concerted $4s + 2s$ reaction is experimentally supported by observations that show that the stereochemistry of the diene and dieneophile is carried over to the product, for example a trans,trans-1,4-disubstituted diene results in the two substituents ending up in a cis configuration in the cyclohexene product.²⁰

The ring-closure of a diene to a cyclobutene can occur with rotation of the two termini in the same (Conrotatory) or opposite (Disrotatory) directions. For suitably substituted compounds, these two reaction modes lead to products with different stereochemistry.

The disrotatory path has $C_s$ symmetry during the whole reaction, while the conrotatory mode preserve $C_2$ symmetry. The orbital correlation diagrams for the two possible paths are shown as Figures 15.21 and 15.22.

It is seen that only the conrotatory path directly connects the reactant and product ground state configurations. Taking into account also the excited states leads to the state correlation diagram in Figure 15.23.

The conrotatory path is Woodward–Hoffmann allowed for a thermal reaction, while the corresponding photochemical reaction is predicted to occur in a disrotatory fashion.
The same conclusion may again be reached by considering only the HOMO orbital. For the conrotatory path the orbital interaction leads directly to a bonding orbital, while the orbital phases for the disrotatory motion lead to an antibonding orbital.
While the orbital and state diagrams can only be rigorously justified in the simple parent system where symmetry is present, the addition of substituents normally only alters the shape of the relevant orbitals. For example, in the [1,5]-hydrogen shift in 1,3-pentadiene, the Woodward–Hoffmann allowed reactions can be classified according to how many electrons are involved and whether the reaction occurs thermally or photochemically, as shown in Table 15.1.

### Table 15.1 Woodward–Hoffmann allowed reactions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reaction type</th>
<th>Number of electrons</th>
<th>Thermally allowed</th>
<th>Photochemically allowed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ring-closure</td>
<td>4n</td>
<td>Conrotatory</td>
<td>Disrotatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycloadditions</td>
<td>4n + 2</td>
<td>Supra–supra or antara–supra</td>
<td>Supra–supra or antara–antara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migrations</td>
<td>4n</td>
<td>Antara–retention or Supra–retention or supra–inversion</td>
<td>Antara–retention or supra–inversion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The state correlation diagrams give an indication of the minimum theoretical level necessary for describing a reaction. For allowed reactions, the reactant configurations smoothly transforms into the product ground states. Such reactions therefore require MCSCF type wave functions for a qualitative correct description. Achieving the proper geometry for a transition between the two surfaces is often the dynamical bottleneck, and a conical intersection may be considered the equivalent of a TS for a photochemical reaction. As conical intersections involve two energy surfaces, MCSCF-based methods are required and non-adiabatic coupling elements (Section 3.5) are important. Locating a geometry corresponding to a conical intersection for a multi-dimensional system may be done using constrained optimization techniques (Section 12.5).

In some cases, the product of a pericyclic reaction will itself be subject to a further pericyclic rearrangement. Such cascade reactions are often synthetically useful, as they
may form complicated products in a single step. Depending on the exact system, two pericyclic reactions may occur with an intermediate, or occur in a single kinetic step, but with a very asynchronous bond breaking/formations. M. T. Reetz has coined the name dyotropic reaction for two sigmatropic shifts occurring in tandem;\(^1\) while the term bipericyclic has been used in the more general case.\(^2\)

15.5 The Bell–Evans–Polanyi Principle/Hammond Postulate/Marcus Theory

The simpler the idea, the more names, could be the theme of this section.\(^3\) The overriding idea is simple: for similar reactions, the more exothermic (endothermic) reaction will have the lower (higher) activation energy. This was formulated independently by Bell, Evans and Polanyi (BEP) in the 1930s, and is commonly known as the BEP principle.\(^4\) The Hammond postulate relates the position of the transition structure to the exothermicity: for similar reactions, the more exothermic (endothermic) reaction will have the earlier (later) TS.\(^5\) Compared with FMO theory, which tries to estimate relative activation energies from the reactant properties, the BEP principle tries to estimate relative activation energies from product properties (reaction energies). The above qualitative statements have been put on a more quantitative footing by the Marcus equation. This equation was originally derived for electron transfer reactions,\(^6\) but it has since been shown that the same equation can be derived from a number of different assumptions, three of which will be illustrated below.

Let us define the activation energy for a (possible hypothetical) thermoneutral reaction as the intrinsic activation energy, \(\Delta E_0\). As seen from eq. (15.13), \(\Delta E_0\) is taken as a simple parabola with a “force constant” of \(a\). The energy of the product is also taken as a parabola with the same force constant, but offset by the reaction energy \(\Delta E_0\). The position of the TS \((x')\) is taken as the point where the two parabolas intersect, as shown in Figure 15.27.

![Figure 15.27: Transition structure as the intersection of two parabolas](image)

The TS position is calculated by equating the two energy expressions:

\[
E_{\text{reactant}} = a(x)^2
\]

\[
E_{\text{product}} = a(x-1)^2 + \Delta E_0
\]

\[
a(x')^2 = a(x'-1)^2 + \Delta E_0
\]

(15.12)

For a thermoneutral reaction (\(\Delta E_0 = 0\)) the TS is exactly halfway between the reactant and product (as expected), while it becomes earlier and earlier as the reaction becomes more and more exothermic (\(\Delta E_0\) negative). The activation energy is given in eq. (15.13).

\[
\Delta E^* = E(x') = \left(1 - \frac{\Delta E_0}{2a}\right)^2
\]

(15.13)

Let us define the activation energy for a (possible hypothetical) thermoneutral reaction as the intrinsic activation energy, \(\Delta E_0^*\). As seen from eq. (15.13), \(a = 4\Delta E_0^*\). The TS position and activation energy expressed in terms of \(\Delta E_0^*\) are given in eq. (15.14).

\[
x' = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{\Delta E_0}{8\Delta E_0^*}
\]

\[
\Delta E^* = \Delta E_0^* + \frac{\Delta E_0}{2} + \frac{\Delta E_0^3}{16\Delta E_0^*}
\]

(15.14)

The latter is, except for a couple of terms related to solvent reorganization, the Marcus equation. It should be noted that such curve-crossing models have been used in connection with VB methods to rationalize chemical reactivity and selectivity in a more general sense.\(^7\)

The central idea in the Marcus treatment is that the activation energy can be decomposed into a component characteristic of the reaction type, the intrinsic activation energy, and a correction due to the reaction being different from zero. Similar reactions should have similar intrinsic activation energies, and the Marcus equation obeys both the BEP principle and the Hammond postulate. Except for very exo- or endothermic reactions (or a very small \(\Delta E_0^*\), the last term in the Marcus equation is small, and it is seen that roughly half the reaction energy enters the activation energy. Note, however, that the activation energy is a parabolic function of the reaction energy. Thus for sufficiently exothermic reactions the equation predicts that the activation energy should increase as the reaction becomes more exothermic. The turnover occurs when \(\Delta E_0 = -4\Delta E_0^*\). Much research has gone into proving such an “inverted” region, but experiments with very exothermic reactions are difficult to perform.\(^8\)

An alternative way of deriving the Marcus equation is again to assume a reaction coordinate running from 0 to 1. The intrinsic activation energy is taken as a parabola centred at \(x = \frac{1}{2}\). The reaction energy is taken as progressing linearly along the reaction coordinate. Adding these two contributions, and evaluating the position of the TS
The Bell–Evans–Polanyi principle/Hammond postulate/Marcus theory

\[ \Delta E^0 = 142 \text{ kJ/mol} \]

\[ \Delta E^0 = 0 \text{ kJ/mol} \]

\[ \Delta E^0 = 142 \text{ kJ/mol} \]

\[ \Delta E^0 = 96 \text{ kJ/mol} \]

\[ \Delta E^0 = 297 \text{ kJ/mol} \]

\[ \Delta E^0 = 218 \text{ kJ/mol} \]

Figure 15.29 The Cope rearrangement and Dewar benzene ring-opening reaction

The Cope rearrangement and Dewar benzene ring-opening reaction

The Cope reaction is an example of a Woodward–Hoffmann allowed reaction ([3,3]-sigmatropic shift) while the ring-opening of Dewar benzene is a Woodward–Hoffmann forbidden reaction (the cyclobutene ring-opening must necessarily be disrotatory, otherwise the benzene product ends up with a trans double bond).

Why does a forbidden reaction have a lower activation energy than an allowed reaction? This is readily explained by the Marcus equation. The Cope reaction is thermoneutral (reactant and product are identical) and the activation energy is purely intrinsic, while the ring-opening is exothermic by 297 kJ/mol, and therefore has an intrinsic barrier of 218 kJ/mol. The “forbidden” reaction occurs only because it has a huge driving force in terms of a much more stable product, while the allowed reaction occurs even without a net energy gain.

The goal of understanding chemical reactivity is to be able to predict how the activation energy depends on properties of the reactant and product. Decomposing the activation energy into two terms, an intrinsic and a thermodynamic contribution, does not solve the problem. The reaction energy is relatively easy to obtain, from experiments, various theoretical methods or estimates based on additivity. But how does one estimate the intrinsic activation energy? It is purely a theoretical concept – the activation energy for a thermoneutral reaction. But most reactions are not thermoneutral, and there is no way of measuring such an intrinsic activation energy. For a series of “closely related” reactions it may be assumed to be constant, but the question then becomes: how closely related should reactions be?

Alternatively, it may be assumed that the intrinsic component can be taken as an average of the two corresponding identity reactions. Consider for example the S_{2} reaction of OH with CH_{3}Cl. The two identity reactions are OH + CH_{3}OH and Cl + CH_{3}Cl. These two reactions are thermoneutral and their activation energies, which are purely intrinsic, can in principle be measured by isotopic substitution (for example 35Cl + CH_{3}Cl → CH_{3}35Cl + 37Cl). From the reaction energy for the OH + CH_{3}Cl reaction, and the assumption that the intrinsic barrier is the average of the two identity reactions, the activation energy can be calculated. An example of the accuracy of this procedure for the series of S_{2} reactions OH + CH_{3}X is given in Table 15.2.
therefore more a conceptual tool for explaining trends than for deriving quantitative result.

### 15.6 More O’Ferrall–Jencks Diagrams

The BEP/Hammond/Marcus treatment only considers changes due to energy differences between the reactant and product, i.e. changes in the TS position along the reaction coordinate. It is often useful also to include changes that may occur in a direction perpendicular to the reaction coordinate. Such two-dimensional diagrams are associated with the names of More O’Ferrall and Jencks (MOJ diagrams).

Consider for example the Cope rearrangement of 1,5-hexadiene. Since the reaction is degenerate the TS will have $D_{2h}$ symmetry (the lowest energy TS has a conformation resembling a chair-like cyclohexane). It is, however, not clear how strong the forming and breaking C—C bonds are at the TS if they both are essentially full C—C bonds, the reaction may be described as bond formation followed by bond breaking. The TS therefore has the character of being a 1,4-biradical, as illustrated by path $B$ in Figure 15.30. Alternatively, the C—C bonds may be very weak at the TS, corresponding to a situation where bond breaking occurs before bond formation, and the TS can be described as two weakly interacting allyl radicals (path $C$). The intermediate situation, where both bonds are roughly half formed/broken can be described as having a delocalized structure similar to benzene, i.e. an “aromatic” type TS (path $A$).

In such MOJ diagrams the $x$- and $y$-coordinates are normally taken to be bond orders (Section 9.1) or $(1 -$ bond order) for the breaking and forming bonds, such that the coordinates run from 0 to 1. A third axis corresponding to the energy is implied, but rarely drawn.

At the TS, the energy along the reaction path is a maximum, while it is a minimum in the perpendicular direction(s). A one-dimensional cut through the $(0,0)$ and $(1,1)$ corners for path $A$ in Figure 15.30 thus corresponds to Figure 15.28. A similar cut through the $(0,1)$ and $(1,0)$ corners will display a normal (as opposed to inverted) parabolic behaviour, with the TS being at the minimum on the curve. The whole energy surface corresponding to Figure 15.29 will have the qualitative appearance as shown in Figure 15.31.

![Figure 15.30](image-url)

**Figure 15.30** MOJ diagram for the Cope rearrangement of 1,5-hexadiene

In such MOJ diagrams the $x$- and $y$-coordinates are normally taken to be bond orders (Section 9.1) or $(1 -$ bond order) for the breaking and forming bonds, such that the coordinates run from 0 to 1. A third axis corresponding to the energy is implied, but rarely drawn.

At the TS, the energy along the reaction path is a maximum, while it is a minimum in the perpendicular direction(s). A one-dimensional cut through the $(0,0)$ and $(1,1)$ corners for path $A$ in Figure 15.30 thus corresponds to Figure 15.28. A similar cut through the $(0,1)$ and $(1,0)$ corners will display a normal (as opposed to inverted) parabolic behaviour, with the TS being at the minimum on the curve. The whole energy surface corresponding to Figure 15.29 will have the qualitative appearance as shown in Figure 15.31.

![Figure 15.31](image-url)

**Figure 15.31** MOJ diagram corresponding to Figure 15.30 with the energy as the vertical axis

There is good evidence that the Cope reaction in the parent 1,5-hexadiene has an “aromatic” type TS, corresponding to path $A$ in Figure 15.30, i.e. a “central” or “diagonal” reaction path. The importance of MOJ diagrams is that they allow a qualitative prediction of changes in the TS structure for a series of similar reactions. The addition of substituents that stabilize the product relative to the reactant corresponds to a lowering of the $(1,1)$ corner, thereby moving the TS closer to the $(0,0)$ corner, i.e. towards the reactant. The one-dimensional BEP/Hammond/Marcus treatment thus corresponds to changes along the $(0,0)$–$(1,1)$ diagonal.

Substituents that do not change the overall reaction energy may still have an influence on the TS geometry. Consider for example 2,5-diphenyl-1,5-hexadiene. The reaction is still thermoneutral but the phenyl groups will preferentially stabilize the 1,4-biradical structure, i.e. lower the energy of the $(1,0)$ corner. From Figure 15.31 it is clear that this will lead to a TS that is shifted towards this corner, i.e. moving the reaction from path $A$ towards $B$ in Figure 15.30. Similarly, substituents that preferentially stabilize the bis-allyl radical structure (such as 1,4-diphenyl-1,5-hexadiene) will perturb the reaction towards path $C$, since the $(0,1)$ corner is lowered in energy relative to the other corners.

From such MOJ diagrams it can be inferred that changes in the system that alter the relative energy along the reaction diagonal (lower-left to upper-right) imply changes in the TS in the opposite direction. Changes that alter the relative energy perpendicular to the reaction diagonal (upper-left to lower-right) imply changes in the TS in the same direction as the perturbation.
The structures in the (1,0) and (0,1) corners are not necessarily stable species; they may correspond to hypothetical structures. In the Cope rearrangement, it appears that the reaction only involves a single TS, independent of the number and nature of substituents. The reaction path may change from A → B depending on the system, but there are no intermediates along the reaction coordinate.

In other cases, one or both of the perpendicular corners may correspond to a minimum on the potential energy surface, and the reaction mechanism can change from being a one-step reaction to two-step. An example of this would be elimination reactions. The x-axis in this case corresponds to the breaking bond between carbon and hydrogen, while the y-axis is the breaking bond between the other carbon and the leaving group.

**Figure 15.32** MOJ diagram for elimination reactions

An E2 type reaction has simultaneous breaking of the C—H and C—L bonds while forming the B—H bond, and corresponds to the diagonal path A in Figure 15.32. Path C involves initial loss of the leaving group to form a carbocation (upper-left corner), followed by loss of H+ (which is picked up by the base), i.e. this corresponds to an E1 type mechanism involving two TS’s and an intermediate. Path B, on the other hand, involves formation of a carbanion, followed by elimination of the leaving group in a second step, i.e. an E1cb mechanism. Substituents that stabilize the carbanion thus shift the reaction from an E2 to an E1 type mechanism, while anionic stabilizing substituents will shift the reaction towards an E1cb path.

In principle MOJ diagrams can be extended to more dimensions, for example by also including the B—H bond order in the above elimination reaction, but this is rarely done, not least because of the problems of illustrating more than two dimensions.

**References**


16 Mathematical Methods

Computational chemistry relies on computers to solve the complicated mathematical equations describing the physics behind the models. The language for deriving and describing these models is mathematics, and this chapter summarizes some of the commonly used mathematical concepts and techniques used in computational chemistry.

16.1 Numbers, Vectors, Matrices and Tensors

Some physical quantities, such as the total molecular mass or charge, can be specified by a single number, referring to the magnitude of the quantity in a given set of units. The mathematical term for such a number is a scalar. Other quantities require a set of numbers, for example three scalars for specifying the position of a particle in a coordinate system. A coordinate system is defined by the origin ("zero point"), the directions of the coordinate axes, and the units along the axes. Two common examples are Cartesian \( [x,y,z] \) and spherical polar \([r,\theta,\phi]\) systems. The same point in space can be specified either by the Cartesian \( x,y,z \) coordinates \([0.500, 0.866, 1.000]\) or by the spherical polar \( r,\theta,\phi \) coordinates \([2, 30, 60]\) with angles measured in degrees.

The notation for such vectors is often generalized to simply \( x = \{x, y, z\} \), where \( x \) and \( y \) are referred to as the real and imaginary parts of \( z \). Alternatively, the complex number can be associated with polar coordinates, i.e. the distance \( r \) from the origin and the angle \( \theta \) relative to the real axis.

\[
\begin{align*}
\{v_x, v_y, v_z\} &= \left\{\frac{\partial x}{\partial t}, \frac{\partial y}{\partial t}, \frac{\partial z}{\partial t}\right\} \\
\text{where } N \text{ now refers to the total number of elements, i.e. equal to 3N in the above notation.}
\end{align*}
\]

A complex number \( z \) can be interpreted as a 2-vector in an \( xy \)-coordinate system, \( z = x + iy \), where \( i \) is the symbol for \( \sqrt{-1} \) and \( x \) and \( y \) are real numbers. Here \( x + iy \) or equivalently \( z = r \cos(\theta) + i \sin(\theta) \).

The complex conjugate \( z^* \) of a complex number \( z \) is denoted by \( \bar{z} \) and is obtained by changing the sign of the imaginary part, i.e. \( z^* = x - iy \) or equivalently \( z^* = \bar{z} \).

The concept of complex numbers can be generalized to hypercomplex numbers, with the next level being a 4-vector, called a quaternion, i.e. \( q = q_0 + iq_1 + jq_2 + kq_3 \), with \( q_0, q_1, q_2, q_3 \) being real numbers. A quaternion has a real part, \( q_0 \), and the three imaginary components \( q_1, q_2, q_3 \). The latter can be considered as a vector in a three-dimensional space, where each of the unit vectors have the property \( i^2 = j^2 = k^2 = -1 \). As one moves up in dimensions in this generalization, common mathematical laws gradually get lost. Quaternions, for example, do not obey the commutative law \( (q, q') \neq (q', q) \), while octonions (8-vectors) in addition do not obey the associative law \( (q, q', q'') \neq (q', q, q'') \).

Quaternions are encountered for example in relativistic (4-component) quantum mechanics, and they also form a more natural basis for parameterizing the rotation of a three-dimensional structure, rather than the traditional three Euler angles. The latter involve trigonometric functions that are both computationally expensive to evaluate and display singularities. Furthermore, the quaternion formulation treats all the coordinate axes as equivalent, while the Euler parameterization makes the \( z \)-axis a special direction.

Vectors can also arise from mathematical operations on functions of coordinates, for example the gradient being the first derivative of an energy function.

\[
\{g_1, g_2, \ldots\} = \left\{\frac{\partial E}{\partial x_1}, \frac{\partial E}{\partial x_2}, \ldots\right\}
\]

In such cases, it is implicit that the first gradient element is the derivative with respect to the first variable, etc.
The second derivative of the energy is an ordered two-dimensional set of numbers, called a matrix.

\[
H_{ij} = \left( \begin{array}{ccc}
\frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial x_1^2} & \frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial x_1 \partial x_2} & \cdots \\
\frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial x_2 \partial x_1} & \frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial x_2^2} & \cdots \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots
\end{array} \right)
\]

(16.3)

The third derivative of the energy is an ordered three-dimensional set of numbers, called a tensor, which can be arranged in a cube. Corresponding higher order derivatives can be thought of as ordered sets of numbers in "hypercubes", called N-order tensors for a hypercube of dimension N.

Ordered sets of numbers may collectively be called tensors, with a matrix being a second-order tensor, and a vector a first-order tensor. Since tensors of order higher than two are relatively rare, the terms vector and matrix are more commonly used. Sometimes it is also convenient to consider a vector as a 1 × N or N × 1 matrix, and a scalar as a 1 × 1 matrix.

The multiplication of matrices, however, is somewhat different. In standard matrix multiplications, the ijth element in the product is formed by multiplying the elements of the ith row with the elements of the jth column, and adding all the terms. For the multiplication of two 2 × 2 matrices the result is given in eq. (16.6).

\[
\left( \begin{array}{cc}
a_{11} & a_{12} \\
a_{21} & a_{22}
\end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{cc}
b_{11} & b_{12} \\
b_{21} & b_{22}
\end{array} \right) = \left( \begin{array}{cc}
a_{11}b_{11} + a_{12}b_{21} & a_{11}b_{12} + a_{12}b_{22} \\
a_{21}b_{11} + a_{22}b_{21} & a_{21}b_{12} + a_{22}b_{22}
\end{array} \right)
\]

(16.6)

Note that this means that matrix multiplication is not necessarily commutative.

\[
\left( \begin{array}{cc}
a_{11} & a_{12} \\
a_{21} & a_{22}
\end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{cc}
b_{11} & b_{12} \\
b_{21} & b_{22}
\end{array} \right) \neq \left( \begin{array}{cc}
a_{11}b_{11} + a_{12}b_{21} & a_{11}b_{12} + a_{12}b_{22} \\
a_{21}b_{11} + a_{22}b_{21} & a_{21}b_{12} + a_{22}b_{22}
\end{array} \right)
\]

(16.7)

This is perhaps most easily seen by multiplying two rectangular matrices. The result of multiplying a 2 × 2 matrix with a 2 × 3 matrix is a 2 × 3 matrix.

\[
\left( \begin{array}{cc}
a_{11} & a_{12} \\
a_{21} & a_{22}
\end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{ccc}
b_{11} & b_{12} & b_{13} \\
b_{21} & b_{22} & b_{23}
\end{array} \right) = \left( \begin{array}{ccc}
a_{11}b_{11} + a_{12}b_{21} & a_{11}b_{12} + a_{12}b_{22} & a_{11}b_{13} + a_{12}b_{23} \\
a_{21}b_{11} + a_{22}b_{21} & a_{21}b_{12} + a_{22}b_{22} & a_{21}b_{13} + a_{22}b_{23}
\end{array} \right)
\]

(16.8)

While the result of multiplying a 3 × 2 matrix with 2 × 3 matrix is a 3 × 3 matrix.

\[
\left( \begin{array}{ccc}
b_{11} & b_{12} & b_{13} \\
b_{21} & b_{22} & b_{23}
\end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{ccc}
a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\
a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23}
\end{array} \right) = \left( \begin{array}{ccc}
a_{11}b_{11} + a_{12}b_{21} + a_{13}b_{31} & a_{11}b_{12} + a_{12}b_{22} + a_{13}b_{32} & a_{11}b_{13} + a_{12}b_{23} + a_{13}b_{33} \\
a_{21}b_{11} + a_{22}b_{21} + a_{23}b_{31} & a_{21}b_{12} + a_{22}b_{22} + a_{23}b_{32} & a_{21}b_{13} + a_{22}b_{23} + a_{23}b_{33}
\end{array} \right)
\]

(16.9)

Even for square matrices, however, the matrix product AB is not necessarily equal to BA.

In some cases the matrix elements are multiplied together element by element, which is called an entrywise product, and denoted with a “dot” between the two matrices.

\[
\left( \begin{array}{ccc}
a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots \\
a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots \\
& & \ddots
\end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{ccc}
b_{11} & b_{12} & \cdots \\
b_{21} & b_{22} & \cdots \\
& & \ddots
\end{array} \right) \neq \left( \begin{array}{ccc}
a_{11}b_{11} & a_{11}b_{12} & \cdots \\
a_{21}b_{21} & a_{21}b_{22} & \cdots \\
& & \ddots
\end{array} \right)
\]

(16.10)

For vectors, which can be considered 1 × N or N × 1 matrices, the result of multiplying a 1 × N matrix with an N × 1 matrix is a 1 × 1 matrix, or a scalar. This is called an inner or dot product.

\[
a \cdot b = (a_1 \cdot a_2) \ldots (b_1 \cdot b_2) = (a_1b_1 + a_2b_2) + \ldots
\]

(16.11)

The length (or norm) of a vector follows directly from the interpretation of a vector as a directional line from the origin to a point in space, and is defined as the square root of the dot product of the vector with itself. If the vector components are complex numbers the transposition is replaced by the adjoint instead.

\[
|a| = \sqrt{a^*a} = |a| + |a|^* + \ldots
\]

(16.12)
The “physical” interpretation of a dot product of two vectors is related to the angle between them, specifically for two vectors of unit length, the dot product is the cosine of the angle.

\[ \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{b}| \cos \alpha \]  
(16.13)

A dot product of +1 means that the two (unit) vectors are aligned, a value of −1 means that they are aligned, but pointing in opposite directions, while a dot product of 0 means that the two vectors are orthogonal.

The opposite of a dot product is multiplication of an \( N \times 1 \) matrix with a \( 1 \times N \) matrix to give an \( N \times N \) matrix, and is called an outer product.

\[ \mathbf{a} \otimes \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ a_3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ b_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 b_1 & a_1 b_2 & a_1 b_3 \\ a_2 b_1 & a_2 b_2 & a_2 b_3 \\ a_3 b_1 & a_3 b_2 & a_3 b_3 \end{pmatrix} \]  
(16.14)

The inner and outer products of two vectors produce a scalar and a matrix, respectively. Two 3-vectors may also be multiplied together to generate a new 3-vector, a procedure called a vector or cross product, with the result given by eq. (16.15).

\[ \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \begin{vmatrix} 
\mathbf{a} & \mathbf{b} \\
\mathbf{b} & \mathbf{a} 
\end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 
\mathbf{a}_1 & \mathbf{b}_1 \\
\mathbf{a}_2 & \mathbf{b}_2 \\
\mathbf{a}_3 & \mathbf{b}_3 
\end{vmatrix} 
= \mathbf{a}_1 \mathbf{b}_2 - \mathbf{a}_2 \mathbf{b}_1 
\]  
(16.15)

The vector product gives a vector perpendicular to both of the original vectors with a length of \( |\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{b}| \sin \alpha \) (compare with eq. (16.13)), and is therefore zero if the two original vectors are aligned. It follows trivially that \( \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0} \) for any vector \( \mathbf{a} \), and that \( \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = -\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a} \).

A matrix determinant is denoted \( |\mathbf{A}| \) and is given explicitly for the 2 × 2 and 3 × 3 cases in eqs (16.16) and (16.17).

\[ |\mathbf{A}| = \begin{vmatrix} 
\mathbf{a}_1 & \mathbf{a}_2 \\
\mathbf{a}_3 & \mathbf{a}_4 
\end{vmatrix} = \mathbf{a}_1 \mathbf{a}_4 - \mathbf{a}_2 \mathbf{a}_3 \]  
(16.16)

\[ |\mathbf{A}| = \begin{vmatrix} 
\mathbf{a}_1 & \mathbf{a}_2 & \mathbf{a}_3 \\
\mathbf{a}_4 & \mathbf{a}_5 & \mathbf{a}_6 \\
\mathbf{a}_7 & \mathbf{a}_8 & \mathbf{a}_9 
\end{vmatrix} = \mathbf{a}_1 \mathbf{a}_5 \mathbf{a}_9 + \mathbf{a}_2 \mathbf{a}_6 \mathbf{a}_3 + \mathbf{a}_3 \mathbf{a}_4 \mathbf{a}_7 - \mathbf{a}_7 \mathbf{a}_4 \mathbf{a}_2 - \mathbf{a}_8 \mathbf{a}_3 \mathbf{a}_1 - \mathbf{a}_9 \mathbf{a}_5 \mathbf{a}_6 \]  
(16.17)

The determinant of larger matrices is similarly given as a sum of \( N \) terms, each being the product of \( N \) elements. A convenient procedure for the evaluation consists of decomposing the determinant according to a row (or column), with each element being multiplied with a sub-determinant formed by removing the elements of the corresponding rows and columns, and a factor \((-1)^{i+j}\).

\[ |\mathbf{A}| = \begin{vmatrix} 
\mathbf{a}_1 & \mathbf{a}_2 & \mathbf{a}_3 \\
\mathbf{a}_4 & \mathbf{a}_5 & \mathbf{a}_6 \\
\mathbf{a}_7 & \mathbf{a}_8 & \mathbf{a}_9 
\end{vmatrix} = \mathbf{a}_1 \mathbf{d}_{12} \mathbf{d}_{13} - \mathbf{a}_2 \mathbf{d}_{21} \mathbf{d}_{13} + \mathbf{a}_3 \mathbf{d}_{31} \mathbf{d}_{12} \]  
(16.18)

This procedure can be applied recursively until only 1 × 1 determinants remain.

Only square matrices have determinants, and those with determinants equal to \( e^0 \) (Figure 16.2 with \( r = 1 \)) are called unitary. A unitary matrix, where all the elements are real (i.e. not complex), is called orthogonal and obviously has a determinant equal to +1 or −1. We will in general use the unitary notation, although in most cases the matrices are actually orthogonal.

Determinants have a number of important properties:

1. Interchanging two rows or columns in a matrix changes the sign of the determinant. This property is used for parameterizing wave functions in terms of Slater determinants, as the wave function antisymmetry is thereby automatically fulfilled (Section 3.2).

2. Adding a row (or a fraction thereof) to another row leaves the determinant unchanged, and similarly for columns. This allows for example representation of a wave function either in terms of canonical or localized molecular orbitals (Section 9.4).

3. If two rows or columns are identical except for a multiplicative constant, the determinant is zero. This is easily seen, since one of these rows/columns can be made into a zero-vector by subtraction of the two, and expansion according to this zero row/column by eq. (16.18) will give zero. Such matrices may arise owing to linear dependencies of the rows or columns.

Division by matrices is done formally by multiplying with the inverse of a matrix, where the inverse is defined such that multiplication of a matrix with its inverse produces a unit matrix.

\[ \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A} \mathbf{A}^{-1} = \mathbf{I} \]  
(16.19)

The elements of a matrix inverse are given by the elements of the matrix itself, and the inverse of the matrix determinant. Specifically, the \( j \)th element in the \( \mathbf{A}^{-1} \) matrix is given as the inverse of \( |\mathbf{A}| \) times the determinant of the sub-matrix corresponding to removing the \( j \)th row and \( j \)th column, and a factor \((-1)^{(i+j)}\). Note the transposition, the \( j \)th element in the inverse matrix is formed from the sub-matrix corresponding to the \( j \)th element in the original matrix. For a 3 × 3 matrix, this is exemplified by the \( b_3 \) elements in eq. (16.20).

\[ \mathbf{A} = \begin{vmatrix} 
\mathbf{a}_1 & \mathbf{a}_2 & \mathbf{a}_3 \\
\mathbf{a}_4 & \mathbf{a}_5 & \mathbf{a}_6 \\
\mathbf{a}_7 & \mathbf{a}_8 & \mathbf{a}_9 
\end{vmatrix} \quad \mathbf{A}^{-1} = \begin{vmatrix} 
\mathbf{b}_1 & \mathbf{b}_2 & \mathbf{b}_3 \\
\mathbf{b}_4 & \mathbf{b}_5 & \mathbf{b}_6 \\
\mathbf{b}_7 & \mathbf{b}_8 & \mathbf{b}_9 
\end{vmatrix} \quad \mathbf{A}^{-1} = |\mathbf{A}| \frac{1}{|\mathbf{A}|} \mathbf{A}^{-1} \]  
(16.20)

It thus follows that only square matrices with determinants different from zero have an inverse matrix. Rectangular matrices can be defined to have a generalized inverse...
matrix. Such generalized inverse matrices, and more complicated matrix algebra, such as calculating functions of matrices, are considered in the next section. It should be noted that for orthogonal matrices the inverse is simply the transposed matrix, $A^\top = A$. for unitary matrices the transposition must be accompanied by a complex conjugation also, i.e. $A^\dagger = A^\top$. The names and properties of some special matrices are shown in Table 16.1.

**Table 16.1** Some special matrices and their names

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Properties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complex conjugate</td>
<td>$A^\ast$, complex conjugate all elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transposed</td>
<td>$A^\top$, interchange elements $ij$ and $ji$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjoint</td>
<td>$A^\dagger$, interchange and complex conjugate elements $ij$ and $ji$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symmetric</td>
<td>$A^\dagger = A$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antisymmetric</td>
<td>$A^\dagger = -A$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hermitian</td>
<td>$A^\dagger = A$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-Hermitian</td>
<td>$A^\dagger = -A$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inverse</td>
<td>$A A^\dagger = 1$, real elements, $A^\dagger = A^\top$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthogonal</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Matrices arise for example in solving a system of linear equations, where the formal solution can be obtained by multiplication with $A^{-1}$ on both sides:

$$
\begin{align*}
ax_1 + a_2x_2 + \ldots + a_nx_n &= b_1 \\
ax_1 + a_2x_1 + \ldots + a_nx_n &= b_2 \\
\vdots & \quad \vdots \\
ax_1 + a_2x_2 + \ldots + a_nx_n &= b_n \\
\end{align*}
$$

$$
Ax = b \\
x = A^{-1}b
$$

(16.21)

It thus follows that a solution only exists if $A^{-1}$ exists, i.e. if $|A|$ is non-zero. In actual calculations, it is rare that matrix determinants are exactly zero. If $|A|$ is very small, the solution vector $x$ becomes sensitive to small details in the original $A$ matrix. Such systems are called *ill-conditioned*, and should be treated by *single value decomposition*, as described in the next section.

For the special case of the right-hand side (b-vector) in eq. (16.21) being zero, only the trivial solution $x = 0$ exists if $A^{-1}$ exists. A non-trivial solution is therefore only possible if $A^{-1}$ does not exist, which is equivalent to the condition that $|A|$ is zero. Linear dependence also, i.e. $|A| = 0$, is thus called a *condition* for a non-trivial solution, and the resulting **x**-vector is obtained as a parametric solution of one or more variables. These parameters can be fixed for example by requiring that the **x**-vector(s) are normalized and mutually orthogonal.

### 16.2 Change of Coordinate System

In many cases, it is possible to simplify a problem by choosing a particular coordinate system. It is therefore important to be able to describe how vectors and matrices change when switching from one coordinate system to another.

Some coordinate transformations are *non-linear*, such as converting from a Cartesian to a spherical polar system. Here the $r, \theta, \phi$ coordinates are related to the $x, y, z$ coordinates by square root and trigonometric functions, as shown in Figure 16.1. Other coordinate transformations are *linear*, with the new coordinates given as linear combinations of the old ones. A linear transformation can be described as a *rotation* of the coordinate system.

![Rotation of a coordinate system](image)

For the $2 \times 2$ case, the new coordinates $x'$ and $y'$ are related to the original $x$ and $y$ coordinates by means of a $2 \times 2$ matrix containing cosines and sines of the rotational angle $\omega$.

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
x' \\
y'
\end{bmatrix} =
\begin{bmatrix}
\cos \omega & \sin \omega \\
-\sin \omega & \cos \omega
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
x \\
y
\end{bmatrix} =
$$

(16.22)

The rotation matrix is a unitary (orthogonal) matrix $U$, since the determinant is equal to 1 ($\cos^2 \omega + \sin^2 \omega = 1$). The significance of a unitary matrix is that it describes a rotation of the coordinate system without changing the length of the coordinate axes. A unitary matrix with a determinant of $-1$ describes a rotation of the coordinate system, followed by inverting the direction of the coordinate axis, i.e. an improper rotation in the language of point group symmetry.

The connection between the primed and unprimed coordinate systems is given by the unitary matrix in eq. (16.22), and can be written as in eq. (16.23).

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
x' \\
y'
\end{bmatrix} =
U
\begin{bmatrix}
x \\
y
\end{bmatrix}
$$

(16.23)

The inverse operation $U^{-1}$ corresponds to rotation with the angle $-\omega$, and back-transforms the primed coordinates to the unprimed ones.

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
x \\
y
\end{bmatrix} =
U^{-1}
\begin{bmatrix}
x' \\
y'
\end{bmatrix}
$$

(16.24)

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
x \\
y
\end{bmatrix} =
U^{-1}
\begin{bmatrix}
x' \\
y'
\end{bmatrix}
$$

(16.25)

It is easily verified that the matrix product $U U^{-1}$ gives a $2 \times 2$ unit matrix.

Consider now a (multi-dimensional) linear function $f$ defined by the action of a matrix $A$ on a vector $x$.

$$
f = Ax
$$

(16.25)
An $N \times N$ Hermitian (or real symmetric) matrix can always be brought to a diagonal form by a multi-dimensional rotation of the coordinate system, and there are efficient standard computational procedures for diagonalizing matrices. The simplest method consists of an iterative series of $2 \times 2$ rotations as in eq. (16.28) which reduces the off-diagonal elements to zero. The rotational matrix $U$ contains elements corresponding to products of cosines and sines of rotational angles. The elements of the $A$ matrix in diagonal form ($\epsilon$) are called eigenvalues, and the columns of the unitary rotation matrix are called eigenvectors. In matrix notation the diagonalization can be written as in eq. (16.31).

$$\epsilon = U A U^{-1}$$

A Hermitian matrix will always have real eigenvalues and orthogonal eigenvectors. Matrix diagonalizations play an important role in many areas of computational chemistry, and scientific computations in general, since they correspond to selecting a coordinate system where the variables are (approximately) independent of each other. Furthermore, the magnitude of the eigenvalues indicates the variation along that particular direction. For applications with many variables, it may be possible to describe a significant fraction of the whole variation by taking only a few selected eigenvector directions into account, and this forms the basis for principal component analysis, as discussed in Section 17.4.3.

It can be shown that a matrix determinant is independent of a change in the coordinate system, and in the diagonal representation the determinant is simply the product of the eigenvalues. A non-zero determinant is thus equivalent to all the eigenvalues being different from zero. Furthermore, the trace of a matrix, defined as the sum of the diagonal elements, is also invariant to a change of the coordinate system, as can be verified for a $2 \times 2$ case from eq. (16.28). In the diagonal representation the trace is given by the sum of the eigenvalues.

An alternative way of introducing matrix eigenvalues and eigenvectors is to require non-zero solutions to eq. (16.32).

$$AX = \lambda X$$

This is a set of linear equations in the form of eq. (16.21) with the right-hand side being zero, and a non-trivial solution therefore only exists when the determinant is zero.

$$|A - \lambda I| = 0$$

Expansion of the determinant (16.33) according to eq. (16.18) produces an $N$th-order polynomial in $\lambda$, which can be solved to give $N$ roots (eigenvalues). If some of these are identical, they are called degenerate eigenvalues. For each eigenvalue eq. (16.32) can be solved to produce the corresponding eigenvector. In the non-degenerate case (all $\epsilon_i$ being different) the one free parameter can be fixed by normalization. For degenerate eigenvectors, the normalization condition must be augmented with a mutual orthogonality condition (Section 16.4) in order to fix all the free parameters.

In the coordinate system ($x'$) where the $A'$ matrix is diagonal, it is easy to see that eq. (16.33) holds since the $(A' - \lambda I)$ matrix has at least one column consisting of only
the best solution in a least squares sense for an over-determined system of linear equations, as for example arises in statistical applications. Consider for example a system of equations analogous to eq. (16.21), but with more \( b \) solution elements than \( x \) variables \((n > m)\).

\[
\begin{align*}
a_1 x_1 + a_2 x_2 + \ldots + a_m x_m &= b_1 \\
a_{21} x_1 + a_{22} x_2 + \ldots + a_{mm} x_m &= b_2 \\
& \vdots \vdots \vdots \vdots \vdots \vdots \\
a_{n1} x_1 + a_{n2} x_2 + \ldots + a_{nm} x_m &= b_n
\end{align*}
\]

(16.35)

Multiplication from the left by \( A' \) and by the inverse of \( A A' \) leads to the formal solution, i.e. \((A A')^{-1} A b\)

\[
x = (A A')^{-1} A' b
\]

16.2.1 Examples of changing the coordinate system

From the “separability” theorem (Section 1.6.3) it follows that if an operator (e.g. the Hamiltonian) depending on \( N \) coordinates can be written as a sum of operators that only depend on one coordinate, the corresponding \( N \) coordinate wave function can be written as a product of one-coordinate functions, and the total energy as a sum of energies.

\[
\begin{align*}
H(x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots) \Psi(x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots) &= E_a \Psi(x_1) \\
H(x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots) &= \sum_i h_i(x_i) \\
h_i(x_i) \phi(x_i) &= \epsilon_i \phi(x_i) \\
E_{tot} &= \sum_i \epsilon_i \\
\Psi(x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots) &= \prod_i \phi(x_i)
\end{align*}
\]

(16.36)

Instead of solving one equation with \( N \) variables, the problem is transformed into solving \( N \) equations with only one variable. When the differential operator is transformed into a matrix representation, the separation is equivalent to finding a coordinate system where the representation is diagonal.

Consider a matrix \( A \) expressed in a coordinate system \( \{x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots, x_M\} \). The coordinate axes are the \( x \) vectors, and these may be simple Cartesian axes, or one-variable functions, or many-variable functions. The matrix \( A \) is typically defined by an operator working on the coordinates. Some examples are:

1. The force constant matrix in Cartesian coordinates (Section 13.5.3)
2. The Fock matrix in basis functions (atomic orbitals, Section 3.5)
3. The CI matrix in Slater determinants (Section 4.2)
Finding the coordinates where these matrices are diagonal corresponds to finding:

1. The vibrational normal coordinates
2. The molecular orbitals
3. The state coefficients, i.e. CI wave function(s).

The coordinate axes are usually orthonormal, but this is not a requirement, since they can be orthogonalized by the methods in Section 16.4.

### 16.2.2 Vibrational normal coordinates

The potential energy is approximated by a second-order Taylor expansion around the stationary geometry \( \mathbf{x}_0 \).

\[
V(\mathbf{x}) = V(\mathbf{x}_0) + \left( \frac{dV}{d\mathbf{x}} \right)^T (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0) + \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0)^T \left( \frac{d^2V}{d\mathbf{x}^2} \right) (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0) \tag{16.37}
\]

The energy for the expansion point, \( V(\mathbf{x}_0) \), may be chosen as zero, and the first derivative is zero since \( \mathbf{x}_0 \) is a stationary point.

\[
V(\Delta \mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{2} \Delta \mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{F} \Delta \mathbf{x} \tag{16.38}
\]

Here \( \mathbf{F} \) is a \( 3N \times 3N \) (force constant) matrix containing the second derivatives of the energy with respect to the coordinates.

The nuclear Schrödinger equation for an \( N \) atom system is given by eq. (16.39).

\[
\left[ -\sum_{j=1}^{3N} \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial q_j^2} \right) + \frac{1}{2} \Delta \mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{F} \Delta \mathbf{x} \right] \psi_{\text{exc}} = E_{\text{exc}} \psi_{\text{exc}} \tag{16.39}
\]

Eq. (16.39) is first transformed to mass-dependent coordinates by a \( \mathbf{G} \) matrix containing the inverse square root of atomic masses (note that atomic, not nuclear, masses are used, which is in line with the Born–Oppenheimer approximation that the electrons follow the nuclei).

\[
y_i = \sqrt{\frac{m_i}{\Delta \mathbf{x}_i}}, \quad \frac{\partial^2}{\partial q_j^2} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{m_i \Delta \mathbf{x}_i}} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y_i^2}, \quad G_{ij} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{m_i m_j}},
\]

\[
\left[ -\sum_{j=1}^{3N} \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y_j^2} \right) + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{y}^T (\mathbf{F} \mathbf{G} \mathbf{y}) \right] \psi_{\text{exc}} = E_{\text{exc}} \psi_{\text{exc}} \tag{16.40}
\]

A unitary transformation is then introduced that diagonalizes the \( \mathbf{F} \mathbf{G} \) matrix, yielding eigenvalues \( \epsilon_i \) and eigenvectors \( \mathbf{q}_i \). The kinetic energy operator is still diagonal in these coordinates.

In the \( \mathbf{q} \)-coordinate system, the vibrational normal coordinates, the \( 3N \times 3N \) dimensional Schrödinger equation can be separated into \( 3N \times 3N \) one-dimensional Schrödinger equations, which are just in the form of a standard harmonic oscillator, with the solutions being Hermite polynomials in the \( \mathbf{q} \)-coordinates. The eigenvectors of the \( \mathbf{F} \mathbf{G} \) matrix are the (mass-weighted) vibrational normal coordinates, and the eigenvalues \( \epsilon_i \) are related to the vibrational frequencies as shown in eq. (16.42) (analogous to eq. (13.31)).

\[
v_i = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sqrt{\epsilon_i} \tag{16.42}
\]

When this procedure is carried out in Cartesian coordinates, there should be six (five for a linear molecule) eigenvalues of the \( \mathbf{F} \mathbf{G} \) matrix being exactly zero, corresponding to the translational and rotational modes. In real calculations, however, these values are not exactly zero. The three translational modes usually have “frequencies” very close to zero, typically less than 0.01 cm\(^{-1}\). This is due to the fact that numerical operations are only carried out with a finite precision, and the accumulations of errors will typically give inaccuracies in the eigenvalues, even if the geometry is optimized to a gradient of exactly zero, again due to numerical considerations. Typically, the geometry optimization is considered converged if the root mean square (RMS) gradient is less than ~10\(^{-4}\) au, corresponding to the energy being converged to ~10\(^{-5}\)–10\(^{-6}\) au. The residual gradient shows up as vibrational frequencies for the rotations of the above magnitude.

If there are real frequencies of the same magnitude as the “rotational frequencies”, mixing may occur and result in inaccurate values for the “true” vibrations. For this reason, the translational and rotational modes of freedom are normally removed by projection (Section 16.4) from the force constant matrix before diagonalization.

If the stationary point is a minimum on the energy surface, the eigenvalues of the \( \mathbf{F} \mathbf{G} \) matrix being exactly zero, corresponding to the translational and rotational modes. In real calculations, however, these values are not exactly zero. The three translational modes usually have “frequencies” very close to zero, typically less than 0.01 cm\(^{-1}\). This is due to the fact that numerical operations are only carried out with a finite precision, and the accumulations of errors will typically give inaccuracies in the eigenvalues, again due to numerical considerations. Typically, the geometry optimization is considered converged if the root mean square (RMS) gradient is less than ~10\(^{-4}\) au, corresponding to the energy being converged to ~10\(^{-5}\)–10\(^{-6}\) au. The residual gradient shows up as vibrational frequencies for the rotations of the above magnitude.

If there are real frequencies of the same magnitude as the “rotational frequencies”, mixing may occur and result in inaccurate values for the “true” vibrations. For this reason, the translational and rotational modes of freedom are normally removed by projection (Section 16.4) from the force constant matrix before diagonalization.

If the stationary point is a minimum on the energy surface, the eigenvalues of the \( \mathbf{F} \) and \( \mathbf{G} \) matrices are all positive. If, however, the stationary point is a transition state (TS), one (and only one) of the eigenvalues is negative. This corresponds to the energy being a maximum in one direction and a minimum in all other directions. The “frequency” for the “vibration” along the eigenvector with a negative eigenvalue will formally be imaginary, as it is the square root of a negative number (eq. (16.42)). The corresponding eigenvector is the direction leading downhill from the TS towards the reactant and product. At the TS, the eigenvector for the imaginary frequency is the
reaction coordinate. The whole reaction path may be calculated by sliding downhill to each side from the TS. This can be performed by taking a small step along the TS eigenvector, calculating the gradient and taking a small step in the negative gradient direction. The negative of the gradient always points downhill, and by taking a sufficiently large number of such steps an energy minimum is eventually reached. This is equivalent to a steepest descent minimization, but more efficient methods are available (see Section 12.8 for details). The reaction path in mass-weighted coordinates is called the Intrinsic Reaction Coordinate (IRC).

The vibrational Hamiltonian is completely separable within the harmonic approximation, with the vibrational energy being a sum of individual energy terms and the nuclear wave function being a product of harmonic oscillator functions (Hermite polynomial in the normal coordinates). When anharmonic terms are included in the potential, the Hamiltonian is no longer separable, and the resulting nuclear Schrödinger equation can be solved by techniques completely analogous to those used for solving the electronic problem. The vibrational SCF method is analogous to the electronic Hartree–Fock method, with the nuclear harmonic oscillator functions playing the same role as the orbitals in electronic structure theory. Corrections beyond the mean-field approximation can be added by configuration interaction, perturbation theory or coupled cluster methods.

It should be noted that the force constant matrix can be calculated at any geometry, but the transformation to normal coordinates is only valid at a stationary point, i.e. where the first derivative is zero. At a non-stationary geometry, a set of generalized frequencies may be defined by removing the gradient direction from the force constant matrix (for example by projection techniques, Section 16.4) before transformation to normal coordinates.

### 16.2.3 Energy of a Slater determinant

The variational problem is to minimize the energy of a single Slater determinant by choosing suitable values for the molecular orbital (MO) coefficients, under the constraint that the MOs remain orthonormal. With \( \Phi \) being an MO written as a linear combination of the basis functions (atomic orbitals) \( \chi \), this leads to a set of secular equations, \( F \) being the Fock matrix, \( S \) the overlap matrix and \( C \) containing the coefficients (Section 3.5).

\[
\Phi = \sum_{\alpha=1}^{N} c_{\alpha} \chi_{\alpha}
\]

\[
F_{\alpha\beta} = \langle \chi_{\alpha} | H | \chi_{\beta} \rangle
\]

\[
S_{\alpha\beta} = \langle \chi_{\alpha} | \chi_{\beta} \rangle
\]

\[
FC = SC\epsilon
\]

The basis functions (coordinate system) in this case are non-orthogonal, with the overlap elements contained in the \( S \) matrix. By multiplying from the left by \( S^{-1} \) and inserting a unit matrix written in the form \( S^{-1} S \), eq. (16.43) may be reformulated as eq. (16.44).

The latter equation is now in a standard form for determining the eigenvalues of the \( F \) matrix. The eigenvectors contained in \( C \) can then be back-transformed to the original coordinate system \( (C = S^{-1}C) \). This is an example of a symmetrical orthogonalization (Section 16.4) of the initial coordinate system, the basis functions \( \chi \). Solving eq. (16.45) corresponds to rotating the original space of basis functions into one of molecular orbitals where the Fock matrix is diagonal.

### 16.2.4 Energy of a CI wave function

The variational problem may again be formulated as a secular equation, where the coordinate axes are many-electron functions (Slater determinants) \( \Phi \), which are orthogonal (Section 4.2).

\[
\Psi_{ci} = \sum_{\alpha=1}^{N} \Phi_{\alpha}
\]

\[
H_{ci} = \langle \Phi_{ci} | H | \Phi_{ci} \rangle
\]

\[
H_{ci} = E_{ci}
\]

The matrix contains the coefficients of the CI wave function. This problem may again be considered as selecting a basis where the Hamiltonian operator is diagonal (eq. (4.6) and Figure 4.5). In the initial coordinate system, the Hamiltonian matrix will have many off-diagonal elements, but it can be diagonalized by a suitable unitary transformation. The diagonal elements are energies of many-electron CI wave functions, being approximations to the ground and exited states. The corresponding eigenvectors contain the expansion coefficients \( a_{i} \).

### 16.2.5 Computational considerations

Finally, a few practical considerations. The time required for diagonalizing a matrix grows as the cube of the size of the matrix, and the amount of computer memory necessary for storing the matrix grows as the square of the size. Diagonalizing matrices up to \(-100 \times 100\) takes insignificant amounts of time, unless there are extraordinarily many such matrices. Matrices up to \(-1000 \times 1000\) pose no particular problems, although some consideration should be made as to whether the time required for diagonalization is significant relative to other operations. Matrices larger than this require consideration. Just storing all the elements in a \( 10000 \times 10000 \) matrix takes \(-1 \) GB of memory (or disk space) on a computer. Determining all eigenvalues and eigenvectors of such a matrix takes a long time. For large-scale problems in quantum chemistry, however, one is usually not interested in all the eigenvalues and eigenvectors. In solving the CI matrix equation, for example, typically only the lowest eigenvalue and eigenvector is of interest, since this is the ground state energy and wave function. Large-scale diagonalizations are therefore normally solved by special iterative schemes, which extract a few selected roots and eigenvectors.
A function is a recipe for producing a scalar from another set of scalars, for example calculating the energy $E$ from a set of (nuclear) coordinates $x$.

\[ E(x) : x \rightarrow E \]  
(16.46)

A functional is a recipe for producing a scalar from a function, for example calculating the exchange–correlation energy $E_{xc}$ from an electron density $\rho$ depending on a set of (electronic) coordinates $x$.

\[ E_{xc}[\rho(x)] : \rho \rightarrow E_{xc} \]  
(16.47)

An operator is a recipe for producing a function from another function, for example the kinetic energy operator acting on a wave function. The operator in this case consists of differentiating the function twice with respect to the coordinates, adding the results and dividing by twice the particle mass.

\[ T^\text{V}(x) = T^\text{V}(x, y, z) \]  
\[ T = \frac{1}{2m} \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} \right) \]  
(16.48)

A superoperator is a recipe for producing an operator from another operator. This level of abstraction is rarely used, but is for example employed in some formulations of propagator theory (Section 10.9).

\[ O(h[f(x)]) \]  
(16.49)

In the abstract function (or operator) space, often called a Hilbert space, it is possible to consider the functions (or operators) as vectors. The bra–ket notation is defined as in eq. (16.50).

\[ \langle f | g \rangle \]  
\[ = \int f^*(x)g(x)dx \]  
(16.51)

The equivalent of a vector dot product is defined as the integral of the product of the two functions.

\[ \langle f | g \rangle = \int f^*(x)g(x)dx \]  
(16.52)

The bracket notation can also be used in connection with functions and operators, as in the example in eq. (16.53).

\[ \langle f | O | g \rangle = \int f^*(x)O(g(x))dx \]  
(16.53)

Operator algebra shares the characteristic with matrix algebra; indeed, matrices can be considered as representations of operators in a given set of functions (coordinate system).

Most operators in computational chemistry are linear.

\[ O(f + g) = Of + Og \]  
\[ O(f) = Of \]  
(16.54)

Operators are associative, but not necessarily commutative.

\[ O(PQ) = (OP)Q \]  
\[ OP = PO \]  
(16.55)

The commutator of two operators is denoted with square brackets and defined as in eq. (16.56).

\[ [O, P] = OP - PO \]  
(16.56)

Two operators are said to commute when eq. (16.56) is zero.

Operator eigenvalues and eigenfunctions are defined analogously to eq. (16.32).

\[ Of = cf \]  
(16.57)

### 16.3.1 Differential operators

Differential operators, which describe the first- and higher order variations of functions, represent an important class of operators in computational chemistry. For a simple one-dimensional function, the first derivative is given by the normal rules for differentiation.

\[ f(x) = x^2 \Rightarrow \frac{df}{dx} = 2x \]  
(16.58)

For a multi-dimensional scalar function (i.e. each point in space is associated with a number), the first derivative is a vector containing all the partial derivatives. The corresponding operator is called the gradient and denoted with $\nabla$.

\[ f(x, y, z) = x + y^2 + z^2 + xy + xz \]  
\[ \nabla f(x, y, z) = \left[ \frac{df}{dx} \frac{df}{dy} \frac{df}{dz} \right] = [1 + y + z \ 2y + x \ 3z^2 + x] \]  
(16.59)

The gradient vector points in the direction where the function increases most.

Two choices are possible for defining the first derivative of a vector function (i.e. each point in space is associated with a vector). The divergence is denoted with $\nabla$ and produces a scalar.
16.4 Normalization, Orthogonalization and Projection

The vectors (functions) of a coordinate system may in some cases be given naturally by the problem, and these are not always normalized or orthogonal. For computational purposes, however, it is often advantageous to work in an orthonormal coordinate system. We first note that normalization is trivially obtained by simply scaling each vector by the inverse of its length.

\[
\|\mathbf{x}\| = \sqrt{\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{x}}
\]

The orthogonalization of a set of non-orthogonal vectors can be done in many ways, which produces a vector. The two most commonly used are Gram–Schmidt and symmetrical orthogonalization. The Gram–Schmidt procedure corresponds to sequentially removing the component of all previous vectors, and it does not depend on the order in which the remaining vectors are orthogonalized, although the total space spanned will of course be the same.

A symmetrical orthogonalization corresponds to a transformation that has the property \( X S X^T = X \), where \( X \) denotes all the \( x \)-coordinate vectors and \( S \) contains the overlap elements. One such transformation is given by the inverse square root of the overlap matrix, which is used in solving the self-consistent field equations in Hartree–Fock and Kohn–Sham theories, and for performing the Löwdin population analysis (Section 9.1).

Alternatively, a canonical orthogonalization can be performed by using the unitary matrix obtained by diagonalizing the overlap matrix and weighting by the inverse square root of the eigenvalues.

In multi-dimensional coordinate systems it may often be advantageous to work in a subset of the full coordinate system. The component of a function \( f \) along a specific (unit) coordinate vector \( \mathbf{x}_i \) is given by the projection.

\[
f_k = \langle f | \mathbf{x}_i \rangle
\]

For a matrix representation of an operator, \( A \), the projection onto the \( \mathbf{x}_i \) subspace is given by pre- and post-multiplying with a \( Q_i \) matrix defined as the outer vector product of \( \mathbf{x}_i \) or the function equivalent in a ket-bra notation.
The reverse process, removing the $x_k$ subspace, is done by projecting the $x_k$ subspace direction out by the complementary matrix $P_k$, with $I$ being a unit matrix.

Projection onto smaller subspaces can be done similarly by adding more vectors to the projection matrix. For the case of removing the translational and rotational degrees of freedom from the vibrational normal coordinates, for example, the (normalized) vector in eq. (16.70) describes a translation in the $x$-direction.

The superscript $t$ indicates that $t$ is a row vector. The $T_x$ matrix in eq. (16.71) removes the direction corresponding to translation in the $x$-direction.

Extending this to include vectors for all three translational and rotational modes gives a projection matrix for removing the six (five) translational and rotational degrees of freedom.

The $r$-vectors are derived from the atomic coordinates and principal axes of inertia determined by diagonalization of the matrix of inertia (eq. (13.27)). By forming the matrix product $P\sum_i P$, the translation and rotational directions are removed from the force constant matrix, and consequently the six (five) trivial vibrations become exactly zero (within the numerical accuracy of the machine).

The advantage is that insertion of a resolution of the identity can allow the computational problem to be separated into two less complicated problems. An example is the occurrence of three-electron integrals in the R12 methods for including electron correlation (Section 4.11), where insertion of a resolution of the identity allows the three-electron integrals to be written as a product of two-electron integrals, which are significantly easier to handle. The technique is also used in methods such as Hartree–Fock, density functional theory and second-order perturbation theory, where the four-index two-electron integrals can be approximated by three- and two-index integrals instead, leading to significant computational savings.

16.5 Differential Equations

Many of the fundamental equations in physics (and science in general) are formulated as differential equations. Typically, the desired mathematical function is known to obey some relationship in terms of its first and/or second derivatives. The task is to solve this differential equation to find the function itself. A complete treatment of the solution of differential equations is beyond the scope of this book, and only a simplified introduction is given here. Furthermore, we will only discuss solutions of differential equations with one variable. In most cases the physical problem gives rise to a differential equation involving many variables, but prior to solution these can often be (approximately) decoupled by separation of the variables, as discussed in Section 1.6.

16.5.1 Simple first-order differential equations

The simplest case is where the first derivative of the unknown function $f$ is equal to the value of the variable $x$ itself times a constant $c$.

$$\frac{df}{dx} = cx$$

(16.74)

The equation can be solved formally by moving $dx$ to the right-hand side and integrating.

$$\int df = c \int x dx$$

(16.75)

The integral of $df$ is $f$ itself, while the integral of $x dx$ is $\frac{1}{2}x^2$, except that any constant $a$ can be added. This is completely general: any first-order differential equation will give one additional integration constant that will have to be determined by some other means, for example from knowing the functional value at some point. That the found solution indeed is a solution to the differential equation can be verified by differentiation.
16.5.2 Less simple first-order differential equations

Differential functions where the right-hand side depends only on the variable are relatively simple. A slightly more difficult problem arises when the right-hand side depends on the function itself.

\[
\frac{df}{dx} = cf
\]

The task is now to find a function that upon differentiation gives the same function, except for a multiplicative constant. Formally it can be solved as in eq. (16.77), by separating the variables and integrating.

\[
\int f^{-1} df = c \int dx \\
\ln(f) = cx + a \\
f = e^{cx+a} = e^{c}e^{ax} \\
f = Ae^{ax}
\]

The solution is an exponential function where the integration constant can be written as a multiplicative factor \(A\). One may again verify that the solution indeed satisfies the original differential equation by differentiation.

16.5.3 Simple second-order differential equations

A second-order differential equation involves the second derivative of the function.

\[
\frac{d^2 f}{dx^2} = cf
\]

Since the second derivative may be written as two consecutive differentiations, it can formally be solved by applying the above techniques twice. The first integration gives the same solution as in eq. (16.75), with an integration constant \(a_1\).

\[
\frac{d^2 f}{dx^2} = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{df}{dx}\right) = cx \\
\frac{df}{dx} = c \int dx \\
\frac{df}{dx} = \frac{1}{2}cx^2 + a_1
\]

The second integration is now analogous to a simple first-order differential equation.

\[
\frac{df}{dx} = \frac{1}{2}cx^2 + a_1 \\
\int df = \frac{1}{2} \int x^2 dx + a_1 \int dx \\
f = \frac{1}{6}cx^3 + a_1x + a_2
\]

Solving the second-order differential equation produces two integration constants, which must be assigned based on knowledge of the function at two points.

16.5.4 Less simple second-order differential equations

Analogously to first-order differential equations, second-order differential equations may have the function itself on the right-hand side, as for example in eq. (16.81).

\[
\frac{d^2 f}{dx^2} = cf
\]

Another example is when the right-hand side involves both the function and its first derivative.

\[
\frac{d^2 f}{dx^2} = cf + c_1 \frac{df}{dx}
\]

The right-hand side may also involve both the unknown function \(f\) and another known function of the variable, such as \(x^2\).

\[
\frac{d^2 f}{dx^2} = cf + c_1 x^2
\]

Equations of this type are representative of the Schrödinger equation, although in this case it is often written in a slightly different form with the kinetic energy operator plus the potential energy on the left-hand side, and with the \(c_1\) constant written as an energy \(\epsilon\).

\[
\frac{d^2 f}{dx^2} + c_1 x^2 = \epsilon f
\]

Eq. (16.84) for example arises for a harmonic oscillator, where the potential energy depends on the square of the variable.

The task in these cases is to find a function that upon differentiation twice gives some combination of the same function, its derivative and variable. Such differential equations cannot be solved by the above “separation of variables” technique. A detailed discussion of how to solve second-order differential equations is beyond the scope of this book, but we will consider two special cases that often arise in computational chemistry.

16.5.5 Second-order differential equations depending on the function itself

A second-order differential equation with the function itself on the right-hand side times a positive constant is for example involved in solving the radial part of the Schrödinger equation for the hydrogen atom.

\[
\frac{d^2 f}{dx^2} = cf
\]
538  MATHEMATICAL METHODS

16.6.1 Taylor expansion

The idea in a Taylor expansion is to approximate the unknown function by a polynomial centred at an expansion point \( x_0 \), typically at or near the “centre” of the variable of interest. The coefficients of an \( N \)th-order polynomial are determined by requiring that the first \( N \) derivatives match those of the unknown function at the expansion point.

For a one-dimensional case this can be written as in eq. (16.91).

\[
f(x) = f(x_0) + \frac{1}{1!} \frac{d}{dx} f(x_0) (x - x_0) + \frac{1}{2!} \frac{d^2}{dx^2} f(x_0) (x - x_0)^2 + \ldots
\]

For a many-dimensional function, the corresponding second-order expansion can be written as in eq. (16.92).

\[
f(x) = f(x_0) + g(x - x_0) + \frac{1}{2} h(x - x_0)^2 + \ldots
\]

Here \( g \) is a transposed vector (gradient) containing all the partial first derivatives, and \( H \) is the (Hessian) matrix containing the partial second derivatives. In many cases, the expansion point \( x_0 \) is a stationary point for the real function, making the first derivative disappear, and the zeroth-order term can be removed by a shift of the origin.

\[
f(x) = \frac{1}{2} k_1 (x - x_0)^2 + \frac{1}{3} k_2 (x - x_0)^3 + \ldots
\]

A Taylor expansion is an approximation to the real function by a polynomial terminated at order \( N \). For a given (fixed) \( N \), the Taylor expansion becomes a better approximation as the variable \( x \) approaches \( x_0 \). For a fixed point \( x \) at a given distance from \( x_0 \), the approximation can be improved by including more terms in the polynomial. Except for the case where the real function is a polynomial, however, the Taylor expansion will always be an approximation. Furthermore, as one moves away from the expansion point, the rate of convergence slows down, i.e. more and more terms are
required to reach a given accuracy. At some point the expansion may become divergent, i.e. even inclusion of all terms up to infinite order does not lead to a well-defined value, and this point is called the radius of convergence. It is determined by the distance from the expansion point to the nearest point (which may be in the complex plane) where the function has a singularity. A Taylor expansion of the function $\ln(1+x)$ around $x=0$, for example, has a convergence radius of 1, as the logarithm function is not defined for $x=-1$. Attempting to approximate $\ln(1+x)$ by a Taylor expansion for $x$-values near $-1$ or $1$ will thus require inclusion of a very large number of terms, and will not converge if $x \geq 1$.

A specific example of a Taylor expansion is the molecular energy as a function of the nuclear coordinates. The real energy function is quite complex, but for describing a stable molecule at sufficiently low temperatures, only the functional form near the equilibrium geometry is required. Terminating the expansion at second order corresponds to modelling the nuclear motion by harmonic vibrations, while higher order terms introduce anharmonic corrections.

For illustration, we will consider the Morse potential in reduced units.

$$y_{\text{Morse}} = (1 - e^{-(x-1)})^2$$  \hfill (16.94)

Figure 16.6 shows the second-, third- and fourth-order Taylor approximations to the Morse potential.

Approximating the real function by a second-order polynomial forms the basis for the Newton–Raphson optimization techniques described in Section 12.2.

Figure 16.6 Taylor approximations to the Morse potential

### 16.6.2 Basis set expansion

An alternative way of modelling an unknown function is to write it as a linear combination of a set of known functions, often called a basis set. The basis functions may or may not be orthogonal.

$$f(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{M} c_i \varphi_i(x)$$  \hfill (16.95)

This corresponds to describing the function $f$ in an $M$-dimensional space of the basis functions $\varphi_i$. For a fixed basis set size $M$, only the components of $f$ that lie within this space can be described, and $f$ is therefore approximated. As the size of the basis set $M$ is increased, the approximation becomes better since more and more components of $f$ can be described. If the basis set has the property of being complete, the function $f$ can be described to any desired accuracy, provided that a sufficient number of functions are included. The expansion coefficients $c_i$ are often determined either by variational or perturbational methods. For the expansion of the molecular orbitals in a Hartree–Fock wave function, for example, the coefficients are determined by requiring the total energy to be a minimum.

The basis set expansion can be illustrated by using polynomials as basis functions for reproducing the Morse potential in eq. (16.94), i.e. the approximating function is given by eq. (16.96).

$$f(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{M} a_i (x-1)^i$$  \hfill (16.96)

The fitting coefficients $a_i$ can be determined by requiring that the integrated difference in a certain range $\left[a, b\right]$ is a minimum.

$$\text{ErrF} = \int_{a}^{b} (y_{\text{Morse}} - f(x))^2 \, dx$$  \hfill (16.97)

Taking the range to be either $[0.5, 2.0]$ or $[0.2, 2.5]$ produces the fits for a second-, third- and fourth-order polynomial shown in Figure 16.7.

Note that the polynomial no longer has the same minimum as the Morse potential but provides a smaller average error over the fitting range than the corresponding Taylor polynomial. The Taylor expansion provides an exact fit at the expansion point, which rapidly deteriorates as the variable moves away from the reference point, while the basis set expansion provides a rather uniform accuracy over the fitting range, at the price of sacrificing local accuracy.

### 16.7 Fourier and Laplace Transformations

Transforming functions between different coordinate systems can often simplify the description. In some cases, it may also be advantageous to switch between different representations of a function. A function in real space, for example, can be transformed into a reciprocal space, where the coordinate axes have units of inverse length.
Similarly, a function defined in time may be transformed into a representation of inverse time, or frequency. Such interconversions can be done by Fourier transformations. The Fourier transform \( g(k) \) of a function \( f(r) \) is defined as in eq. (16.98).

\[
g(k) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(r)e^{-ikr}dr
\]  
(16.98)

The inverse transformation is given as in eq. (16.99).

\[
f(r) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(k)e^{+ikr}dk
\]  
(16.99)

The factor of \( 2\pi \) can also be included as the square root in both the forward and reverse transformation or included in the complex exponent.

While the integral form of the Fourier transform is useful in analytical work, the computational implementation is often done by a discrete representation of the function(s) on a grid, in which case the integrals are replaced by a sum over grid points.

\[
g(k_n) = \sum_{n=1}^{N_g} f(r_n)e^{-i2\pi kn/N}
\]  
(16.100)

In a straightforward implementation of the discrete Fourier transform, the computational time increases as the square of the number of grid points. However, the number of grid points is an integer power of two, i.e. \( N_{\text{grid}} = 2^m \); the Fourier transform can be done recursively, and is called Fast Fourier Transform (FFT). The FFT involves (only) a computational effort proportional to \( N_{\text{grid}}\ln N_{\text{grid}} \), which is a substantial reduction relative to the general case of \( N_{\text{grid}}^2 \) for large values of \( N_{\text{grid}} \).

The inverse orbital energy differences in the MP2 method, for example, can be rewritten as a sum over the auxiliary variable \( r \), and a sufficient accuracy can often be obtained by including only a few points in the sum.\(^4\)

### 16.8 Surfaces

A one-dimensional function \( f(x) \) can be visualized by plotting the functional value against the variable \( x \). A two-dimensional function \( f(x,y) \) can similarly be visualized by plotting the functional value against the variables \( x \) and \( y \). However, since plotting devices (paper or an electronic screen) are inherently two-dimensional, the functional value must be plotted in a pseudo-three-dimensional fashion, with the three-dimensional object being imagined by the viewer’s brain. Functions with more than two variables cannot readily be visualized.

Functions in computational chemistry typically depend on many variables, often several hundreds, thousands or millions. For analysis purposes, it is possible to visualize the behaviour of such functions in a reduced variable space, i.e. keeping some (most) of the variables constant. Figure 16.8 shows the value of the acrolein LUMO (lowest unoccupied molecular orbital) in a two-dimensional cut 1 Å above the molecular plane.\(^5\) The magnitude and sign of the orbital is plotted along the third perpendicular dimension.

\[
g(k) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(r)e^{-ikr}dr
\]  
(16.101)

The Laplace transform is defined as in eq. (16.101), where the integral can again be approximated as a finite sum in practical applications.

Figure 16.7 Approximations to the Morse potential by expansion in a polynomial basis set; vertical lines indicate the range used for the fitting.

\[g(k)\]

Figure 16.8 Representation of the acrolein LUMO orbital.
An alternative way of visualizing multi-variable functions is to condense or contract some of the variables. An electronic wave function, for example, is a multi-variable function, depending on $3N$ electron coordinates. For an independent-particle model, such as Hartree–Fock or density functional theory, the total (determinantal) wave function is built from $N$ orbitals, each depending on three coordinates.

$$\Phi_{HF\text{ or } DFT} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \begin{vmatrix} \phi(1) & \phi_x(1) & \cdots & \phi_N(1) \\ \phi(2) & \phi_x(2) & \cdots & \phi_N(2) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \phi(N) & \phi_x(N) & \cdots & \phi_N(N) \end{vmatrix}$$

(16.102)

The electron density can be obtained by integrating the coordinates for $N-1$ electrons, giving a function depending on only three coordinates.

$$\rho(x, y, z) = \int \Phi^2(x, y, z, x_1, y_1, z_1, \ldots, x_N) \, dx_1 \, dy_1 \, \ldots \, dz_N$$

(16.103)

Functions of three variables can be visualized by generating a surface in the three-dimensional space corresponding to a constant value of the function, e.g. $\rho(x, y, z) = constant$. Such surfaces can be plotted, again using the viewer's brain for generating the illusion of a three-dimensional object. The full three-dimensional figure can be visualized by plotting surfaces for different values. Figure 16.9 shows the total electron density of cyclohexane, plotted for decreasing density values. The scales of the seven plots are the same, i.e. the sizes of the surfaces are directly comparable.

The first box corresponds to $\rho = 0.50$, and only the core electrons for the carbon atoms are visible. For $\rho = 0.32$ the hydrogens also appear; and bonds can be recognized for $\rho = 0.20$. Further reduction in the electron density level used for generating the surface obscures the bonding information, and for $\rho = 0.001$ there is little information about the underlying molecular structure left. A surface generated by a constant value of the electron density defines the size and shape of a molecule, but the exact size and shape clearly depend on the value chosen. It can be noted that an isosurface value of 0.001 has often been taken to represent a van der Waals type surface.

More information can be added to surface plots by colour-coding. Orbitals, for example, have a sign associated with the overall shape, which can be visualized by adding two different colors or greyscale to the surface corresponding to a constant (numerical) value of the orbital. Figure 16.10 shows the acrolein LUMO in a grey-coded surface representation, which can be compared with the two-dimensional plot shown in Figure 16.8.

![Grey-coded surface representation of the acrolein LUMO](image)

Other properties have a continuous range of values, not just a sign. An example is the electrostatic potential, which by itself is a function of three coordinates. The combined information of the molecular shape and the value of the electrostatic potential can be visualized by colour-coding the value of the electrostatic potential onto a surface corresponding to a constant value of the electron density. Figure 16.11 shows the electrostatic potential for the acrolein molecule, although the greyscale does not provide the level of detail available in a colour-coding.

![Electrostatic potential superimposed on a surface corresponding to a fixed value of the electron density for acrolein](image)
References

17 Statistics and QSAR

17.1 Introduction
An essential component of calculations is to calibrate new methods, and to use the results of calculations to predict or rationalize the outcome of experiments. Both of these types of investigation compare two types of data and the interest is in characterizing how well one set of data can represent or predict the other. Unfortunately, one or both sets of data usually contain "noise", and it may be difficult to decide whether a poor correlation is due to noisy data or to a fundamental lack of connection. Statistics is a tool for quantifying such relationships. We will start with some philosophical considerations and move into elementary statistical measures, before embarking on more advanced tools.

The connection between reality and the outcome of a calculation can be illustrated as shown in Figure 17.1.

Figure 17.1 Relationship between Model and Reality

A specific example for "reality" could be the (experimental) atomization energy of a molecule, defined as the energy required to separate a molecule into atoms, which is equivalent to the total binding energy. The atomization energy is closely related to the heat of formation, differing only by the zero point reference state and neglect of vibrational effects. For the atomization energy the zero point for the energy scale is the isolated atoms, while for the heat of formation it is the elements in their most stable form (e.g. \( \text{H}_2 \) and \( \text{N}_2 \)). Since the dissociation energies for the reference molecules can also be measured, the atomization energy is an experimental observable quantity.

It is important to realize that each element in Figure 17.1 contains errors, and these can be either systematic or random. A systematic error is one due either to an...
11.2 Elementary Statistical Measures

Statistics is a tool for characterizing a large amount of data by a few key quantities and may therefore also be considered as information compression. Consider a data set consisting of $N$ data points with values $x_i$ ($i=1,2,3,...,N$). One important quantity is the mean or average value, defined with either a bar or an angle bracket notation:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} x_i$$

The mean is the "middle" point or the "centre of gravity" of the data set but it does not tell how wide the data point distribution is. The data set {3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0} and {4.8, 4.9, 5.0, 5.1, 5.2} have the same average value of 5.0.

The "normalization" factor is $N^{-1}$. When the average is calculated from eq. (17.1) the normalization is just $1/N$ when the average is calculated from another source, the normalization is just $1/N$. The square root of the variance (i.e. the standard deviation $\sigma$) is called the standard deviation.

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} (x_i - \bar{x})^2}$$

The variance is the "normalization factor is $N^{-1}$" (17.1). If the distribution of the data is given by a Gaussian function $\exp(-ax^2)$, then $

\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{2}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} (x_i - \bar{x})^2}.

The "normalization" factor is $N^{-1}$. When the average is calculated from eq. (17.1) of the data set but not of the Gaussian function (eq. (17.2)), then

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{2}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} (x_i - \bar{x})^2}.$$
The third and fourth moments are called the skew and kurtosis.

\[
\text{skew} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} \left( \frac{x_i - \bar{x}}{\sigma} \right)^3
\]

\[
\text{kurtosis} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} \left( \frac{x_i - \bar{x}}{\sigma} \right)^4 - 3
\]

These quantities are dimensionless, in contrast to the first and second moments (mean and variance). The skew, kurtosis and corresponding higher moments are rarely used.

The mean and variance are closely connected with the qualifiers accurate and precise. An accurate measure is one where the mean is close to the real value. A precise measure is one that has a small variance. An accurate but inaccurate measurement (poor mean, small variance) indicates small random but large systematic errors.

Some data sets are (almost) symmetric, such as the digits in the phone book of a large city, containing almost the same number of elements below and above the mean value. Others may be asymmetric, for example containing many points slightly below the mean, but relatively few with much larger values than the mean (for example the income profile for the US population or the Boltzmann energy distribution). Higher order moments such as the skew can be used to characterize such cases. Two alternative quantities can also be used, the median and the mode. The median is the value in the middle of the data points, i.e. 50\% of the data are below the median and 50\% are above. The mode is the most probable element, i.e. the one that occurs with the highest frequency. In some cases, there may be more than one maximum in the probability distribution, for example a bimodal distribution for a probability function with two maxima. For a symmetric distribution, the median and mean are identical, and thus a large difference between these two quantities indicates an asymmetric distribution.

One should be aware that essential information can easily be lost in the data compression of a statistical analysis. European women, for example, have on average 1.5 children, but none have 1.5 children (but 0, 1, 2, 3, … children). Such “paradoxes” are at the root of characterizing statistics as “a precise and concise method of communicating half-truths in an inaccurate way”.

### 17.3 Correlation Between Two Sets of Data

In science, one is often interested in whether one type of data is connected with another type, i.e. whether the data points from one set can be used to predict the other. We will denote such two data sets \(x\) and \(y\), and ask whether there is a function \(f(x)\) that can model the \(y\) data. When the function \(f(x)\) is defined or known a priori, the question is how well the function can reproduce the \(y\) data.

Two quantities are commonly used for qualifying the “goodness of fit”, the Root Mean Square (RMS) deviation and the Mean Absolute Deviation (MAD), which for a set of \(N\) data points are defined in eq. (17.4).

\[
\text{RMS} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} (y_i - f(x_i))^2}
\]

\[
\text{MAD} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} |y_i - f(x_i)|
\]

The MAD represents a uniform weighting of the errors for each data point, while the RMS quantity has a tendency of being dominated by the (few) points with largest deviations. Note that the function \(f(x)\) can be very complicated, as for example calculating the atomization energy by the Hartree–Fock method from a set of nuclear coordinates (Figure 17.1).

When the functional form \(f(x)\) is unknown, correlation analysis may be used to seek an approximate function connecting the two sets of data. The simplest case corresponds to a linear correlation.

\[
y_i = f(x_i) = ax_i + b
\]

We want to determine the \(a\) (slope) and \(b\) (intersection) parameters to given the best possible fit, i.e. in a plot of \(y\) against \(x\), we seek the best straight line.

![An approximate linear correlation between \(x\) and \(y\)](image)

The familiar least squares linear fit arises by defining the “best” line as the one that has the smallest deviation between the actual \(y_i\)-points and those derived from eq. (17.5), and taking the error to be the deviation squared. The equations defining \(a\) and \(b\) can be derived by minimizing (setting the first derivations to zero) an error function.

\[
\frac{\partial E}{\partial a} = 0
\]

\[
\frac{\partial E}{\partial b} = 0
\]

\[
E_F = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i (y_i - ax_i - b)^2
\]

\[
17.6
\]

The familiar least squares linear fit arises by defining the “best” line as the one that has the smallest deviation between the actual \(y_i\)-points and those derived from eq. (17.5), and taking the error to be the deviation squared. The equations defining \(a\) and \(b\) can be derived by minimizing (setting the first derivations to zero) an error function.
We note in passing that the minimum number of data points is two, since there are two fitting parameters \( a \) and \( b \), i.e. the correlation between any two points can be modeled by a straight line. The data points can be weighted by \( w_i \), for example related to the uncertainty with which the \( y_i \) data points are measured. The actual equation for \( a \) and \( b \) can be written in several different ways. One convenient form is by introducing some auxiliary sum-functions.

\[
S = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i \quad S_x = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i x_i \quad S_y = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i y_i \\
S_{xx} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i x_i^2 \quad S_{yy} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i y_i^2 \quad S_{xy} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i x_i y_i
\]

(17.7)

In terms of these quantities, the optimum \( a \) and \( b \) parameters are given by eq. (17.8).

\[
a = K(S_{xy} - S_x S_y) \\
b = K(S_x y - S_y x)
\]

(17.8)

The associated variances are given in eq. (17.9).

\[
\sigma_a^2 = KS \\
\sigma_b^2 = KS
\]

(17.9)

The “goodness of fit” for such \( xy \)-plots is commonly measured by the correlation coefficient, \( r \), which is defined in eq. (17.10).

\[
r = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{N} (x_i - \overline{x})(y_i - \overline{y})}{\sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{N} (x_i - \overline{x})^2 \sum_{i=1}^{N} (y_i - \overline{y})^2}}
\]

(17.10)

By construction, the correlation coefficient is constrained to the interval \([-1, 1]\), where \( r = 1 \) indicates that all points lie exactly on a line with a positive slope (\( a > 0 \)), while \( r = 0 \) indicates two sets of uncorrelated data. Note that the “correlation coefficient” is often given as \( r^2 \) instead, which of course is constrained to the interval \([0, 1]\). The error function in eq. (17.6) is defined by the vertical distance, i.e. assuming that the error is located mainly in the \( y \) data set. If both data sets have similar errors, the perpendicular distance from the data points to the line can be used instead in the error function. This, however, leads to somewhat complicated non-linear equations for the fitting parameters, and is rarely used.

Non-linear correlations (e.g. a quadratic correlation, \( f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c \)) can be treated completely analogously to the linear case above, by defining an error function and setting the first derivatives with respect to the fitting parameters to zero. Non-linear correlations, however, are used much less than linear ones, for four reasons:

1. Many non-linear connections can be linearized by a suitable variable transformation. An exponential dependence, for example, can be made linear by taking the logarithm \( (\ln(y) = \ln(a) + bx) \).
2. Increasing the number of fitting parameters will always produce a better fit, since the fitting function becomes more flexible (a quadratic fitting function has three parameters, while a linear has only two). The data set, however, usually contains noise (random errors), and a more flexible fitting function may simply try to fit the noise rather than improving the fit of the “true” data. For polynomial fitting functions of increasing degree, oscillations of the fitting function between the data points are often seen, which is a clear indication of “overfitting”.
3. Any function connecting two sets of data can be Taylor expanded and, to a first approximation, the connection will be linear. All correlations will therefore be linear within a sufficiently “small” interval.
4. For functions where the fitting parameters enter in a linear fashion, the equations defining the parameters can be solved analytically. For a function with non-linear parameters, however, the resulting equations must be solved by iterative techniques, with the risk of divergence or convergence to a non-optimal solution.

Points 2–4 suggest that a non-linear fitting function should only be attempted if there are sound theoretical reasons for expecting a non-linear correlation between the data. One such example is the often observed parabolic dependence of the biological activity on the lipophilicity for a series of compounds. Compounds with a low lipophilicity will have difficulty entering the cells and therefore often have a low activity. Compounds with a high lipophilicity, however, will have a tendency of accumulating in the fat cells and therefore also have a low activity. A quadratic dependence with a negative second-order term is therefore expected based on physical arguments.

17.4 Correlation between Many Sets of Data

17.4.1 Multiple-descriptor data sets and quality analysis

In the previous section there were only two sets of data, the \( y \) data, we wanted to model and the variable \( x \) each being a vector of dimension \( N \times 1 \). In many cases, however, one has several sets of \( x \) variables \( (x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots, x_M) \), each of which can potentially describe some of the variation in the \( y \) data set. There may also be several different sets of \( y \) data that we want to model with the same \( x \) descriptors but for simplicity we will only consider a single set of \( y \) data. The \( x \) variables can be arranged into an \( N \times M \) matrix.

\[
X = \begin{bmatrix}
x_{11} & x_{12} & x_{13} & \cdots & x_{1M} \\
x_{12} & x_{22} & x_{23} & \cdots & x_{2M} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
x_{1N} & x_{2N} & x_{3N} & \cdots & x_{MN}
\end{bmatrix}
\]

(17.11)

The \( x \) descriptors are often derived from many different sources and may have different units, means and variances. Prior to any correlation analysis, each \( x \) vector is usually
centred to have a mean value of zero (i.e. subtracting the mean value from each vector element), as this eliminates any constant terms in the correlation analysis and focuses on describing the variation in the \( y \) data.

Each \( x \) vector may also be scaled with a suitable factor to take into account for example different units for the variables. This, however, is non-trivial and requires careful consideration. A common procedure, which avoids a user decision, is to normalize each \( x \) vector to have a variance of 1, a procedure called autoscaling. Autoscaling equalizes the variance of each descriptor and can thus amplify random noise in the sample data and reduce the importance of a variable having a large response and a good correlation with the \( y \) data.

Analogous to the correlation coefficient in eq. (17.10), we want a measure of the quality of fit produced by a given correlation model. Two commonly used quantities are the Predicted Residual Sum of Squares (PRESS) and the correlation coefficient \( R^2 \) defined by the normalized PRESS value and the variance of the \( y \) data (\( \sigma_y^2 \)).

\[
\text{PRESS} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \left( y_{\text{predicted}_i} - y_{\text{actual}_i} \right)^2
\]
\[
\sigma_y^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} \left( y_{\text{actual}_i} - \bar{y} \right)^2
\]
\[
R^2 = 1 - \frac{\text{PRESS}}{N \sigma_y^2}
\]

\( R^2 \) thus measures how well the model reproduces the variation in \( y \), compared with a model that just predicts the average \( y \) value for all variables. A straightforward inclusion of more and more \( x \) variables having some relationship with \( y \) in a correlation analysis will necessarily monotonically increase the amount of \( y \) variation described and thus produce an \( R^2 \) converging towards 1. Inclusion of variables that primarily serve to describe the noise in the \( y \) data, however, will lead to a model with less predictive value for the real variation. This is clearly something that should be avoided but in many cases it is not obvious when the additional components included primarily serve to model the noise in the \( y \) data. To make an unbiased judgement, it is of interest to introduce a quantity that does not measure how well the variables can fit the \( y \) data, but one that measures how well the variables can predict the \( y \) data. Since we are ultimately interested in predicting \( y \) data from the independent variables, such cross validations are more useful quantities.

One possible measure is to make a correlation analysis using only \( N - 1 \) data points and ask how well this model predicts the point left out. This can be performed for each of the data points, i.e. a total of \( N \) correlation analyses is required. Such “leave-one-out” or “jackknife” models give an independent measure of the predictive power of a correlation model using a given number of variables. Either the PRESS calculated from summing over all the \( N \) correlation models or the predictive correlation coefficient \( Q^2 \), defined analogously to \( R^2 \) in eq. (17.12), can be used to measure the predictive capabilities of the model. \( Q^2 \) has in analogy with \( R^2 \) a maximum value of 1 but can achieve negative values for models with poor predictive capabilities. A small PRESS or a large \( Q^2 \) value thus indicates a model with good predictive powers, and models with \( Q^2 \) of 0.5-0.6 are usually considered acceptable.

Even for medium-sized data sets the leave-one-out cross-correlation model tends to overestimate the predictive capabilities, as the predicted fraction of the sample is only \( 1/N \), which rapidly approaches zero for a large sample. Alternative models can be generated by randomly leaving out for example \( k \) data points, rather than just one, or by forming sub-groups of the data set, and either leaving one point out in each group, or leaving all points in one group out.

### 17.4 Multiple linear regression

For multiple-descriptor data sets, one could use the methods in Section 17.3 to derive a correlation between \( y \) and \( x_1 \), between \( x_2 \) and \( y \), \( x_3 \), etc., to find the \( x \) variable that primarily serves to describe the noise in the \( x \) data, however, will lead to a model with less predictive value for the real variation. This is clearly something that should be avoided but in many cases it is not obvious when the additional components included primarily serve to model the noise in the \( y \) data. To make an unbiased judgement, it is of interest to introduce a quantity that does not measure how well the variables can fit the \( y \) data, but one that measures how well the variables can predict the \( y \) data. Since we are ultimately interested in predicting \( y \) data from the independent variables, such cross validations are more useful quantities.

A straightforward inclusion of more and more \( x \) variables having some relationship with \( y \) in a correlation analysis will necessarily monotonically increase the amount of \( y \) variation described and thus produce an \( R^2 \) converging towards 1. Inclusion of variables that primarily serve to describe the noise in the \( y \) data, however, will lead to a model with less predictive value for the real variation. This is clearly something that should be avoided but in many cases it is not obvious when the additional components included primarily serve to model the noise in the \( y \) data. To make an unbiased judgement, it is of interest to introduce a quantity that does not measure how well the variables can fit the \( y \) data, but one that measures how well the variables can predict the \( y \) data. Since we are ultimately interested in predicting \( y \) data from the independent variables, such cross validations are more useful quantities.

One possible measure is to make a correlation analysis using only \( N - 1 \) data points and ask how well this model predicts the point left out. This can be performed for each of the data points, i.e. a total of \( N \) correlation analyses is required. Such “leave-one-out” or “jackknife” models give an independent measure of the predictive power of a correlation model using a given number of variables. Either the PRESS calculated from summing over all the \( N \) correlation models or the predictive correlation coefficient \( Q^2 \), defined analogously to \( R^2 \) in eq. (17.12), can be used to measure the predictive capabilities of the model. \( Q^2 \) has in analogy with \( R^2 \) a maximum value of 1 but can achieve negative values for models with poor predictive capabilities. A small PRESS or a large \( Q^2 \) value thus indicates a model with good predictive powers, and models with \( Q^2 \) of 0.5-0.6 are usually considered acceptable.

### 17.4.2 Multiple linear regression

For multiple-descriptor data sets, one could use the methods in Section 17.3 to derive a correlation between \( y \) and \( x_1 \), between \( y \) and \( x_2 \), between \( y \) and \( x_3 \), etc., to find the \( x \) variable that primarily serves to describe the noise in the \( x \) data, however, will lead to a model with less predictive value for the real variation. This is clearly something that should be avoided but in many cases it is not obvious when the additional components included primarily serve to model the noise in the \( y \) data. To make an unbiased judgement, it is of interest to introduce a quantity that does not measure how well the variables can fit the \( y \) data, but one that measures how well the variables can predict the \( y \) data. Since we are ultimately interested in predicting \( y \) data from the independent variables, such cross validations are more useful quantities.

One possible measure is to make a correlation analysis using only \( N - 1 \) data points and ask how well this model predicts the point left out. This can be performed for each of the data points, i.e. a total of \( N \) correlation analyses is required. Such “leave-one-out” or “jackknife” models give an independent measure of the predictive power of a correlation model using a given number of variables. Either the PRESS calculated from summing over all the \( N \) correlation models or the predictive correlation coefficient \( Q^2 \), defined analogously to \( R^2 \) in eq. (17.12), can be used to measure the predictive capabilities of the model. \( Q^2 \) has in analogy with \( R^2 \) a maximum value of 1 but can achieve negative values for models with poor predictive capabilities. A small PRESS or a large \( Q^2 \) value thus indicates a model with good predictive powers, and models with \( Q^2 \) of 0.5-0.6 are usually considered acceptable.

\[
y = Xa
\]
\[
a = (X'X)^{-1}X'y
\]
impossible to search in a systematic fashion. Global optimization methods such as genetic algorithms or simulated annealing (Sections 12.6.3 and 12.6.4) can be used to hunt for the best combination of number and types of descriptors. Such optimizations clearly should focus on maximizing the $Q^2$ value and not the $R^2$ value. One may also consider weighting $Q^2$ with a factor depending (inversely) on the number of components, as a slight increase in $Q^2$ by including one more components may not be beneficial. Alternatively, and somewhat more systematically, one of the methods in the next section can be used.

### 17.4.3 Principal component and partial least squares analysis

Multiple linear regression cannot easily handle situations where $M > N$ or when the $x$ variables are (almost) linearly correlated. These problems can be removed by introducing a modified set of descriptors, so-called latent variables. The idea is to extract linear combinations of the $x$ variables that are orthogonal and ranked according to their variation, and only use a limited set of these variables for performing the correlation with the $y$ variables.

The eigenvalues of the $XX^T$ matrix (eq. (17.11)) contain information on the correlation between the $x$ variables: an eigenvalue of zero indicates that one column can be written as a linear combination of the other columns, and a small non-zero value indicates that one column contains almost redundant information. The eigenvector corresponding to the largest eigenvalue contains the linear combination of the $x$ descriptors having the largest variation in the $x$ data, the eigenvector corresponding to the second largest eigenvalue has the second largest variations, etc. Furthermore, since the eigenvectors are orthogonal, different eigenvectors describe different parts of the variation.

Using the concepts in Chapter 16, the original $x$ vectors can be thought of as being the (non-orthogonal and unnormalized) basis vectors of an $M$-dimensional coordinate system. The eigenvectors of the $XX^T$ matrix describe the same fundamental coordinate system but with (orthonormal) basis vectors that have been rotated with respect to the original $x$ vectors. We note that if there are eigenvalues close to zero then the effective dimension of the coordinate system is less than $M$. Figure 17.3 shows a two-dimensional example where the points for the two non-orthogonal $x$ descriptors have an internal correlation and display a similar variation along the two directions. The new $z$ variables are orthogonal and most of the variation is now located in the $z_1$ variable, while $z_2$ describes a much smaller variation.

![Figure 17.3 Illustrating the relationship between the original (x) and latent (z) variables](image)

If we denote the rotated basis vectors ($XX^T$ eigenvectors) with $z$, we can write the connection (neglecting normalization) as in eq. (17.15).

$$z_i = \sum_{j=1}^{M} x_j u_{ij}$$

$$Z = XU$$

Since the $XX$ matrix depends on the relative magnitudes of the individual $x$ vectors, the $z$ vectors depend on a possible scaling of the original $x$ descriptors.

The idea in a Principal Component Analysis (PCA) is to use the $x$ variables as the descriptive variables. If all $M$ eigenvectors are used the result is identical to using the original $x$ variables (i.e. MLR). However, the premise of the PCA method is to include only a few ($J$) $z$ variables, and to select them according to their eigenvalues. A series of multiple linear regressions are done using more and more eigenvectors, first $z_1$, then $z_1$ and $z_2$, then including also $z_3$, etc. At each stage the predictive capabilities of the model are calculated, for example quantified by $Q^2$. If the original $x$ data have a reasonable correlation with the $y$ data, then a plot of $Q^2$ against the number of variables included will typically display an initial steep increase, but then level off or even start to decrease slightly as the number of latent variables is increased. The point where $Q^2$ levels off indicates that the optimal number of components has been reached, i.e. at this point the predictive power of the model cannot be increased further by including more components.

The main problem with the PCA method is that some of the $x$ variables may not be particularly good at describing the $y$ variables, i.e. the first few PCA vectors describing the largest variation among the $x$ variables may correlate poorly with the variation in the $y$ data. In such cases, a global optimization search can be made for a model based on a relatively small number of components selected from all the PCA vectors with eigenvalues above a suitable cutoff.

The Partial Least Squares (PLS, also sometimes called Projection to Latent Structures) method attempts to improve on the selection of the latent variables by weighting the $X$ matrix with the $y$ vector prior to diagonalization, i.e. diagonalizing the $XyX$ (equivalent to $(YX)Y^T$) matrix instead of $XX^T$. This ensures that the eigenvectors with the largest eigenvalues will be biased towards describing the variation in $y$. The only difference between PCA and PLS is thus in how the latent $z$ variables are generated, either by diagonalization of the $XX^T$ matrix, or from the corresponding $y$-weighted matrix. The PLS latent variables will naturally be ordered according to their ability to describe the $y$ variation, alleviating the necessity for performing a combinatorial search for which latent vectors to use in the regression. For optimal cases, a plot of $Q^2$ against the number of PLS components will rapidly reach a maximum and provide a compact model with good predictive capabilities.

A disadvantage of the PLS method is the inherent bias towards selecting latent variables describing noise in the $x$ data, i.e. $x$ variables that only have a small internal variation but that correlate with the noise in the $y$ data are selected as important. For this reason, $x$ variables with small internal variance over the $y$ data points are often removed from the descriptor data set prior to performing the PLS analysis. This pre-selection procedure, however, requires user involvement and it is not always easy to decide which variables to remove. Unfortunately, the predictive capabilities of a PLS
17.4.4 Illustrative example

Consider the \(\mathbf{X}\) and \(\mathbf{y}\) matrices in eq. (17.16), where variables have been centred to give a mean of zero.

\[
\mathbf{X} = \begin{pmatrix} 1.0 & 1.0 \\ -1.0 & -1.0 \\ 0.1 & -0.1 \\ -0.1 & 0.1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{y} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.1 \\ 0.1 \\ 0.9 \\ -1.1 \end{pmatrix}
\] (17.16)

Clearly the first two rows show a large variation in \(x\) with no change in \(y\), i.e. these variables are not related to the response. The last two rows display correlation and anti-correlation, respectively, with the \(y\) data in equal amounts. Solving with MLR equation (17.14) gives the solution vector \(\mathbf{a}\) in eq. (17.17), which shows that both \(x\) columns are equally important in describing the \(y\) variation. The difference between the actual and predicted \(y\) indicates that there is a residual \(y\) variation that cannot be modelled by the \(x\) variables.

\[
\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{y}_{\text{pred}} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.0 \\ 0.0 \\ 0.1 \\ -0.1 \end{pmatrix}
\] (17.17)

Diagonalizing the \(\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{X}\) matrix for the PCR analysis gives eigenvalues of 4.00 and 0.04, with corresponding (unnormalized) eigenvectors \((1,1)\) and \((1,-1)\). In the transformed coordinate system, the principal components \(\mathbf{z}\) in eq. (17.15) are given in eq. (17.18).

\[
\mathbf{Z} = \begin{pmatrix} 1.0 & 0.0 \\ -1.0 & 0.0 \\ 0.0 & 0.1 \\ 0.0 & -0.1 \end{pmatrix}
\] (17.18)

Clearly the eigenvector corresponding to the largest eigenvalue (the first principal component, i.e. the first column in \(\mathbf{Z}\)) has a zero overlap with the \(y\) data, while the second eigenvector accounts for all the important variation in the original \(x\) variables. The PLS components arising from diagonalization of the \(\mathbf{X'y'y}\) on the other hand, have eigenvalues of 0.00 and 0.008 with corresponding (unnormalized) eigenvectors \((1,1)\) and \((1,-1)\). The transformed \(\mathbf{X}\) matrix is identical to eq. (17.18), except that it is now the second column that corresponds to the largest eigenvalue. The direction that has the largest eigenvalue in the PCR case has an eigenvalue of zero in the PLS case, showing that it contains no information of the \(y\) variation. In both the PCR and PLS cases, the \(y\) variation that can be described is contained in only one component, but the PLS procedure identifies the most important component as the one with the largest eigenvalue. The predicted \(y\) is identical to the MLR results (eq. (17.17)) for both PCR and PLS; the only difference is that only one component is required, rather than two.

17.5 Quantitative Structure–Activity Relationships (QSAR)

One important application of PCA and PLS techniques is in the lead development and optimization of new drugs in the pharmaceutical industry. From the basic chemical and physical theories, it is clear that there must be a connection between the structure of a molecule and its biological activity. It is also clear, however, that the connection is very complex, and it is very unlikely that the biological activity can ever be predicted completely. A drug taken orally, for example, must first survive the digestive enzymes and acidic conditions in the stomach, cross over into the blood stream, possibly also cross over into the brain, diffuse to the target enzyme without binding to other enzymes, bind the target enzyme at a specific site and with a large binding constant, and finally have a suitable half-life in the organism before being degraded into non-toxic components. Each of these quantities depends on different parts of the molecular structure and the combined effect is therefore very difficult to predict. Each quantity, however, may possibly be correlated with (different) molecular properties, but adequate data for each effect is rarely available.

In the initial stages of developing a new drug, the focus is usually on the binding to the target enzyme and having a suitable lipophilicity, the latter ensuring a reasonable transfer rate for crossing between the blood and cells. A lead compound is somehow determined, more often than not by serendipity. From this lead, a small initial pool of compounds is synthesized and their biological activity, of which the binding constant to the target enzyme is an important quantity, is measured by a suitable biological assay. At this point, statistical methods are often used to correlate the molecular structure and properties to the observed activity, a Quantitative Structure–Activity Relationship (QSAR), thereby providing a tool for “guessing” which new modified compounds should be tried next.

In a traditional QSAR study, a variety of molecular descriptors are included. Typically, these include a measure of the lipophilicity (often taken as the partition coefficient between water and 1-octanol), electronic and steric substituent parameters (Hammett’s and Taft constants), and \(pK_a\) values for acidic and/or basic groups. These are rather obvious molecular descriptors, but many other less obvious descriptors have also been used, such as the molecular weight, IR frequencies, dipole moments, NMR chemical shifts, etc. The philosophy is to include, rather indiscriminately, as many descriptors as can easily be generated and then let the statistical method sort out which of these are actually important. With many of the descriptors having only remote connection with the measured activity, classical or MLR correlations are clearly not suitable methods. PCA or PLS methods are better at detecting poor descriptors and dealing with the fact that the measured biological activities often have rather large uncertainties.

Classical QSAR methods focus on correlating experimental activities with experimental descriptors. This allows an identification of important structural features, such as having a \(pK_a\) value close to 5 or having an electron-withdrawing group in a para-position of a phenyl ring, thereby limiting the field of possible new compounds to...
prepare and test. More recently, the focus has been on “virtual” (in silico) screening, i.e. correlating experimental activities with theoretical descriptors. If a good QSAR model can be constructed from such data, this allows prediction of the biological activities of molecules that exist only in the computer. The activity of many thousands of (possibly computer-generated) structures can thus be predicted, and only those that are predicted to be reasonably active need to be synthesized. The theoretical descriptors can be similar to those in traditional QSAR methods, for example replacing the experimental water-octanol partition coefficient with a corresponding theoretical estimate, etc. The so-called 3D-QSAR models, however, are more representative of these new QSAR methods, and the Comparative Molecular Field Analysis (COMFA) method is probably one of the most popular of these.

In the COMFA method, the molecular descriptors are taken as steric and electric fields calculated at a large number of points surrounding each molecule. The molecule is placed in a “box” and a few thousand points are selected between the surface of the molecule and a few van der Waals radii outwards. At each of these points, the steric repulsion or attraction from a probe atom (typically a carbon atom) is calculated by a force field van der Waals term. The electric attraction or repulsion is similarly calculated by placing a point charge with magnitude +1 in each point. The complete set of molecular descriptors thus consists of a few thousand data points, representing the steric and electric interaction of the molecule with other (possible) atoms in the near vicinity. Clearly these data are highly redundant; the value in a certain point will be very close to the average of the neighboring points. Deriving QSAR models with such large sets of data descriptors is only possible using PCA and PLS methods. Such 3D-QSAR methods are primarily used when the structure or identity of the receptor enzyme is unknown. If the enzyme and binding site is known from an X-ray structure, the testing of possible drug candidates can be done by docking methods, as described in Section 12.7.

The main problem with 3D-QSAR methods such as COMFA is the alignment of the molecules in the test set. First, it must be assumed that each of the molecules binds to the enzyme at the same site. Second, it is not always clear that all the molecules bind to the active site in the same overall orientation. Third, if the molecule has several conformations available, one has to guess or estimate which conformation actually binds to the enzyme. Furthermore, even if the overall orientation of all the molecules is assumed to be the same, the specific alignment is not unambiguous. Even for molecules having the same major structural features, one can choose either to align on the best RMS fit of all atoms, or only the non-hydrogen atoms, or on only the atoms in a substructure of the molecule (e.g. a phenyl ring). Figure 17.4 illustrates the ambiguity for aligning the compound on the right with that on the left, should the imine or nitro group be used for alignment?

When the molecular structure of the compounds in the training set has few or no common elements, the alignment may instead be done based on for example the electric moments (dipole, quadrupole, etc.) or on the electrostatic potential on a suitable molecular surface.

Since the alignment of the molecules influences the values calculated at the steric and electric grid points, this is a feature that influences the statistical correlation. If a successful QSAR model can be obtained from such data, however, the model will provide information on where of the grid points are important in a steric and electric sense. Analysis of such data provides a virtual mapping of the receptor, i.e. identifying regions of the active site where the drug candidates should have large/small groups, and where they should have positively/negatively charged groups.

References

Figure 17.4 Illustrating the alignment problem in COMFA methods.
Concluding Remarks

The real world is very complex and a complete description is therefore also very complex. Similarly, the world of chemistry is very complex and a complete description is therefore also very complex. For example, a chemical reaction in the laboratory may involve perhaps 10^20 molecules surrounded by 10^24 solvent molecules, in contact with a glass surface and interacting with gases (N_2, O_2, CO_2, H_2O, etc.) in the atmosphere. The whole system will be exposed to a flux of photons of different frequency (light) and a magnetic field (from the Earth's magnetic field). Except for a couple of rather extreme areas (such as the combination of general relativity and quantum mechanics, or the unification of the strong and gravitational forces with the electroweak force), the combination of all these different forces and fields is determined by relativistic quantum field theory, and the dynamics of all the particles (nucleons and electrons) is determined by relativistic quantum mechanics. In all practical situations, the number of particles is so large that a description of the system as a whole is not possible. Instead, the system is divided into subsystems, and each subsystem is described by a different set of equations.

The world of chemistry is also very complex. For example, a chemical reaction in the laboratory may involve perhaps 10^20 molecules surrounded by 10^24 solvent molecules, in contact with a glass surface and interacting with gases (N_2, O_2, CO_2, H_2O, etc.) in the atmosphere. The whole system will be exposed to a flux of photons of different frequency (light) and a magnetic field (from the Earth's magnetic field). Except for a couple of rather extreme areas (such as the combination of general relativity and quantum mechanics, or the unification of the strong and gravitational forces with the electroweak force), the combination of all these different forces and fields is determined by relativistic quantum field theory, and the dynamics of all the particles (nucleons and electrons) is determined by relativistic quantum mechanics. In all practical situations, the number of particles is so large that a description of the system as a whole is not possible. Instead, the system is divided into subsystems, and each subsystem is described by a different set of equations.

As this book hopefully has given some insight into, the key is to know what to neglect or approximate when trying to obtain answers to specific questions in pre-defined systems. For example, for electronic structure calculations within the Hartree-Fock approximation, the starting point is essentially an independent-electron model, which is a good approximation for molecules with a large number of electrons. However, for molecules with a small number of electrons, the electron-electron interactions become significant, and a more accurate treatment is necessary. Similarly, for chemical reactions in the laboratory, the starting point is essentially a reaction with a large number of molecules, but for reactions with a small number of molecules, the reaction dynamics become important, and a more accurate treatment is necessary.

The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. Similarly, the results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. For example, for electronic structure calculations within the Hartree-Fock approximation, the starting point is essentially an independent-electron model, which is a good approximation for molecules with a large number of electrons. However, for molecules with a small number of electrons, the electron-electron interactions become significant, and a more accurate treatment is necessary. Similarly, for chemical reactions in the laboratory, the starting point is essentially a reaction with a large number of molecules, but for reactions with a small number of molecules, the reaction dynamics become important, and a more accurate treatment is necessary.

The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. Similarly, the results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. For example, for electronic structure calculations within the Hartree-Fock approximation, the starting point is essentially an independent-electron model, which is a good approximation for molecules with a large number of electrons. However, for molecules with a small number of electrons, the electron-electron interactions become significant, and a more accurate treatment is necessary. Similarly, for chemical reactions in the laboratory, the starting point is essentially a reaction with a large number of molecules, but for reactions with a small number of molecules, the reaction dynamics become important, and a more accurate treatment is necessary.

The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. Similarly, the results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. For example, for electronic structure calculations within the Hartree-Fock approximation, the starting point is essentially an independent-electron model, which is a good approximation for molecules with a large number of electrons. However, for molecules with a small number of electrons, the electron-electron interactions become significant, and a more accurate treatment is necessary. Similarly, for chemical reactions in the laboratory, the starting point is essentially a reaction with a large number of molecules, but for reactions with a small number of molecules, the reaction dynamics become important, and a more accurate treatment is necessary.

The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. Similarly, the results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. For example, for electronic structure calculations within the Hartree-Fock approximation, the starting point is essentially an independent-electron model, which is a good approximation for molecules with a large number of electrons. However, for molecules with a small number of electrons, the electron-electron interactions become significant, and a more accurate treatment is necessary. Similarly, for chemical reactions in the laboratory, the starting point is essentially a reaction with a large number of molecules, but for reactions with a small number of molecules, the reaction dynamics become important, and a more accurate treatment is necessary.

The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. Similarly, the results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. For example, for electronic structure calculations within the Hartree-Fock approximation, the starting point is essentially an independent-electron model, which is a good approximation for molecules with a large number of electrons. However, for molecules with a small number of electrons, the electron-electron interactions become significant, and a more accurate treatment is necessary. Similarly, for chemical reactions in the laboratory, the starting point is essentially a reaction with a large number of molecules, but for reactions with a small number of molecules, the reaction dynamics become important, and a more accurate treatment is necessary.

The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. Similarly, the results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. For example, for electronic structure calculations within the Hartree-Fock approximation, the starting point is essentially an independent-electron model, which is a good approximation for molecules with a large number of electrons. However, for molecules with a small number of electrons, the electron-electron interactions become significant, and a more accurate treatment is necessary. Similarly, for chemical reactions in the laboratory, the starting point is essentially a reaction with a large number of molecules, but for reactions with a small number of molecules, the reaction dynamics become important, and a more accurate treatment is necessary.

The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. Similarly, the results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. For example, for electronic structure calculations within the Hartree-Fock approximation, the starting point is essentially an independent-electron model, which is a good approximation for molecules with a large number of electrons. However, for molecules with a small number of electrons, the electron-electron interactions become significant, and a more accurate treatment is necessary. Similarly, for chemical reactions in the laboratory, the starting point is essentially a reaction with a large number of molecules, but for reactions with a small number of molecules, the reaction dynamics become important, and a more accurate treatment is necessary.

The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. Similarly, the results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. For example, for electronic structure calculations within the Hartree-Fock approximation, the starting point is essentially an independent-electron model, which is a good approximation for molecules with a large number of electrons. However, for molecules with a small number of electrons, the electron-electron interactions become significant, and a more accurate treatment is necessary. Similarly, for chemical reactions in the laboratory, the starting point is essentially a reaction with a large number of molecules, but for reactions with a small number of molecules, the reaction dynamics become important, and a more accurate treatment is necessary.

The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. The results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. Similarly, the results from a calculation can never be considered as the final answer, but only as a starting point. For example, for electronic structure calculations within the Hartree-Fock approximation, the starting point is essentially an independent-electron model, which is a good approximation for molecules with a large number of electrons. However, for molecules with a small number of electrons, the electron-electron interactions become significant, and a more accurate treatment is necessary. Similarly, for chemical reactions in the laboratory, the starting point is essentially a reaction with a large number of molecules, but for reactions with a small number of molecules, the reaction dynamics become important, and a more accurate treatment is necessary.
Approximating the intermolecular interactions to only include two-body effects, for example electrostatic forces are only calculated between pairs of fixed atomic charges in force field techniques. Or the discrete interactions between molecules may be treated only in an average fashion, by using Langevin dynamics instead of molecular dynamics.

Calculating ensemble or time averages over a relatively small number of points (perhaps a few million) and a limited number of particles (perhaps a few hundred), instead of something that approach the macroscopic sample of perhaps $10^7$ molecules/configurations.

Finite temperature being reduced to zero kelvin, i.e. the use of static structures to represent molecules, rather than treating them as an ensemble of molecules in a distribution of states (translational, rotational and vibrational) corresponding to a (macroscopic) temperature.

Making approximations in the Hamiltonian describing the system, for example semi-empirical electronic structure methods.

Approximating external fields (electric or magnetic) by only considering their linear components. For normal conditions, this will be a quite good approximation, but this is not the case in for example intense laser fields.

Treat the nuclei as point particles. In reality a nucleus has a finite size ($\sim 10^{-15}$ m) and since the electrons can penetrate the nucleus the potential felt inside the nucleus will differ from that of a point particle, and consequently lead to changes in the electronic energy.

QED corrections. The interaction between charged particles is normally described by the Coulomb interaction, but when the quantization of the field is considered, there are additional higher order correction terms.

Most of these approximations are mainly of a computational nature, as there are well-defined methods available for going beyond the approximations, but they are computationally too demanding. The key is therefore to be able to evaluate what level of theory (i.e. which approximations are appropriate) is required for obtaining results that are sufficiently accurate to provide useful information about the question at hand. Hopefully this book has given a few clues as how to select a suitable method for a given problem.

---

### Appendix A

**Notation**

Bold quantities are operators, vectors, matrices or tensors. Plain symbols are scalars.

- $\alpha$: Polarity
- $\beta$: Spin functions
- $\gamma$: Dirac $4 \times 4$ spin matrices
- $\delta$: Summation indices for basis functions
- $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta$: Basis function exponents
- $\alpha$, $\beta$: Huckel parameters for atom A, and between atoms A and B
- $a$: Born radius for solvation cavities
- $a, \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \ldots$: Expansion coefficients
- $a$: Acceleration
- $A$: Helmholtz free energy
- $A$: Antisymmetrizing operator
- $A$: Vector potential
- $A$: Hyperfine coupling constant
- $\beta$: First hyperpolarizability
- $\beta$: Resonance parameter in semi-empirical theory
- $B$: Magnetic field (magnetic induction)
- $\chi, \mu, \nu, \lambda, \sigma$: Basis functions (atomic orbitals), $ab$ initio or semi-empirical methods
- $Z$: Electronegativity
- $Z$: Out-of-plane angle for atom B
- $Z$: Magnetic susceptibility
- $X$: Gauge including basis function
- $c$: Speed of light
- $c_n$: MO expansion coefficients
- $\delta$: An infinitesimal variation or quantity

© 2007 John Wiley & Sons, Ltd
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>δ_{ij}</td>
<td>Kronecker delta (( \delta_{ij} = 1 ) for ( i = j ), ( \delta_{ij} = 0 ) for ( i \neq j ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δ(( r ))</td>
<td>Dirac delta function (( \delta(( r )) = 0 ) for ( r \neq 0 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Δ</td>
<td>Finite difference or quantity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>Distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Deexcitation operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Dissociation energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Density matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D_{\text{ab}}</td>
<td>Density matrix element in AO basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>Matrix eigenvalue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>van der Waals parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>Dielectric constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>Energy, for one electron or as an individual term in a sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>Energy matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>Excitation operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Energy, many particles or terms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Electronic energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_{[r]}</td>
<td>Energy functional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EA</td>
<td>Electron affinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>Molecular orbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>Electrostatic potential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Φ</td>
<td>Slater determinant or similar approximate wave function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f_{x}^{(i)}</td>
<td>Gradient component along a Hessian eigenvector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Electric field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Force constant matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fock operator or Fock matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F_{ij}, F_{ab}</td>
<td>Fock matrix element in MO and AO basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>Second hyperpolarizability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g_{k}</td>
<td>Reduced density matrix of order ( k )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g_{e}</td>
<td>Electronic g-factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g_{A}</td>
<td>Nuclear g-factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>Gradient (first derivative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Gibbs free energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G_{xy}</td>
<td>Coulomb type matrix elements in semi-empirical theory (( x, y = s, p, d ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Matrix containing square root of inverse atomic masses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hbar</td>
<td>Planck's constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hbar/2π</td>
<td>Reduced mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hbar</td>
<td>Core or other effective one-electron operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h_{ij}, h_{ab}</td>
<td>Matrix element of a one-electron operator in MO and AO basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h_{mn}</td>
<td>Matrix element of a one-electron operator in semi-empirical theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h_{1}, h_{2},...</td>
<td>Excitation and deexcitation operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Enthalpy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Hessian (second derivative matrix of a function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H_{ij}</td>
<td>Matrix element of a Hamiltonian operator between Slater determinants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H_{xy}</td>
<td>Exchange type matrix elements in semi-empirical theory (( x, y = s, p, d ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\hbar_{ijkl}</td>
<td>Summation indices for occupied MOs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Moment of inertia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Unit matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I_{N}</td>
<td>Nuclear magnetic moment or spin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP, I_{m}</td>
<td>Ionization potential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Spin–spin coupling matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Coulomb operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J_{ij}</td>
<td>Coulomb integral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J_{[r]}</td>
<td>Coulomb functional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Lagrange multiplier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Rate constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Transmission coefficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Compressibility constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Boltzmann's constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Force constant (for atoms A, B,...)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Hessian shift parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Angular momentum quantum number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Angular momentum operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Angular, magnetic, chemical potential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k_{AB}</td>
<td>Force constant (for atoms A, B,...)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Anharmonic constants (third derivative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Exchange operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K_{ij}</td>
<td>Exchange integral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K_{[r]}</td>
<td>Exchange functional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>General perturbation strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>Hessian shift parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>Angular momentum quantum number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>Angular momentum operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>Mulliken electronegativity, chemical potential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>Reduced mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>Dipole moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m_{0}</td>
<td>Vacuum permeability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m_{B}</td>
<td>Bohr magneton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m_{N}</td>
<td>Nuclear magneton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>Mass, general or electron mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m_{i}</td>
<td>Mass of particle ( i )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Number of particles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N_{A}</td>
<td>Avogadro's number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O, P, Q, R, S</td>
<td>General operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>Generalized momentum operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Π</td>
<td>Product of diagonal elements in a Slater determinant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>Momentum operator or vector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P_{ij}, P_{xy}</td>
<td>Matrix element of a one-electron operator in MO and AO basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q_{ij}</td>
<td>Excitation and deexcitation operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Hessian matrix of a Slater determinant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Semi-empirical theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Matrix element of a one-electron operator in MO and AO basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T_{ij}</td>
<td>Excitation and deexcitation operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Hamiltonian matrix (general, electronic, nuclear)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Exchange type matrix elements in semi-empirical theory (( v = {i,j} ) for ( i \neq j ))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Q
q
Q
Q
r
r
r
rij
R
R
r, R
R
Rij, RAB, RAB
r, q, f
s
s
s2
sx,y,z
s
S
S
S2
Sab
q(t)
qABC
N
Θs,i
Δt
t
t
t
t
t
t
ti, tij
T
T, T1, T2, . . .
T, Te, Tn
T[r]
Ts[r]

P
Pi
P, Pij
P 1 , P2
q
q
Q

568

Pressure
Legendre polynomial
Permutation operators (permuting indices i and j)
Perturbation operators (one- and two-electron)
Charge on a particle (integer)
Partition function (one particle)
Atomic charge (can be fractional), ﬁtted or from population
analysis
Partition function (many particles)
Normal or generalized coordinate
Predictive correlation coefﬁcient
Quadrupole moment
Electron density
Bond order
Position vector(s), general or electronic
Distance between electrons i and j
Trust radius
Gas constant
Correlation coefﬁcient
Position vector, nuclear
Distance between atoms or nuclei, i and j or A and B
Polar coordinates
Order of rotational subgroup
Charge density
Variance
Pauli 2 × 2 spin matrices
Electron spin operator
Entropy
Switching function
Spin squared operator
Overlap matrix element in AO basis
Heaviside step function (q(t) = 0 for t < 0, q(t) = 1 for t > 0)
Angle between atoms A, B and C
Spin coupling function
Small (ﬁnite) time step
Time
Translational vector
Heat or pressure bath coupling parameter
Phase factor
Imaginary time variable
Orbital kinetic energy density
Cluster amplitudes
Temperature
Cluster operator (general, single, double, . . . excitations)
Kinetic energy operator (general, electronic, nuclear)
Kinetic energy functional, exact
Kinetic energy functional, calculated from a Slater determinant

APPENDIX A

†

t

〈O〉
|O|
〈〈P;Q〉〉
[P,Q]
∇
∇2
⋅
×
∇⋅
∇×

z
z
z
Z
Z′
〈n|
|n〉
〈n|O|m〉

w
w
wABCD
W
W
Wi
Wk
W
Wab
*
Wsb
x
xi, yi, zi
Δxi
Ψ, Ψe, Ψn

v
V
V, VAB
Vij
V[r]
V, Vee, Vne, Vnn

U
U
Ui

569

Internal energy
Unitary matrix
Matrix element of a semi-empirical one-electron operator, usually
parameterized
Velocity
Volume
Potential energy (between atoms A and B)
Coulomb potential between particles i and j
Potential energy functional
Potential (Coulomb) energy operator (general, electron–electron,
nuclear–electron, nuclear–nuclear)
Frequency associated with an electric or magnetic ﬁeld
Harmonic vibrational frequency
Torsional angle between atoms A, B, C and D
Two-electron operator
Energy of an approximate wave function
Perturbation energy correction at order i
Wigner intracule of order k
Energy-weighted density matrix
Energy-weighted density matrix element in AO basis
Weighting factor in pseudospectral methods
Magnetizability
Cartesian coordinates for particle i
Component in a vector
Exact or multi-determinant wave function (general, electronic,
nuclear)
Spin polarization
Friction coefﬁcient
Molecular surface parameter for calculating solvation energies
Nuclear charge, exact
Nuclear charge, reduced by the number of core electrons
Bra, referring to a function characterized by quantum number n.
Ket, referring to a function characterized by quantum number n.
Bracket (matrix element) of operator O between functions n and
m
Average value of O
Norm or determinant of O
Propagator of P and Q
Commutator of P and Q ([P,Q] = PQ − QP)
Gradient operator
Laplace operator
Entrywise matrix product or tensor contraction
Cross product
Divergence operator
Curl operator
Vector transposition
Complex conjugate

NOTATION


Appendix B

B.1 The Variational Principle

The Variational Principle states that an approximate wave function has an energy that is above or equal to the exact energy. The equality holds only if the wave function is exact. The proof is as follows.

Assume that we know the exact solutions to the Schrödinger equation.

\[ \mathbf{H}\Psi = E_i \Psi, \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, \infty \]  
(B.1)

There are infinitely many solutions and we assume that they are labelled according to their energies, \( E_i \), being the lowest. Since the \( \mathbf{H} \) operator is Hermitian, the solutions form a complete basis. We may furthermore choose the solutions to be orthogonal and normalized.

\[ \langle \Psi_i | \Psi_j \rangle = \delta_{ij} \]  
(B.2)

An approximate wave function can be expanded in the exact solutions, since they form a complete set.

\[ \Phi = \sum_{\alpha} a_\alpha \Psi_\alpha \]  
(B.3)

The energy of an approximate wave function is calculated as in eq. (B.4).

\[ W = \frac{\langle \Phi | \mathbf{H} | \Phi \rangle}{\langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle} \]  
(B.4)

Inserting the expansion (B.3) we obtain eq. (B.5).

\[ W = \sum_{\alpha\beta} a_\alpha a_\beta \frac{\langle \Psi_\alpha | \mathbf{H} | \Psi_\beta \rangle}{\sum_{\alpha} a_\alpha^2} \]  
(B.5)

Using the fact that \( \mathbf{H}\Psi_i = E_i \Psi_i \), and the orthonormality of the \( \Psi_i \) (eqs (B.1) and (B.2)), we obtain eq. (B.6).

\[ W = \sum_{\alpha} a_\alpha^2 E_i = \sum_{\alpha} a_\alpha^2 (E_i - E_0) \geq 0 \]  
(B.6)

The variational principle states that \( W \geq E_0 \) or, equivalently, \( W - E_0 \geq 0 \).

Since \( a_\alpha \) is always positive or zero, and \( E_i - E_0 \) is always positive or zero (\( E_0 \) is by definition the lowest energy), this completes the proof. Furthermore, in order for the equality to hold, all \( a_\alpha = 0 \) since \( E_0 - E_0 \) is non-zero (neglecting degenerate ground states). This in turns means that \( a_0 = 1 \), owing to the normalization of \( \Phi \), and consequently the wave function is the exact solution.

This proof shows that any approximate wave function will have an energy above or equal to the exact ground state energy. There is a related theorem, known as MacDonald’s Theorem, which states that the \( n \)th root of a set of secular equations (e.g., a CI matrix) is an upper limit to the \((n-1)\)th excited exact state, within the given symmetry subclass. In other words, the lowest root obtained by diagonalizing a CI matrix is an upper limit to the lowest exact wave functions, the second root is an upper limit to the exact energy of the first excited state, the third root is an upper limit to the exact second excited state, and so on.

B.2 The Hohenberg–Kohn Theorems

In wave mechanics, the electron density is given by the square of the wave function integrated over \( N - 1 \) electron coordinates and the wave function is determined by solving the Schrödinger equation. For a system of \( N_{\text{nuc}} \) nuclei and \( N_{\text{elec}} \) electrons, the electronic Hamiltonian operator contains the terms given in eq. (B.8).

\[ \mathbf{H} = -\sum_{i=1}^{N_{\text{nuc}}} \frac{1}{r_i} + \sum_{ij \neq i}^{N_{\text{elec}}} \frac{1}{r_{ij}} + \sum_{ij \neq i}^{N_{\text{elec}}} \frac{Z_j}{|r_i - r_j|} + \sum_{ij \neq i}^{N_{\text{nuc}}} \frac{Z_i}{|r_i - \mathbf{R}_{\text{nuc}}|} \]  
(B.8)

Within the Born–Oppenheimer approximation, the last term is a constant. It is seen that the Hamiltonian operator is uniquely determined by the number of electrons and the potential created by the nuclei, \( \mathbf{V}_{\text{nuc}} \), i.e., the nuclear charges and positions. This means that the ground state wave function (and thereby the electron density) and ground state energy are also given uniquely by these quantities.

Assume now that two different external potentials (which may be from nuclei), \( \mathbf{V}_{\text{nuc}} \) and \( \mathbf{V}_0 \), result in the same electron density, \( \rho \). Two different potentials imply that the two Hamiltonian operators are different, \( \mathbf{H} \) and \( \mathbf{H}_0 \), and the corresponding lowest energy wave functions are different, \( \Psi \) and \( \Psi_0 \). Taking \( \Psi \) as an approximate wave function for \( \mathbf{H} \) and using the variational principle yields eq. (B.9).

\[ \langle \Psi | \mathbf{H} | \Psi \rangle > E_0 \quad \text{and} \quad \langle \Psi | \mathbf{H}_0 | \Psi \rangle > E_0 \]  
(B.9)

\[ E_0 + \rho(\mathbf{r}) \mathbf{V}_{\text{nuc}} - \mathbf{V}_0 | \Psi \rangle > E_0 \]

\[ E_0 + \int \rho(\mathbf{r}) \mathbf{V}_{\text{nuc}} - \mathbf{V}_0 \mathbf{d}r > E_0 \]
Similarly, taking $\Psi$ as an approximate wave function for $H'$ yields eq. (B.10).

$$E_0 + \int \rho(r) V_{\alpha\epsilon} - V_{\epsilon\alpha} \, dr > E_0' \quad \text{(B.10)}$$

Addition of these two inequalities gives $E'_0 + E_0 > E'_0 + E_0$, showing that the assumption was wrong. In other words, for the ground state there is a one-to-one correspondence between the electron density and the nuclear potential, and thereby also with the Hamiltonian operator and the energy. In the language of density functional theory, the energy is a unique functional of the electron density, $E[\rho]$.

Using the electron density as a parameter, there is a variational principle analogous to that in wave mechanics. Given an approximate electron density $\rho'$ (assumed to be positive definite everywhere) that integrates to the number of electrons, the energy given by this density is an upper bound to the exact ground state energy, provided that the exact functional is used.

The exchange–correlation energy can thus be obtained by integrating the electron–electron interaction over the $\rho$ variable and subtracting the Coulomb part.

$$\langle \Psi | V_{ee} | \Psi \rangle = \int \rho(r) V_{\alpha\epsilon} \, dr$$

Integrating over $\lambda$ between the limits 0 and 1 corresponds to smoothly transforming the non-interacting reference to the real system.

$$\int_0^1 \left. \partial \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle / \partial \lambda \right|_0^1 \, d\lambda = \int_0^1 \left. \rho \frac{\partial V_{\epsilon\alpha}(\lambda)}{\partial \lambda} + V_{\epsilon\alpha} \right|_0^1 \, d\lambda$$

$$\langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle - \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle = E_1 - E_0 = \int_0^1 \left. \rho \frac{\partial V_{\epsilon\alpha}(\lambda)}{\partial \lambda} + V_{\epsilon\alpha} \right|_0^1 \, d\lambda$$

This integration is done under the assumption that the density remains constant, i.e. $\Psi$ and $\Psi$ yield the same density. For the term involving the external potential, this allows the integration to be written in terms of the two limits.

$$\int_0^1 \left. \rho \frac{\partial V_{\epsilon\alpha}(\lambda)}{\partial \lambda} \right|_0^1 \, d\lambda = \int \rho(r) \int \left. \frac{\partial V_{\epsilon\alpha}(\lambda)}{\partial \lambda} \right|_0^1 \, d\lambda \, dr$$

$$= \int \rho(r) V_{\alpha\epsilon}(1) - V_{\epsilon\alpha}(0) \, dr$$

$$= \int \rho(r) V_{\epsilon\alpha}(1) \, dr - \rho(r) V_{\epsilon\alpha}(0) \, dr$$

Combining eqs (B.14), (B.15) and (B.16) yields eq. (B.17).

$$E_1 = \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle + \int \rho(r) V_{\alpha\epsilon}(1) \, dr + \int \left. \rho \frac{\partial V_{\epsilon\alpha}(\lambda)}{\partial \lambda} \right|_0^1 \, d\lambda$$

Using the fact that $V_{\alpha\epsilon}(1) = V_{\epsilon\alpha}$ and the definition of $E_1$ (eq. (6.9)) we obtain eq. (B.18).

$$\langle \Psi | V_{\alpha\epsilon} | \Psi \rangle = \int \rho(r) V_{\alpha\epsilon} \, dr$$

The exchange–correlation energy can thus be obtained by integrating the electron–electron interaction over the $\lambda$ variable and subtracting the Coulomb part.

The right-hand side of eq. (B.18) can be written in terms of the second-order reduced density matrix eq. (6.14), and the definition of the exchange–correlation hole in eq. (6.21) allows the Coulomb energy to be separated out.

The energy of the non-interacting ($E_0$) system is given by eq. (B.16) since $V_{\alpha\epsilon}$ makes no contribution.

$$E_0 = \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle + \int \rho(r) V_{\epsilon\alpha}(0) \, dr$$

The energy of the adiabatic connection formula (eq. (6.50)).

$$V_{\alpha\epsilon}^{\text{adi}}(\lambda, r) = \frac{1}{1-\lambda} \int \rho(r) \frac{\partial h_{\alpha\epsilon}(\lambda, r)}{\partial \lambda} \, dr$$

Reference

Appendix C

Atomic Units

In electronic structure calculations it is convenient to work in the atomic unit (au) system, which is defined by setting $m_e = e = \hbar = 1$. From these values follow related quantities, as shown in Table C.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Value in au</th>
<th>Value in SI units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$m_e$</td>
<td>Electron mass</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$9.110 \times 10^{-31}$ kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$e$</td>
<td>Electron charge</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$1.602 \times 10^{-19}$ C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$t$</td>
<td>Time</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$2.419 \times 10^{-17}$ s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\hbar$</td>
<td>Planck's constant</td>
<td>$2\pi$</td>
<td>$6.626 \times 10^{-34}$ Js</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$a_0$</td>
<td>Bohr radius (atomic distance unit)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$5.292 \times 10^{-11}$ m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E_H$</td>
<td>Hartree (atomic energy unit)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$4.360 \times 10^{-18}$ J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$c$</td>
<td>Speed of light</td>
<td>137.036</td>
<td>$2.998 \times 10^{8}$ m/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha$</td>
<td>Fine structure constant ($= e^2/4\pi\varepsilon_0$)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$0.00729735$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mu_B$</td>
<td>Bohr magneton ($= e\hbar/2m_e$)</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{2}$</td>
<td>$9.274 \times 10^{-24}$ J/T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mu_n$</td>
<td>Nuclear magneton</td>
<td>$2.723 \times 10^{-4}$</td>
<td>$5.051 \times 10^{-22}$ J/T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mu_0$</td>
<td>Vacuum permittivity</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$1.113 \times 10^{-9}$ C²/Nm²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\epsilon_0$</td>
<td>Vacuum permeability ($=4\pi\epsilon_0$)</td>
<td>$6.692 \times 10^{-4}$</td>
<td>$1.257 \times 10^{-7}$ Ns²/C²</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appendix D

Z-Matrix Construction

All calculations need as input a molecular geometry. This is commonly given by one of the following three methods:

1. Cartesian coordinates
2. Internal coordinates
3. Via a graphical interface.

Generating Cartesian coordinates by hand is only realistic for small molecules. If, however, the geometry is taken from outside sources, such as an X-ray structure, Cartesian coordinates are often the natural choice. Similarly, a graphical interface produces a set of Cartesian coordinates for the underlying program, which carries out the actual calculation.

Generating internal coordinates such as bond lengths and angles by hand is relatively simple, even for quite large molecules. One widely used method is the Z-matrix where each atom is specified in terms of a distance, angle and torsional angle to other atoms. It should be noted that internal coordinates are not necessarily related to the actual bonding, they are only a convenient method for specifying the geometry. The internal coordinates are usually converted to Cartesian coordinates before any calculations are carried out. Geometry optimizations, however, are often done in internal coordinates in order to remove the six (five) translational and rotational degrees of freedom.

Construction of a Z-matrix begins with a drawing of the molecule and a suitable numbering of the atoms. Any numbering will result in a valid Z-matrix, although assignment of numerical values to the parameters is greatly facilitated if the bonding and symmetry of the molecule is considered when the numbering is performed (see the examples below). The Z-matrix specifies the position of each atom in terms of a distance, an angle and a torsional angle relative to other atoms. The first three atoms, however, are slightly different. The first atom is always positioned at the origin of the coordinate system. The second atom is specified as having a distance to the first atom,
The definition of the torsional angles is illustrated in Figure 2.7. To emphasize the symmetry of the above conformation, the Z-matrices may also be given in terms of symbolic variables, where variables that are equivalent by symmetry have identical names.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H11</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H14</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H15</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H16</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H17</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H18</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H19</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H20</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H21</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H22</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H23</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H24</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H25</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H26</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H27</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H28</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H29</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H30</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H31</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H32</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H33</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H34</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H35</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H36</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H37</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H38</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H39</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H40</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H41</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H42</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H43</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H44</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H45</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H46</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H47</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H48</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H49</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H50</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H51</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H52</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H53</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H54</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H55</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H56</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H57</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H58</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H59</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H60</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H61</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H62</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H63</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H64</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H65</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H66</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H67</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H68</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H69</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H70</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H71</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H72</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H73</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H74</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H75</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H76</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H77</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H78</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H79</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H80</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H81</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H82</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H83</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H84</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H85</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H86</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H87</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H88</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H89</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H90</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H91</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H92</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H93</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H94</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H95</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H96</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H97</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H98</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H99</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H100</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>D5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Below are some examples of how to construct Z-matrices. Figure D.1 shows acetaldehyde.

The limitation that the angles must be between 0° and 180° introduces a slight complication for linear arrays of atoms, such as a carboxyl group. Specification of the nitrogen in terms of a distance to C1 and an angle to C2 does not allow a unique assignment of a torsional angle. The C1—C2—N6 angle is linear, which makes the torsional angle undefined. There are two methods for solving this problem, either by specifying N relative to C1 with a long distance, or by specifying C2 relative to N with an angle of 180°.
APPENDIX D

Z-MATRIX CONSTRUCTION

578

APPENDIX D

579

Figure D.2 Atom numbering for methyl cyanide

C1
C2  1  R1
H3  1  R2  2  A1
H4  1  R2  2  A1  3  D1
H5  1  R2  2  A1  3  -D1
N6  1  R3  3  A2  4  D2
R1  =  1.50
R2  =  1.10
R3  =  2.70
A1  = 110.0
A2  = 110.0
D1  = 120.0
D2  = 120.0

Note that the variables imply that the molecule has C3v symmetry. Alternatively, a Dummy Atom (X) may be introduced.

Figure D.3 Atom numbering for methyl cyanide including a dummy atom

C1
C2  1  A
H3  1  A  2  A1
H4  1  A  2  A1  3  D1
H5  1  A  2  A1  3  -D1
N6  1  A  2  A2  3  D2
N7  2  R4  6  A3  1  D3
R1  =  1.50
R2  =  1.10
R3  =  1.00
R4  =  1.20
A1  = 110.0
A2  = 90.0
D1  = 120.0
D2  = 120.0
D3  = 180.0

A dummy atom is just a point in space and has no significance in the actual calculation. The above two Z-matrices give identical Cartesian coordinates. The R3 variable has arbitrarily been given a distance of 1.00, and the D2 torsional angle of 0.0° is also arbitrary – any other values may be substituted without affecting the coordinates of the real atoms. Similarly, the A2 and A3 angles should just add up to 180°; their individual values are not significant. The function of a dummy atom in this case is to break up the problematic 180° angle into two 90° angles. It should be noted that the introduction of dummy atoms does not increase the number of (non-redundant) parameters, although there are formally three more variables for each dummy atom. The dummy variables may be identified by excluding them from the symbolic variable list, or by explicitly forcing them to be non-optimizable parameters.

When a molecule is symmetric, it is often convenient to start the numbering with atoms lying on a rotation axis or in a symmetry plane. If there are no real atoms on a rotation axis or in a mirror plane, dummy atoms can be useful for defining the symmetry element. Consider for example the cyclopropenyl system, which has D3h symmetry. Without dummy atoms, one of the C—C bond lengths will be given in terms of the two other C—C distances and the C—C—C angle, and it will be complicated to force the three C—C bonds to be identical. By introducing two dummy atoms to define the C3 axis, this becomes easy.

Figure D.4 Atom numbering for the cyclopropyl system

X1  1  1.00
X2  1  R1  2  90.0
C3  1  R1  2  90.0  3  120.0
C4  1  R1  2  90.0  3  -120.0
C5  1  R1  2  90.0  3  0.0
C6  1  R2  2  90.0  3  120.0
C7  1  R2  2  90.0  3  -120.0
R1 = 0.80
R2 = 1.90

In this case there are only two genuine variables, the others are fixed by symmetry.

Let us finally consider two Z-matrices for optimization to transition structures, the Diels–Alder reaction of butadiene and ethylene, and the [1,5]-hydrogen shift in (Z)-1,3-pentadiene. To enforce the symmetries of the TS’s (C in both cases) it is again advantageous to use dummy atoms.

**Figure D.5** Atom numbering for the transition structure of the Diels–Alder reaction of butadiene and ethylene

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atom</th>
<th>R1</th>
<th>R2</th>
<th>R3</th>
<th>R4</th>
<th>R5</th>
<th>R6</th>
<th>R7</th>
<th>R8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The mirror plane is defined by the two dummy atoms and the fixing of the angles and torsional angle of the first two carbons. The torsional angles for atoms C5 and C6 are dummy variables as they only define the orientation of the plane of the first four carbon atoms relative to the dummy atoms, and may consequently be fixed at 180°. Note that the C5—C6 and C7—C8 bond distances are given implicitly in terms of the R2/A1 and R3/A2 variables. The presence of such “indirect” variables means that some experimentation is necessary for assigning proper values to the “direct” variables. The forming C—C bond is given directly as one of the Z-matrix variables, R3, which facilitates a search for a suitable start geometry for the TS optimization, for example by running a series of constrained optimizations with fixed R3 distances.

The [1,5]-hydrogen shift in (Z)-1,3-pentadiene is an example of a “narcissistic” reaction, with the reactant and product being identical. The TS is therefore located exactly at the halfway point, and has a symmetry different from either the reactant or product. By suitable constraints on the geometry the TS may therefore be located by a minimization within a symmetry-constrained geometry.

**Figure D.6** Atom numbering for the transition structure for the [1,5]-hydrogen shift in (Z)-1,3-pentadiene

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atom</th>
<th>R1</th>
<th>R2</th>
<th>R3</th>
<th>R4</th>
<th>R5</th>
<th>R6</th>
<th>R7</th>
<th>R8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The mirror plane is defined by the two dummy atoms and the fixing of the angles and torsional angle of the first two carbons. The torsional angles for atoms C5 and C6 are dummy variables as they only define the orientation of the plane of the first four carbon atoms relative to the dummy atoms, and may consequently be fixed at 180°. Note that the C5—C6 and C7—C8 bond distances are given implicitly in terms of the R2/A1 and R3/A2 variables. The presence of such “indirect” variables means that some experimentation is necessary for assigning proper values to the “direct” variables. The forming C—C bond is given directly as one of the Z-matrix variables, R3, which facilitates a search for a suitable start geometry for the TS optimization, for example by running a series of constrained optimizations with fixed R3 distances.

The [1,5]-hydrogen shift in (Z)-1,3-pentadiene is an example of a “narcissistic” reaction, with the reactant and product being identical. The TS is therefore located exactly at the halfway point, and has a symmetry different from either the reactant or product. By suitable constraints on the geometry the TS may therefore be located by a minimization within a symmetry-constrained geometry.
The mirror plane is defined by the dummy atoms. The migrating hydrogen $H_{16}$ is not allowed to move out of the plane of symmetry, and must consequently have the same distance to $C_4$ and $C_5$. A minimization will locate the lowest energy structure within the given $Cs$ symmetry, and a subsequent frequency calculation will reveal that the optimized structure is a TS, with the imaginary frequency belonging to the $a''$ representation (breaking the symmetry).
Euler equation 417–18
EVB see extended valence bond
exchange energy 18
exchange integrals 238–9
basis sets 228
electronic structure methods 89–90, 96
exchange-correlation functionals 243–55
generalized gradient approximation 284–56
generalized random phase approximations 233–4
gradient-corrected methods 248–56
hyper-GGA methods 252–6
Jacob’s ladder classification 246–55
limitations 259
local density approximation 246–8, 254, 257
meta-GGA methods 250–2, 254–6
exchange-correlation holes 240–3
excited electron correlation methods 186–7
excited Slater determinants 135–7, 139, 146, 163–8
extended Hückel theory (EHT) 107, 127–8
extended Lagrange methods 45, 457–9
extended transition state (ETS) approach 496
extended valence bond (EVB) method 73
external electric fields 315, 316–17, 329
external magnetic fields 315, 318, 321–2
extrapolation 108
fast Fourier transforms (FFT) 105, 582
fast multiple sums 67
fast multipole moment (FMM) method 111, 467–8
Fermi
contact 287
contact operators 332–3, 334, 336
correlation 134
holes 134, 242–3
FF see force field methods
FFT see fast Fourier transforms
first-order differential equations 533–6
first-order regular approximation (FORA) associated curves 262
fixed node approximation 189
Fletcher–Reeves (FR) method 385
fluctuating charge model 44–5
accuracy/generality 53–5, 71–2
advantages 69–70, 72
atom types 23, 24
bending energies 27–30, 59–61, 64–5
computational considerations 65–7
computed systems 48–50, 58–62
coordinate mappings 58–62
cross terms 47–8, 51–2, 62
Differences in force fields 62–5
electrostatic energies 40–7, 57, 65–7
energy comparisons 50–1
energy types 25–51
errors 68
functional forms 62–3
functional groups 22–3, 53–4
genetic parameters 57–8
hybrid force field electronic structure methods 74–7
hydrogen bonds 39–40
hyperconjugation 48
limitations 69–70, 73–3
out-of-plane bending energies 30
parameterization 51–62, 68–9
practical considerations 69
reactive energy surfaces 73–4
relative energies of isomers 318
small rings 48–50
stretch energies 26–7, 64–5
structurally different molecules 50–1
torsional energies 30–4, 42–3, 48, 57, 63
transition structure modelling 70–4
universal force fields 62
validation of force fields 67–9
van der Waals energies 34–40, 42–3, 52–3, 57, 61, 65–7
forces 4–5
FORS see full optimized reaction space
four index transformations 148
Fourier transformations (FT) 541–2
FR (see Fletcher–Reeves)
free energy methods 516
simulation techniques 473–5
thermodynamic perturbation 472–3
frontier molecular orbital (FMO) theory 488–92
front-core approximation 136
Fukui function 492–4
full optimized reaction space (FORS) 155–8
functional forms 62–3
functional groups 22–3, 53–4
functions 530
functions 530, 531
fundamental forces 4–5
GA see genetic algorithms
GAFT see generalized atomic polar tensor
gauge dependence 308–9
gauge including/invariant atomic orbitals
(GIAO) 358–9
Gibbs free energy 472
Global minima
diffusion methods 414
distance geometry methods 414–15
genetic algorithms 413–14
molecular dynamics 623–12
Monte Carlo methods 411–12
optimization techniques 300–1, 409–15
simulated annealing 413
stochastic methods 411–12
Gonzalez–Schlegel optimization 418
gradient norm minimization 402–3
gradient-corrected methods 246–56
Gram–Schmidt orthogonalization 533
grand unified theory 3
gravitational interactions 4–5
Greens functions see propagator methods
grid representation 539
GRPMOS force field 63–4
GPRPA see generalized random phase approximations
GTO see Gaussian type orbitals
GRPA see generalized gradient approximation
GVB see generalized valence bond
half-and-half (H + H) method 252
half-electron method 100
Hamilton formulation 453
Hamiltonian operators
density functional theory 240
dynamical equation 7
electronic structure methods 82–4, 87, 88, 91, 104–5
force field methods 74
mathematical methods 525, 528–9, 538
molecular properties 315–16, 322, 343–5
quantum mechanics 15
relativistic methods 283, 284, 286–7
separation of variables 10–12
simulation techniques 459–60, 482
statistical mechanics 428
superoperators 385–7
Hammett-type effects 71
Hammond postulate 506–10
Hamrechts–Cohen–Tozer–Handy (HCTH)
model 249, 251
geometry convergence 353
vibrational frequency convergence 360–1
hard and soft acid and base (HSAB) principle 493–4
harmonic expansions see Taylor expansions
Hartree–Fock (HF) theory
basis set approximation 93–8
basis sets 213, 223, 227–9
classical mechanics 227
coordinated basis 328
coordinated basis 325–9, 343
dissociation curves 361–2
electron correlation methods 133–4, 137, 140–8, 189
electron structure methods 80–2, 87, 91–2, 98–100
force field methods 62, 70
ground state geometry 353–4
Hartree–Fock limit 97–8
mathematical methods 541, 544
molecular properties 322, 325–9, 339–41, 346
numerical 93–8
optimization techniques 380, 382
quantitative theories 496
quantum mechanics 16–19
relativistic methods 288, 289
INDEX

594

INDEX

595
